

**DLM5034, DLM5038,  
DLM5054, DLM5058  
Mixed Signal Oscilloscope**

**U S E R ' S M A N U A L**

---

---

Thank you for purchasing the DLM5034, DLM5038, DLM5054, or DLM5058 Series Mixed Signal Oscilloscope.

This User's Manual explains how to use the instrument. To ensure correct use, please read this manual thoroughly before operation.

The manuals for this instrument are listed on the next page. Please read all manuals.

Contact information of Yokogawa offices worldwide is provided on the following sheet.

Document No.	Description
PIM 113-01Z2	List of worldwide contacts

## Notes

- The contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice as a result of continuing improvements to the instrument's performance and functionality. The figures given in this manual may differ from those that actually appear on your screen.
- Every effort has been made in the preparation of this manual to ensure the accuracy of its contents. However, should you have any questions or find any errors, please contact your nearest YOKOGAWA dealer.
- Copying or reproducing all or any part of the contents of this manual without the permission of YOKOGAWA is strictly prohibited.
- The TCP/IP software of this product and the documents concerning it have been developed/ created by YOKOGAWA based on the BSD Networking Software, Release 1 that has been licensed from the Regents of the University of California.

## Trademarks

- Microsoft, Internet Explorer, MS-DOS, Windows, Windows 7, Windows 8.1, and Windows 10 are registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- Adobe and Acrobat are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.
- DLM is a registered trademark of Yokogawa Electric Corporation.
- In this manual, the ® and TM symbols do not accompany their respective registered trademark or trademark names.
- Other company and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

## Revisions

- September 2020                      1st Edition

# Manuals

The following manuals, including this one, are provided as manuals for this instrument. Please read all manuals.

Manual Title	Manual No.	Description
DLM5034, DLM5038, DLM5054, DLM5058 Mixed Signal Oscilloscope Features Guide	IM DLM5058-01EN	The included CD contains PDF data. This manual explains all the instrument's features other than the communication interface features.
DLM5034, DLM5038, DLM5054, DLM5058 Mixed Signal Oscilloscope User's Manual	IM DLM5058-02EN	This document. The included CD contains PDF data. The manual explains how to operate this instrument.
DLM5034, DLM5038, DLM5054, DLM5058 Mixed Signal Oscilloscope Getting Started Guide	IM DLM5058-03EN	Provided as a printed manual. This guide explains the handling precautions, common operations, troubleshooting measures, and specifications of this instrument.
DLM5034, DLM5038, DLM5054, DLM5058 Mixed Signal Oscilloscope Operation Guide	IM DLM5058-04EN	Provided as a printed manual. Explains the basic operations of this instrument. Operations are described in steps from "Preparation" to "Displaying Waveforms," "Measuring Waveforms," and "Saving Screen Captures."
DLM5034, DLM5038, DLM5054, DLM5058 Mixed Signal Oscilloscope Communication Interface User's Manual	IM DLM5058-17EN	The included CD contains PDF data. Explains the functions of the this instrument's communication interface, how to configure it, and the commands used to control this instrument from a PC through the interface.
DLM5034, DLM5038, DLM5054, DLM5058 Mixed Signal Oscilloscope	IM DLM5058-92Z1	Document for China

The "EN", "E", and "Z1" in the manual numbers are the language codes.

## Manuals in the CD

The included CD (manual CD) contains the following English and Japanese manuals.

File Name	Manual No.	Description
Features Guide & Users Manual.pdf	IM DLM5058-01EN IM DLM5058-02EN	Features Guide and User's Manual
Communication Interface.pdf	IM DLM5058-17EN	Communication Interface User's Manual

To view the PDF data, you need Adobe Acrobat Reader or a software application that can open PDF data.

## Online Help

The content similar to the Features Guide, IM DLM5058-01EN, is included in this instrument as a help file (some the content may be omitted). For instructions on how to use the help, see section 3.10 in the Getting Started Guide, IM DLM5058-03EN.

---

# DLM Models and Conventions Used in This Manual

## Models Explained

This manual explains the 8-channel model of this instrument. Channel settings vary depending on the model.

## Prefixes k and K

Prefixes k and K used before units are distinguished as follows:

k:	Denotes 1000.	Example: 100 kS/s (sample rate)
K:	Denotes 1024.	Example: 720 KB (file size)

## Displayed Characters

Bold characters in procedural explanations are used to indicate panel keys and soft keys that are used in the procedure and menu items that appear on the screen.

## Notes and Cautions

The notes and cautions in this manual are categorized using the following symbols.



*Improper handling or use can lead to injury to the user or damage to the instrument.* This symbol appears on the instrument to indicate that the user must refer to the user's manual for special instructions. The same symbol appears in the corresponding place in the user's manual to identify those instructions. In the manual, the symbol is used in conjunction with the word "WARNING" or "CAUTION."

### **WARNING**

Calls attention to actions or conditions that could cause serious or fatal injury to the user, and precautions that can be taken to prevent such occurrences.

### **CAUTION**

Calls attention to actions or conditions that could cause light injury to the user or damage to the instrument or user's data, and precautions that can be taken to prevent such occurrences.

## French

### **AVERTISSEMENT**

Attire l'attention sur des gestes ou des conditions susceptibles de provoquer des blessures graves (voire mortelles), et sur les précautions de sécurité pouvant prévenir de tels accidents.

### **ATTENTION**

Attire l'attention sur des gestes ou des conditions susceptibles de provoquer des blessures légères ou d'endommager l'instrument ou les données de l'utilisateur, et sur les précautions de sécurité susceptibles de prévenir de tels accidents.

### **Note**

Calls attention to information that is important for the proper operation of the instrument.

# Contents

Manuals ii	
DLM Models and Conventions Used in This Manual .....	iii

## Chapter 1 Vertical and Horizontal Control

⚠ 1.1	Configuring Channels (Analog Signal) .....	1-1
1.2	Copying Channel Information (Analog Signals) .....	1-6
1.3	Setting the Logic (Logic Signal) .....	1-7
1.4	Setting the Vertical Axis (Analog and Logic Signals) .....	1-14
1.5	All ON/All OFF .....	1-17
1.6	Setting the Horizontal Scale (Time Scale) .....	1-18

## Chapter 2 Triggering

2.1	Setting the Trigger Mode and Trigger Hold-off Time .....	2-1
2.2	Setting the Trigger Position and Trigger Delay .....	2-3
2.3	Triggering on an Edge Trigger .....	2-5
2.4	Triggering on the OR of Multiple Edge Triggers .....	2-8
2.5	Triggering on Multiple Input Patterns .....	2-10
2.6	Triggering on a Pulse Width Trigger .....	2-15
2.7	Triggering on Rise Times and Fall Times .....	2-18
2.8	Triggering on Runt Signals .....	2-21
2.9	Triggering on a Timeout Period .....	2-24
2.10	Triggering on a Window Trigger .....	2-27
2.11	Triggering on the OR of Multiple Window Triggers .....	2-30
2.12	Triggering on Edge Intervals .....	2-32
2.13	Triggering on FlexRay Bus Signals (Option) .....	2-35
2.14	Triggering on CAN Bus Signals (Option) .....	2-40
2.15	Triggering on CAN FD Bus Signals (Option) .....	2-46
2.16	Triggering on LIN Bus Signals (Option) .....	2-53
2.17	Triggering on CXPI Bus Signals (Option) .....	2-58
2.18	Triggering on SENT Signals (Option) .....	2-66
2.19	Triggering on UART Signals (Option) .....	2-76
2.20	Triggering on I <sup>2</sup> C Bus Signals (Option) .....	2-82
2.21	Triggering on SPI Bus Signals (Option) .....	2-90
2.22	Triggering On User-Defined Serial Bus Signals .....	2-96
2.23	Triggering on a TV Trigger .....	2-101
2.24	Triggering on Combination Triggers (B TRIG) .....	2-105
2.25	Forcing the Instrument to Trigger (FORCE TRIG) .....	2-110
2.26	Setting the Action-On-Trigger Function .....	2-111
2.27	Performing GO/NO-GO Determination .....	2-113

## Chapter 3 Waveform Acquisition

3.1	Setting Conditions for Waveform Acquisition .....	3-1
3.2	Acquiring Waveforms .....	3-4

<b>Chapter 4 Display</b>	
4.1	Setting Display Conditions ..... 4-1
4.2	Using the Accumulate Feature ..... 4-7
4.3	Using the Snapshot and Clear Trace Features ..... 4-9
4.4	Adjusting the Backlight..... 4-10
4.5	Displaying the Operation Screen Transparently.....4-11
<b>Chapter 5 Displaying XY Waveforms</b>	
5.1	Displaying XY Waveforms..... 5-1
5.2	Performing Cursor Measurements and Area Calculations ..... 5-3
<b>Chapter 6 Computed and Reference Waveforms</b>	
6.1	Setting the Computation Mode..... 6-1
6.2	Performing Addition, Subtraction, and Multiplication ..... 6-2
6.3	Performing Filter Functions ..... 6-3
6.4	Performing Integration..... 6-5
6.5	Performing Count Computations..... 6-6
6.6	Setting Labels, Units, and Scaling ..... 6-8
6.7	Loading Reference Waveforms..... 6-9
6.8	Performing User-Defined Computations (Optional) .....6-11
<b>Chapter 7 FFT</b>	
7.1	Displaying FFT Waveforms ..... 7-1
7.2	Measuring FFT Waveforms..... 7-5
<b>Chapter 8 Cursor Measurement</b>	
8.1	Measuring with $\Delta T$ Cursors ..... 8-1
8.2	Measuring with $\Delta V$ Cursors..... 8-4
8.3	Measuring with $\Delta T$ and $\Delta V$ Cursors ..... 8-6
8.4	Measuring with Marker Cursors (Marker)..... 8-9
8.5	Measuring with Angle Cursors (Degree) ..... 8-11
<b>Chapter 9 Automated Measurement of Waveform Parameters</b>	
9.1	Automatically Measuring Waveform Parameters ..... 9-1
9.2	Processing Statistics on Automatically Measured Values ..... 9-6
9.3	Measuring Enhanced Parameters..... 9-12
<b>Chapter 10 Zooming In on or Out of Waveforms</b>	
10.1	Zooming In on or Out of Waveforms ..... 10-1
10.2	Zooming in on or out from Waveforms in the Vertical Direction ..... 10-4
<b>Chapter 11 Searching Waveforms</b>	
11.1	Basic Waveform Search Operation ..... 11-1
11.2	Searching for Edges..... 11-6
11.3	Searching with Multiple Input Patterns..... 11-9
11.4	Searching for Pulse Width..... 11-13
11.5	Searching for Timeout Periods..... 11-17

**Chapter 12 Analyzing and Searching Serial Bus Signals**

12.1	Analyzing and Searching FlexRay Bus Signals (Option) .....	12-1
12.2	Analyzing and Searching CAN Bus Signals (Option).....	12-8
12.3	Analyzing and Searching CAN FD Bus Signals (Option).....	12-17
12.4	Analyzing and Searching LIN Bus Signals (Option).....	12-26
12.5	Analyzing and Searching CXPI Bus Signals (Option).....	12-32
12.6	Analyzing and Searching SENT Signals (Option).....	12-40
12.7	Analyzing and Searching UART Signals (Option).....	12-55
12.8	Analyzing and Searching I <sup>2</sup> C Bus Signals (Option) .....	12-64
12.9	Analyzing and Searching SPI Bus Signals (Option).....	12-75
12.10	Analyzing and Searching User-Defined Serial Bus Signals .....	12-82
12.11	Displaying Multiple Lists.....	12-89

**Chapter 13 Waveform Histogram Display**

13.1	Displaying Waveform Histograms .....	13-1
13.2	Measuring Histogram Parameters .....	13-3

**Chapter 14 Power Supply Analysis (Power Analysis, Power Measurement, Option)**

14.1	Power Supply Analysis Types .....	14-1
14.2	Analyzing Switching Loss.....	14-2
14.3	Performing Safe Operating Area Analysis.....	14-7
14.4	Performing Harmonic Analysis .....	14-11
14.5	Measuring the Joule Integral.....	14-15
14.6	Measuring Power .....	14-17

**Chapter 15 Displaying and Searching History Waveforms**

15.1	Displaying Waveform History Waveforms .....	15-1
15.2	Searching History Waveforms.....	15-6

**Chapter 16 Printing and Saving Screen Captures**

 16.1	Loading Roll Paper Into the Built-In Printer (Option).....	16-1
16.2	Printing on the Built-in Printer (Option) .....	16-4
16.3	Printing on a USB Printer .....	16-5
16.4	Printing on a Network Printer .....	16-6
16.5	Saving Screen Captures to Files.....	16-7
16.6	Printing and Saving Screen Capture Data to Multiple Output Destinations at the Same Time .....	16-10

**Chapter 17 Saving and Loading Data**

17.1	Connecting USB Storage Devices to the USB Ports .....	17-1
17.2	Saving Waveform Data .....	17-3
17.3	Saving Setup Data .....	17-7
17.4	Saving Other Types of Data .....	17-8
17.5	Loading Waveform Data.....	17-13
17.6	Loading Setup Data .....	17-14
17.7	Loading Other Types of Data .....	17-15
17.8	Performing File Operations .....	17-18

**Chapter 18 Ethernet Communication**

18.1	Connecting the Instrument to a Network.....	18-1
18.2	Configuring TCP/IP Settings .....	18-3
18.3	Accessing the Instrument from a PC (FTP Server).....	18-4
18.4	Configuring Mail Transmission (SMTP Client) .....	18-5
18.5	Connecting to a Network Drive (FTP Client).....	18-6
18.6	Configuring a Network Printer .....	18-7
18.7	Using SNTP to Set the Date and Time.....	18-8

**Chapter 19 Other Operations**

19.1	Changing the Menu, Message, and USB Keyboard Languages.....	19-1
19.2	Setting the Click Sound, Measured Value Font Size, and Number of Rows for Displaying Measurement Values.....	19-2
19.3	Viewing Setup Information (Overview).....	19-3
19.4	Using the DLM5000 as a USB Storage Device.....	19-4

**Index**

## 1.1 Configuring Channels (Analog Signal)

This section explains the following settings for the vertical scale for analog signals:

### CH menu

- Turning the waveform display on and off
- Input coupling
- Probe
- Turning waveform display inversion on and off
- Linear scaling
- Label display
- Bandwidth limit
- Offset

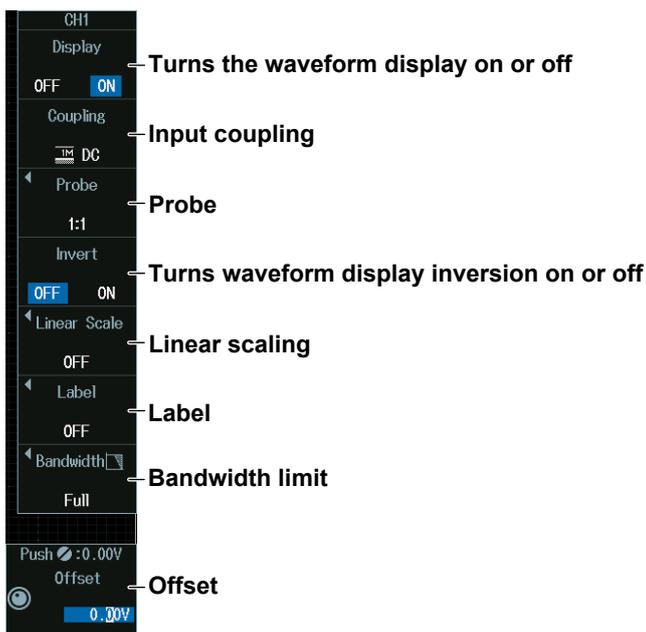
### UTILITY menu

- Turning offset cancel on and off

► [“Vertical Axis \(Analog Signal\)” in the Features Guide](#)

## CH Menu

1. Press any of the **CH1** to **CH8** keys. The channel key illuminates brightly, and the following menu appears.
  - You can also tap the channel information display area (  ) at the top of the screen to select the CH menu.
  - You can also tap **MENU** (  ) in the upper left of the screen and select the CH menu from VERTICAL on the top menu.



### Note

The available channel settings vary depending on the model.

- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4

2. If you press a channel key different from step 1, that channel becomes configurable.

### Note

- When the waveform display is on, the channel key and the channel information display area illuminate. When the channel key and the channel information display area are turned off, if you press a key or tap the display area, the waveform display is turned on. When the channel key and the channel information display area are illuminated brightly, if you press a key or tap the display area, the waveform display is turned off.
  - On the ACQUIRE menu, if you set the record length (Record Length) to the maximum record length, the waveforms of CH2, CH4, CH6, and CH8 cannot be acquired. For details on the ACQUIRE menu, see section 3.1.
- 

### Input Coupling (Coupling)

---



#### **CAUTION**

- The maximum input voltage for 1 M $\Omega$  input is 300 Vrms or 400 Vpeak when the frequency is 100 kHz or less. Applying a voltage greater than either of these limits may damage the input section. If the frequency is above 100 kHz, damage may occur even when the voltage is below this value.
  - The maximum input voltage for 50  $\Omega$  input is 5 Vrms or 10 Vpeak. Applying a voltage greater than either of these limits may damage the input section.
  - If the input coupling is AC, in accordance with the frequency response, the input signal is attenuated more in lower frequencies. As such, even when a high voltage signal is received, the over-range indicator (see “WARNING” provided later) may not be displayed on the instrument’s screen. As necessary, switch the input coupling to DC to check the input signal voltage.
  - If you change the input coupling setting while waveform acquisition is stopped, the input coupling on the instrument is actually changed when waveform acquisition is executed the next time. Be careful of the maximum input voltage.
- 

### French

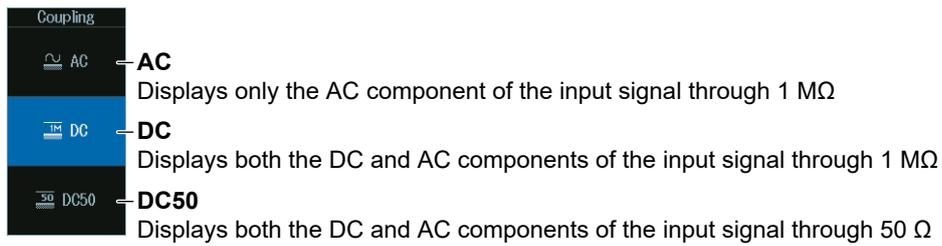
---



#### **ATTENTION**

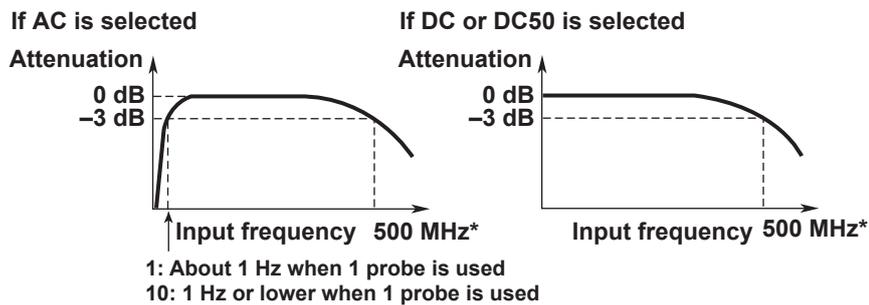
- La tension d'entrée maximum pour une entrée de 1 M $\Omega$  est de 300 Vrms ou 400 V crête lorsque la fréquence est inférieure ou égale à 100 kHz. Le fait d'appliquer une tension dépassant l'une de ces limites risque d'endommager la section d'entrée. Si la fréquence est supérieure à 100 kHz, des dommages risquent de survenir même lorsque la tension est inférieure à cette valeur.
  - La tension d'entrée maximale pour une entrée de 50  $\Omega$  est de 5 Vrms ou 10 Vcrête. L'application d'une tension supérieure à l'une de ces limites pourrait endommager la section d'entrée.
  - Si le courant du couplage d'entrée est alternatif (CA), conforme à la réponse en fréquence, le signal d'entrée est plus atténué aux fréquences plus basses.\* Ainsi, même si un signal haute tension est reçu, le voyant de dépassement de plage (voir «AVERTISSEMENT» fourni précédemment) risque de ne pas s'afficher à l'écran de l'instrument. Le cas échéant, basculez le couplage d'entrée sur CC (courant continu) afin de vérifier la tension du signal d'entrée.
  - Si vous modifiez le paramètre de couplage d'entrée alors que l'acquisition de forme d'onde est arrêtée, le couplage d'entrée sur l'instrument est en réalité modifié lorsque la prochaine acquisition de forme d'onde est exécutée. Faites attention à la tension d'entrée maximale.
-

Press the **Coupling** soft key to display the following menu.



### Input Coupling

The frequency responses when the input coupling is set to AC, DC, or DC50 are shown below. Please note that when set to AC, the instrument does not acquire low frequency signals or low frequency components, as seen in the following figure.

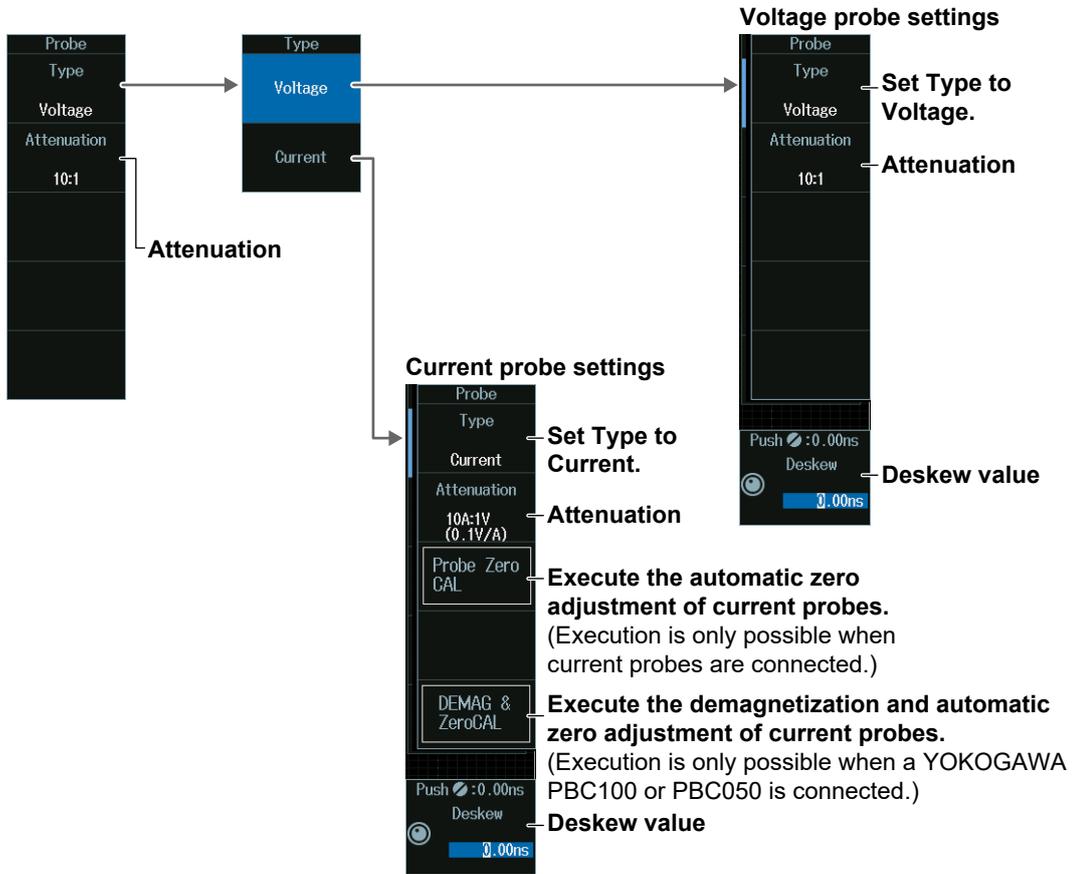


1: About 1 Hz when 1 probe is used  
 10: 1 Hz or lower when 1 probe is used

\* The high-frequency -3 dB point differs according to the model and the voltage scale settings.

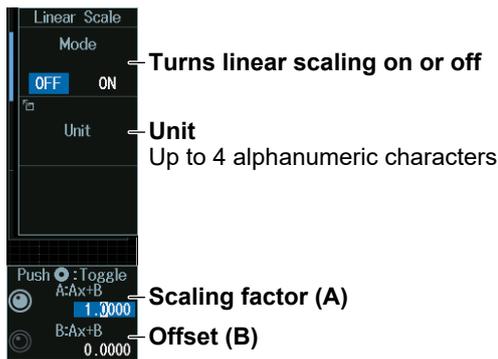
### Probe (Probe)

Press the **Probe** soft key to display the following menu.



### Linear Scaling (Linear Scale)

Press the **Linear Scale** soft key to display the following menu.



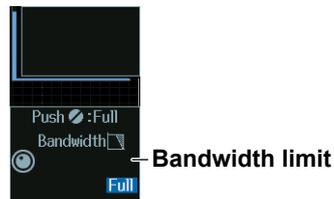
### Label Display (Label)

Press the **Label** soft key to display the following menu.



## Bandwidth Limit (Bandwidth)

Press the **Bandwidth** soft key. The jog shuttle now controls the Bandwidth setting.



## Offset (Offset)

When the CH menu is displayed, the jog shuttle controls the offset.

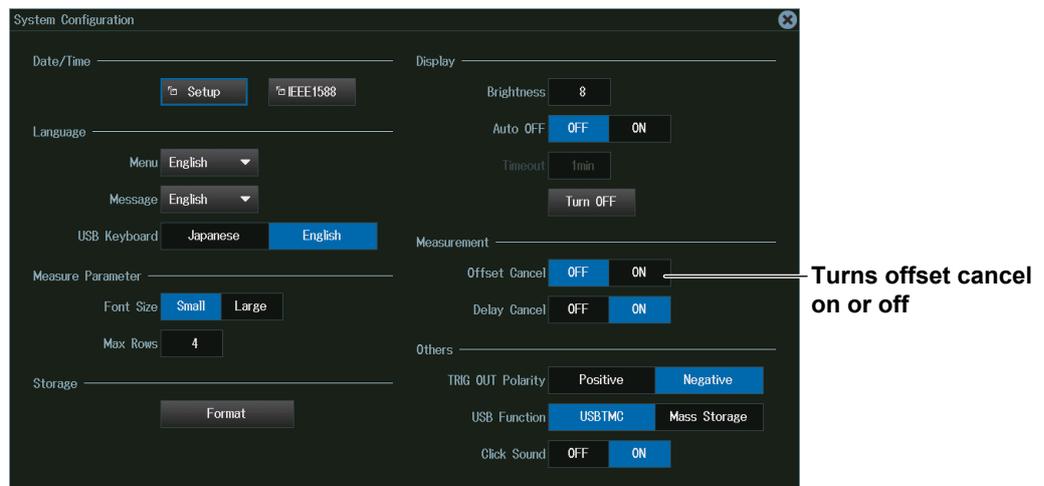
### Jog shuttle setting menu



## Offset Cancel (Offset Cancel)

Press **UTILITY** and then press the **System Configuration** soft key to display the following menu.

You can also tap **MENU** (MENU) in the upper left of the screen and select the UTILITY menu from UTILITY on the top menu.



## Note

- The offset setting applies to all input coupling settings (AC, DC, DC50).
- If you change the probe attenuation, the vertical scale settings change the values that have been scaled with the new attenuation ratio.
- The offset value does not change even if you change the vertical scale. However, if the offset value goes outside the selectable range, the offset is set to the maximum or minimum value in the vertical scale range. If you do not change the offset and set the vertical scale back to its original value, the offset returns to its original value.

## 1.2 Copying Channel Information (Analog Signals)

The analog signal input channel settings entered in section 1.1 can be copied to other channels.

CH UTIL Menu

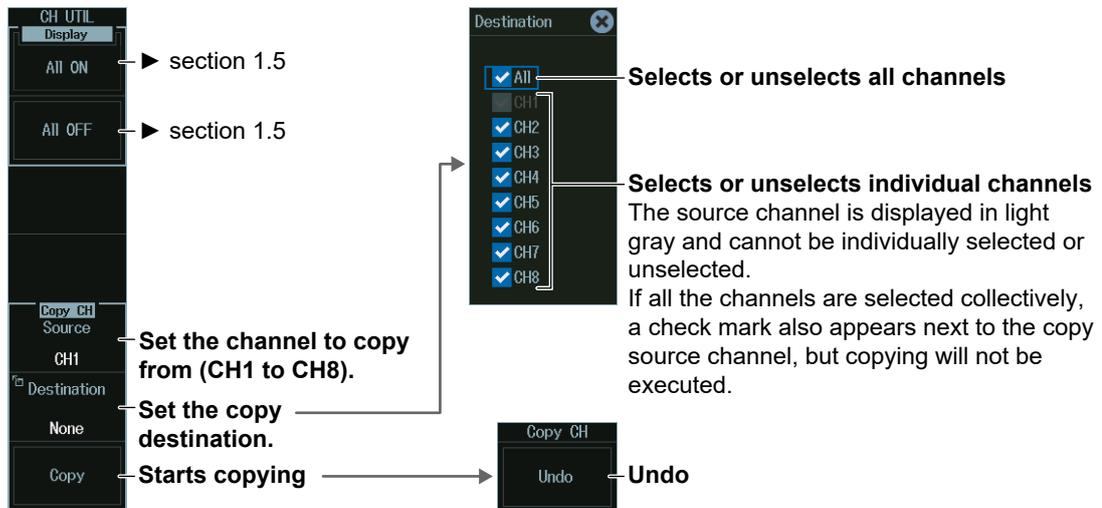
- Copying channel information

▶ “Copying Channel Information (Copy CH)” in the Features Guide

### CH UTIL Menu

Press **CH UTIL** to display the CH UTIL menu.

You can also tap **MENU** (MENU) in the upper left of the screen and select the CH UTIL menu from VERTICAL on the top menu.



### Note

The available channel settings vary depending on the model.

- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4

## 1.3 Setting the Logic (Logic Signal)

This section explains the following settings for the vertical scale for logic signals:

### LOGIC menu

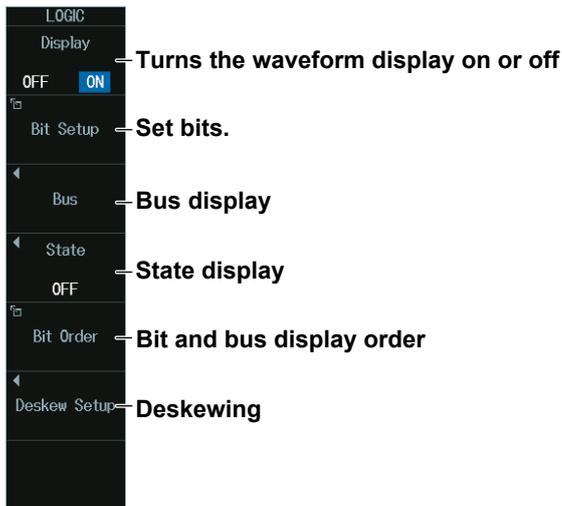
- Turning the waveform display on and off
- Bit settings
  - Turning the bit display on and off
  - Label name, threshold level, and noise rejection
- Bus display
  - Turning the bus display on and off
  - Bus bit assignment, label name, and format
- Bit and bus display order
- State display
  - Turning the state display on and off
  - Clock source; clock source polarity, detection level, and hysteresis; and state assignment
- Deskewing

► [“Vertical Axis \(Logic Signal\)” in the Features Guide](#)

### LOGIC Menu

Press **LOGIC**. The LOGIC key illuminates brightly, and the following menu appears.

- You can also tap the state information display area () at the top of the screen to select the LOGIC menu.
- You can also tap **MENU** () in the upper left of the screen and select the LOGIC menu from VERTICAL on the top menu.



### Note

On the ACQUIRE menu, if you set the record length (Record Length) to the maximum record length, the waveforms of C0 to C7 (LOGIC port C), D0 to D7 (LOGIC port D) cannot be acquired. For details on the ACQUIRE menu, see section 3.1.

### 1.3 Setting the Logic (Logic Signal)

#### Bit Settings (Bit Setup)

Press the **Bit Setup** soft key to display the following menu.

For Logic Probes Other Than the 701989

**Turns the display on or off for all bits**

**Logic input port number**

**Models with the /L32 option**

**Display on/off state and label of each bit**

**Preset threshold levels**  
Selecting a preset automatically sets the threshold level.

**Threshold level**  
If you change the automatically specified value, the preset setting changes to "Userdef."

For the 701989 Logic Probe

- When the Threshold Type is All

**Set the threshold type to All.**

**Turns the display on or off for all bits**

**Logic input port number**

**Models with the /L32 option**

**Display on/off state and label of each bit**

**Preset threshold levels**  
Selecting a preset automatically sets the threshold level.

**Threshold level**  
If you change the automatically specified value, the preset setting changes to "Userdef."

**Noise rejection**  
Select how to apply hysteresis to the threshold level.

- When the Threshold Type is Each

**Set the threshold type to Each.**

**Turns the display on or off for all bits**

**Logic input port number**

**Models with the /L32 option**

Bit Setup
A
B
C
D

Bit Setup		Threshold Type	All	Each
Bit	Name	Threshold	Level	Noise Rejection
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Bit7 A7	CMOS(5V)	2.50V	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Bit6 A6	CMOS(5V)	2.50V	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Bit5 A5	CMOS(5V)	2.50V	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Bit4 A4	CMOS(5V)	2.50V	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Bit3 A3	CMOS(5V)	2.50V	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Bit2 A2	CMOS(5V)	2.50V	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Bit1 A1	CMOS(5V)	2.50V	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Bit0 A0	CMOS(5V)	2.50V	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

**Display on/off state and label of each bit**

**Preset threshold levels**

- Selecting a preset automatically sets the threshold level.
- When the threshold type is Each, set the threshold level for each bit.

**Threshold level**

- If you change the automatically specified value, the preset setting changes to "Userdef."
- When the threshold type is Each, set the threshold level for each bit.

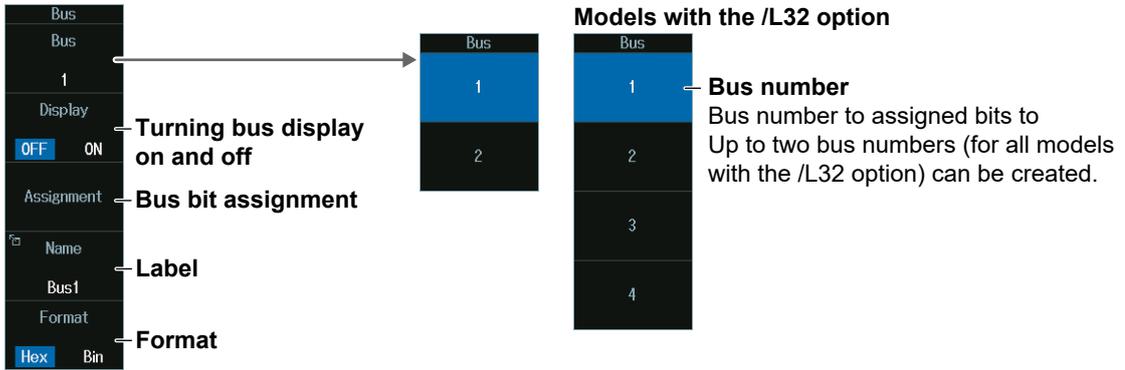
**Noise rejection**  
Select how to apply hysteresis to the threshold level.

**Note**

- For logic probes other than the 701989, the threshold type is All. The setup menu is not displayed.
- Level and Noise Rejection in the bit settings (Bit Setup) are synchronized to those for when the trigger source is set to Logic.  
Noise Rejection can be set when the logic probe is 701989.

### Bus Display (Bus)

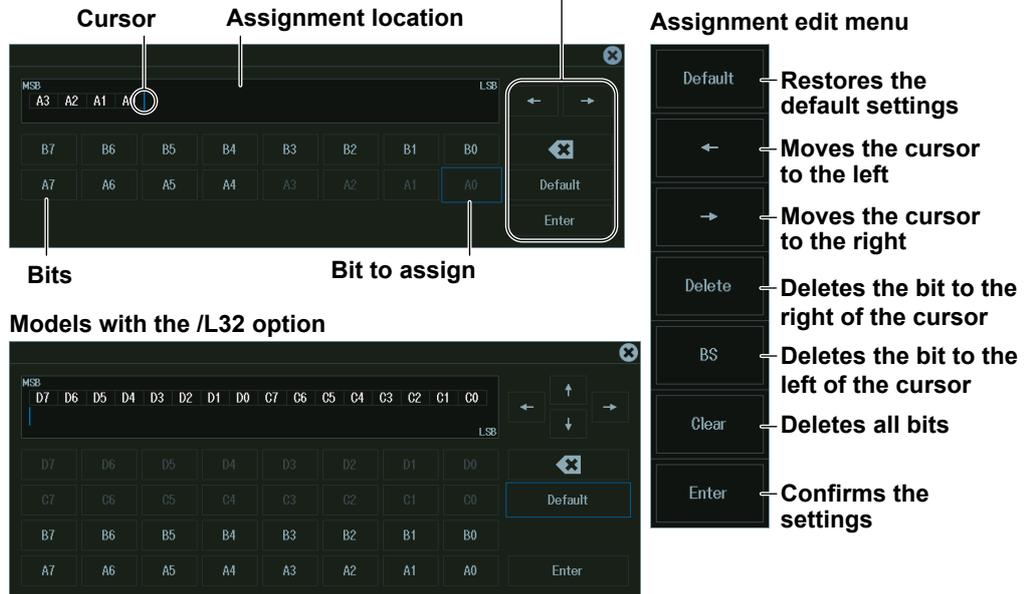
Press the **Bus** soft key to display the following menu.



### Bus Bit Assignments

1. Press the **Assignment** soft key to display the assignment destination edit screen.
2. Press the cursor movement soft keys on the edit menu to move the cursor to the right of the position to assign the bit.
3. Turn the jog shuttle, or move the **SET** key up, down, left, or right to select the bit to assign from the bit group.
4. Press the SET key to assign the selected bit to the left of the cursor position.
5. Press the **ENTER** soft key to confirm the setting.

This is the same as pressing the corresponding soft key on the edit menu.

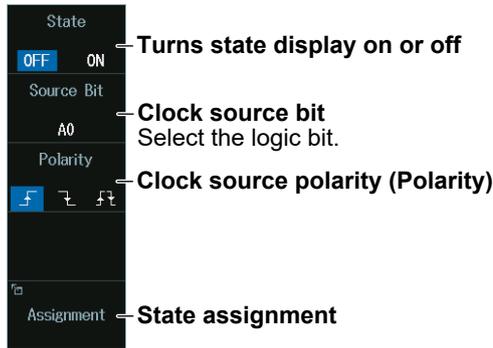


### Note

If you need to change the bit assignments (arrangement) when all bits are assigned to the assignment destination, delete a portion of the bits first, and then edit the bit assignments (arrangement).

### State Display (State)

Press the **State** soft key to display the following menu.



### Note

The following clock source bit display applies to models with the /L32 option.  
C0 to C7 (LOGIC port C), D0 to D7 (LOGIC port D)

### State Assignment

Press the **Assignment** soft key to display the following screen.

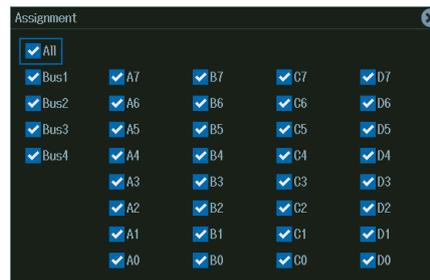
**Turns the display on or off for all bits and the bus**



Turns each each bit on or off

Turns each bus display on or off

**Models with the /L32 option**

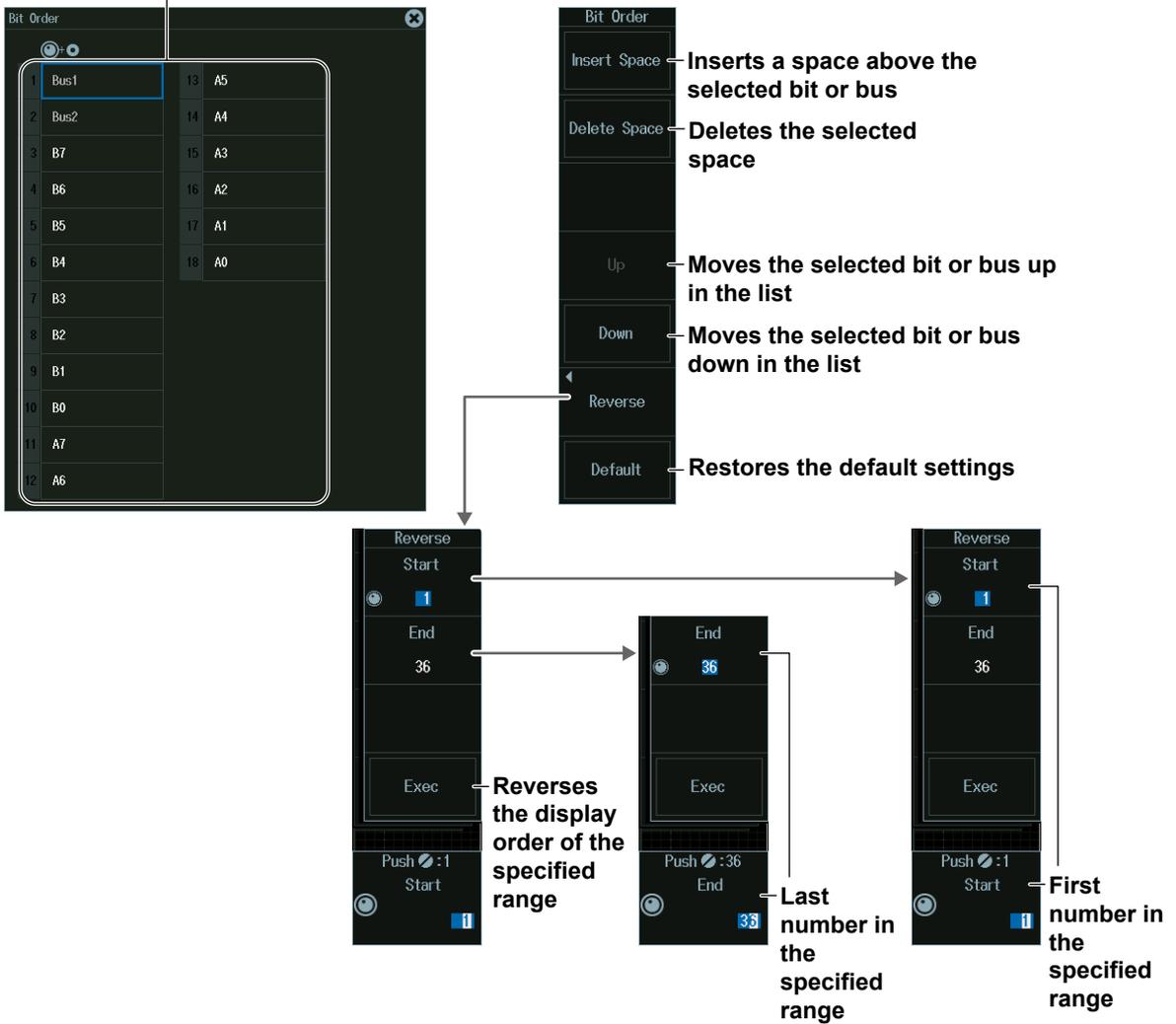


### 1.3 Setting the Logic (Logic Signal)

#### Display Order of Bits and the Buses (Bit Order)

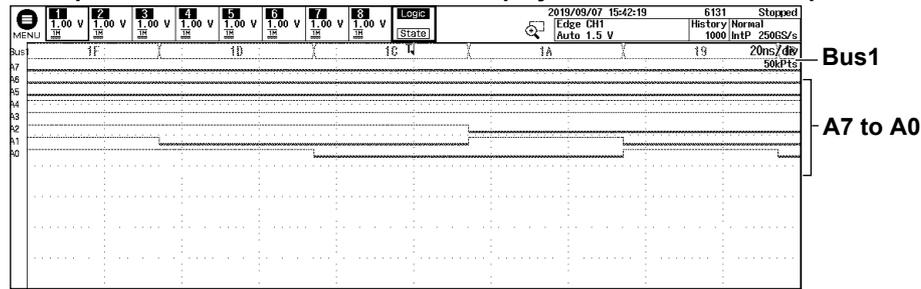
Press the **Bit Order** soft key to display the following menu.

Select a bit or the bus, and edit the display order.



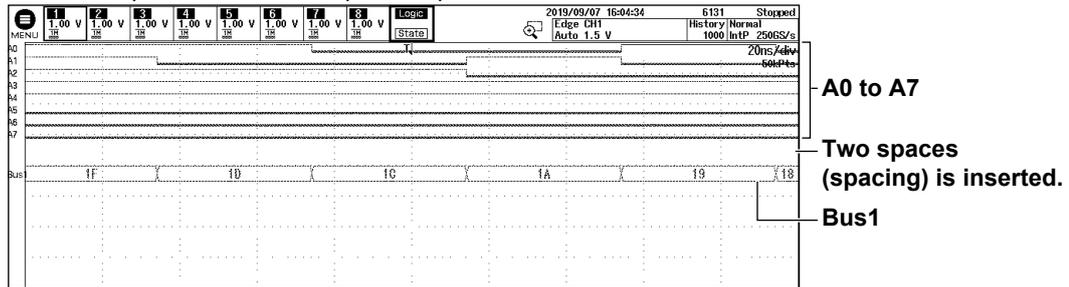
### Bit and Bus Display Order

Example when Bus1→A7→A6 ... A0 are displayed in order from the top



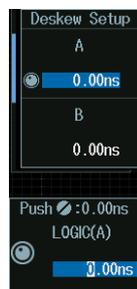
Example when the display order is reversed and a space is inserted

From the top, A0→A1 ... A7→Space→Space→Bus1



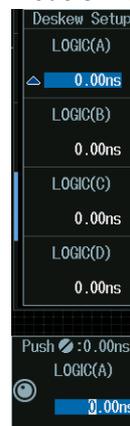
### Deskewing (Deskew)

1. Press the **Deskew Setup** soft key to display the following menu.



Select the logic port to deskew.

Models with the /L32 option

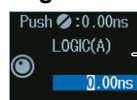


2. Press the soft key corresponding to the logic port you want to deskew.

3. Turn the jog shuttle to set the time offset adjustment (skew).

- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
- Deskewing is performed on all eight bits collectively.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



Deskewing

## 1.4 Setting the Vertical Axis (Analog and Logic Signals)

This section explains the following settings for the vertical scale:

SCALE knob

- Vertical scale (analog signal)
- Display size (logic signal)

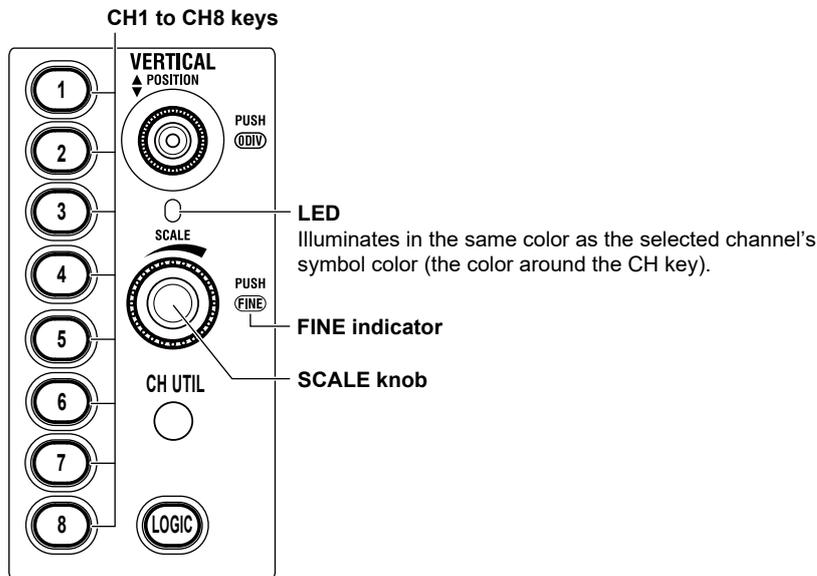
◆ POSITION knob

- Vertical position (analog and logic signals)

► “Display Range (SCALE knob),” “Vertical Scale (SCALE knob),”  
“Vertical Position (POSITION knob)” in the Features Guide

### Vertical Scale (SCALE knob)

1. Press a key from **CH1** to **CH8** to select the channel that you want to set the vertical scale for.
  - You can also tap the channel information or state display area (  ) at the top of the screen to select the channel.
  - The LED between the **SCALE** and ◆ **POSITION** knobs illuminates in the symbol color of the selected channel.
2. Turn the **SCALE** knob to set the vertical scale.  
If you push the **SCALE** knob, the FINE indicator illuminates, and you can set the vertical scale with higher resolution.



#### Note

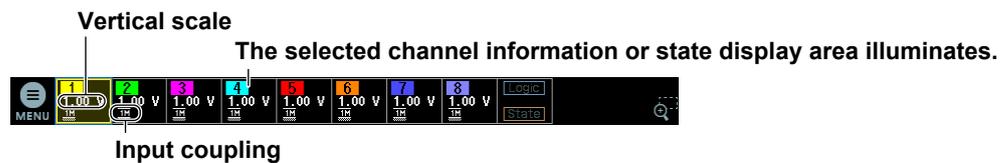
The number of channel keys varies depending on the model.

- The channel keys on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8
- The channel keys on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4

#### Preview

If you change the vertical scale when waveform acquisition is stopped, the waveform is displayed expanded or reduced vertically.

## Vertical Scale



While you control the knob, the vertical scale value is displayed in the corresponding channel information display area. Displayed with the same background color as the symbol color of the selected channel (example of CH1)  
The display disappears after a few seconds when you stop controlling the knob.

Indicates that the input waveform is outside the effective data range (within  $\pm 5$  div of the Main window center).

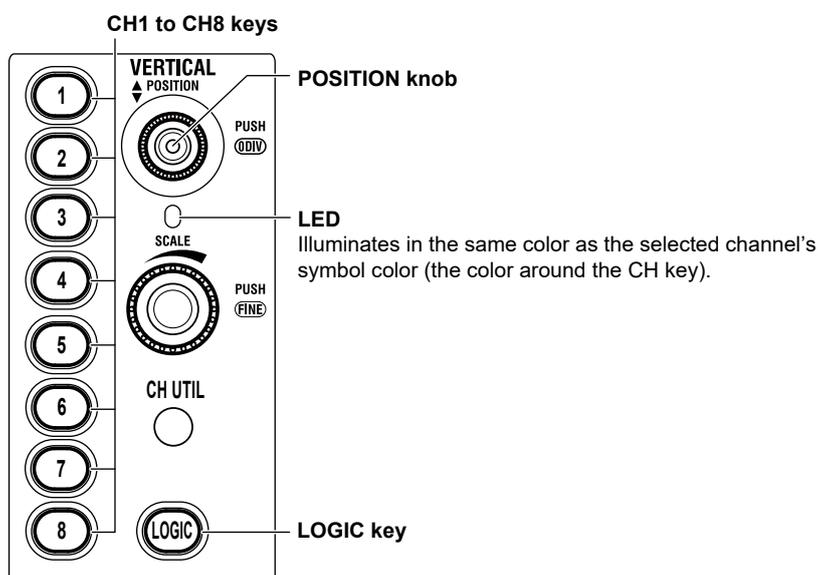


## Display Range (SCALE knob)

1. Press the **LOGIC** key to make the SCALE knob control the LOGIC setting.
  - The LOGIC key illuminates brightly.
  - The LED between the SCALE and  $\blacklozenge$  POSITION knobs illuminates in the same color as the LOGIC symbol color.
2. Turn the **SCALE** knob to set the display size.

## Vertical Position (POSITION knob)

1. Press a key from **CH1** to **CH8** or **LOGIC** to select the channel that you want to set the vertical waveform position for.
  - You can also tap the channel information or state display area ( or ) at the top of the screen to select what the POSITION knob controls.
  - The LED between the **SCALE** and  $\blacklozenge$  **POSITION** knobs illuminates in the symbol color of the selected channel.
2. Turn the  $\blacklozenge$  **POSITION** knob to set the vertical position.  
If the POSITION knob is controlling a channel from CH1 to CH8, pressing POSITION will set the vertical position to 0 div.



## 1.4 Setting the Vertical Scale

---

### Note

The number of channel keys varies depending on the model.

- The channel keys on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8
- The channel keys on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4

### Preview

If you change the vertical position when waveform acquisition is stopped, the waveform display position changes.

---

### Vertical Channel Position (Position)



While you control the knob, the vertical waveform position value is displayed in the corresponding channel information display area. Displayed with the same background color as the symbol color of the selected channel (example of CH1)  
The display disappears after a few seconds when you stop controlling the knob.

Indicates that the input waveform is outside the effective data range (within  $\pm 5$  div of the Main window center) This also appears when the input waveform moves outside the range as a result of changing the vertical scale.



## 1.5 All ON/All OFF

You can collectively show or hide all the analog signal input channel waveforms.

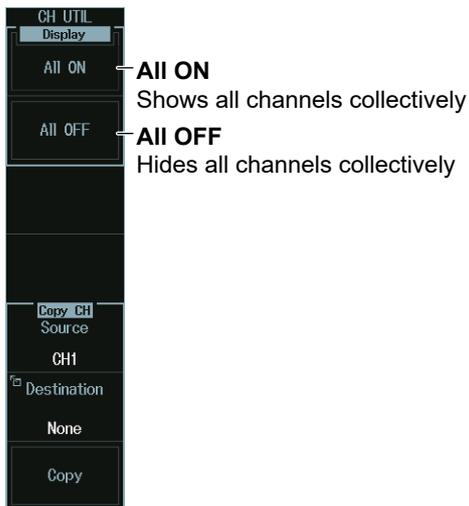
- CH UTIL Menu
- All ON/All OFF

► [“All ON/All OFF \(Display\)” in the Features Guide](#)

### CH UTIL Menu

Press **CH UTIL** to display the CH UTIL menu.

You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the CH UTIL menu from VERTICAL on the top menu.



### Note

Logic signals cannot be collectively shown or hidden.

## 1.6 Setting the Horizontal Scale (Time Scale)

This section explains the following settings for the horizontal scale (time scale):

TIME/DIV Knob

- Horizontal scale (time scale) sensitivity

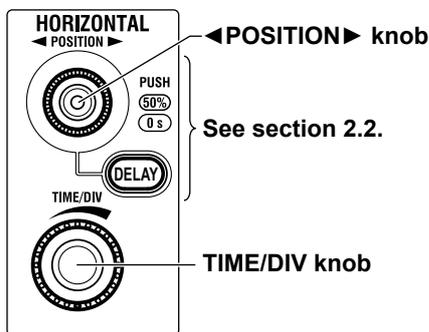
◀POSITION▶ knob

See section 2.2.

► “Time Scale (TIME/DIV knob)” in the Features Guide

### Horizontal Scale (Time Scale) Sensitivity (TIME/DIV knob)

Turn the **TIME/DIV** knob to set the horizontal scale sensitivity.



While you control the knob, the time scale value and display record length are displayed in the upper right of the screen. The display disappears after a few seconds when you stop controlling the knob.

#### ◀POSITION▶ Knob

Turn the ◀ POSITION ▶ knob to move the waveforms displayed on the screen horizontally. The trigger position moves along with the waveform.

You can set the trigger position to 50% by pressing the knob.

When waveform acquisition (RUN/STOP) is running, you can turn the ◀ POSITION ▶ knob to move the waveforms horizontally the waveform display is being updated. For details on the trigger position, see section 2.2.

## 2.1 Setting the Trigger Mode and Trigger Hold-off Time

This section explains the following settings for updating the displayed waveform:

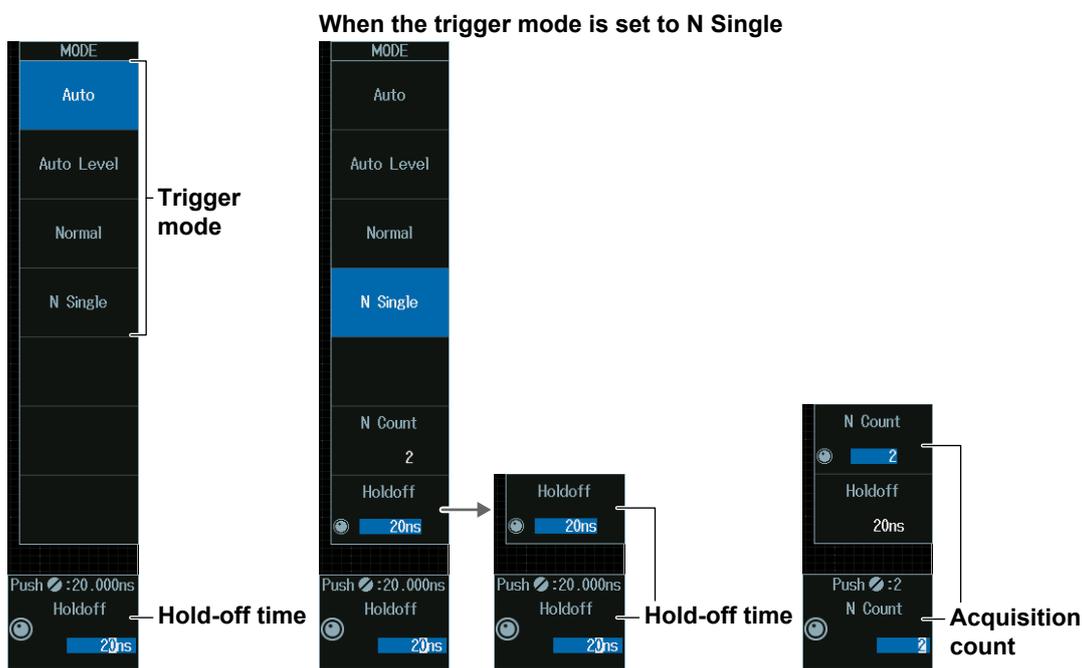
- Trigger mode, acquisition count
- Hold-off time

► “Trigger Mode (Trigger Mode),” “Trigger Hold-off (Holdoff)” in the Features Guide

### MODE Menu

Press **MODE** to display the following menu.

You can also tap **MENU** (Ⓜ) in the upper left of the screen and select the MODE menu from TRIGGER on the top menu that is displayed.



### Trigger Mode

<b>Auto</b>	If the trigger conditions are met within a timeout period, <sup>1</sup> the instrument updates the displayed waveforms on each trigger occurrence. If not, this instrument automatically updates the displayed waveforms. If the time axis is set to a value that would cause the display to switch to roll mode, roll mode display will be enabled. <sup>2</sup>
<b>Auto Level</b>	If a trigger occurs before a timeout, <sup>1</sup> the instrument updates the waveform in the same way that it does in Auto mode. If a trigger does not occur before a timeout, the instrument automatically changes the trigger level to the center value of the trigger source amplitude, triggers on that value, and updates the displayed waveform. If the time axis is set to a value that would cause the display to switch to roll mode, roll mode display will be enabled. <sup>2</sup>
<b>Normal</b>	The instrument updates the waveform display only when the trigger conditions are met.
<b>N Single</b>	The instrument acquires signals each time the trigger conditions are met until a specified number of signals have been acquired, stops acquisition, and displays all of the acquired signals.

1 The timeout period is 100 ms or the time corresponding to 10 divisions on the time axis, whichever is longer.

2 Waveforms are displayed so that they flow from the right of the screen to the left.

### Note

Press any of the trigger mode soft keys to execute waveform acquisition in the selected trigger mode.

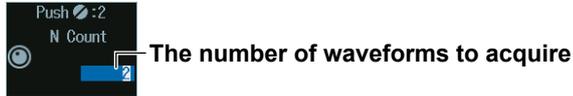
#### Single Mode

There is also a Single trigger mode in which the instrument updates the displayed waveform once and stops signal acquisition when the trigger conditions are met. Press SINGLE on the front panel to execute Single Mode waveform acquisition.

### Acquisition Count (N Count)

1. Press the **N Count** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the acquisition count.  
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



### Hold-off Time (Holdoff)

1. Press the **Holdoff** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the hold-off time.  
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



## 2.2 Setting the Trigger Position and Trigger Delay

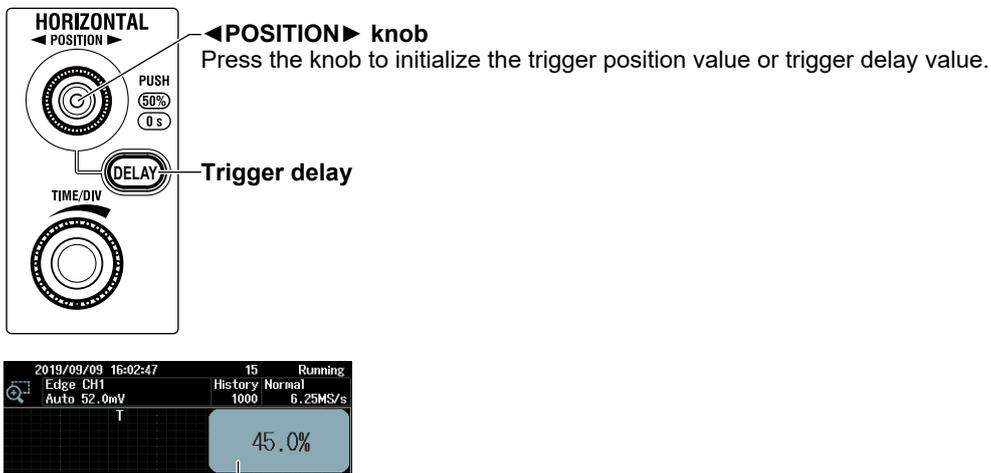
This section explains the following settings for updating the displayed waveform:

- Trigger position
- Trigger delay
- Turning delay cancel on and off

► “Trigger Position (POSITION Knob),” “Trigger Delay (DELAY),”  
“Delay Cancel (Delay Cancel),” in the Features Guide

### Trigger Position (◀POSITION▶ knob)

1. Turn the ◀POSITION▶ knob to set the trigger position.  
The specified trigger position is shown at the top of the screen while you control the knob. The display disappears after a few seconds when you stop controlling the knob.



You can set the trigger position even when waveforms are not being acquired.

### Trigger Delay (DELAY)

1. Press **DELAY**. The DELAY key illuminates.
2. Turn the ◀POSITION▶ knob to set the trigger delay.  
The specified trigger delay is shown at the top of the screen while you control the knob. The display disappears after a few seconds when you stop controlling the knob.



You can set the trigger delay even when waveforms are not being acquired.

3. Press the **DELAY** key again. The DELAY key turns off, and you can set the trigger position.

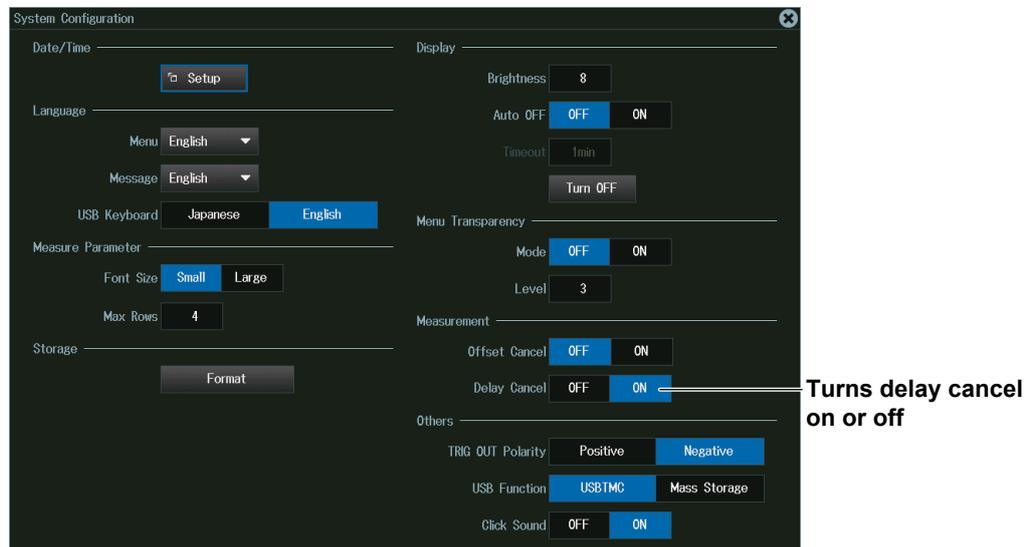
## 2.2 Setting the Trigger Position and Trigger Delay

---

### Delay Cancel (Delay Cancel)

Press **UTILITY** and then press the **System Configuration** soft key to display the following menu.

You can also tap **MENU** (  ) in the upper left of the screen and select the UTILITY menu from UTILITY on the top menu.



### Note

---

The delay value is retained even if you change the horizontal scale sensitivity by turning the TIME/DIV knob.

---

### Trigger Delay Cancel

You can select whether or not to apply the specified trigger delay to the time measurement values.

**ON:** The instrument measures time values by setting the trigger position to 0 s (the delay is not applied to time measurement values).

**OFF:** The instrument measures time values by setting the trigger point to 0 s (the delay is applied to time measurement values).

## 2.3 Triggering on an Edge Trigger

This section explains the following settings for triggering on trigger source edges:

- Trigger source  
Trigger slope, HF rejection, noise rejection,  
level for detecting trigger source edges, source bit
  - Probe attenuation
  - Input range
- ▶ “Edge Trigger [EDGE],” “Trigger Source (Source),” “Trigger Slope (Slope/Polarity),” “Trigger Level (Level),” “HF Rejection (HF Rejection),” “Noise Rejection (Noise Rejection)” in the Features Guide

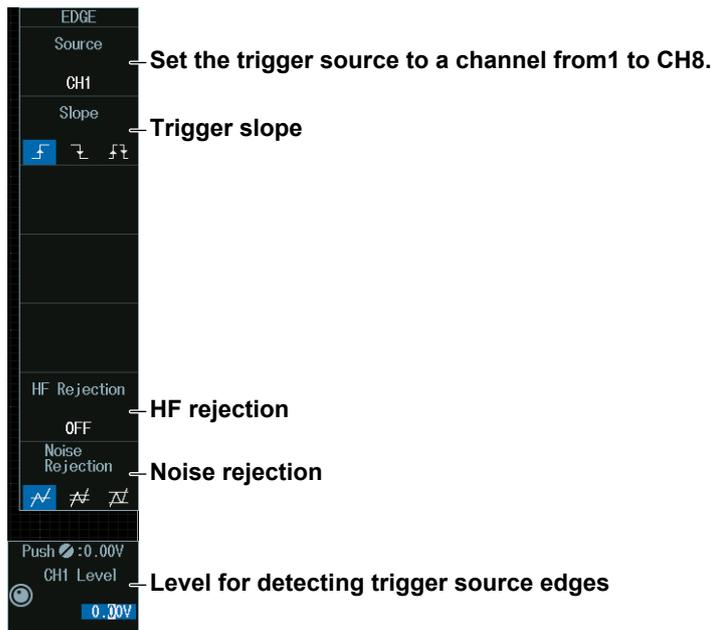
### EDGE Menu

Press **EDGE**. The menu that appears varies depending on the specified trigger source.

You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the EDGE menu from TRIGGER on the top menu that is displayed.

#### When the Trigger Source Is a Channel from CH1 to CH8

Select the source from CH1 to CH8 when using a signal received through an analog input terminal on the front panel as a trigger source.



### Note

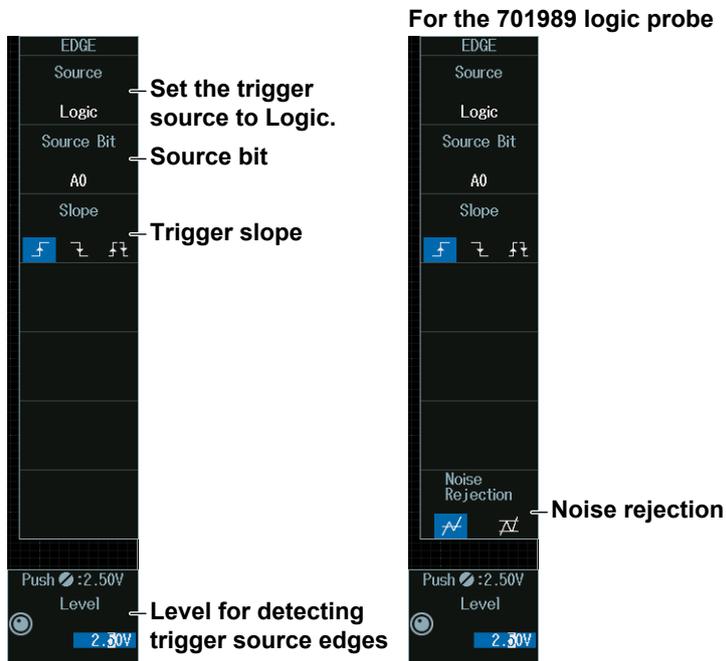
The available trigger source settings vary depending on the model.

- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4

## 2.3 Triggering on an Edge Trigger

### When the Trigger Source Is Logic

Set the source to Logic when using a signal received through a LOGIC signal input port on the front panel as a trigger source. If you select Logic, you need to set the source bit (A0 to A7, B0 to B7, C0 to C7, or D0 to D7).

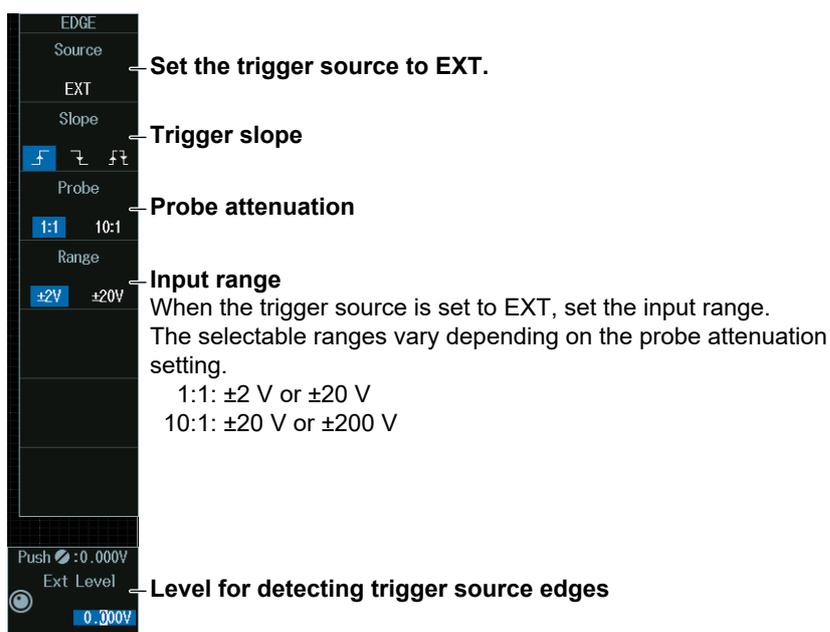


### Note

The following source bit display applies to models with the /L32 option.  
C0 to C7 (LOGIC port C), D0 to D7 (LOGIC port D)

### When the Trigger Source Is EXT (External trigger signal)

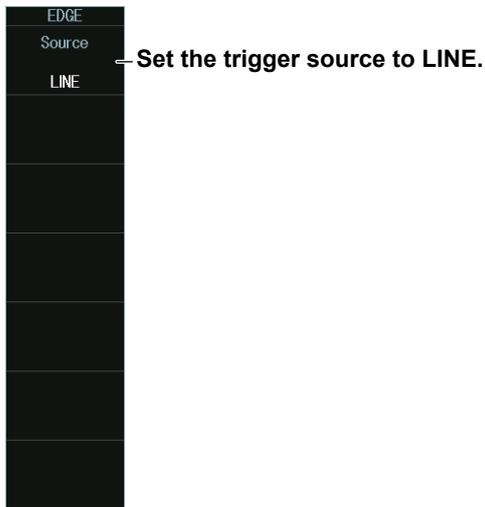
Set the source to EXT when using an external signal received through the external trigger input terminal (TRIGGER IN) on the rear panel as a trigger source.



**When the Trigger Source Is LINE**

Set the source to LINE when using the instrument's power source as a trigger source.

The instrument only triggers on the rising edge.

**Level for Detecting Trigger Source Edges (CH Level, Level, Ext Level)**

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level for detecting trigger source edges.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

**Jog shuttle setting menu****When the trigger source is set to CH1 to CH8****When the trigger source is LOGIC****Level**

The level is displayed in unit of bits or pods depending on the connected logic probe and logic probe settings.

## 2.4 Triggering on the OR of Multiple Edge Triggers

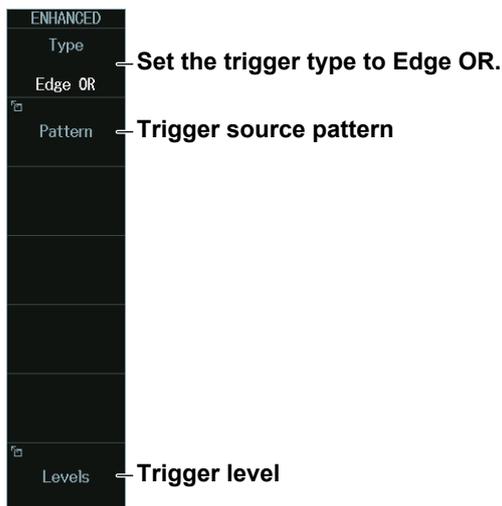
This section explains the following settings for triggering on the logical OR of multiple edge triggers:

- Trigger source pattern  
Trigger source, trigger slope
- Trigger level  
Level for detecting trigger source edges, HF rejection, noise rejection

► “Edge OR Trigger [ENHANCED],” “Noise Rejection (Noise Rejection)”  
in the Features Guide

### ENHANCED Edge OR Menu

1. Press **ENHANCED** to display the ENHANCED menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the ENHANCED menu from TRIGGER on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. From the setup menu that appears, select **Edge OR** to display the following menu.



### Trigger Source Pattern (Pattern)

Press the **Pattern** soft key to display the following menu.

Selecting this check box selects all the channels.

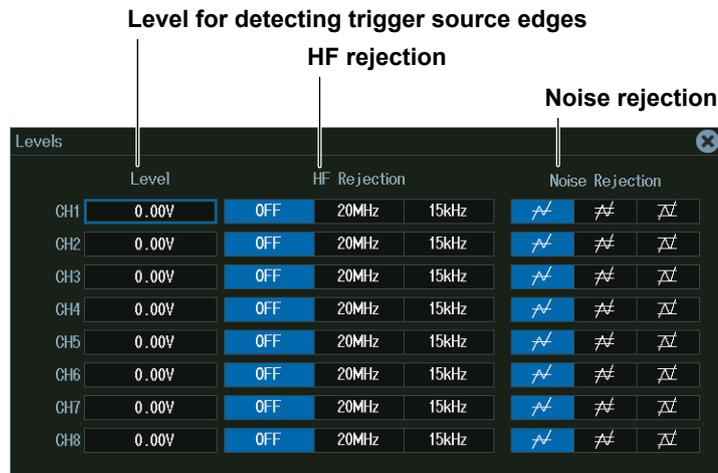


Trigger slope

Select the check boxes of the channels to be used as the trigger sources.

## Trigger Levels (Levels)

Press the **Levels** soft key to display the following menu.



### Note

The available channel settings vary depending on the model.

- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4

## 2.5 Triggering on Multiple Input Patterns

This section explains the following settings for triggering on multiple input patterns:

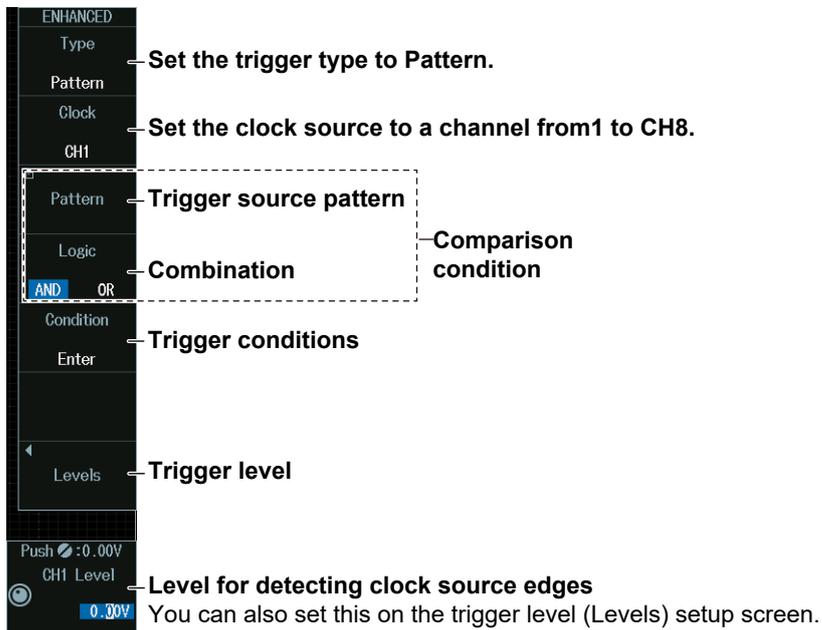
- Clock source  
Source bit
- Comparison condition  
Trigger source pattern, combination
- Trigger conditions
- Time conditions, reference times
- Trigger level  
Level for detecting trigger source edges, HF rejection, noise rejection
- Level for detecting clock source edges

► “Pattern Trigger [ENHANCED],” “HF Rejection (HF Rejection),”  
“Noise Rejection (Noise Rejection)” in the Features Guide

### ENHANCED Pattern Menu

1. Press **ENHANCED** to display the ENHANCED menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (ⓘ) in the upper left of the screen and select the ENHANCED menu from TRIGGER on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. From the setup menu that appears, select **Pattern** to display the following menu.

When the Clock Source Is a Channel from CH1 to CH8



### Note

The available channel settings vary depending on the model.

- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4

When the Clock Source Is Logic

ENHANCED

- Type — Set the trigger type to Pattern.
- Pattern
- Clock — Set the clock source to Logic.
- Logic
- Source Bit — Source bit
- A0
- Pattern — Trigger source pattern
- Logic — Combination
- AND OR — Comparison condition
- Condition — Trigger conditions
- Enter
- Levels — Trigger level
- Levels
- Push : 2.50V
- Level — Level for detecting clock source edges
- 2.30V — You can also set this on the trigger level (Levels) setup screen.

No Clock Source (None)

ENHANCED

- Type — Set the trigger type to Pattern.
- Pattern
- Clock — Set the clock source to None
- None
- Pattern — Trigger source pattern
- Logic — Combination
- AND OR — Comparison condition
- Condition — Trigger conditions
- Enter
- Levels — Trigger level
- Levels

When the trigger condition is True or False

- Condition
- True
- Time Qualification
- More than — Time condition
- Levels
- Levels
- Push : 4.000ns
- Time — Reference time
- 4ns

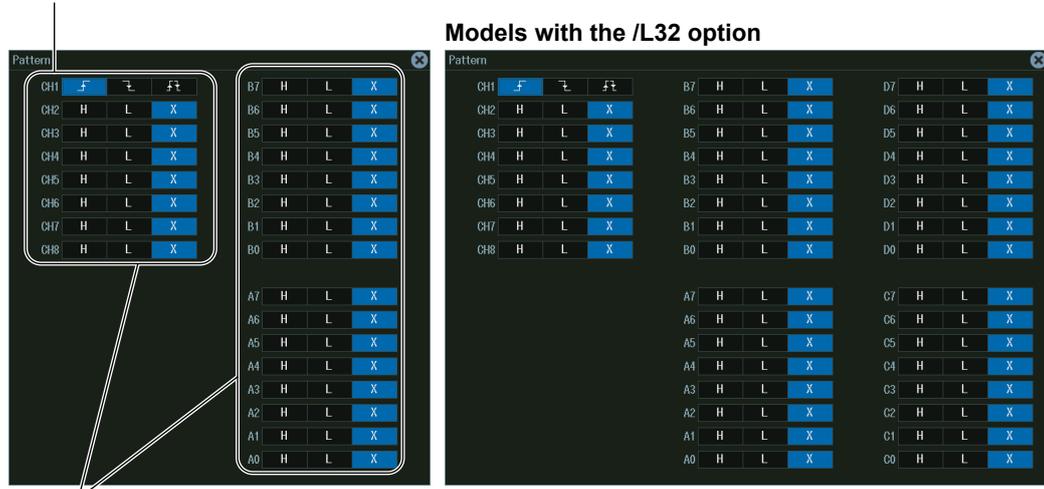
- More than
- Less than
- Inside
- Outside
- Timeout

### Trigger Source Pattern (Pattern)

Press the **Pattern** soft key to display the following menu.

When the Clock Source Is a Channel from CH1 to CH8 or Logic

Set the slope of the signal set as the clock source



Set the pattern of the trigger source (signal other than the clock source).

#### Note

- The available channel settings vary depending on the model.
- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4
- You cannot set a pattern to a signal that is set as the clock source.
- The following clock source bit display applies to models with the /L32 option.  
C0 to C7 (LOGIC port C), D0 to D7 (LOGIC port D)

#### No Clock Source

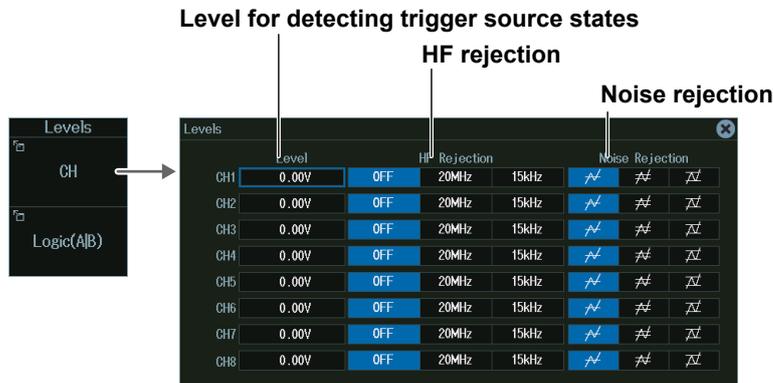
The same menu appears as that shown above for when the clock source is a channel from CH1 to CH8 or Logic.

Set the pattern for all trigger sources (all signals from CH1 to CH8 and Logic).

### Trigger Levels (Levels)

When the Trigger Source Is Set to CH1 to CH8

Press the **Levels** soft key and then the **CH** soft key to display the following menu.



**Note**

- The available channel settings vary depending on the model.
- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8
  - The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4

**When the Trigger Source Is Logic (Example for LOGIC port A)**

Press the **Levels** soft key and then the **Logic(A|B)** soft key to display the following menu.

**For the 701989 Logic Probe**

- When the Threshold Type is All
- When the Threshold Type is Each

**Threshold level**  
If you change the automatically specified value, the preset setting changes to "Userdef."

**Preset threshold levels**  
Selecting a preset automatically sets the threshold level.

**Noise rejection**

**Set the threshold type to All.**

**Set the threshold type to Each.**

**For Logic Probes Other Than the 701989**

**Threshold level**  
If you change the automatically specified value, the preset setting changes to "Userdef."

**Preset threshold levels**  
Selecting a preset automatically sets the threshold level.

## 2.5 Triggering on Multiple Input Patterns

### Note

The following clock source bit display applies to models with the /L32 option.  
C0 to C7 (LOGIC port C), D0 to D7 (LOGIC port D)

### Level for Detecting Clock Source Edges (CH Level, Level)

1. Press the **CH Level** or **Level** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level for detecting clock source edges.  
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu

When the trigger source is set to CH1 to CH8



When the trigger source is LOGIC



### Time Conditions (Time Qualification) and Reference Times (Time, Time1, Time2) (When clock source is none (None) and the trigger condition is True or False)

1. Press the **Time Qualification** soft key to set the time conditions.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the reference times.  
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu

When the time condition is More than or Less than



When the time condition is Inside



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between reference time 1 and reference time 2.

### Satisfaction of Conditions

Set what kind of relationship must be established between Comparison condition achievement time and the specified reference times (Time, Time1, Time2) for the instrument to trigger.

<b>More than</b>	When Comparison condition achievement time is longer than the specified reference time
<b>Less than</b>	When Comparison condition achievement time is shorter than the specified reference time
<b>Inside</b>	When Comparison condition achievement time is longer than reference time Time1 but shorter than reference time Time2.
<b>Outside</b>	When Comparison condition achievement time is shorter than reference time Time1 or longer than reference time Time2.

For details on the trigger points when the time condition is met, see chapter 4, "Trigger" in the Features Guide (IM DLM5058-01EN).

## 2.6 Triggering on a Pulse Width Trigger

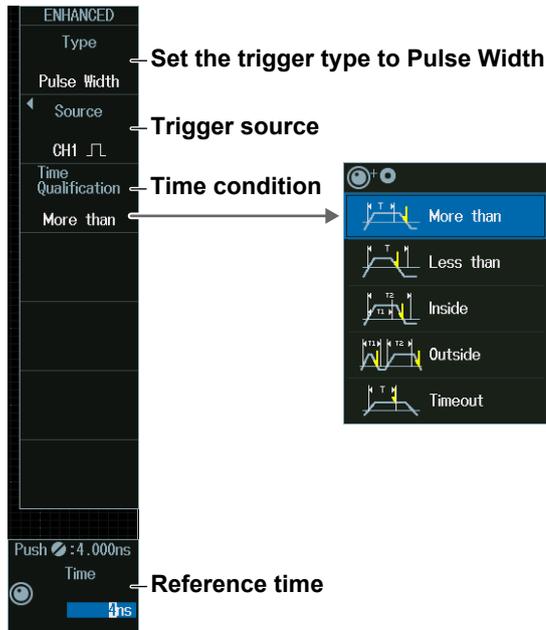
This section explains the following settings for triggering on pulse width:

- Trigger source  
Polarity, HF rejection, noise rejection, source bit, level for detecting trigger source edges
- Time conditions, reference times

► “Pulse Width Trigger [ENHANCED],” “HF Rejection (HF Rejection),”  
“Noise Rejection (Noise Rejection)” in the Features Guide

### ENHANCED Pulse Width Menu

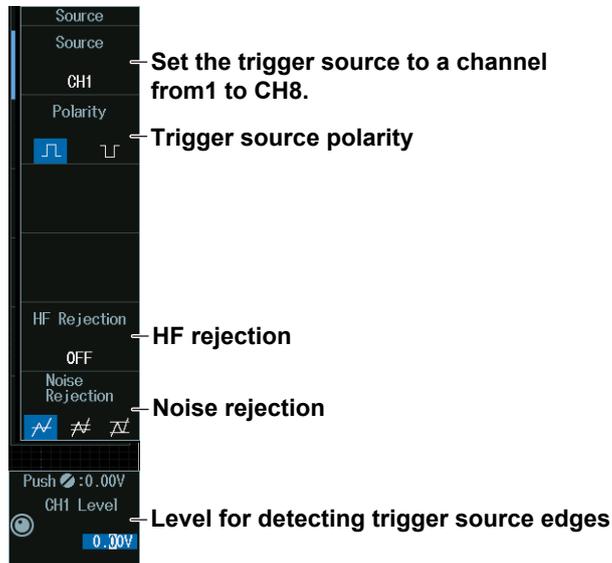
1. Press **ENHANCED** to display the ENHANCED menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (MENU) in the upper left of the screen and select the ENHANCED menu from TRIGGER on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. From the setup menu that appears, select **Pulse Width** to display the following menu.



### Trigger Source (Source)

Press the **Source** soft key to display the following menu.

#### When the Trigger Source Is a Channel from CH1 to CH8

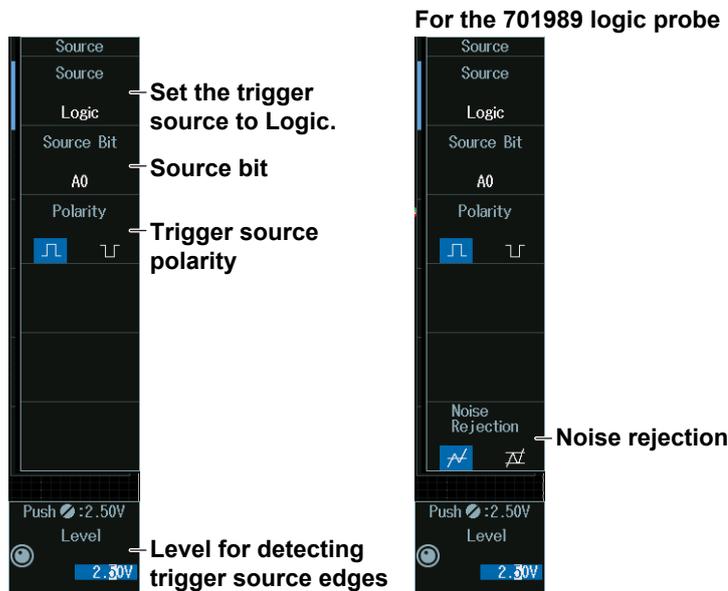


#### Note

The available channel settings vary depending on the model.

- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4

#### When the Trigger Source Is Logic



#### Note

The following source bit display applies to models with the /L32 option.  
C0 to C7 (LOGIC port C), D0 to D7 (LOGIC port D)

## Level for Detecting Trigger Source Edges (CH Level, Level)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level for detecting trigger source edges.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu

When the trigger source is set to CH1 to CH8



When the trigger source is LOGIC



### Level

The level is displayed in unit of bits or pods depending on the connected logic probe and logic probe settings.

## Time Conditions (Time Qualification) and Reference Times (Time, Time1, Time2)

1. Press the **Time Qualification** soft key to set the time conditions.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the reference times.  
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu

When the time condition is More than, Less than, or Timeout



When the time condition is Inside



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between reference time 1 and reference time 2.

### Satisfaction of Conditions

Set what kind of relationship must be established between the trigger source's pulse width and the specified reference times (Time, Time1, Time2) for the instrument to trigger.

<b>More than</b>	When the pulse width is longer than the specified reference time
<b>Less than</b>	When the pulse width is shorter than the specified reference time
<b>Inside</b>	When the pulse width is longer than Time1 but shorter than Time2
<b>Outside</b>	When the pulse width is shorter than Time1 or longer than Time2
<b>Timeout</b>	When the pulse width reaches the specified reference time

For details on the trigger points when the time condition is met, see chapter 4, "Trigger" in the Features Guide (IM DLM5058-01EN). When Timeout is selected, the instrument triggers when a timeout occurs.

## 2.7 Triggering on Rise Times and Fall Times

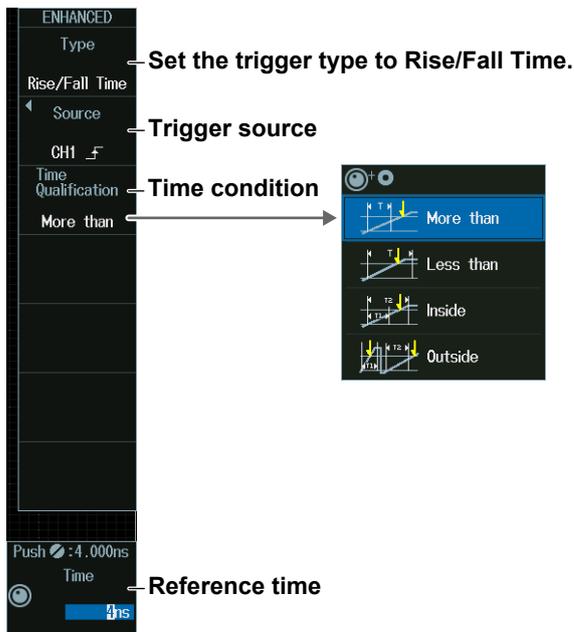
This section explains the following settings for triggering on rise times and fall times:

- Trigger source  
Trigger slope, HF rejection, level for detecting trigger source edges
- Time conditions, reference times

► **“Rise/Fall Time Trigger [ENHANCED],” “HF Rejection (HF Rejection)” in the Features Guide**

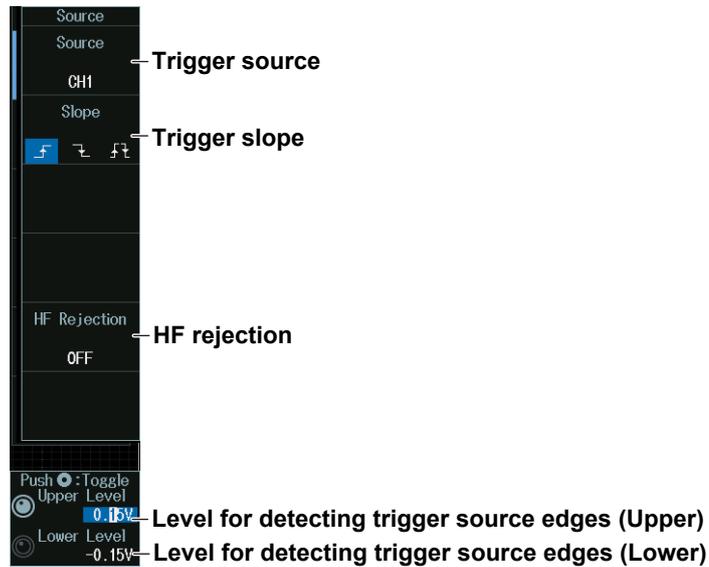
### ENHANCED Rise/Fall Time Menu

1. Press **ENHANCED** to display the ENHANCED menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (MENU) in the upper left of the screen and select the ENHANCED menu from TRIGGER on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. From the setup menu that appears, select **Rise/Fall Time** to display the following menu.



## Trigger Source (Source)

Press the **Source** soft key to display the following menu.



### Note

The available trigger source settings vary depending on the model.

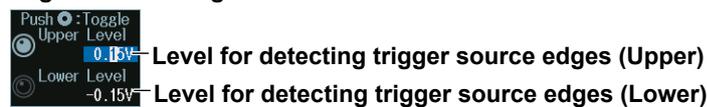
- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4

## Level for Detecting Trigger Source Edges (Upper Level, Lower Level)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level for detecting trigger source edges.

- Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between Upper Level and Lower Level.
- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu



## Time Conditions (Time Qualification) and Reference Times (Time, Time1, Time2)

1. Press the **Time Qualification** soft key to set the time conditions.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the reference times.  
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu

#### When the time condition is More than or Less than



#### When the time condition is Inside



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between reference time 1 and reference time 2.

### Satisfaction of Conditions

Set what kind of relationship must be established between the trigger source's rise or fall times and the specified reference times (Time, Time1, Time2) for the instrument to trigger.

<b>More than</b>	When the rise time or fall time is longer than the specified reference time
<b>Less than</b>	When the rise time or fall time is shorter than the specified reference time
<b>Inside</b>	When the rise time or fall time is longer than reference time Time1 but shorter than reference time Time2.
<b>Outside</b>	When the rise time or fall time is shorter than reference time Time1 or longer than reference time Time2.

For details on the trigger points when the time condition is met, see chapter 4, "Trigger" in the Features Guide (IM DLM5058-01EN).

## 2.8 Triggering on Runt Signals

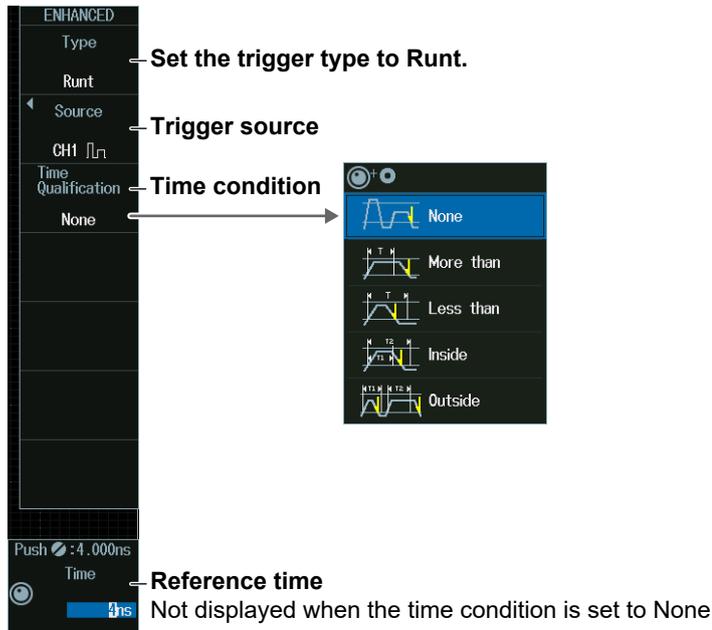
This section explains the following settings for triggering on runt signals:

- Trigger source  
Trigger source polarity, HF rejection, noise rejection,  
level for detecting trigger source edges
- Time conditions, reference times

▶ “Runt Trigger [ENHANCED],” “HF Rejection (HF Rejection),”  
“Noise Rejection (Noise Rejection)” in the Features Guide

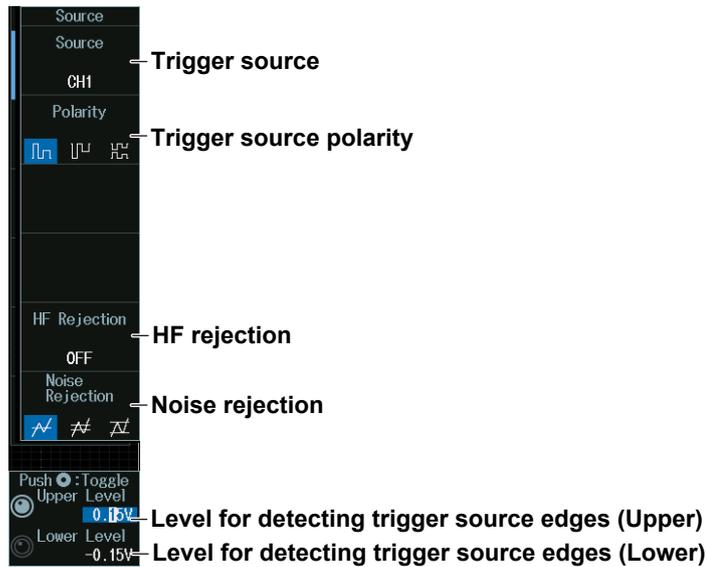
### ENHANCED Runt Menu

1. Press **ENHANCED** to display the ENHANCED menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (MENU) in the upper left of the screen and select the ENHANCED menu from TRIGGER on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. From the setup menu that appears, select **Runt** to display the following menu.



### Trigger Source (Source)

Press the **Source** soft key to display the following menu.



#### Note

---

The available trigger source settings vary depending on the model.

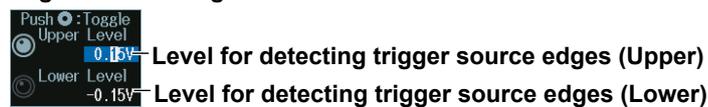
- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8
  - The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4
- 

### Level for Detecting Trigger Source Edges (Upper Level, Lower Level)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level for detecting trigger source edges.

- Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between Upper Level and Lower Level.
- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



## Time Conditions (Time Qualification) and Reference Times (Time, Time1, Time2)

1. Press the **Time Qualification** soft key to set the time conditions.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the reference times.  
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu

#### When the time condition is More than or Less



#### When the time condition is Inside



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between reference time 1 and reference time 2.

### Satisfaction of Conditions

Set what kind of relationship must be established between the runt signal's pulse width and the specified reference times (Time, Time1, Time2) for the instrument to trigger.

<b>None</b>	Without a time condition
<b>More than</b>	When the runt signal's pulse width is longer than the specified reference time
<b>Less than</b>	When the runt signal's pulse width is shorter than the specified reference time
<b>Inside</b>	When the runt signal's pulse width is longer than Time1 but shorter than Time2
<b>Outside</b>	When the runt signal's pulse width is shorter than Time1 or longer than Time2

For details on the trigger points when the time condition is met, see chapter 4, "Trigger" in the Features Guide (IM DLM5058-01EN).

## 2.9 Triggering on a Timeout Period

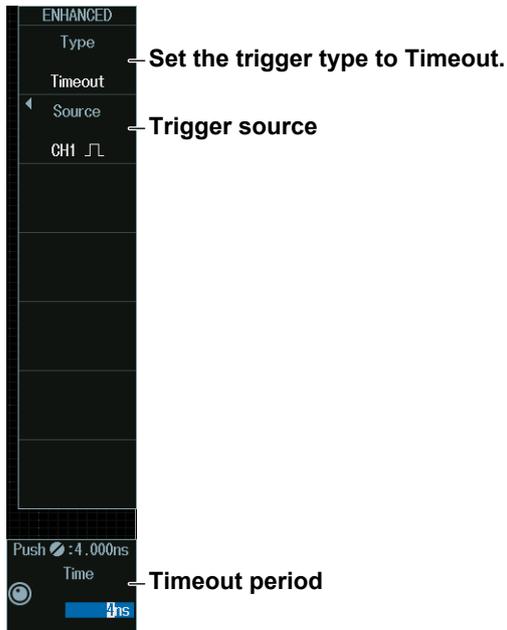
This section explains the following settings for triggering on a timeout period:

- Trigger source
  - Trigger source polarity, HF rejection, noise rejection, and source bit
  - Level used to detect trigger source edges
- Timeout Period

► “Timeout Trigger [ENHANCED],” “HF Rejection (HF Rejection),”  
“Noise Rejection (Noise Rejection)” in the Features Guide

### ENHANCED Timeout Menu

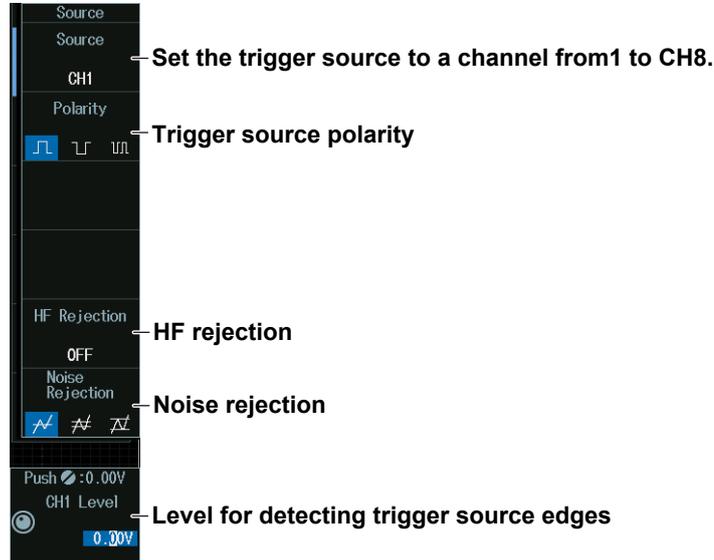
1. Press **ENHANCED** to display the ENHANCED menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (  ) in the upper left of the screen and select the ENHANCED menu from TRIGGER on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. From the setup menu that appears, select **Timeout** to display the following menu.



### Trigger Source (Source)

Press the **Source** soft key. The menu that appears varies depending on the specified trigger source.

#### When the Trigger Source Is a Channel from CH1 to CH8

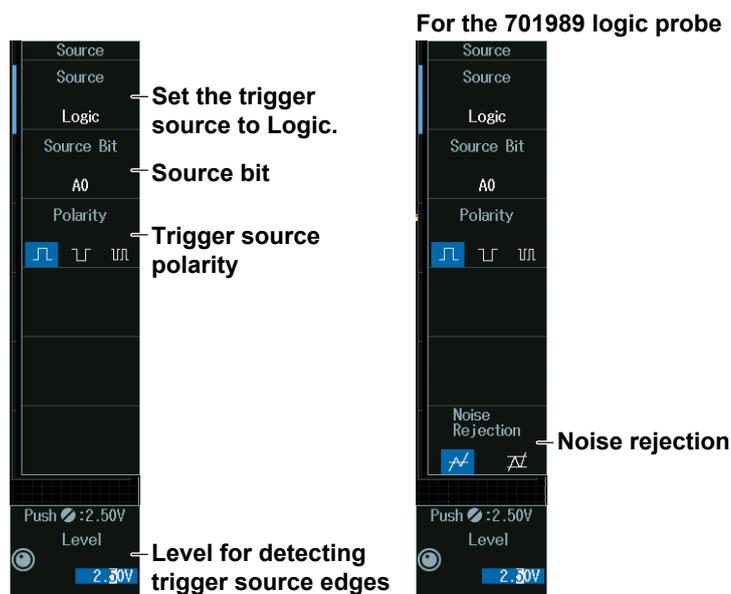


#### Note

The available trigger source settings vary depending on the model.

- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4

#### When the Trigger Source Is Logic



#### Note

The following source bit display applies to models with the /L32 option.  
C0 to C7 (LOGIC port C), D0 to D7 (LOGIC port D)

## 2.9 Triggering on a Timeout Period

---

### Level for Detecting Trigger Source Edges (CH Level, Level)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level for detecting trigger source edges.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu

When the trigger source is set to CH1 to CH8



Level for detecting trigger source edges

When the trigger source is LOGIC



Level for detecting trigger source edges

#### Level

The level is displayed in unit of bits or pods depending on the connected logic probe and logic probe settings.

### Timeout Period (Time)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the timeout period.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



Timeout period

## 2.10 Triggering on a Window Trigger

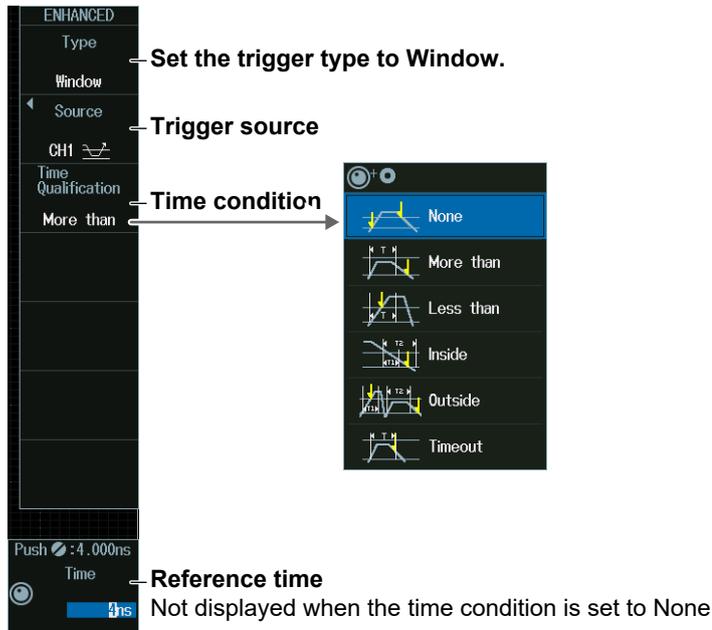
This section explains the following settings for triggering on a window (level range):

- Trigger source  
Trigger source polarity, HF rejection, noise rejection,  
and level range window
- Time conditions, reference times

▶ “Window Trigger [ENHANCED],” “HF Rejection (HF Rejection),”  
“Noise Rejection (Noise Rejection)” in the Features Guide

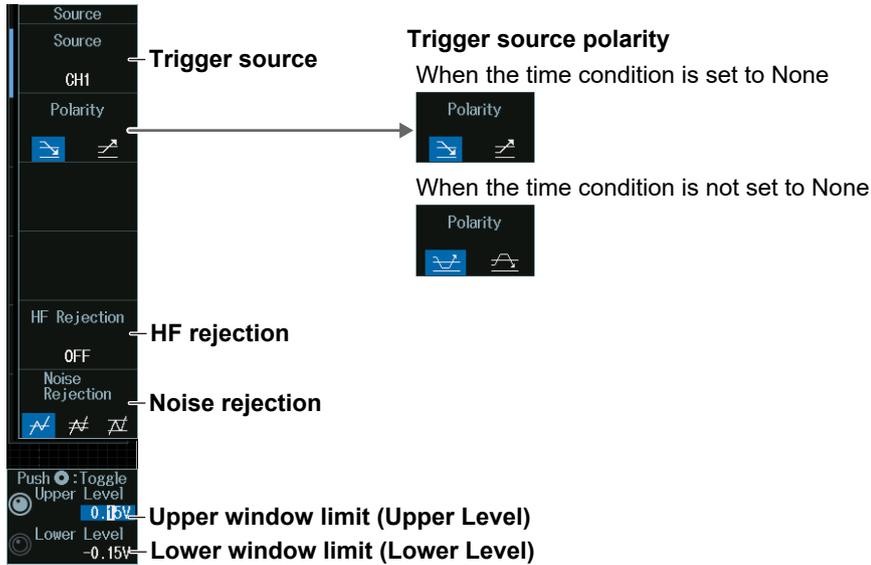
### ENHANCED Window Menu

1. Press **ENHANCED** to display the ENHANCED menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (MENU) in the upper left of the screen and select the ENHANCED menu from TRIGGER on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. From the setup menu that appears, select **Window** to display the following menu.



### Trigger Source (Source)

Press the **Source** soft key to display the following menu.



#### Note

The available trigger source settings vary depending on the model.

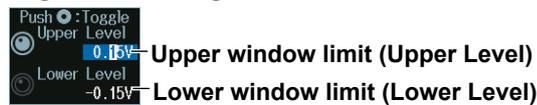
- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4

### Upper and Lower Window Limits (Upper Level, Lower Level)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level range window.

- Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between Upper Level and Lower Level.
- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



## Time Conditions (Time Qualification) and Reference Times (Time, Time1, Time2)

1. Press the **Time Qualification** soft key to set the time conditions.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the reference times.  
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu

#### When the time condition is More than, Less than, or Timeout



#### When the time condition is Inside



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between reference time 1 and reference time 2.

### Satisfaction of Conditions

Set what kind of relationship must be established between the time that the waveform stays inside or outside the window and the specified reference times (Time, Time1, Time2) for the instrument to trigger.

<b>None</b>	Without a time condition (when the waveform enters or leaves the window)
<b>More than</b>	When the time that the waveform stays inside or outside the window is longer than the specified reference time
<b>Less than</b>	When the time that the waveform stays inside or outside the window is shorter than the specified reference time
<b>Inside</b>	When the time that the waveform stays inside or outside the window is longer than reference time Time1 but shorter than reference time Time2.
<b>Outside</b>	When the time that the waveform stays inside or outside the window is shorter than reference time Time1 or longer than reference time Time2.
<b>Timeout</b>	When the time that the waveform stays inside or outside the window reaches the specified reference time

For details on the trigger points when the time condition is met, see chapter 4, “Trigger” in the Features Guide (IM DLM5058-01EN). When Timeout is selected, the instrument triggers when a timeout occurs.

## 2.11 Triggering on the OR of Multiple Window Triggers

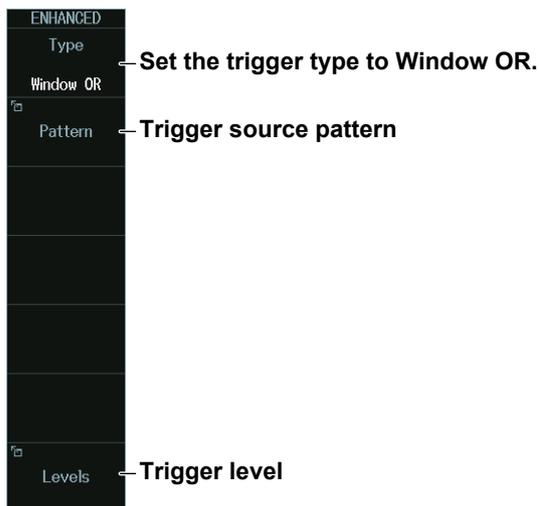
This section explains the following settings for triggering on the logical OR of multiple window triggers (without a time condition):

- Trigger source pattern  
Trigger source, trigger source polarity
- Trigger level  
Level range window, HF rejection, noise rejection

► “Window OR Trigger [ENHANCED],” “HF Rejection (HF Rejection),”  
“Noise Rejection (Noise Rejection)” in the Features Guide

### ENHANCED Window OR Menu

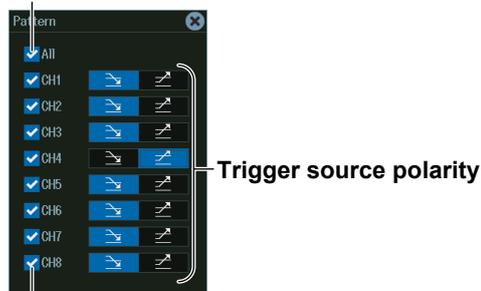
1. Press **ENHANCED** to display the ENHANCED menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the ENHANCED menu from TRIGGER on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. From the setup menu that appears, select **Window OR** to display the following menu.



### Trigger Source Pattern (Pattern)

Press the **Pattern** soft key to display the following menu.

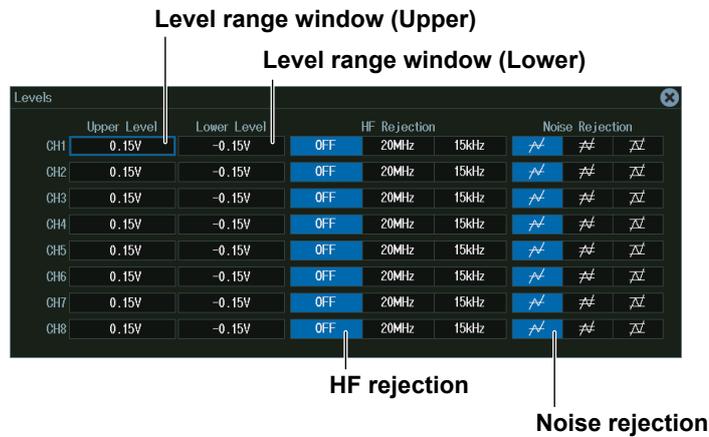
Selecting this check box selects all the channels.



Select the check boxes of the channels to be used as the trigger sources.

## Trigger Levels (Levels)

Press the **Levels** soft key to display the following menu.



### Note

The available trigger source, pattern, and trigger level settings vary depending on the model.

- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4

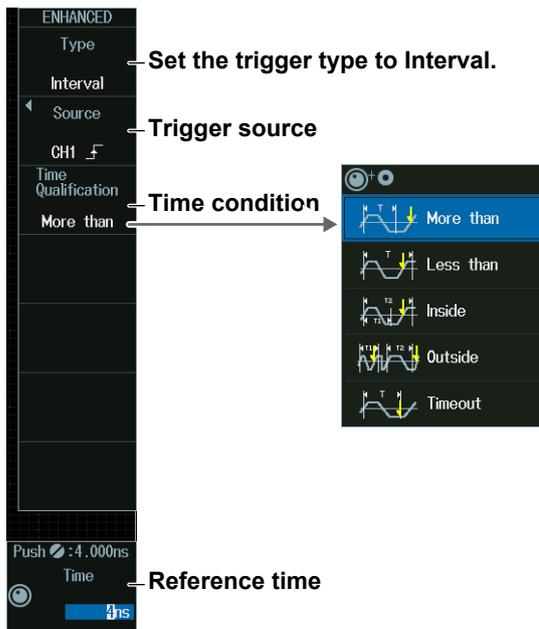
## 2.12 Triggering on Edge Intervals

This section explains the following settings for triggering on edge intervals:

- Trigger source  
Trigger slope, HF rejection, noise rejection, source bit, level for detecting trigger source edges
  - Time conditions, reference times
- ▶ “Interval Trigger [ENHANCED],” “HF Rejection (HF Rejection),” “Noise Rejection (Noise Rejection)” in the Features Guide

### ENHANCED Interval Menu

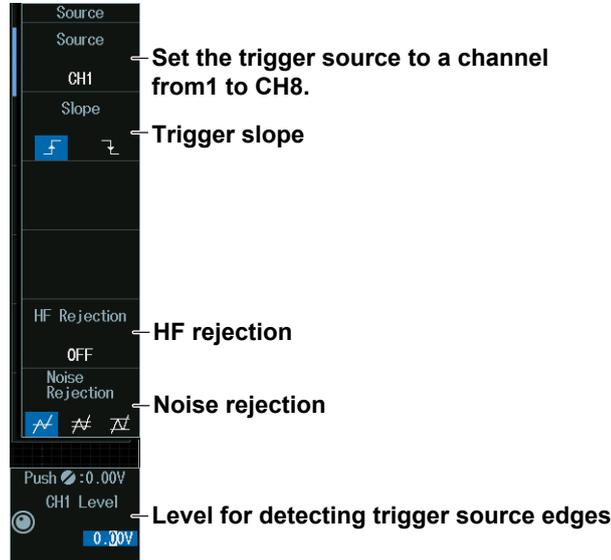
1. Press **ENHANCED** to display the ENHANCED menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the ENHANCED menu from TRIGGER on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. From the setup menu that appears, select **Interval** to display the following menu.



### Trigger Source (Source)

Press the **Source** soft key. The menu that appears varies depending on the specified trigger source.

#### When the Trigger Source Is a Channel from CH1 to CH8

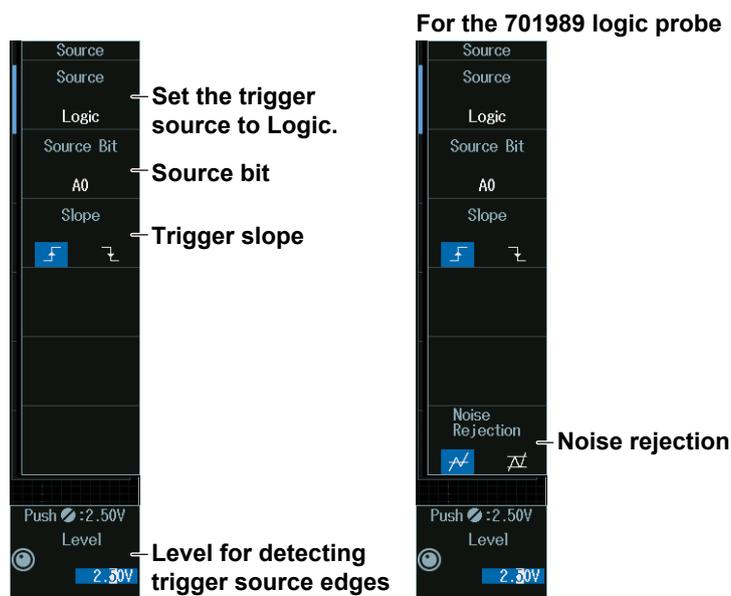


#### Note

The available trigger source settings vary depending on the model.

- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4

#### When the Trigger Source Is Logic



#### Note

The following source bit display applies to models with the /L32 option.  
C0 to C7 (LOGIC port C), D0 to D7 (LOGIC port D)

### Level for Detecting Trigger Source Edges (CH Level, Level)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level for detecting trigger source edges.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

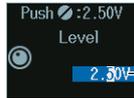
**Jog shuttle setting menu**

**When the trigger source is set to CH1 to CH8**



Level for detecting trigger source edges

**When the trigger source is LOGIC**



Level for detecting trigger source edges

**Level**

The level is displayed in unit of bits or pods depending on the connected logic probe and logic probe settings.

### Time Conditions (Time Qualification) and Reference Times (Time, Time1, Time2)

1. Press the **Time Qualification** soft key to set the time conditions.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the reference times.  
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

**Jog shuttle setting menu**

**When the time condition is More than, Less than, or Timeout**



Reference time

**When the time condition is Inside**



Reference time 1

Reference time 2

Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between reference time 1 and reference time 2.

**Satisfaction of Conditions**

Set what kind of relationship must be established between the interval between two consecutive edges (rising or falling) and the specified reference times (Time, Time1, Time2) for the instrument to trigger.

<b>More than</b>	When the edge interval is longer than the specified reference time
<b>Less than</b>	When the edge interval is shorter than the specified reference time
<b>Inside</b>	When the edge interval is longer than Time1 but shorter than Time2
<b>Outside</b>	When the edge interval is shorter than Time1 or longer than Time2
<b>Timeout</b>	When the edge interval reaches the specified reference time

For details on the trigger points when the time condition is met, see chapter 4, “Trigger” in the Features Guide (IM DLM5058-01EN). When Timeout is selected, the instrument triggers when a timeout occurs.

## 2.13 Triggering on FlexRay Bus Signals (Option)

This section explains the following settings for triggering on FlexRay bus signals:

- Trigger source  
Bit rate, bus channel assignment, HF rejection
- Level and hysteresis for detecting trigger source states
- Trigger type  
Trigger conditions

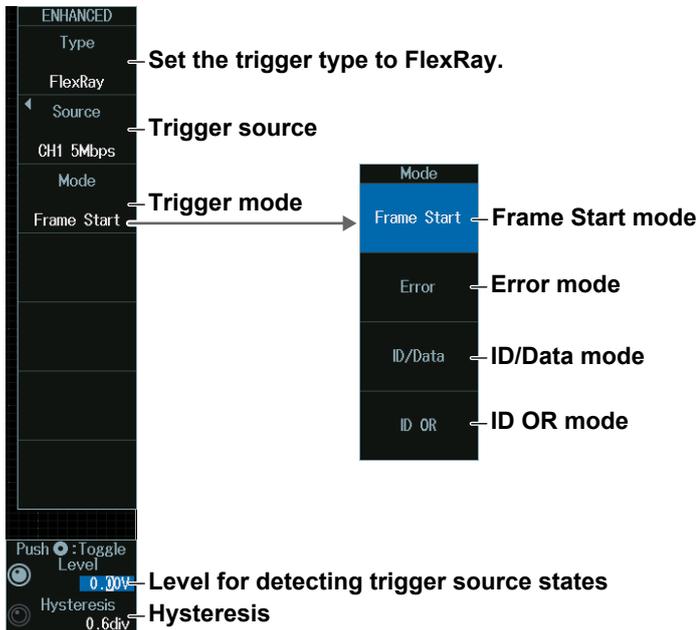
► “FlexRay Bus Trigger [ENHANCED, option],” “HF Rejection (HF Rejection)”  
in the Features Guide

### Auto Setup

The instrument can automatically set the trigger source level and bit rate from the received FlexRay bus signal and trigger on them. For details, see section 12.1.

### ENHANCED FlexRay Menu

1. Press **ENHANCED** to display the ENHANCED menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (MENU) in the upper left of the screen and select the ENHANCED menu from TRIGGER on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. From the setup menu that appears, select **FlexRay** to display the following menu.

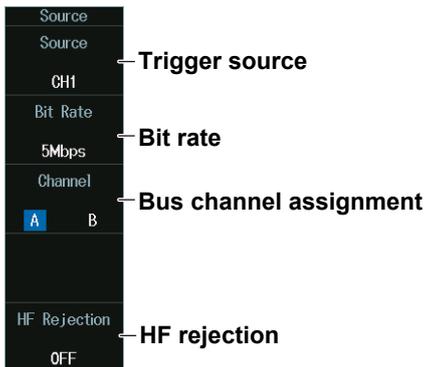


## 2.13 Triggering on FlexRay Bus Signals (Option)

---

### Trigger Source (Source)

Press the **Source** soft key to display the following menu.



### Note

---

The available trigger source settings vary depending on the model.

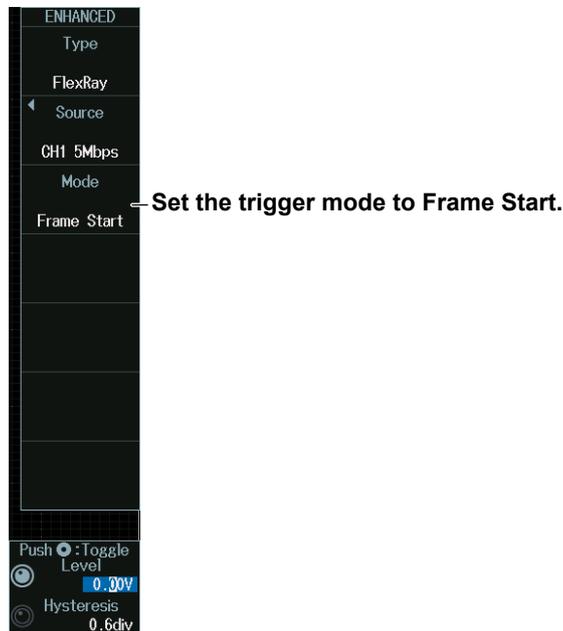
- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8
  - The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4
- 

### Trigger Mode (Mode)

#### Frame Start Mode (Frame Start)

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Frame Start** soft key to display the following menu.

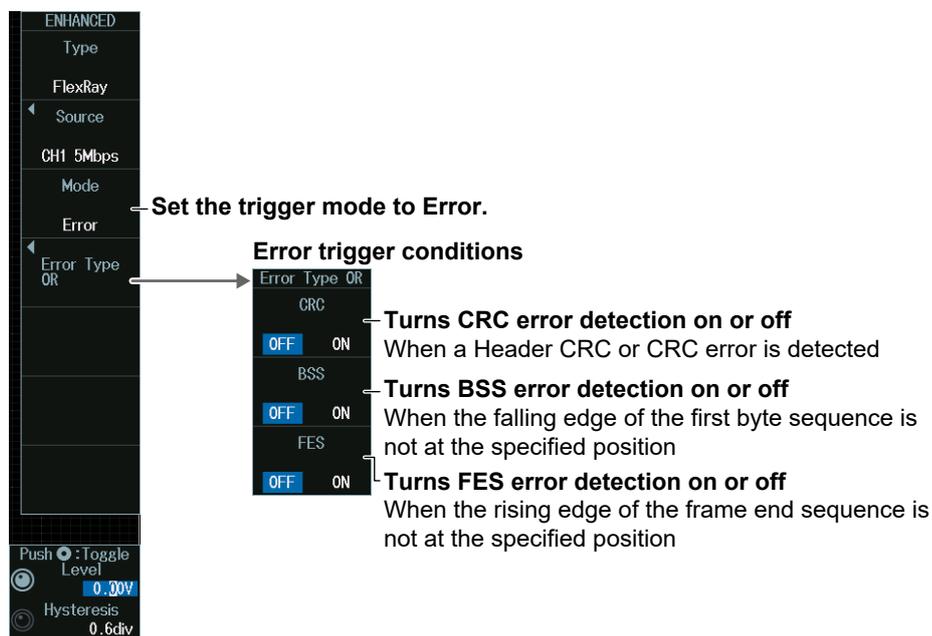
The instrument triggers on the start of FlexRay bus signal frames.



## Error Mode (Error)

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Error** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument triggers by detecting FlexRay bus signal errors.



### ID/Data Mode (ID/Data)

1. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **ID/Data** soft key.
2. Press the **Condition Setup** soft key to display the following menu. The instrument triggers on the AND of Frame Start, Indicator, ID, Cycle Count, Data1, and Data2. Items whose check boxes are selected are used as trigger conditions.

**Set the trigger type to ID/Data.**

**When the Comparison Condition of Data1 Is True or False**

**Indicator**  
You can set four types of bit patterns.

Indicator Setup	0	1	X
Payload Preamble	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Null Frame	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Sync Frame	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Startup Frame	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

**Frame Start**  
(Always selected)

**ID comparison condition**  
Reference Values (a and b)

**Cycle Count comparison condition**  
Reference Values (a and b)

**Comparison start position**  
Data length

**Comparison condition**  
Data patterns

**Set the value of up to eight consecutive bytes of data from Data 0 to Data 253 as a trigger condition**

**When the Comparison Condition of Data1 Is Data = a; Data ≠ a; a ≤ Data; Data ≤ b; a ≤ Data ≤ b; or Data < a, b < Data**

**Frame Start** (always selected)

**Indicator**

**ID comparison condition**  
Reference Values (a and b)

**Cycle Count comparison condition**  
Reference Values (a and b)

**Data length**

**Comparison start position**

**Comparison condition**  
Reference Values (a and b)

**Comparison range**  
Whether to use a signed or unsigned data format

**Byte order**

**Set the value of up to eight consecutive bytes of data from Data 0 to Data 253 as a trigger condition**

## ID OR Mode (ID OR)

1. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **ID OR** soft key.
2. Press the **Condition Setup** soft key to display the following menu.  
The instrument triggers when the condition of one of the four IDs is met. Items whose check boxes are selected are used as trigger conditions.

**Set the trigger type to ID OR.**

**Select an ID's check box to use it as a trigger condition.**

**ID comparison condition**  
**Reference Values (a and b)**  
**Reference Values (a and b)**  
**Cycle Count comparison condition**  
 Select Don't Care if you do not want to make the cycle count a trigger condition.

## Level for Detecting Trigger Source States (Level, Hysteresis)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level or hysteresis.

- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
- To set the level, you can drag the level display line on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu

**Level for detecting trigger source states**  
**Hysteresis**

Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between level and hysteresis.

## 2.14 Triggering on CAN Bus Signals (Option)

This section explains the following settings for triggering on CAN bus signals:

- Trigger source
  - Bit rate, recessive level, HF rejection, sample point
- Level and hysteresis for detecting trigger source states
- Trigger type
  - Trigger conditions

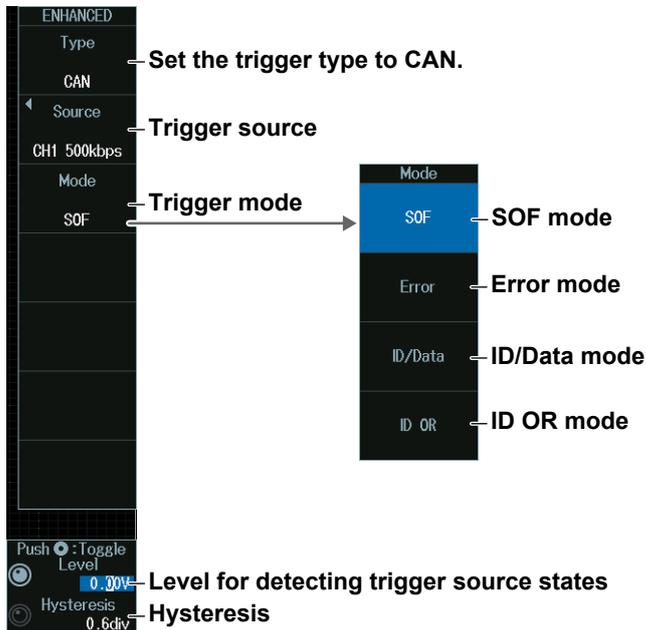
► “CAN Bus Trigger [ENHANCED, option],” “HF Rejection (HF Rejection)”  
in the Features Guide

### Auto Setup

The instrument can automatically set the trigger source level and bit rate from the received CAN bus signal and trigger on them. For details, see section 12.2.

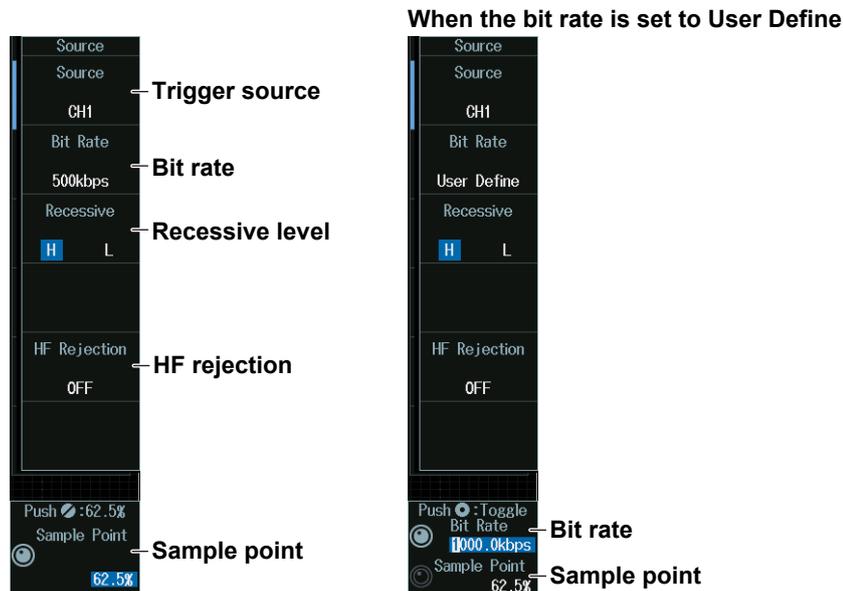
### ENHANCED CAN Menu

1. Press **ENHANCED** to display the ENHANCED menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the ENHANCED menu from TRIGGER on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. From the setup menu that appears, select **CAN** to display the following menu.



## Trigger Source (Source)

Press the **Source** soft key to display the following menu.



### Note

The available trigger source settings vary depending on the model.

- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4

## Sample Point (Sample Point) and Bit Rate (Bit Rate)

### When the bit rate is not set to User Define

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the sample point.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the pop-up list that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



### When the bit rate is set to User Define

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the sample point.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the pop-up list that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



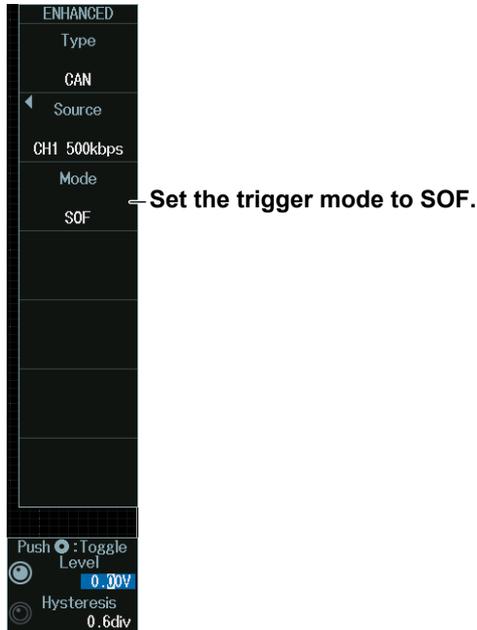
Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between bit rate and sample point.

## Trigger Mode (Mode)

### SOF Mode (Start of Frame)

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **SOF** soft key to display the following menu.

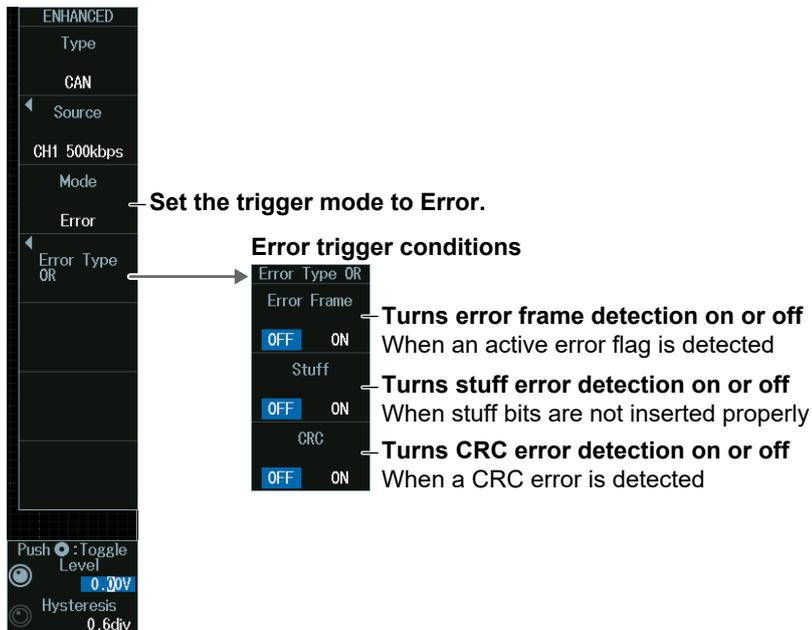
The instrument triggers on the start of CAN bus signal frames.



### Error Mode (Error)

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Error** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument triggers on error frames (when the error flag is active) or when it detects various errors.



### ID/Data Mode (ID/Data)

1. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **ID/Data** soft key.
2. Press the **Condition Setup** soft key to display the following menu.  
The instrument triggers on the AND of the SOF, ID, frame type (Remote Frame or Data Frame), Data, and ACK Mode conditions. Items whose check boxes are selected are used as trigger conditions.

• **When ID Input Format Is Pattern**

Set the trigger type to ID/Data.



**When the data frame comparison condition is True or False**  
SOF (always selected)

**Frame format**

CAN ID Data Condition Setup

Frame Format: Standard (selected), Extend

SOF:

ID:

Input Format: Pattern (selected), Message

Hex: X XX

Bin: XXX XXXX XXXX

Remote Frame:

Data Frame:

DLC: 8

Condition: True

Hex: XX XX XX XX XX XX XX XX

Bin: XXXX XXXX XXXX XXXX XXXX XXXX XXXX XXXX

ACK Mode:  ACK

Annotations:

- Set the ID input format to Pattern.
- Bit pattern of ID (If you select Extend for the frame format, 29 bits are displayed here)
- Set the trigger source frame
- Data length of the data field
- Comparison condition
- Data Pattern
- ACK slot state

**When the data frame condition is Data = a; Data ≠ a; a ≤ Data; Data ≤ b; a ≤ Data ≤ b; or Data < a, b < Data**  
SOF (always selected)

**Frame format**

CAN ID Data Condition Setup

Frame Format: Standard (selected), Extend

SOF:

ID:

Input Format: Pattern (selected), Message

Hex: X XX

Bin: XXX XXXX XXXX

Remote Frame:

Data Frame:

DLC: 8

Condition: Data = a

a: 0

b: 255

MSB: 7

LSB: 0

Endian: Big (selected), Little

Sign: Sign (selected), Unsign

ACK Mode:  ACK

Annotations:

- Set the ID input format to Pattern.
- Bit pattern of ID (If you select Extend for the frame format, 29 bits are displayed here)
- Set the trigger source frame
- Data length of the data field
- Reference Values (a and b)
- Bit positions of the most significant bit (MSB) and the least significant bit (LSB) in the data to be compared
- Whether to use a signed (Sign) or unsigned (Unsign) data format
- byte order

## 2.14 Triggering on CAN Bus Signals (Option)

### • When ID Input Format Is Message

**Set the trigger type to ID/Data.**

**Set the ID input format to Message.**

**SOF (always selected)**

**Select an ID from the signal list in the physical value/symbol definition file (.sbl) loaded in advance using the file load feature (see section 17.7). Edit physical value/symbol definition files on your PC using the dedicated software (Symbol Editor).**

**Select a data item from the message list in the loaded physical value/symbol definition file (.sbl).**

**Comparison condition**

**Reference Values (a and b)**

The screenshot shows the 'CAN ID Data Condition Setup' screen. The 'Type' is set to 'CAN', 'Source' to 'CH1 500kbps', and 'Mode' to 'ID/Data'. The 'Condition Setup' menu is open. The 'SOF' checkbox is checked. The 'Input Format' is set to 'Message'. A dropdown menu shows a selected ID. The 'Signal' checkbox is checked. The 'Condition' is set to 'a ≤ Data ≤ b', with 'a' at 0 and 'b' at 255.

### ID OR Mode (ID OR)

1. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **ID OR** soft key.
2. Press the **Condition Setup** soft key to display the following screen.  
The instrument triggers on the AND of the SOF, frame type (Remote Frame or Data Frame), and ACK Mode conditions and of the condition of one of the four IDs. Items whose check boxes are selected are used as trigger conditions.

### • When ID Input Format Is Pattern

**Set the trigger type to ID OR.**

**SOF (always selected)**

**Frame format**

**Set the ID input format to Pattern.**

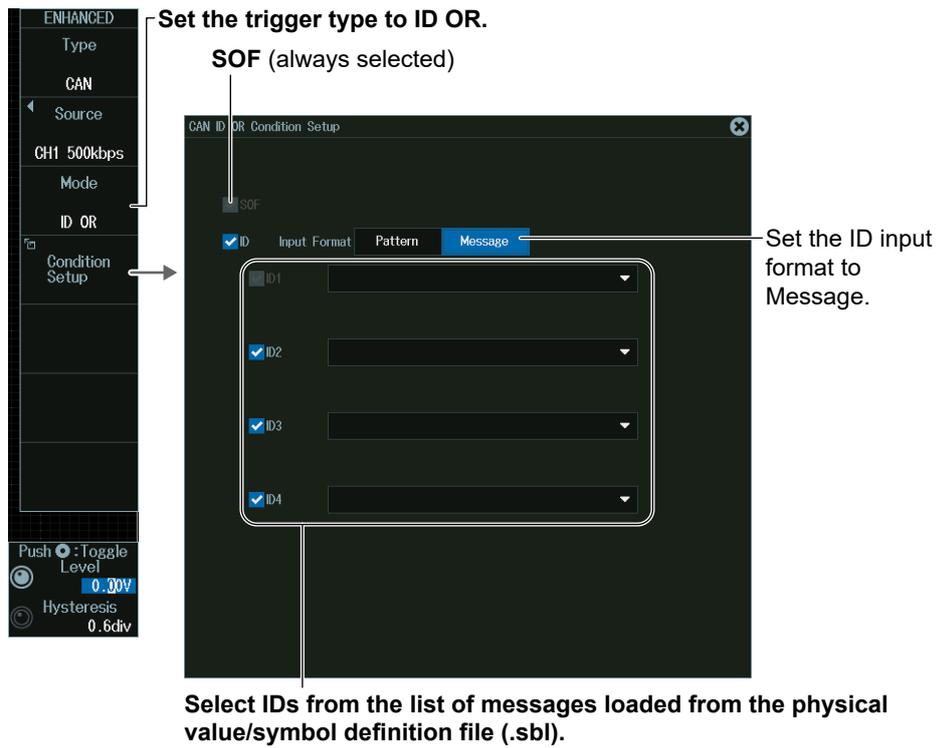
**Bit pattern of ID (If you select Extend for the frame format, 29 bits are displayed here)**

**Set the trigger source frame**

**ACK slot state**

The screenshot shows the 'CAN ID OR Condition Setup' screen. The 'Type' is set to 'CAN', 'Source' to 'CH1 500kbps', and 'Mode' to 'ID OR'. The 'Condition Setup' menu is open. The 'SOF' checkbox is checked. The 'Frame Format' is set to 'Standard'. The 'Input Format' is set to 'Pattern'. Four ID conditions (ID1, ID2, ID3, ID4) are listed, each with a checked checkbox and fields for Hex and Bin values. The 'Data Frame' checkbox is checked. The 'ACK Mode' is set to 'ACK'.

• When ID Input Format Is Message



**Level for Detecting Trigger Source States (Level, Hysteresis)**

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level or hysteresis.

- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
- To set the level, you can drag the level display line on the screen.

**Jog shuttle setting menu**



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between level and hysteresis.

## 2.15 Triggering on CAN FD Bus Signals (Option)

This section explains the following settings for triggering on CAN FD signals:

- Trigger source
  - Bit rate, sample point, data phase bit rate, data phase sample point, recessive level, HF rejection
- Level and hysteresis for detecting trigger source states
- Trigger type
  - Trigger conditions
- CAN FD standard

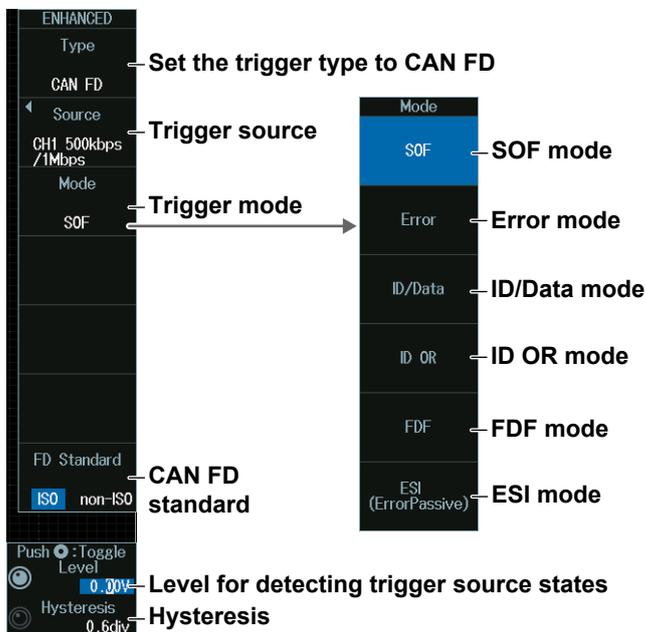
► “CAN FD Bus Trigger [ENHANCED, option],” “HF Rejection (HF Rejection)” in the Features Guide

### Auto Setup

The instrument can automatically set the trigger source level and bit rate from the received CAN FD bus signal and trigger on them. For details, see section 12.3.

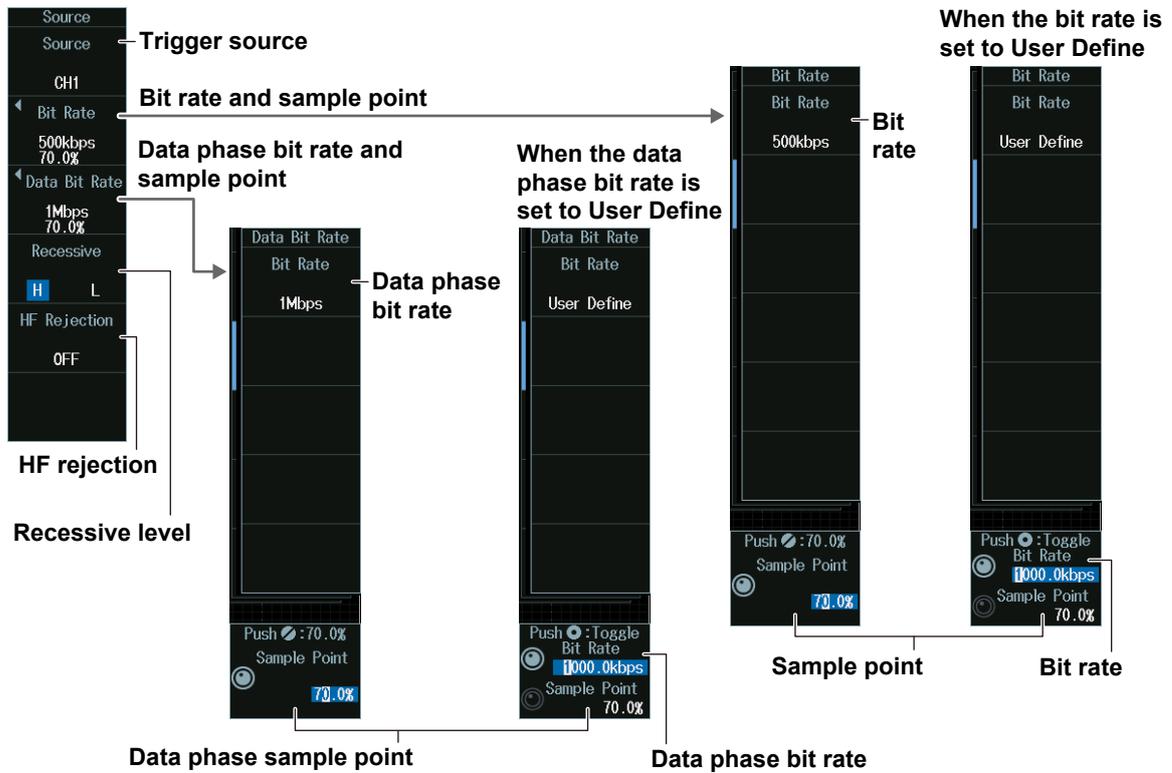
### ENHANCED CAN FD Menu

1. Press **ENHANCED** to display the ENHANCED menu. You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the ENHANCED menu from TRIGGER on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. From the setup menu that appears, select **CAN FD** to display the following menu.



## Trigger Source (Source)

Press the **Source** soft key to display the following menu..



### Note

The available trigger source settings vary depending on the model.

- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4

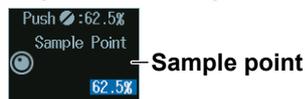
## Sample Point (Sample Point) and Bit Rate (Bit Rate)

### When the bit rate is not set to User Define

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the sample point.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the pop-up list that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu

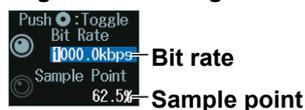


### When the bit rate is set to User Define

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the bit rate and sample point.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the pop-up list that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



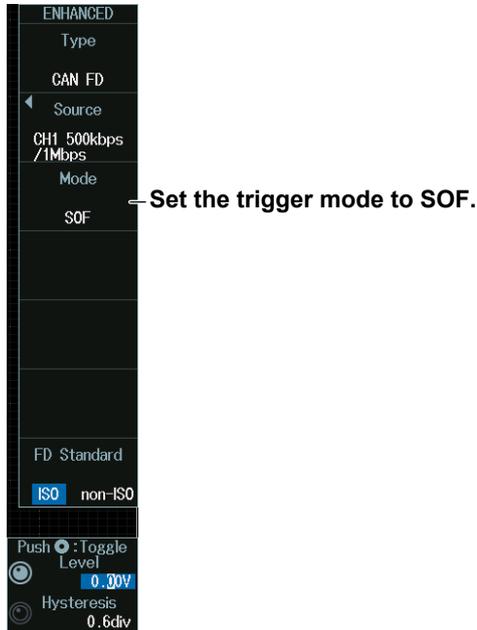
Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between bit rate and sample point.

## Trigger Mode (Mode)

### SOF Mode (Start of Frame)

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **SOF** soft key to display the following menu.

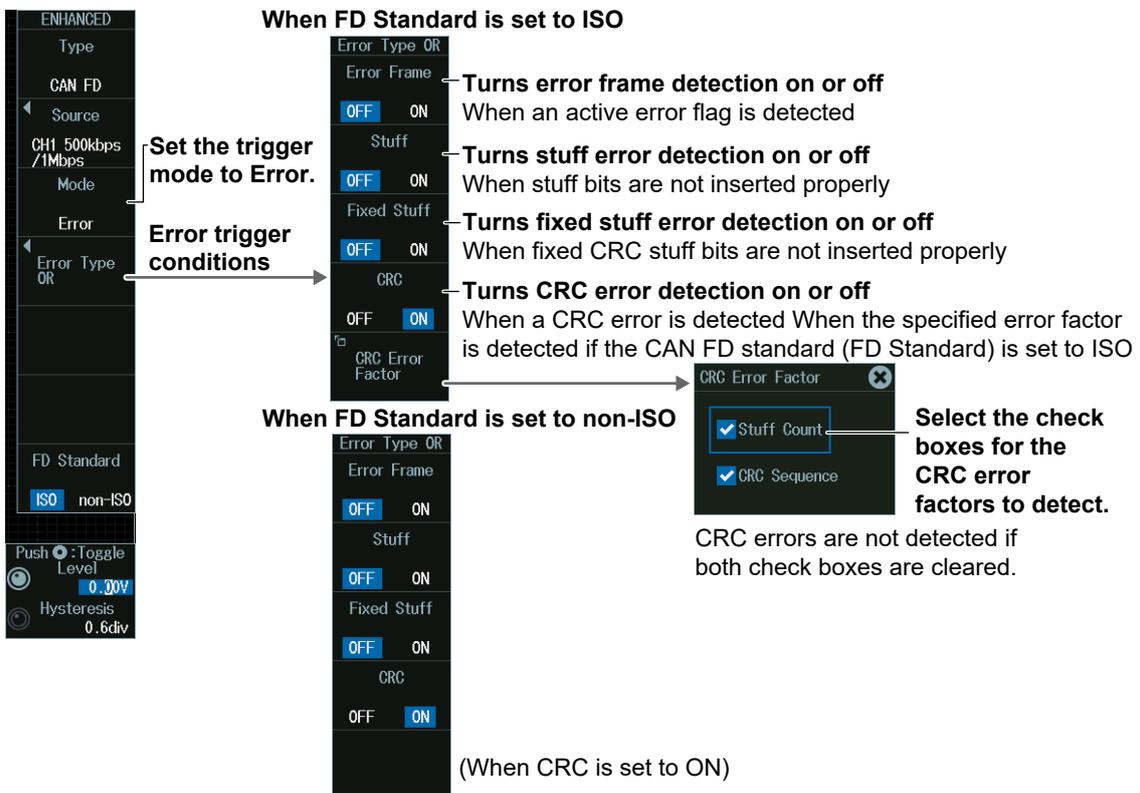
The instrument triggers on the start of CAN FD bus signal frames.



### Error Mode (Error)

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Error** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument triggers on error frames (when the error flag is active) or when it detects various errors.



### ID/Data Mode (ID/Data)

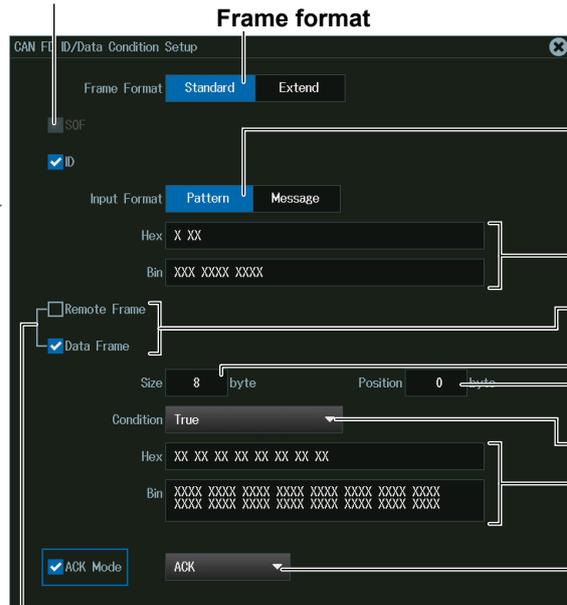
1. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **ID/Data** soft key.
2. Press the **Condition Setup** soft key to display the following menu. The instrument triggers on the AND of the SOF, ID, frame type (Remote Frame or Data Frame), Data, and ACK Mode conditions. Items whose check boxes are selected are used as trigger conditions.

• **When ID Input Format Is Pattern**

Set the trigger type to ID/Data.



When the data frame comparison condition is True or False  
SOF (always selected)

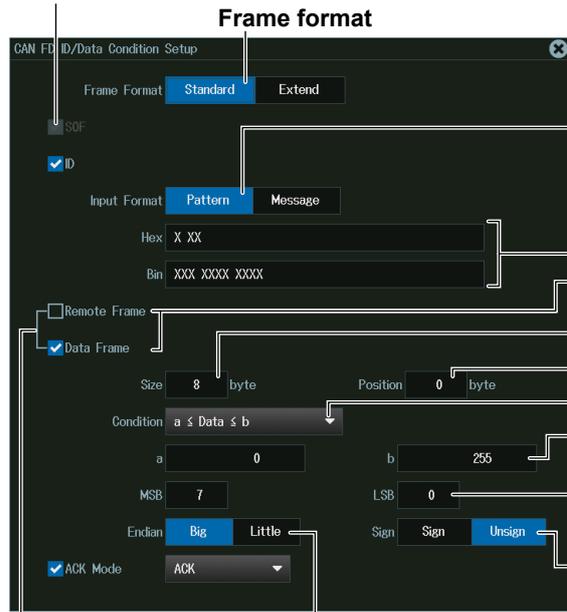


- Set the ID input format to Pattern.
- Bit pattern of ID (If you select Extend for the frame format, 29 bits are displayed here)
- Set the trigger source frame
- Comparison size
- Comparison start position
- Comparison condition
- Data Pattern
- ACK slot state

Set the value of up to eight consecutive bytes of data from Data 0 to Data 63 as a trigger condition

When the data frame condition is Data = a; Data ≠ a; a ≤ Data; Data ≤ b; a ≤ Data ≤ b; or Data < a, b < Data

SOF (always selected)



- Set the ID input format to Pattern.
- Bit pattern of ID (If you select Extend for the frame format, 29 bits are displayed here)
- Set the trigger source frame
- Comparison size
- Comparison start position
- Comparison condition
- Reference Values (a and b)
- Bit positions of the most significant bit (MSB) and the least significant bit (LSB) in the data to be compared
- Whether to use a signed (Sign) or unsigned (Unsign) data format
- Byte order

Set the value of up to eight consecutive bytes of data from Data 0 to Data 63 as a trigger condition

## 2.15 Triggering on CAN FD Bus Signals (Option)

### • When ID Input Format Is Message

**Set the trigger type to ID/Data.**

**Set the ID input format to Message.**

**Select an ID from the message list in the physical value/symbol definition file (.sbl) loaded in advance using the file load feature (see section 17.7). Edit physical value/symbol definition files on your PC using the dedicated software (Symbol Editor).**

**SOF (always selected)**

**Input Format: Pattern Message**

**Message**

**Signal**

**Condition:  $a \leq \text{Data} \leq b$**

**Reference Values (a and b):** a: 0, b: 255

**Select a data item from the signal list in the loaded physical value/symbol definition file (.sbl).**

**Comparison condition**

**Reference Values (a and b)**

### ID OR Mode (ID OR)

1. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **ID OR** soft key.
2. Press the **Condition Setup** soft key to display the following menu.  
The instrument triggers on the AND of the SOF, frame type (Remote Frame or Data Frame), and ACK Mode conditions and of the condition of one of the four IDs. Items whose check boxes are selected are used as trigger conditions.

### • When ID Input Format Is Pattern

**Set the trigger type to ID OR.**

**SOF (always selected)**

**Frame format: Standard Extend**

**Input Format: Pattern Message**

**Set the ID input format to Pattern.**

**Bit pattern of ID (If you select Extend for the frame format, 29 bits are displayed here)**

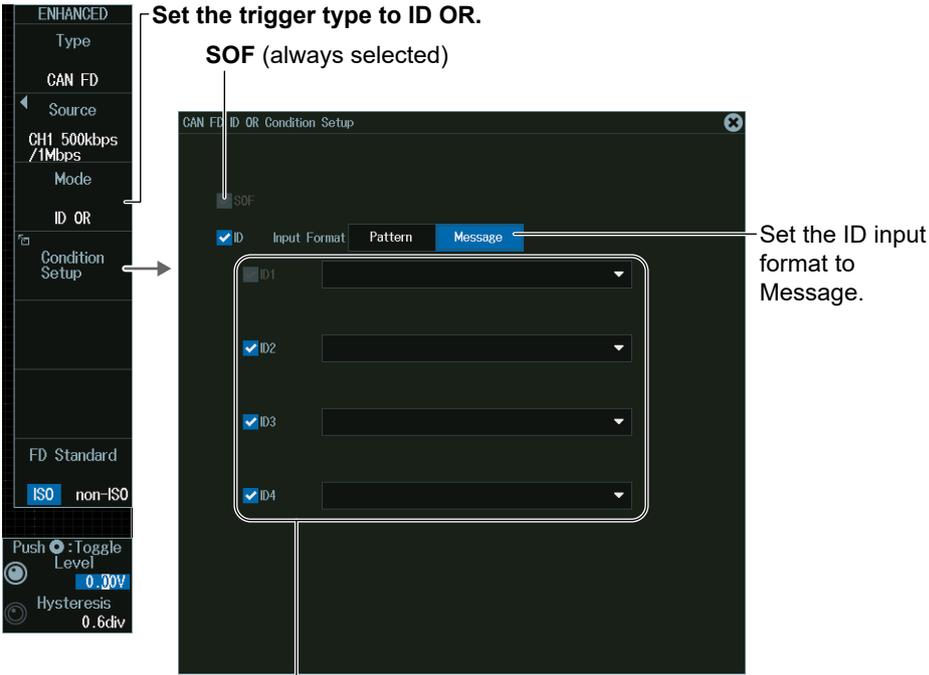
**Set the trigger source frame ACK slot state**

**Remote Frame**

**Data Frame**

**ACK Mode: ACK**

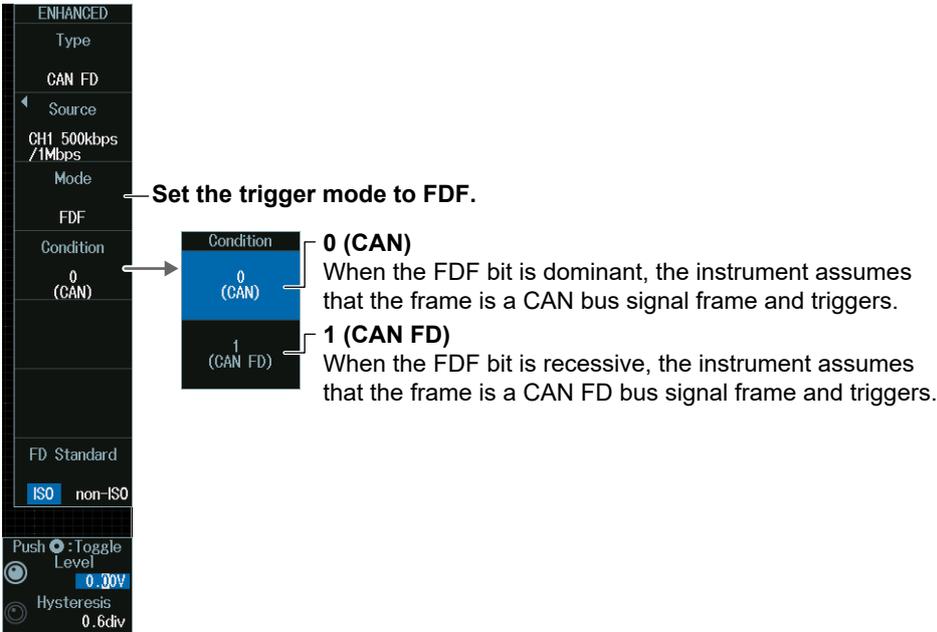
• When ID Input Format Is Message



Select IDs from the list of messages loaded from the physical value/symbol definition file (.sbl).

**FDF Mode (FDF)**

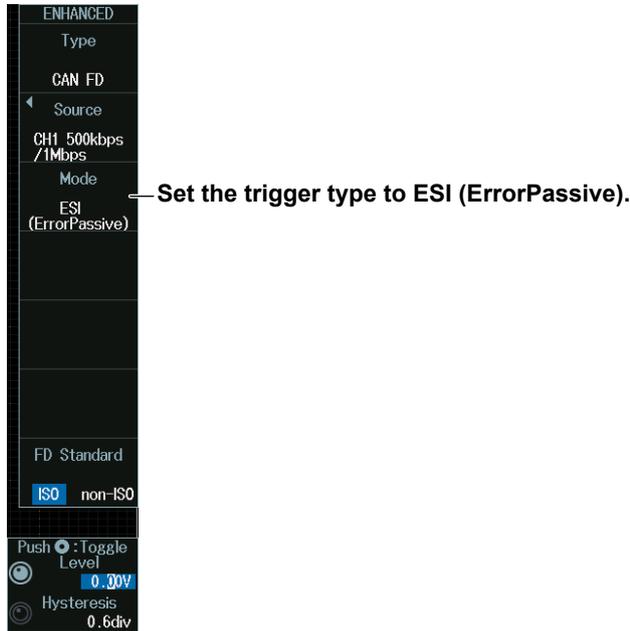
- 1. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **FDF** soft key.
- 2. Press the **Condition Setup** soft key to display the following menu. Set the FDF bit state as a trigger condition.



### ESI Mode (ESI (Error Passive))

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **ESI (ErrorPassive)** soft key.

The instrument triggers when the ESI bit is recessive (error passive).



### CAN FD Standard

Press the **FD Standard** soft key to select the frame format.

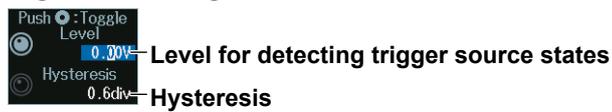
For details on frames, see chapter 4, "CAN FD Bus Trigger," in IM DLM5058-01EN.

### Level for Detecting Trigger Source States (Level, Hysteresis)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level or hysteresis.

- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
- To set the level, you can drag the level display line on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between level and hysteresis.

## 2.16 Triggering on LIN Bus Signals (Option)

This section explains the following settings for triggering on LIN bus signals:

- Trigger source  
Bit rate, HF rejection, sample point
- Level and hysteresis for detecting trigger source states
- Trigger type  
Trigger conditions

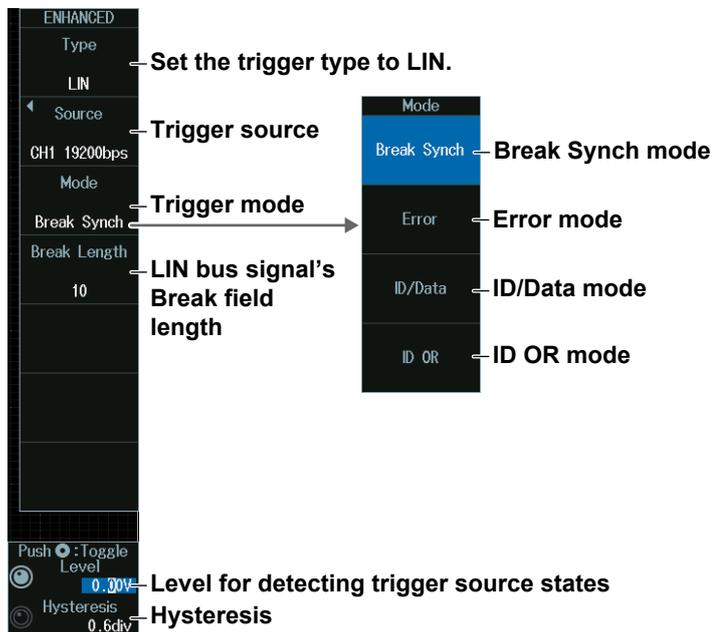
► “LIN Bus Trigger [ENHANCED, option],” “HF Rejection (HF Rejection)”  
in the Features Guide

### Auto Setup

The instrument can automatically set the trigger source level and bit rate from the received LIN bus signal and trigger on them. For details, see section 12.4.

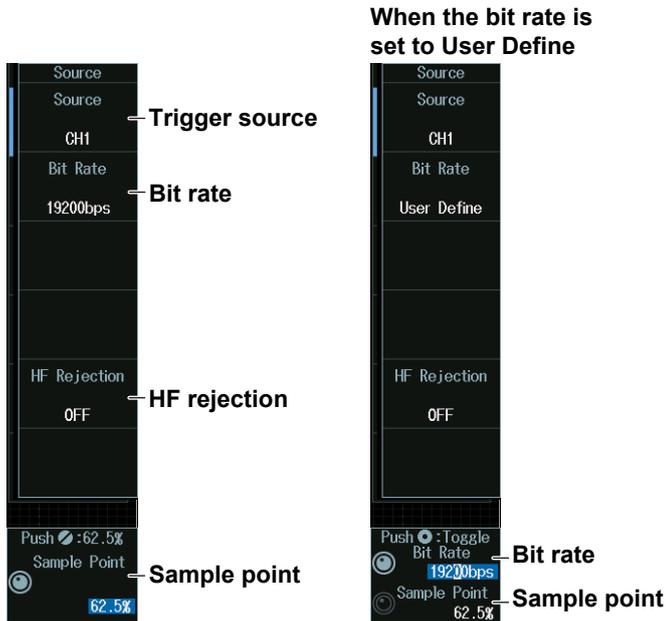
### ENHANCED LIN Menu

1. Press **ENHANCED** to display the ENHANCED menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (MENU) in the upper left of the screen and select the ENHANCED menu from TRIGGER on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. From the setup menu that appears, select **LIN** to display the following menu.



### Trigger Source (Source)

Press the **Source** soft key to display the following menu.



#### Note

The available trigger source settings vary depending on the model.

- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4

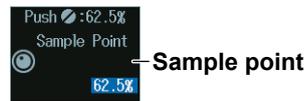
### Sample Point (Sample Point) and Bit Rate (Bit Rate)

#### When the bit rate is not set to User Define

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the sample point.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the pop-up list that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



#### When the bit rate is set to User Define

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the bit rate and sample point.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the pop-up list that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



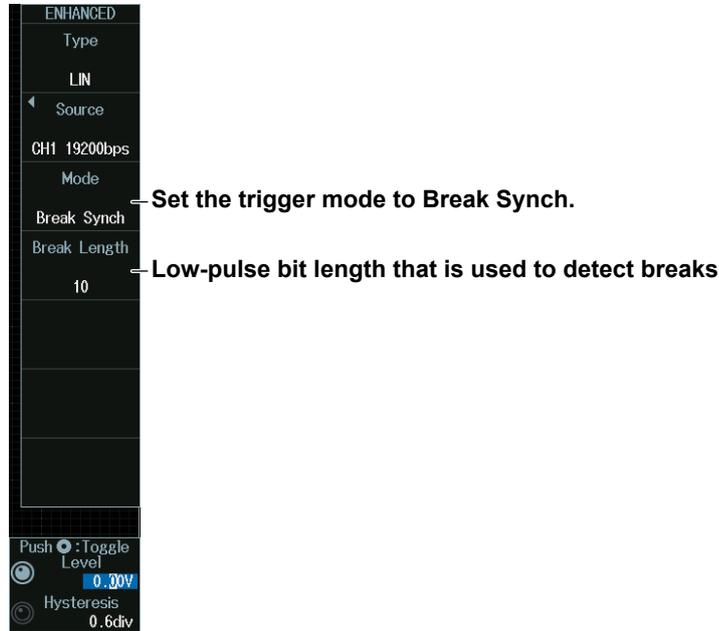
Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between bit rate and sample point.

## Trigger Mode (Mode)

### Break Synch Mode

Press the Mode soft key and then the **Break Synch** soft key to display the following menu.

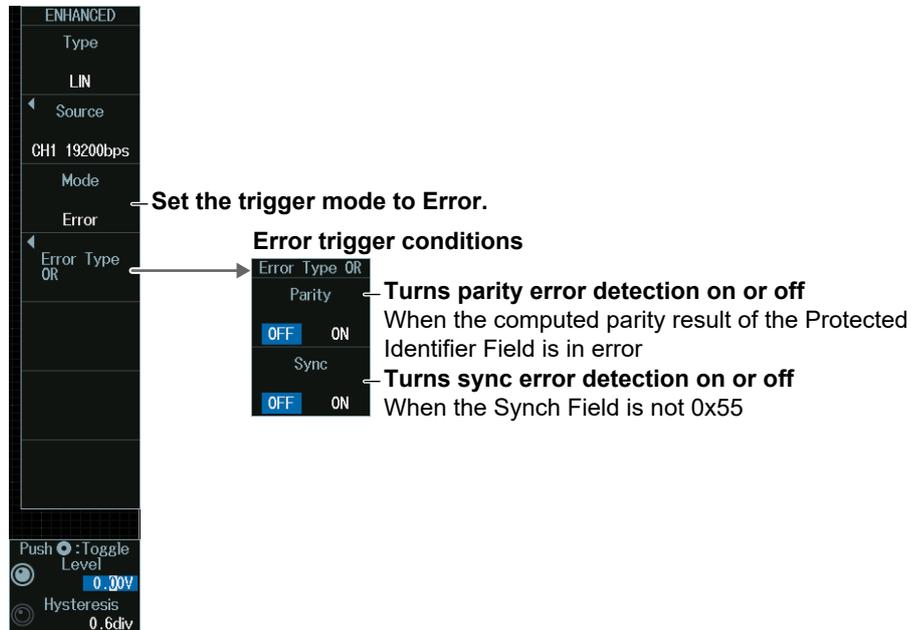
The instrument triggers when it detects a break field and then a synch field (Break Field + Synch Field).



### Error Mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Error** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument triggers when it detects an error.



**ID/Data mode**

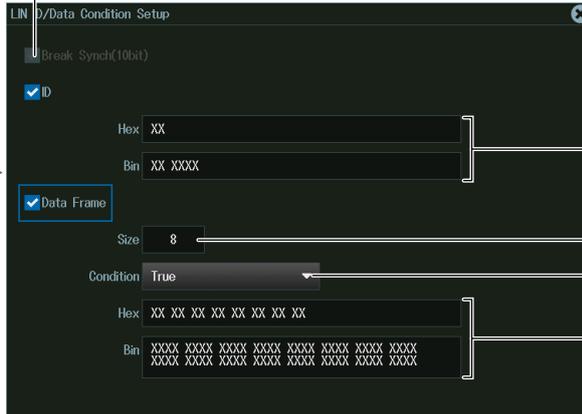
1. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **ID/Data** soft key.
2. Press the **Condition Setup** soft key to display the following menu. The instrument triggers on the AND of the Break Synch, ID, and Data Frame conditions. Items whose check boxes are selected are used as trigger conditions.

Set the trigger type to ID/Data.

When the comparison condition is True or False



**Break Synch (always selected)**



Bit pattern of ID

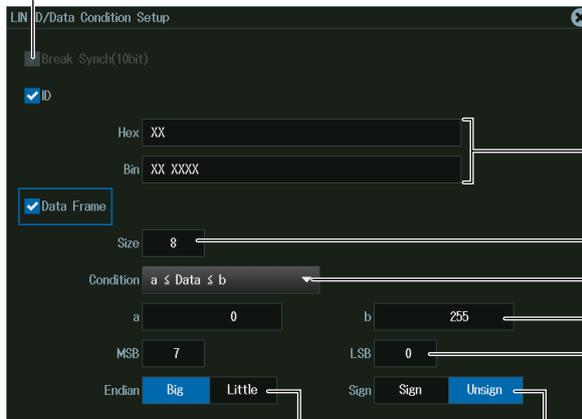
Data length

Comparison condition

Data Pattern

When the comparison condition is Data = a; Data ≠ a; a ≤ Data; Data ≤ b; a ≤ Data ≤ b; or Data < a, b < Data

**Break Synch (always selected)**



Bit pattern of ID

Data length

Comparison condition

Reference Values (a and b)

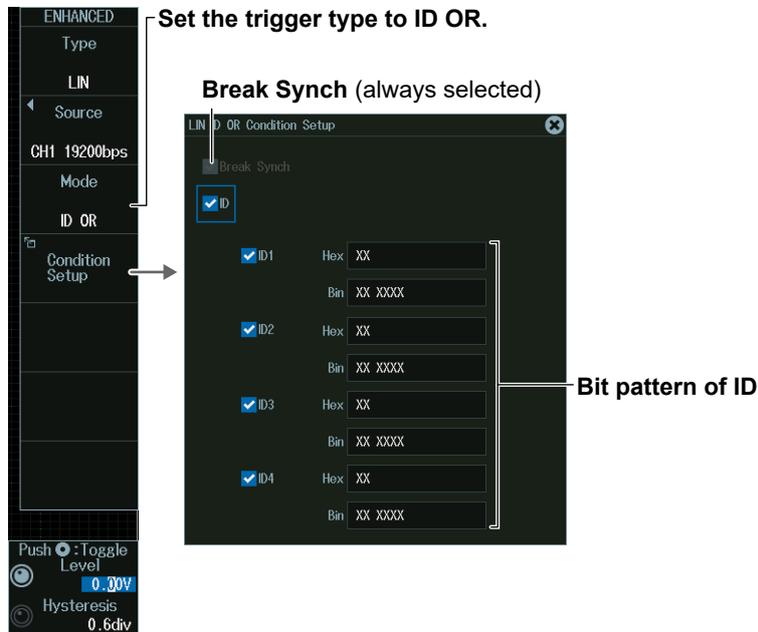
Bit positions of the most significant bit (MSB) and the least significant bit (LSB) in the data to be compared

Whether to use a signed (Sign) or unsigned (Unsign) data format

Byte order

## ID OR Mode

1. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **ID OR** soft key.
2. Press the **Condition Setup** soft key to display the following menu. The instrument triggers on the AND of the Break Synch condition and the condition of one of the four IDs. Items whose check boxes are selected are used as trigger conditions.



## Level for Detecting Trigger Source States (Level, Hysteresis)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level or hysteresis.

- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
- To set the level, you can drag the level display line on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between level and hysteresis.

## 2.17 Triggering on CXPI Bus Signals (Option)

This section explains the following settings for triggering on CXPI bus signals:

- Trigger source  
Bit Rate, T Sample, Clock Tolerance, HF Rejection
- Level and hysteresis for detecting trigger source states
- Trigger type  
Trigger conditions

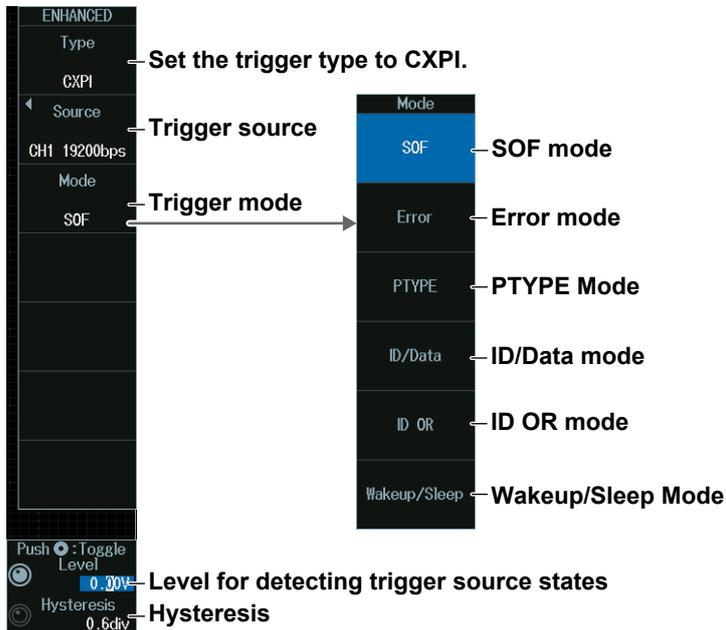
► “CXPI Bus Trigger [ENHANCED, option],” “HF Rejection (HF Rejection)”  
in the Features Guide

### Auto Setup

The instrument can automatically set the trigger source level and bit rate from the received CXPI bus signal and trigger on them. For details, see section 12.5.

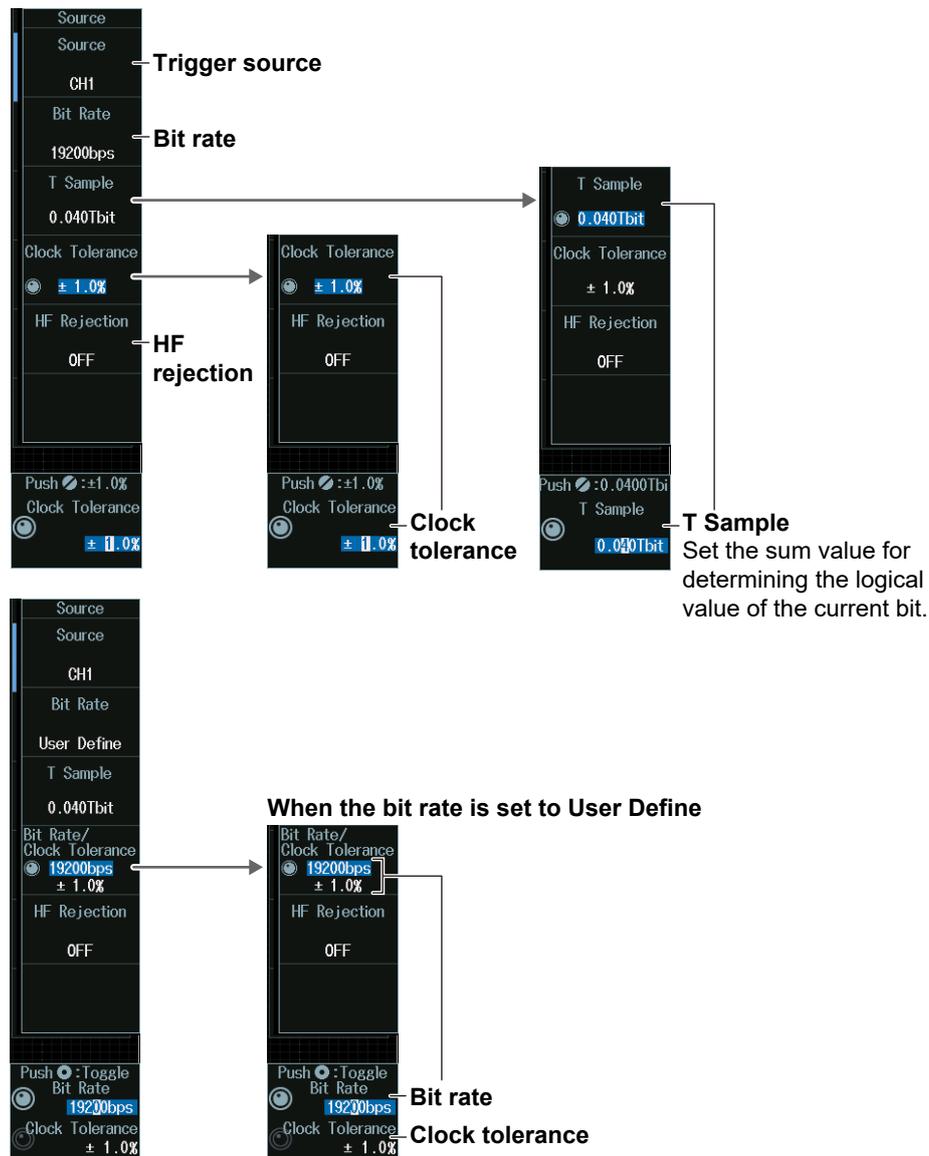
### ENHANCED CXPI Menu

1. Press **ENHANCED** to display the ENHANCED menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the ENHANCED menu from TRIGGER on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. From the setup menu that appears, select **CXPI** to display the following menu.



## Trigger Source (Source)

Press the **Source** soft key to display the following menu..



### Note

The available trigger source settings vary depending on the model.

- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4

### Clock Tolerance (Clock Tolerance) and Bit Rate (Bit Rate)

#### When the bit rate is not set to User Define

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the clock tolerance.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



#### When the bit rate is set to User Define

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the bit rate and clock tolerance.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



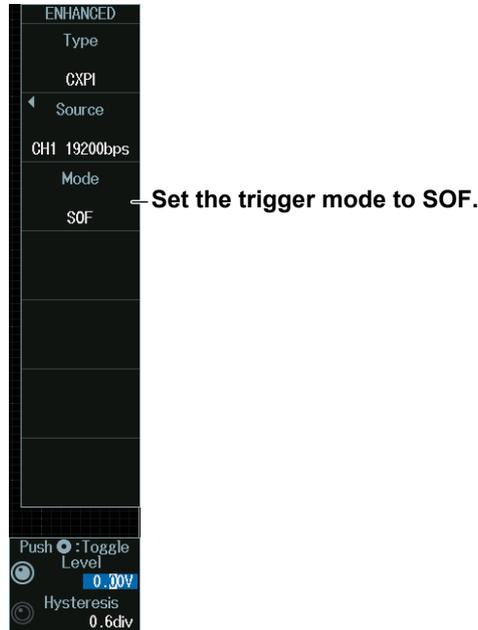
Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between bit rate and clock tolerance.

## Trigger Mode (Mode)

### SOF Mode (Start of Frame)

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **SOF** soft key. The following menu appears.

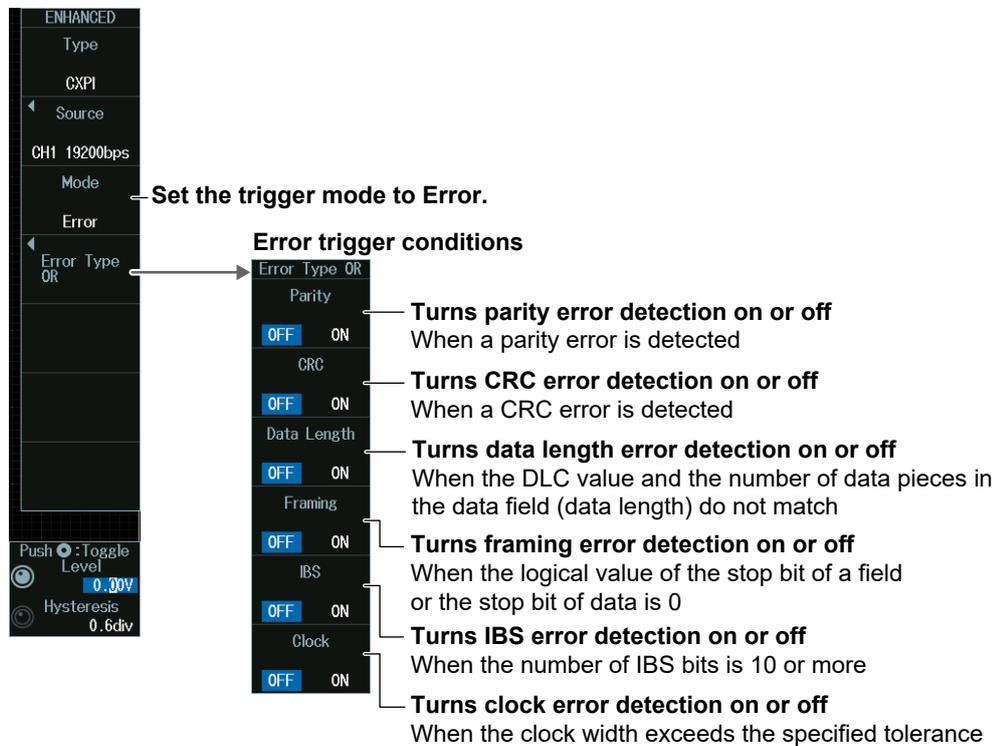
The instrument triggers on the start position of CXPI bus signal frames.



### Error Mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Error** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument triggers when it detects various types of errors.

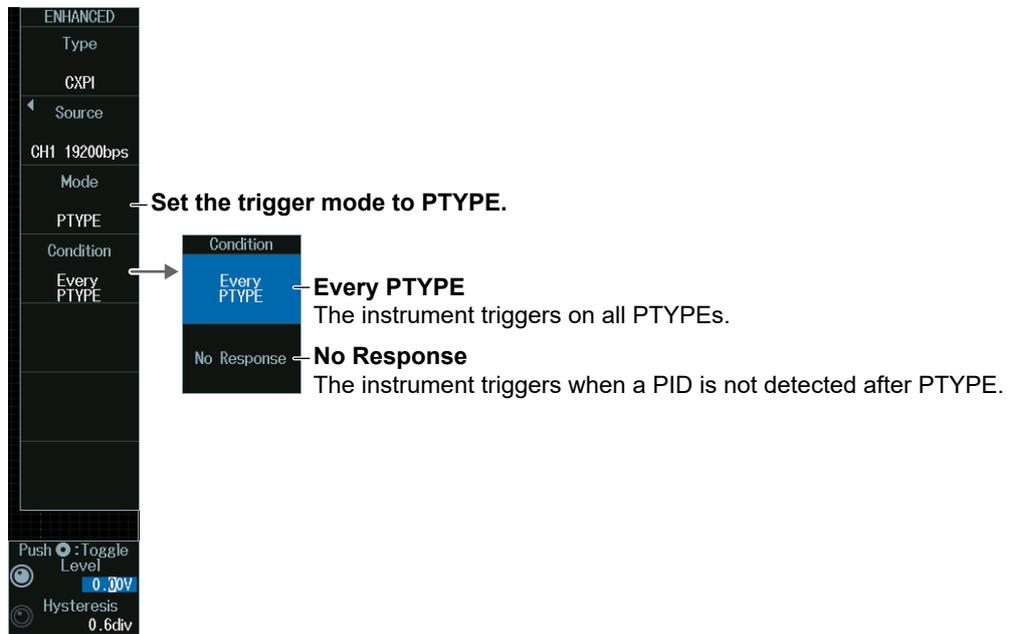


## 2.17 Triggering on CXPI Bus Signals (Option)

### PTYPE mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **PTYPE** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument triggers by detecting CXPI bus signal's PTYPEs.



### ID/Data mode

1. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **ID/Data** soft key.
2. Press the **Condition Setup** soft key to display the following menu.  
The instrument triggers on the AND of SOF, ID, frame information, and data. Items whose check boxes are selected are used as trigger conditions.

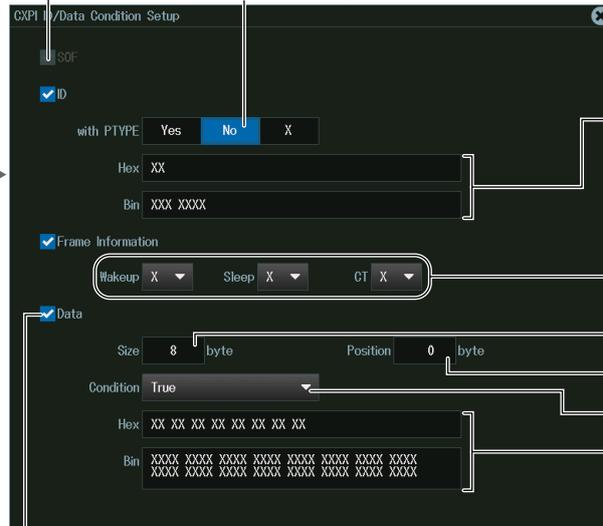
Set the trigger type to ID/Data.



When the comparison condition is True or False

SOF (always selected)

Set the trigger conditions based on the presence of the PTYPE field.



**Bit pattern of ID**  
You cannot set these to 0 when with PTYPE is set to No.

**Set frame information.**

**Comparison size**

**Comparison start position**

**Comparison condition**

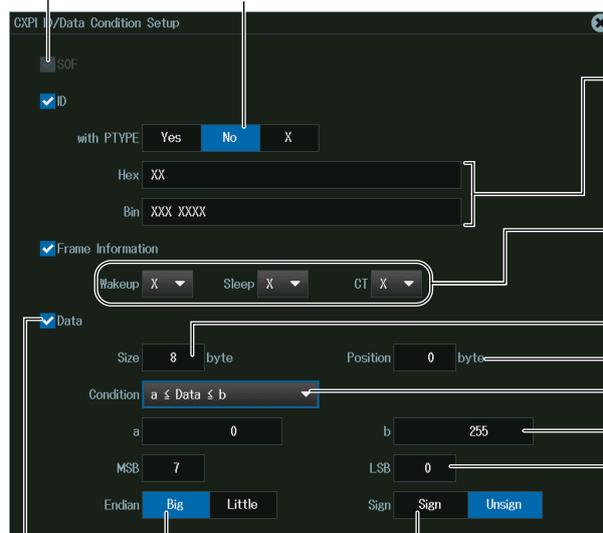
**Data Pattern**

Set the value of up to eight consecutive bytes of data from Data 0 to Data 255 as a trigger condition

When the data frame condition is Data = a; Data ≠ a; a ≤ Data; Data ≤ b; a ≤ Data ≤ b; or Data < a, b < Data

SOF (always selected)

Set the trigger conditions based on the presence of the PTYPE field.



**Bit pattern of ID**  
You cannot set these to 0 when with PTYPE is set to No.

**Set frame information.**

**Comparison size**

**Comparison start position**

**Comparison condition**

**Reference Values (a and b)**

**Bit positions of the most significant bit (MSB) and the least significant bit (LSB) in the data to be compared**

**Byte order**

**Whether to use a signed (Sign) or unsigned (Unsign) data format**

Set the value of up to eight consecutive bytes of data from Data 0 to Data 255 as a trigger condition

## 2.17 Triggering on CXPI Bus Signals (Option)

### ID OR Mode

1. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **ID OR** soft key.
2. Press the **Condition Setup** soft key to display the following menu.  
The instrument triggers on the AND of the SOF condition and the condition of one of the four IDs. Items whose check boxes are selected are used as trigger conditions.

**Set the trigger type to ID OR.**

**SOF (always selected)**

**Set the trigger conditions based on the presence of the PTYPE field.**

with PTYPE: Yes No X

ID1 Hex: XX  
 Bin: XXX XXXX  
 ID2 Hex: XX  
 Bin: XXX XXXX  
 ID3 Hex: XX  
 Bin: XXX XXXX  
 ID4 Hex: XX  
 Bin: XXX XXXX

Bit pattern of ID

### Wakeup/Sleep Mode

Press the Mode soft key and then the **Wakeup/Sleep** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument triggers by detecting the specified type.

**Set the trigger mode to Wakeup/Sleep**

Type: Wakeup Pulse — When a pulse in the dominant period between 250  $\mu$ s and 2500  $\mu$ s is detected  
 Type: Wakeup — When a transition from a state in which there is no clock after a sleep detection to a state in which there is a clock is detected  
 Type: Sleep Frame — When the sleep frame ID value is 1F (hexadecimal)  
 Type: Sleep — When 5 ms elapses after a transition is made from a state in which there is a clock to a state in which there is no clock

## Level for Detecting Trigger Source States (Level, Hysteresis)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level or hysteresis.

- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
- To set the level, you can drag the level display line on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between level and hysteresis.

## 2.18 Triggering on SENT Signals (Option)

This section explains the following settings for triggering on SENT signals:

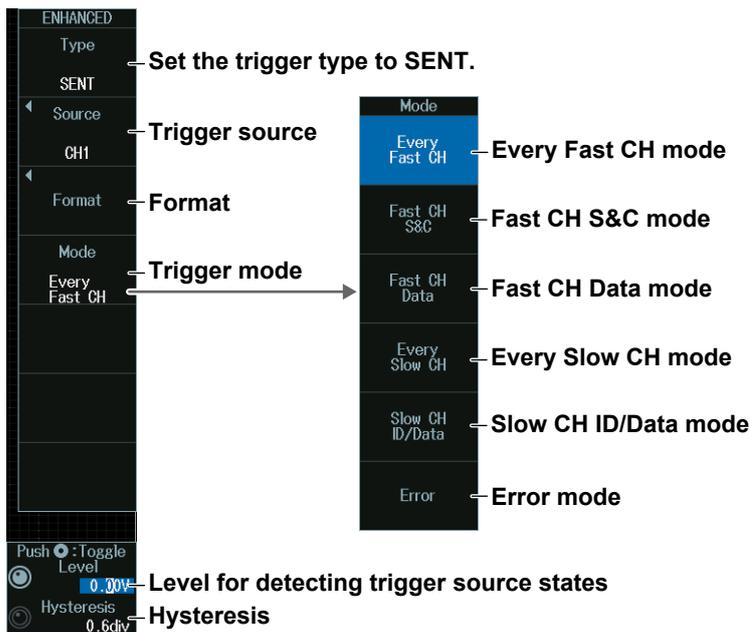
- Trigger source
  - HF rejection, source bit
  - Level and hysteresis for detecting trigger source states
  - Trigger type
  - Trigger conditions
  - Format
- ▶ “SENT Trigger [ENHANCED, option],” “HF Rejection (HF Rejection)” in the Features Guide

### Auto Setup

The instrument can automatically set the source format, level, and hysteresis from the received SENT bus signal and trigger on it. For details, see section 12.6.

### ENHANCED SENT Menu

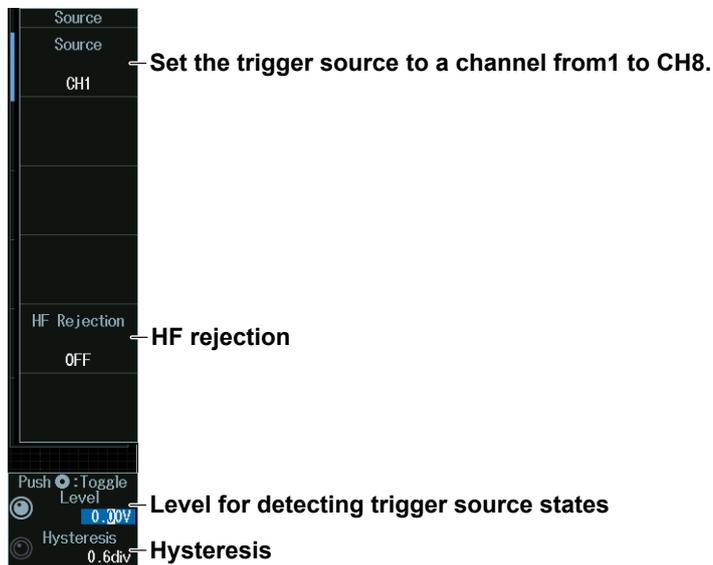
1. Press **ENHANCED** to display the ENHANCED menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the ENHANCED menu from TRIGGER on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. From the setup menu that appears, select **SENT** to display the following menu.



### Trigger Source (Source)

Press the **Source** soft key. The menu that appears varies depending on the specified trigger source.

#### When the Trigger Source Is a Channel from CH1 to CH8

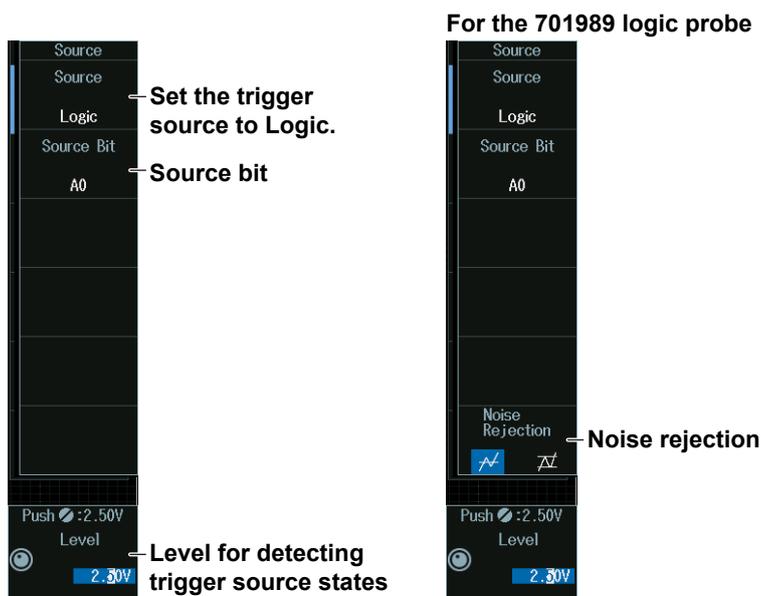


#### Note

The available trigger source settings vary depending on the model.

- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4

#### When the Trigger Source Is Logic

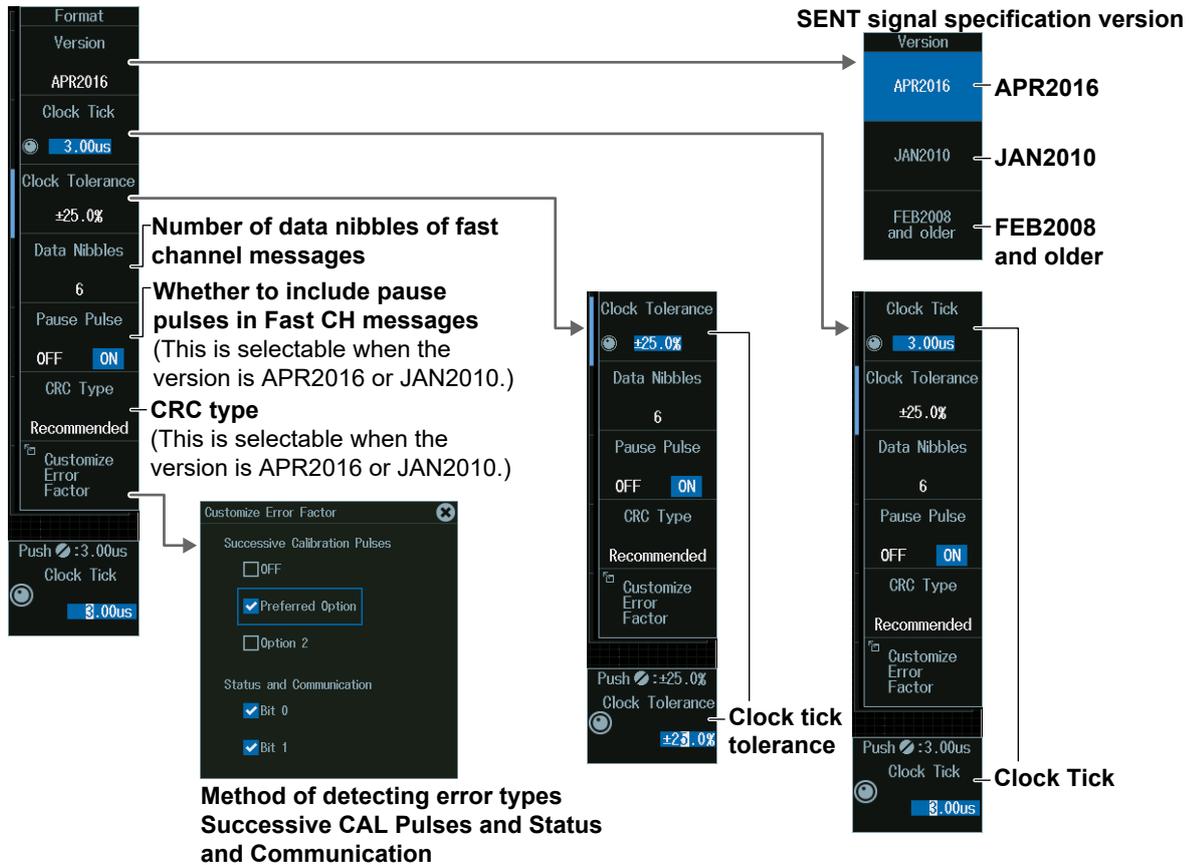


#### Note

The following source bit display applies to models with the /L32 option.  
C0 to C7 (LOGIC port C), D0 to D7 (LOGIC port D)

## Format (Format)

Press the **Format** soft key to display the following menu.



## Setting the Clock Tick (Clock Tick)

1. Press the **Clock Tick** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to display the waveforms that have been found. You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu



## Clock Tick Tolerance (Clock Tolerance)

1. Press the **Clock Tolerance** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to display the waveforms that have been found. You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu

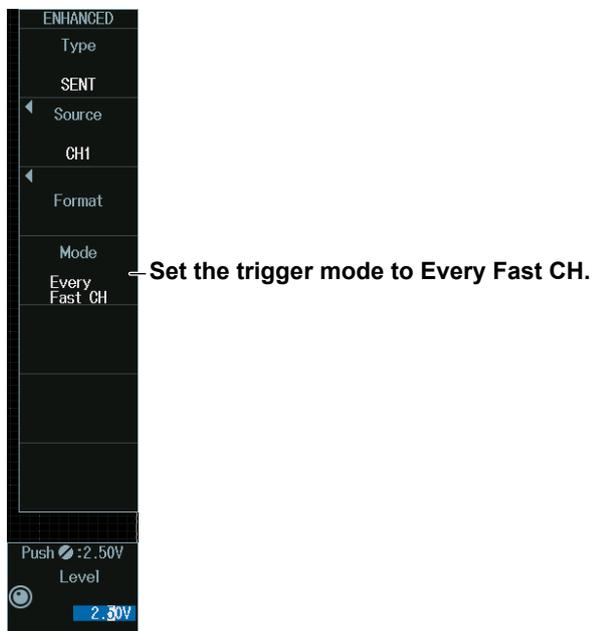


## Trigger Mode (Mode)

### Every Fast CH mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Every Fast CH** soft key to display the following menu.

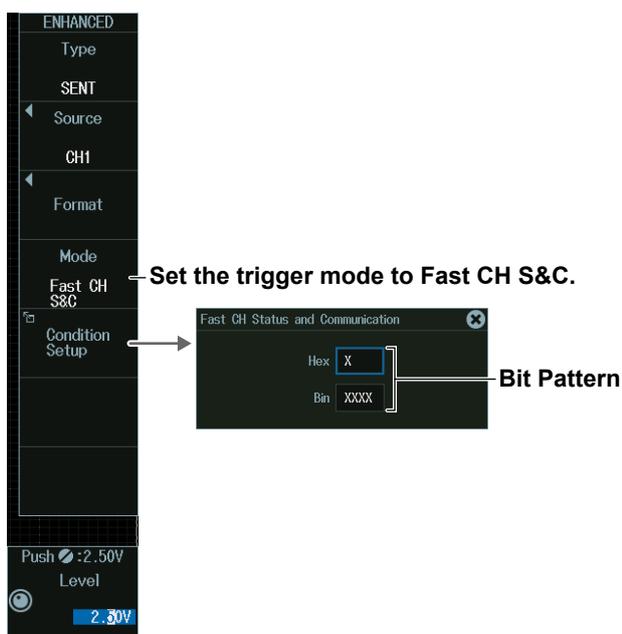
The instrument triggers when it detects a fast channel message.



### Fast CH S&C mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Fast CH S&C** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument triggers on the status and communication bit pattern.



## 2.18 Triggering on SENT Signals (Option)

### Fast CH Data mode

1. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Fast CH Data** soft key to display the following menu.
2. Press the **Condition Setup** soft key. The screen that appears varies depending on the specified fast channel data type.

The instrument triggers on the AND of fast channel Data conditions. Items whose check boxes are selected are used as trigger conditions.

**Set the trigger mode to Fast CH Data.**

**When the data type is nibble**

**When the data type is User**

**Comparison condition Data pattern**

**Select the check boxes for the Comparison condition Reference Values (a and b)**

**Data type**

**When the data type is User**

**User Data Type Setup**

**nibble order Data size<sup>1</sup>**

**Select the check boxes for the items that you want to use as comparison conditions.**

**When the version is APR2016**

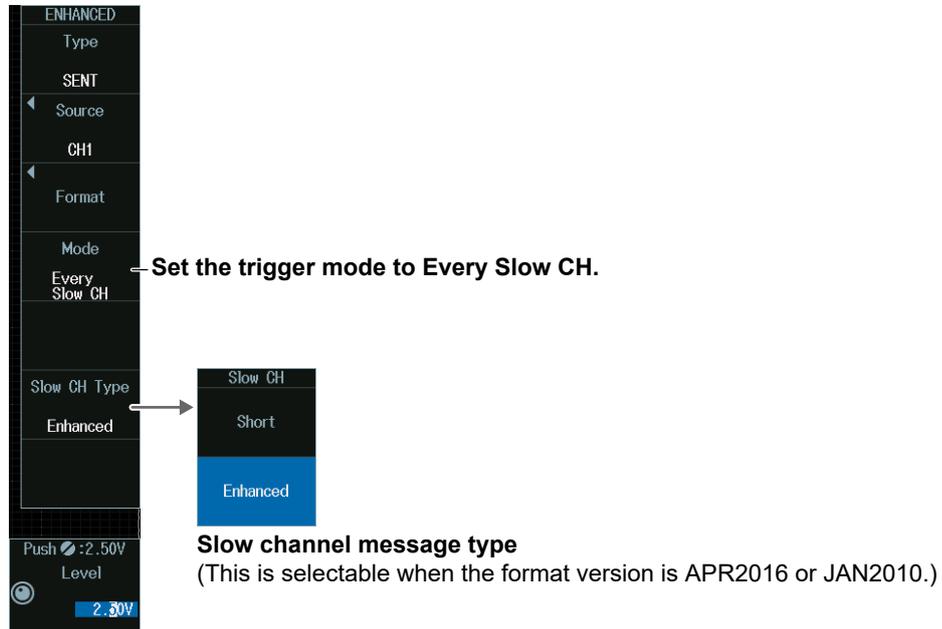
**Select this check box in the case of a multiplexed signal<sup>2</sup>**

- 1 The total number of bits for Data1 to Data4 is up to 24. If you try to exceed the total number of bits, the data size of other pieces of Data is reduced.
- 2 When the check box for Multiplexing is selected, the Size of Data1 is fixed to 4 to correspond to FC.

## Every Slow CH mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Every Slow CH** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument triggers when it detects an “Every Slow CH” message.



### Slow CH ID/Data mode

1. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Slow CH ID/Data** soft key.
2. Press the **Condition Setup** soft key. The menu that appears varies depending on the specified slow channel message type.

The instrument triggers on the AND of the slow channel ID and Data conditions. Items whose check boxes are selected are used as trigger conditions. Set ID and data reference values a and b in Hex (hexadecimal) or Dec (decimal) according to the input format setting.

- **When the Message Type Is Short**

Set the trigger mode to Slow CH ID/Data.

**When the data comparison condition is True or False**

**When the data comparison condition is Data = a; Data ≠ a; a ≤ Data; Data ≤ b; a ≤ Data ≤ b; or Data < a, b < Data**

**Setting ID/Data Reference Values a and b**

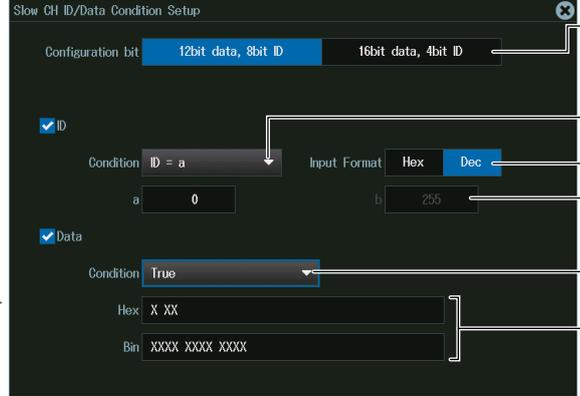
Input format setting	Hex	Dec	
Selectable range for reference values a and b	ID	0 to F	0 to 15
	Data	00 to FF	00 to 255

- When the Message Type Is Enhanced
  - When the ID and Data Message Formats Are Set to “12bit data, 8bit ID”

Set the trigger mode to Slow CH ID/Data.

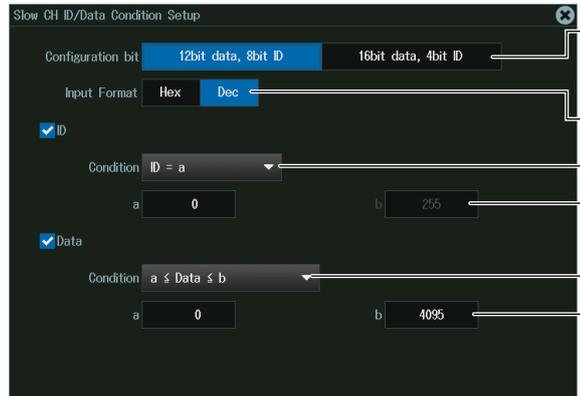


**When the data comparison condition is True or False**



- Set the ID and data message formats to 12bit data and 8bit ID.
- ID comparison condition
- ID input format
- ID reference values (a, b)
- Data comparison condition
- Data pattern

**When the data comparison condition is Data = a; Data ≠ a; a ≤ Data; Data ≤ b; a ≤ Data ≤ b; or Data < a, b < Data**



- Set the ID and data message formats to 12bit data and 8bit ID.
- ID and Data input formats
- ID comparison condition
- ID reference values (a, b)
- Data comparison condition
- Data reference values (a, b)

**Setting ID/Data Reference Values a and b**

Input format setting	Hex	Dec
Selectable range for reference values a and b	ID	00 to FF
	Data	000 to FFF
		0 to 255
		0 to 4095

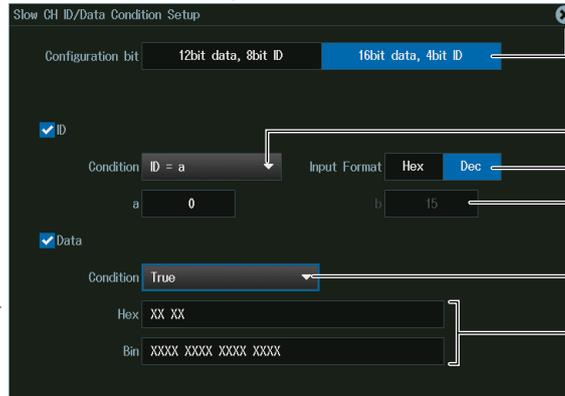
## 2.18 Triggering on SENT Signals (Option)

- When the ID and Data Message Formats Are Set to “16bit data, 4bit ID”

Set the trigger mode to Slow CH ID/Data.



### When the data comparison condition is True or False



Set the ID and data message formats to 16bit data and 4bit ID.

ID comparison condition

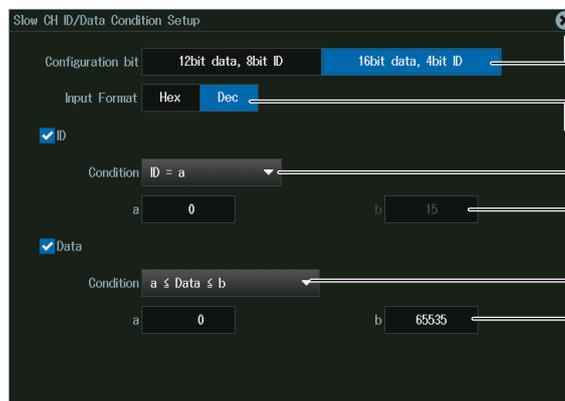
ID input format

ID reference values (a, b)

Data comparison condition

Data pattern

### When the data comparison condition is Data = a; Data ≠ a; a ≤ Data; Data ≤ b; a ≤ Data ≤ b; or Data < a, b < Data



Set the ID and data message formats to 16bit data and 4bit ID.

ID and Data input formats

ID comparison condition

ID reference values (a, b)

Data comparison condition

Data reference values (a, b)

### Setting ID/Data Reference Values a and b

Input format setting	Hex	Dec
Selectable range for reference values a and b	ID 0 to F	0 to 15
	Data 0000 to FFFF	0 to 65535

## Error Mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Error** soft key to display the following menu. The instrument triggers when it detects various types of errors.

**Set the trigger mode to Error.**

**Error trigger conditions**

Error Type OR	Setting	Description
Successive CAL Pulses	OFF / ON	Turns Successive CAL Pulses <sup>1</sup> error detection on or off. When there is a difference of 1/64 tick or more in the next or previous SYNC/CAL
Nibble Number	OFF / ON	Turns Nibble Number error detection on or off. When the number of nibbles in a single message does not match the specified value
Nibble Data Value	OFF / ON	Turns Nibble Data Value error detection on or off. When any of the Status and Communication, Data, and CRC tick counts is abnormal
Fast CH CRC	OFF / ON	Turns Fast CH CRC error detection on or off. When a Fast CH CRC error is detected
Status and Communication	OFF / ON	Turns Status and Communication <sup>2</sup> error detection on or off. Status and Communication bit 0 or bit 1 is 1
Slow CH CRC	OFF / ON	Turns Slow CH CRC error detection on or off. When a Slow CH CRC error is detected

1 Not selectable when Successive Calibration Pulses is set to OFF for Customize Error Factor in "Setting the Format (Format) (page 2-68)

2 Selectable when the Bit 0 or Bit 1 check box is selected under Status and Communication for Customize Error Factor in "Setting the Format (Format) (page 2-68)

**Slow channel message type**  
(This is selectable when the format version is APR2016 or JAN2010.)

## Level for Detecting Trigger Source States (Level, Hysteresis)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level or hysteresis.

- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
- To set the level, you can drag the level display line on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu

**When the trigger source is set to CH1 to CH8**

Level: 0.30V  
Hysteresis: 0.6div

Level for detecting trigger source states  
Hysteresis

Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between level and hysteresis.

**When the trigger source is LOGIC**

Level: 2.30V

Level for detecting trigger source states

## 2.19 Triggering on UART Signals (Option)

This section explains the following settings for triggering on UART signals:

- Trigger source
  - Bit rate, bit order, polarity, HF rejection, source bit, sample point
- Format
- Level and hysteresis for detecting trigger source states
- Trigger type
- Trigger conditions

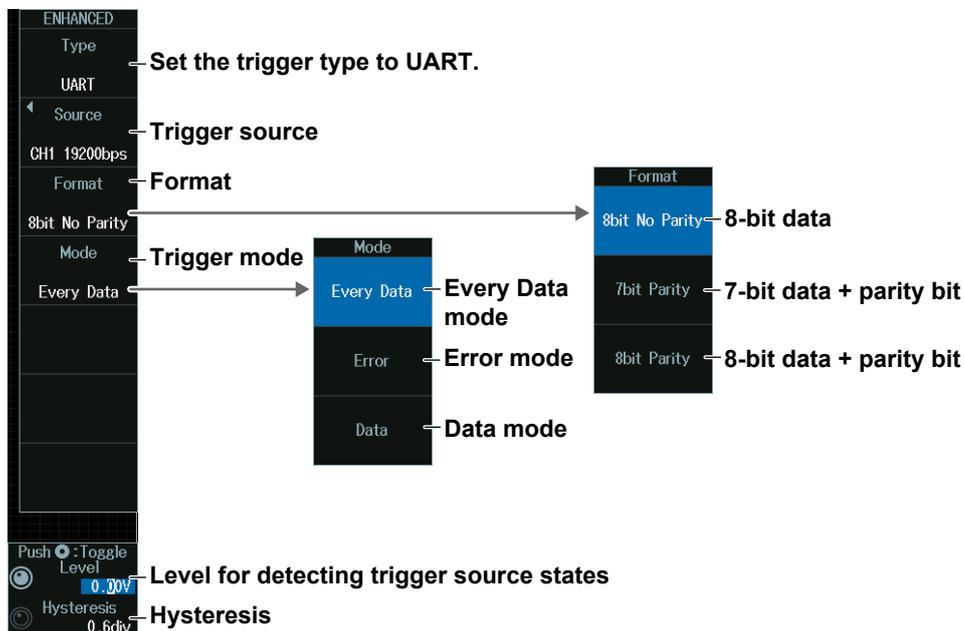
► “UART Trigger [ENHANCED, option],” “HF Rejection (HF Rejection)”  
in the Features Guide

### Auto Setup

The instrument can automatically set the trigger source level and bit rate from the received UART signal and trigger on them. For details, see section 12.7.

### ENHANCED UART Menu

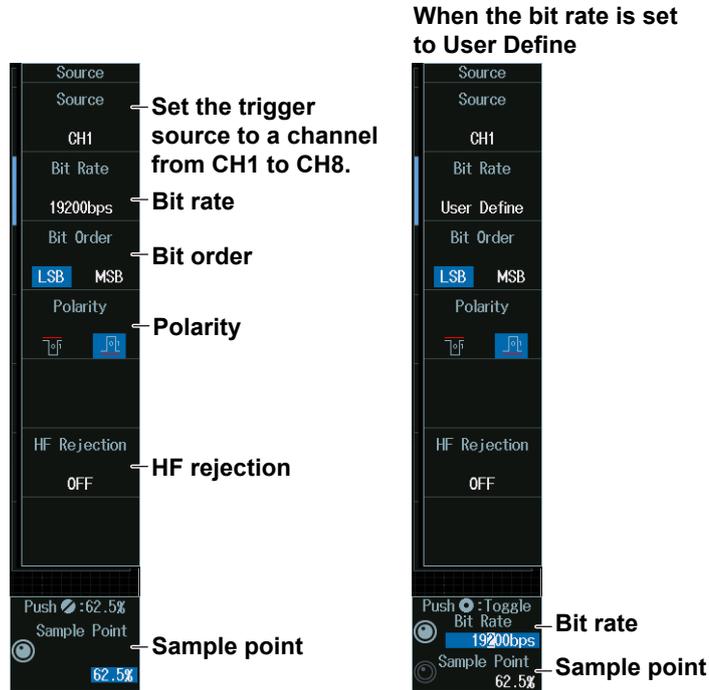
1. Press **ENHANCED** to display the ENHANCED menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the ENHANCED menu from TRIGGER on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. From the setup menu that appears, select **UART** to display the following menu.



## Trigger Source (Source)

Press the **Source** soft key to display the following menu..

### When the Trigger Source Is a Channel from CH1 to CH8



### Note

The available trigger source settings vary depending on the model.

- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4

## 2.19 Triggering on UART Signals (Option)

### When the Trigger Source Is Logic

The figure shows four screenshots of the logic probe configuration menu, illustrating different settings for the trigger source and bit rate.

- When the Trigger Source Is Logic:** The 'Source' is set to 'Logic'. The 'Source Bit' is 'A0'. The 'Bit Rate' is '19200bps'. The 'Bit Order' is 'MSB LSB'. The 'Polarity' is set to 'Low'. The 'Sample Point' is '62.5%'.
- For the 701989 logic probe:** The 'Source' is 'Logic'. The 'Source Bit' is 'A0'. The 'Bit Rate' is '19200bps'. The 'Bit Order' is 'MSB LSB'. The 'Polarity' is 'Low'. The 'Noise Rejection' is set to 'Off'. The 'Sample Point' is '62.5%'.
- When the bit rate is set to User Define:** The 'Bit Rate' is set to 'User Define'. The 'Sample Point' is '62.5%'.
- When the bit rate is set to User Define:** The 'Bit Rate' is set to 'User Define'. The 'Sample Point' is '62.5%'.

### Note

The following source bit display applies to models with the /L32 option. C0 to C7 (LOGIC port C), D0 to D7 (LOGIC port D)

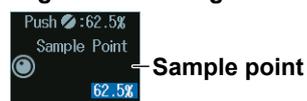
## Sample Point (Sample Point) and Bit Rate (Bit Rate)

### When the bit rate is not set to User Define

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the bit rate and sample point.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the pop-up list that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu

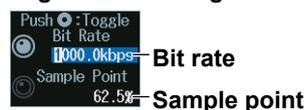


### When the bit rate is set to User Define

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the sample point.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the pop-up list that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



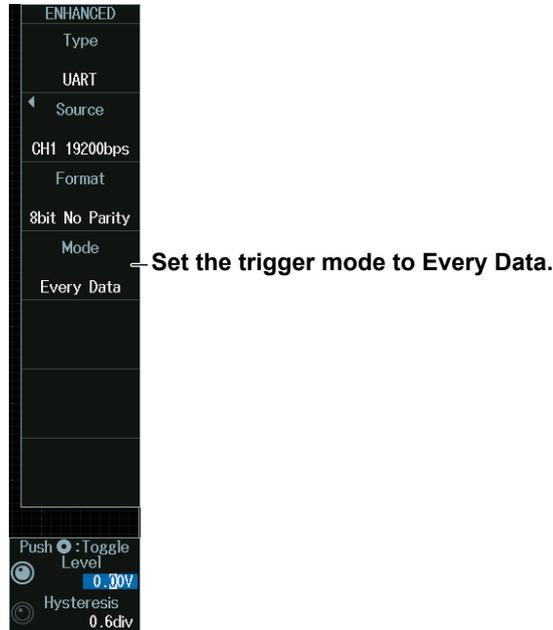
Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between bit rate and sample point.

## Trigger Mode (Mode)

### Every Data mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Every Data** soft key to display the following menu.

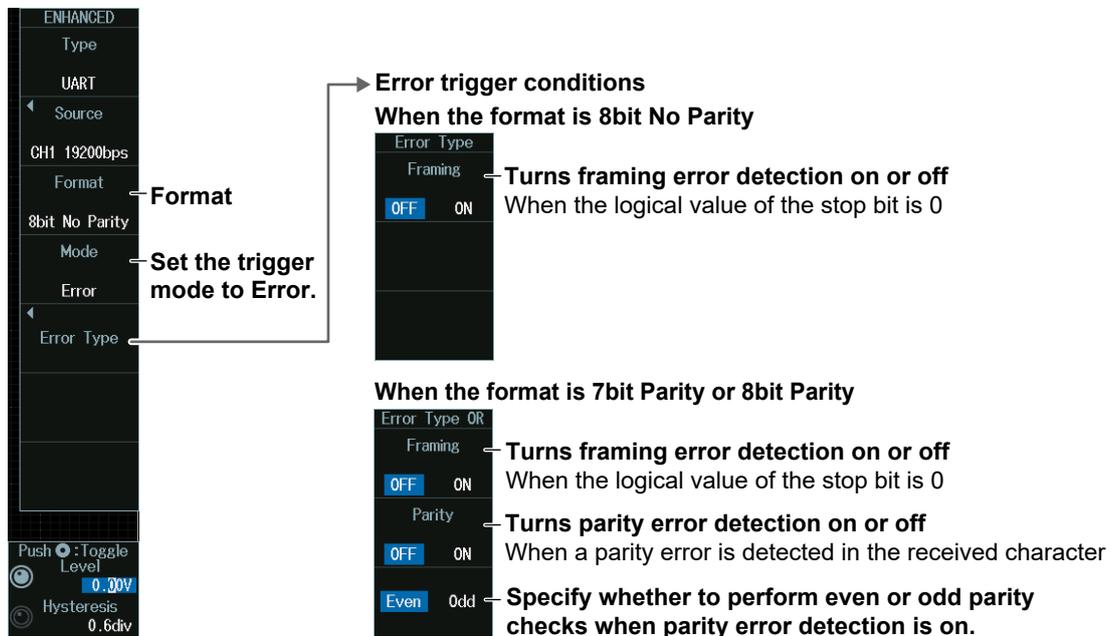
The instrument triggers on all data.



### Error Mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Error** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument triggers when it detects various types of errors.



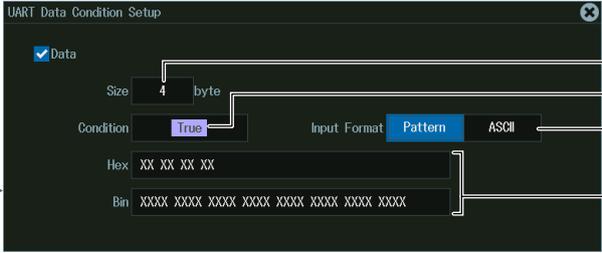
### Data Mode

1. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Data** soft key.
2. Press the **Condition Setup** soft key to display the following menu.  
The instrument triggers when the data pattern is matched.

**Set the trigger mode to Data.**

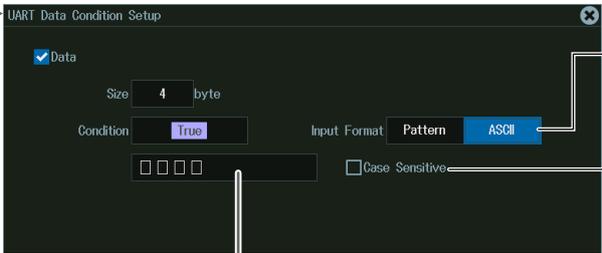


**When the data pattern input format is Pattern**



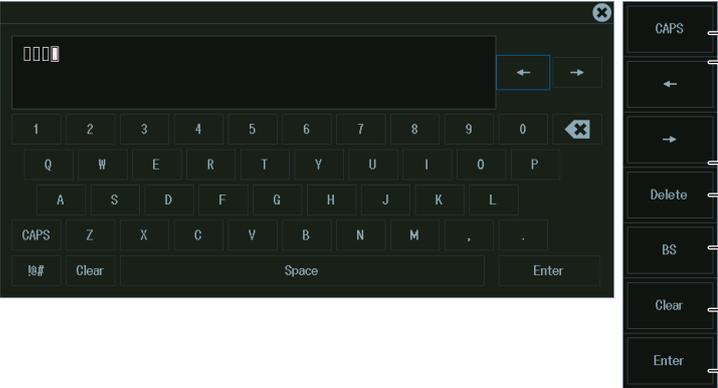
- Data length
- Comparison condition (always True)
- Set the data pattern input format to Pattern.
- Data pattern

**When the data pattern input format is ASCII**



- Set the data pattern input format to ASCII.
- Case-sensitive setting  
Select the check box to enable the setting.

**Data pattern**  
Use the keyboard that appears on the screen.



- Switches between uppercase and lowercase
- Moves the cursor
- Deletes the character at the cursor position
- Deletes the previous character
- Deletes all the characters you have entered
- Confirms the characters that have been entered

### Data Pattern

You can enter up to 4 characters.

- You can switch between uppercase and lowercase to enter alphabet characters. However, case is distinguished only when the Case Sensitive check box is selected.
- The special characters CR, LF, SP, and NUL are shown in single quotation marks. These special characters are counted as one character including the single quotation marks. Example: AB'CR'D (four characters), XY'SP' (three characters), P'NUL'WU (four characters)
- The entered string, including the character codes for the case, is retained even if the input format is changed to Bin or Hex. It is also retained when the format is changed from Bin or Hex to ASCII.
- If a character code that does not exist on the keyboard is entered when the input format is Bin or Hex and then the input format is changed to ASCII, a white square is displayed in the corresponding position.

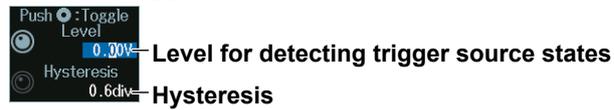
## Level for Detecting Trigger Source States (Level, Hysteresis)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level or hysteresis.

- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
- To set the level, you can drag the level display line on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu

#### When the trigger source is set to CH1 to CH8



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between level and hysteresis.

#### When the trigger source is LOGIC



## 2.20 Triggering on I<sup>2</sup>C Bus Signals (Option)

This section explains the following settings for triggering on I<sup>2</sup>C bus signals:

- SCL source and SDA source  
HF rejection, source bit, level and hysteresis for detecting SCL and SDA source states
- Trigger type  
Trigger conditions

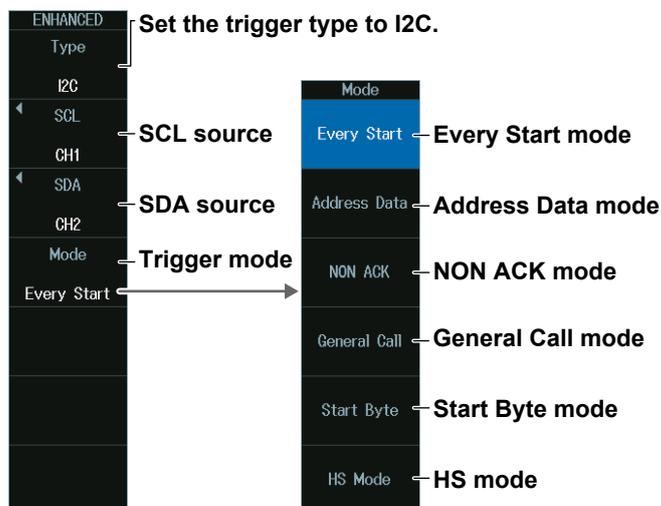
► “I<sup>2</sup>C Bus Trigger [ENHANCED, option],” “HF Rejection (HF Rejection)”  
in the Features Guide

### Auto Setup

The instrument can automatically set the trigger source level from the received I<sup>2</sup>C bus signal and trigger on it. For details, see section 12.8.

### ENHANCED I2C Menu

1. Press **ENHANCED** to display the ENHANCED menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the ENHANCED menu from TRIGGER on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. From the setup menu that appears, select **I2C** to display the following menu.

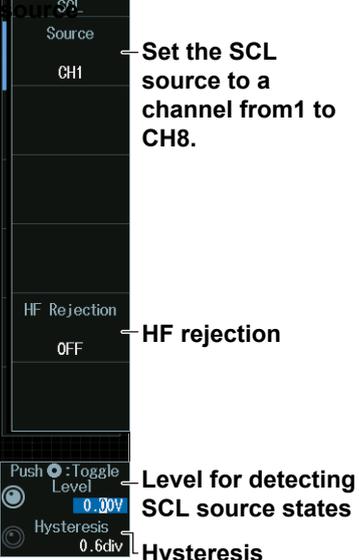


### SCL Source (SCL), SDA Source (SDA)

Press the **SCL** or **SDA** soft key. The menu that appears varies depending on the specified source.

#### When the SCL Source or SDA Source Is a Channel from CH1 to CH8

**SCL**



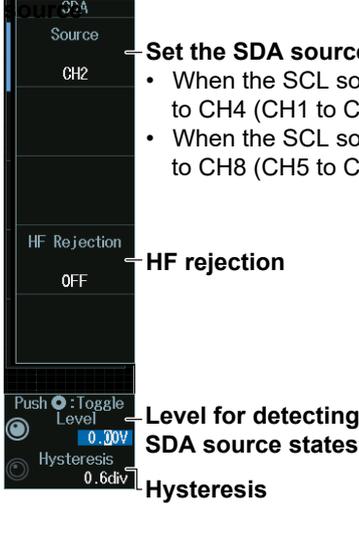
Source  
CH1

HF Rejection  
OFF

Level for detecting SCL source states: 0.30V

Hysteresis: 0.6div

**SDA**



Source  
CH2

HF Rejection  
OFF

Level for detecting SDA source states: 0.30V

Hysteresis: 0.6div

**Set the SCL source to a channel from 1 to CH8.**

**Set the SDA source.**

- When the SCL source is a channel from CH1 to CH4 (CH1 to CH4)
- When the SCL source is a channel from CH5 to CH8 (CH5 to CH8)

**HF rejection**

#### Note

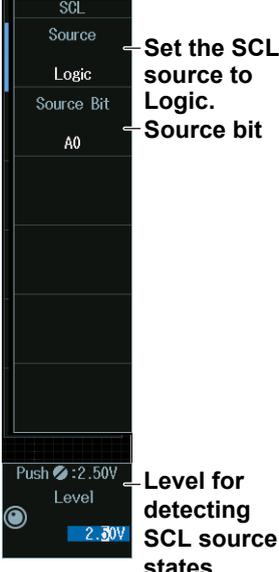
The available trigger source settings vary depending on the model.

- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4

#### When the SCL Source Is Logic

When the SCL source is set to Logic, the SDA source is fixed to Logic.

**SCL source**

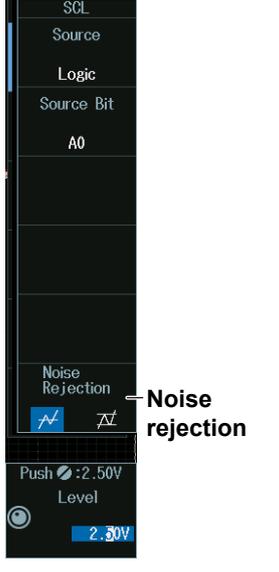


Source  
Logic

Source Bit  
A0

Level for detecting SCL source states: 2.30V

**SCL source**  
For the 701989 Logic Probe



Source  
Logic

Source Bit  
A0

Noise rejection

Level for detecting SCL source states: 2.30V

**SDA Source**

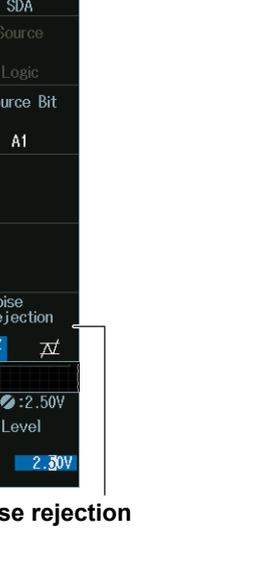


Source  
Logic

Source Bit  
A1

Level for detecting SCL source states: 2.30V

**SDA Source**  
For the 701989 Logic Probe



Source  
Logic

Source Bit  
A1

Noise rejection

Noise rejection

**Set the SCL source to Logic.**

**Source bit**

**Cannot be used**

**Noise rejection**

## 2.20 Triggering on I2C Bus Signals (Option)

### Note

The following source bit display applies to models with the /L32 option.  
C0 to C7 (LOGIC port C), D0 to D7 (LOGIC port D)

### Level for Detecting SCL and SDA Source States (Level, Hysteresis)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level or hysteresis.

- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
- To set the level, you can drag the level display line on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu

When the SCL or SDA source is set to CH1 to CH8



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between level and hysteresis.

When the SCL or SDA source is Logic



### Trigger Mode (Mode)

#### Every Start Mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Every Start** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument triggers when it detects a start condition.



## Address Data mode

1. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Address Data** soft key.
2. Press the **Condition Setup** soft key to display the following menu.  
The instrument triggers on the AND of the start, address pattern, data pattern, and comparison start position conditions. Items whose check boxes are selected are used as trigger conditions.

### • When Address Type Is 7bit Address

**Set the trigger mode to AddressData.**

**When the Include R/W is set to OFF**

**Start** (always selected)

**Set the address type to 7bit Address.**

**Read/Write bit state**

**Address pattern**

**Data length**

**Comparison start position**  
If you do not set the comparison start point, the data trigger condition is met when the input signal data pattern first matches the specified data pattern.

**Comparison condition**

**Data pattern**

**Set the value of up to four consecutive bytes of data from the comparison start position as a trigger condition**

**When the Include R/W is set to ON**

**Read/Write bit state**  
(Display only as the address pattern contains an R/W bit)

**Address pattern**  
(Set this including R/W bit.)

**Comparison start position**  
If you do not set the comparison start point, the data trigger condition is met when the input signal data pattern first matches the specified data pattern.

**Comparison condition**

**Data pattern**

**Set the value of up to four consecutive bytes of data from the comparison start position as a trigger condition**

**Whether to include the R/W bit**  
Specify whether to include the R/W bit (ON) or omit it (OFF) when setting the address pattern.

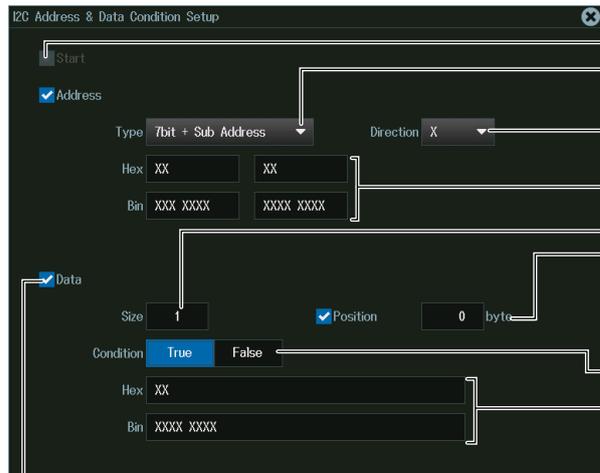
### Note

R/W bit inclusion (Include R/W) can also be set by using Analyzing and Searching I2C Bus Signals and then Bus Setup (Setup). Settings are synchronized. For details on I2C bus signal analysis, see section 12.8.

## 2.20 Triggering on I2C Bus Signals (Option)

- When Address Type Is 7bit+Sub Address

### When the Include R/W is set to OFF

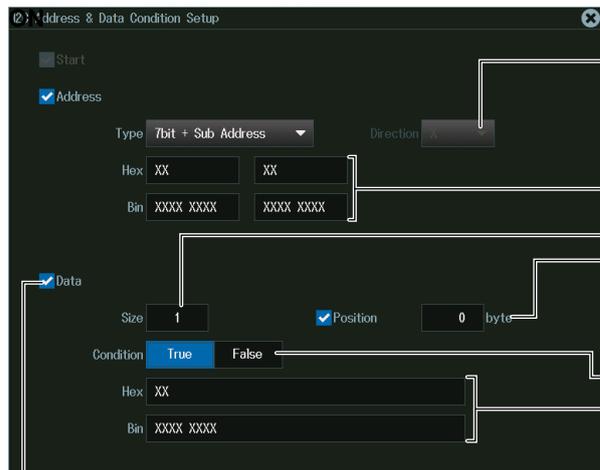


The screenshot shows the 'I2C Address & Data Condition Setup' dialog. The 'Start' checkbox is checked. Under 'Address', 'Type' is '7bit + Sub Address', 'Direction' is 'X', and 'Hex' fields contain 'XX' and 'XX'. Under 'Data', 'Size' is '1', 'Position' is checked with '0' bytes, and 'Hex' fields contain 'XX' and 'Bin' fields contain 'XXXX XXXX'. The 'Condition' is set to 'True'.

**Start** (always selected)  
**Set the address type to 7bit + Sub Address.**  
**Read/Write bit state**  
**Address pattern**  
**Data length**  
**Comparison start position**  
If you do not set the comparison start point, the data trigger condition is met when the input signal data pattern first matches the specified data pattern.  
**Comparison condition**  
**Data pattern**

Set the value of up to four consecutive bytes of data from the comparison start position as a trigger condition

### When the Include R/W is set to



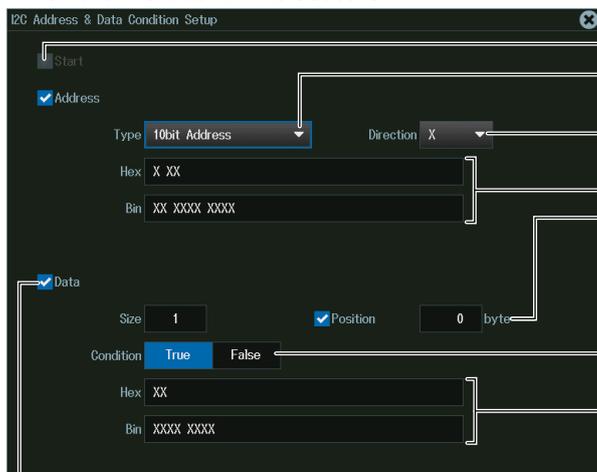
The screenshot shows the 'I2C Address & Data Condition Setup' dialog. The 'Start' checkbox is unchecked. Under 'Address', 'Type' is '7bit + Sub Address', 'Direction' is 'X', and 'Hex' fields contain 'XX' and 'XX'. Under 'Data', 'Size' is '1', 'Position' is checked with '0' bytes, and 'Hex' fields contain 'XX' and 'Bin' fields contain 'XXXX XXXX'. The 'Condition' is set to 'True'.

**Read/Write bit state**  
(Display only as the address pattern contains an R/W bit)  
**Address pattern**  
(Set this including R/W bit.)  
**Data length**  
**Comparison start position**  
If you do not set the comparison start point, the data trigger condition is met when the input signal data pattern first matches the specified data pattern.  
**Comparison condition**  
**Data pattern**

Set the value of up to four consecutive bytes of data from the comparison start position as a trigger condition

• When Address Type Is 10bit Address

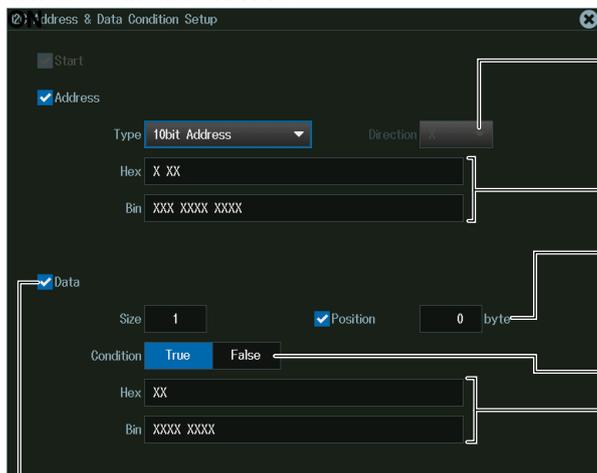
When the Include R/W is set to OFF



- Start (always selected)
- Set the address type to 10bit Address.
- Read/Write bit state
- Address pattern
- Comparison start position  
If you do not set the comparison start point, the data trigger condition is met when the input signal data pattern first matches the specified data pattern.
- Comparison condition
- Data pattern

Set the value of up to four consecutive bytes of data from the comparison start position as a trigger condition

When the Include R/W is set to



- Read/Write bit state  
(Display only as the address pattern contains an R/W bit)
- Address pattern  
(Set this including R/W bit.)
- Comparison start position  
If you do not set the comparison start point, the data trigger condition is met when the input signal data pattern first matches the specified data pattern.
- Comparison condition
- Data pattern

Set the value of up to four consecutive bytes of data from the comparison start position as a trigger condition

NON ACK Mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **NON ACK** soft key. The following menu appears.

The instrument triggers when the acknowledgment bit is Nack.



- Set the trigger mode to NON ACK.
- Whether to make the acknowledge bit of each signal a trigger source
  - Start byte
  - HS mode master code
  - Read access byte

### General Call Mode

1. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **General Call** soft key.
2. Press the **Condition Setup** soft key to display the following menu.  
 When Second Byte is set to Master Address, the instrument triggers on the AND of the general call address (0000 0000), second byte address pattern, data pattern, and comparison start position conditions.  
 Otherwise, the instrument triggers on the AND of general call address (0000 0000) and Second Byte address pattern conditions. Items whose check boxes are selected are used as trigger conditions.

**Set the trigger mode to General Call.**

**When the address type is "0000 0100" or "0000"**

- General Call (always selected)
- Address type

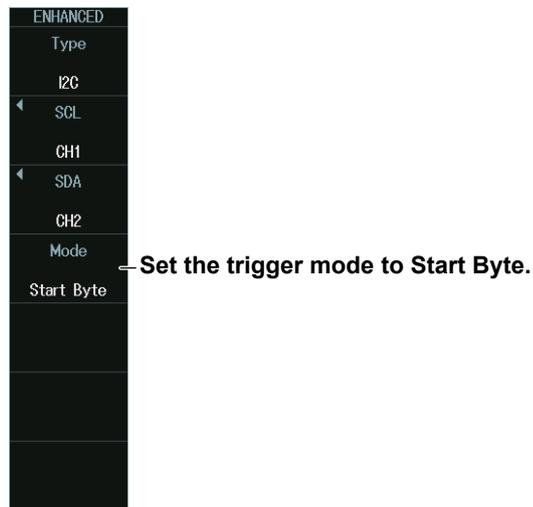
**When the address type is Master**

- Address type
- Address pattern
- Data length
- Comparison start position
- Comparison condition
- Data pattern

## Start Byte Mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Start Byte** soft key to display the following menu.

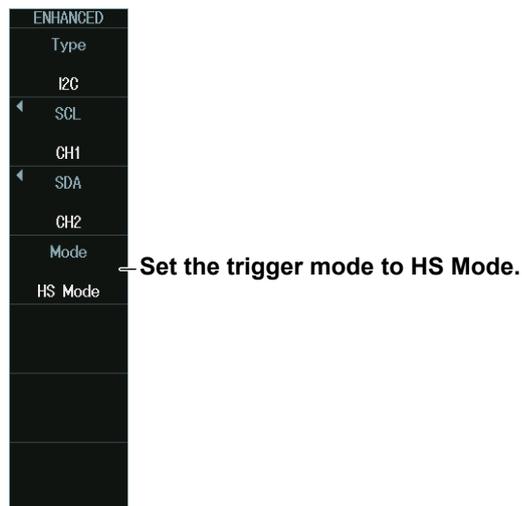
The instrument triggers when it detects the start byte master code.



## HS mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **HS Mode** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument triggers when it detects a high speed mode master code.



---

## 2.21 Triggering on SPI Bus Signals (Option)

This section explains the following settings for triggering on SPI bus signals:

- Wiring system (Mode)
- Clock source  
Polarity, HF rejection, source bit, level and hysteresis for detecting clock source edges
- Data source  
HF rejection, source bit, level and hysteresis for detecting data source states
- Chip select source  
Active state, source bit, level and hysteresis for detecting chip select source states
- Trigger conditions

▶ [“SPI Bus Trigger \[ENHANCED, option\],” “HF Rejection \(HF Rejection\)” in the Features Guide](#)

### Auto Setup

The instrument can automatically set the source level from the received SPI bus signal and trigger on it. For details, see section 12.9.

### ENHANCED SPI Menu

1. Press **ENHANCED** to display the ENHANCED menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** () in the upper left of the screen and select the ENHANCED menu from TRIGGER on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. From the setup menu that appears, select **SPI**

**ENHANCED**

- Type: SPI
- Mode: 3 Wire
- Clock
- CH1
- Data1
- CH2
- CS(SS)
- CH4L
- Condition Setup

**When the wiring system is 3 Wire (the trigger condition is Data1 only)**

**SPI Data Condition Setup**

- Bit Order: MSB
- Data1:
- Size: 1 byte
- Position: 0 byte
- Condition: True
- Hex: XX
- Bin: XXXX XXXX

**ENHANCED**

- Type: SPI
- Mode: 4 Wire
- Clock
- CH1
- Data1
- CH2
- Data2
- CH3
- CS(SS)
- CH4L
- Condition Setup

**When the wiring system is 4 Wire (the trigger conditions are Data1 and Data2)**

**SPI Data Condition Setup**

- Bit Order: MSB
- Data1:
- Data2:
- Size: 1 byte
- Position: 0 byte
- Condition: True
- Hex: XX
- Bin: XXXX XXXX

### Clock Source (Clock)

Press the **Clock** soft key. The menu that appears varies depending on the specified clock source.

#### When the Clock Source Is a Channel from CH1 to CH8

**Clock**

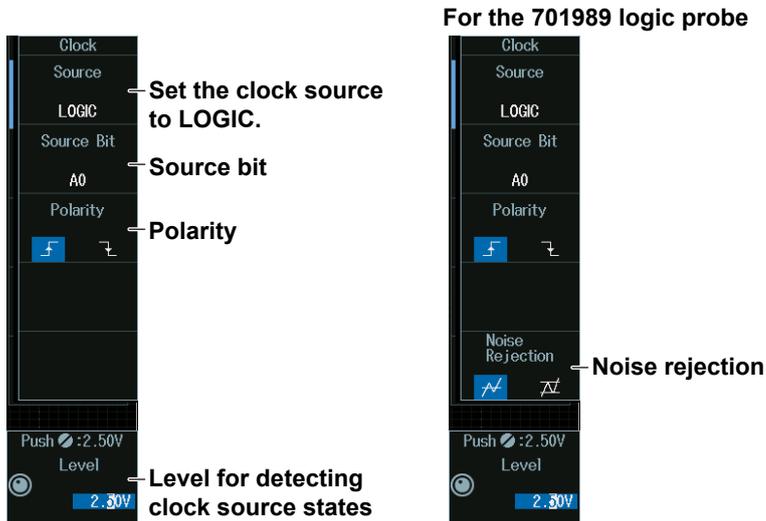
- Source: CH1
- Polarity:
- HF Rejection: OFF
- Push: Toggle Level
- Hysteresis: 0.6div

## 2.21 Triggering on SPI Bus Signals (Option)

### Note

- The available trigger source settings vary depending on the model.
- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8
  - The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4

### When the Clock Source Is LOGIC



### Note

The following source bit display applies to models with the /L32 option.  
C0 to C7 (LOGIC port C), D0 to D7 (LOGIC port D)

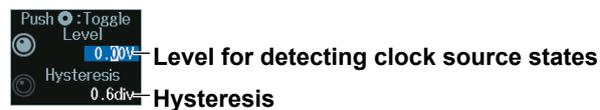
### Level for Detecting Clock Source States (Level, Hysteresis)

Turn the jog shuttle to set the level or hysteresis.

- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
- To set the level, you can drag the level display line on the screen.

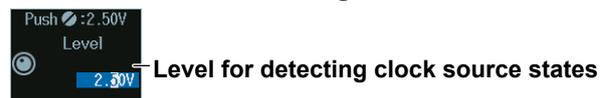
#### Jog shuttle setting menu

##### When the clock source is set to CH1 to CH8



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between level and hysteresis.

##### When the clock source is Logic



### Data 1 Source (Data1), Data 2 Source (Data2)

Press the **Data1** or **Data2** soft key. The menu that appears varies depending on the specified data source. This section gives an explanation of the settings when the wiring system is 4 Wire. If the wire system is set to 3 Wire, there will be no data 2 source (Data2) menu.

#### When the Clock Source Is a Channel from CH1 to CH8 (for 4 Wire)

##### Data1 source

**Set the Data 1 source.**

- When the clock source is a channel from CH1 to CH4, set the source to CH1 to CH4.
- When the clock source is a channel from CH5 to CH8, set the source to CH5 to CH8.

**HF rejection**

**Level for detecting data 1 source states**

**Hysteresis**

##### Data2 source

**Set the Data 2 source.**

- When the clock source is a channel from CH1 to CH4, set the source to CH1 to CH4.
- When the clock source is a channel from CH5 to CH8, set the source to CH5 to CH8.

**HF rejection**

**Level for detecting data 2 source states**

**Hysteresis**

#### Note

The available data source settings vary depending on the model.

- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4

#### When the Clock Source Is Logic (for 4 Wire)

When the clock source is set to Logic, data 1 source and data 2 source are fixed to Logic.

##### Data1 source

**Cannot be used**

**Source bit**

**Level for detecting data 1 source states**

##### Data1 source For the 701989 Logic Probe

**Noise rejection**

**Level for detecting data 1 source states**

##### Data2 source

**Cannot be used**

**Level for detecting data 2 source states**

##### Data2 source For the 701989 Logic Probe

**Noise rejection**

#### Note

The following source bit display applies to models with the /L32 option.  
C0 to C7 (LOGIC port C), D0 to D7 (LOGIC port D)

## Level for Detecting Data 1 Source and Data 2 Source States (LEVEL, Hysteresis)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level or hysteresis.

- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
- To set the level, you can drag the level display line on the screen.

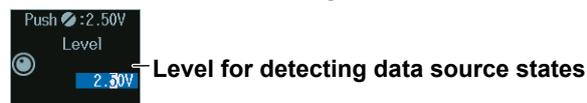
### Jog shuttle setting menu

When the data source is set to CH1 to CH8



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between level and hysteresis.

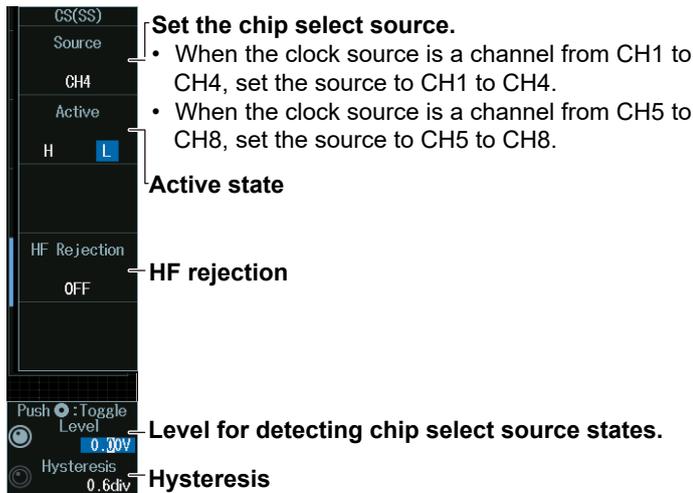
When the data source is Logic



## Chip Select Source (CS (SS))

Press the **CS (SS)** soft key. The menu that appears varies depending on the specified chip select source.

When the Clock Source Is a Channel from CH1 to CH8



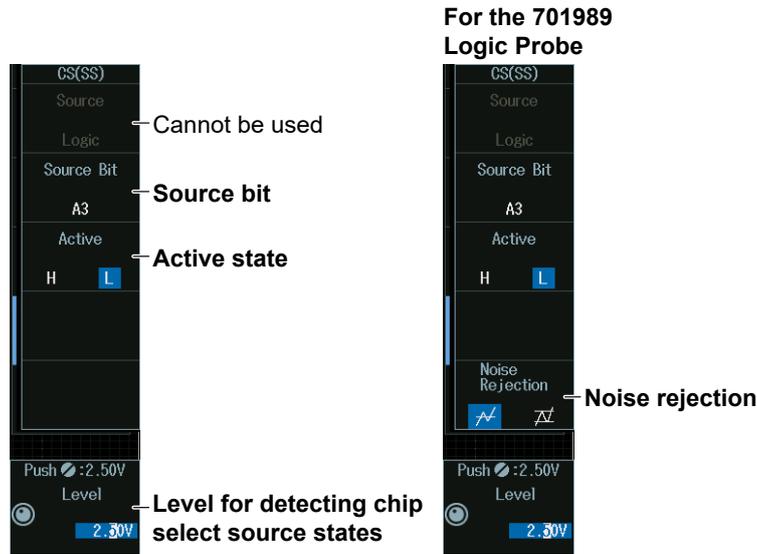
### Note

The available data source settings vary depending on the model.

- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4

**When the Clock Source Is Logic**

When the clock source is set to Logic, the chip select source is fixed to Logic.



**Note**

The following source bit display applies to models with the /L32 option.  
C0 to C7 (LOGIC port C), D0 to D7 (LOGIC port D)

**Level for Detecting Chip Select Source States (Level, Hysteresis)**

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level or hysteresis.

- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
- To set the level, you can drag the level display line on the screen.

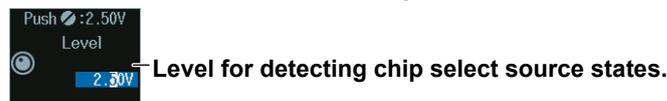
**Jog shuttle setting menu**

**When the chip select source is a channel from CH1 to CH8**



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between level and hysteresis.

**When the chip select source is Logic**



## 2.22 Triggering On User-Defined Serial Bus Signals

This section explains the following settings for triggering on user-defined serial bus signals:

- Bit rate
- Data source
  - Data source state, HF rejection, level and hysteresis for detecting data source states
- Turning the clock on and off
  - Clock source
  - HF rejection, level and hysteresis for detecting clock source states
- Enable source
  - HF rejection, level and hysteresis for detecting enable source states
- Latch source
  - HF rejection, level and hysteresis for detecting latch source states
- Trigger conditions

► [“User-Defined Serial Bus Trigger \[User Define, ENHANCED\],”](#)  
[“HF Rejection \(HF Rejection\)”](#)  
in the [Features Guide](#)

### ENHANCED User Define Menu

1. Press **ENHANCED** to display the ENHANCED menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the ENHANCED menu from TRIGGER on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. From the setup menu that appears, select **User Define** to display the following menu.

### Serial Bus without a Clock

The image shows a screenshot of the ENHANCED User Define menu. The menu is displayed on a dark background with white text. The menu items are: Type, User Define, Source, CH1 H, Clock, OFF, ON, Condition Setup, Push : 1000kbps, Bit Rate, and 1000.0kbps. Annotations with arrows point to the following items: 'User Define' (Set the trigger type to User Define.), 'Source' (Data source), 'OFF' (Set the clock to OFF.), 'Condition Setup' (which opens a sub-menu), and '1000.0kbps' (Bit rate). The sub-menu, titled 'Trigger condition', has a close button (X) in the top right corner. It contains three fields: 'Data Size' with a value of '8' and the unit 'bit' (labeled as 'Data length'), 'Hex' with the value 'XX', and 'Bin' with the value 'XXXX XXXX' (labeled as 'Data pattern'). A note below the 'Data pattern' field states: 'The length of the data pattern you can enter is determined by the Data Size setting. You can set up to 128 bits.'

### Serial Bus with a Clock

ENHANCED

- Type → Set the trigger type to User Define.
- User Define
- Source → Data source
- CH1 H
- Clock → Set the clock to ON.
- OFF ON
- Clock → Clock source
- CH2
- Enable → Enable source
- None
- Latch → Latch source
- None
- Condition Setup

**Trigger mode**

Data Setup

- Data Size → Data length
- 8 bit
- Hex: XX
- Bin: XXXX XXXX

**Data pattern**  
The length of the data pattern you can enter is determined by the Data Size setting. You can set up to 128 bits.

### Data Source (Source)

Press the **Source** soft key to display the following menu.

Set the data source to compare with the pattern specified as a trigger condition.

- Source → Data source
- Source
- CH1
- Active → Data source state to be recognized as 1
- H L
- HF Rejection → HF rejection
- OFF
- Level → Level for detecting data source states
- 0.20V
- Hysteresis → Hysteresis
- 0.6div

#### Note

The available trigger source settings vary depending on the model.

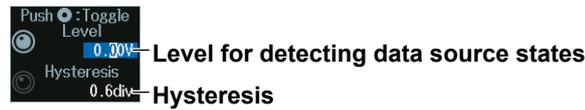
- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4

### Level for Detecting Data Source States (Level, Hysteresis)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level or hysteresis.

- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
- To set the level, you can drag the level display line on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between level and hysteresis.

### Bit Rate (serial bus without a clock)

The instrument samples according to the bit rate.

1. Press the **Clock** soft key to select OFF.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the bit rate at which to sample the data source.  
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

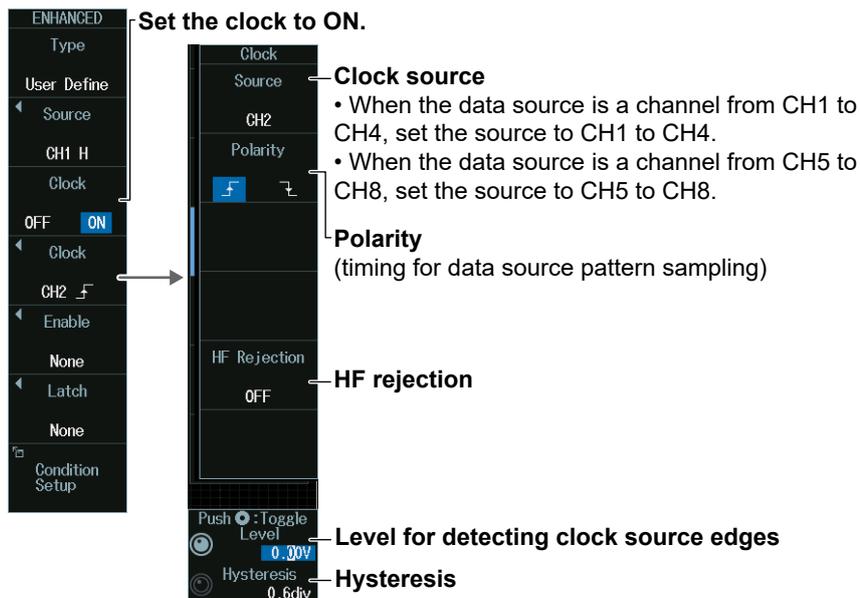
#### Jog shuttle setting menu



### Clock Source (serial bus with a clock)

The instrument samples in sync with the clock source.

1. Press the **Clock** soft key to select ON.
2. Press the **Clock** soft key to display the following menu.  
Specify which clock source edge causes the data source to be sampled.



• **Setting the Enable Source**

3. Press the **Enable** soft key to display the following menu.

When the data source is sampled in sync with the clock source, the period for which the instrument tests the data source can be controlled using the enable source.

**Set the clock to ON.**

**When the enable source is None**

**When the latch source is a channel from CH1 to CH8**

**Enable source**

- When the data source is a channel from CH1 to CH4, set the source to CH1 to CH4.
- When the data source is a channel from CH5 to CH8, set the source to CH5 to CH8.

**State of the enable source to be recognized as the data source**

**HF rejection**

**Level for detecting enable source states**

**Hysteresis**

• **Setting the Latch Source**

4. Press the **Latch** soft key to display the following menu.

You can specify the timing at which the data source pattern sampled in sync with the clock source is compared with the specified pattern as a trigger condition.

**Set the clock to ON.**

**When the latch source is None**

**When the latch source is a channel from CH1 to CH8**

**Latch source**

- When the data source is a channel from CH1 to CH4, set the source to CH1 to CH4.
- When the data source is a channel from CH5 to CH8, set the source to CH5 to CH8.

**Polarity (timing for data source pattern comparison)**

**HF rejection**

**Level for detecting latch source edges**

**Hysteresis**

### Level for Detecting Clock, Enable, and Latch Source States (Level, Hysteresis)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level or hysteresis.

- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
- To set the level, you can drag the level display line on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between level and hysteresis.

## 2.23 Triggering on a TV Trigger

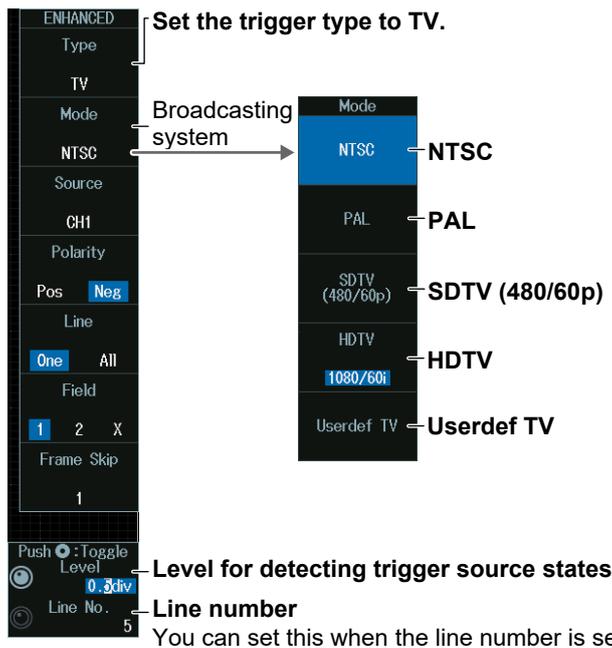
This section explains the following settings for triggering on a TV trigger:

- Broadcasting system
- Trigger source  
Polarity, line number, field number, frame skip, resolution
- Level for detecting trigger source states
- Channel source (Userdef TV)  
Polarity, HF rejection, horizontal sync frequency, sync guard frequency

► “TV Trigger [ENHANCED],” “HF Rejection (HF Rejection)”  
in the Features Guide

### ENHANCED TV Menu

1. Press **ENHANCED** to display the ENHANCED menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the ENHANCED menu from TRIGGER on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. From the setup menu that appears, select **TV** to display the following menu.



## Broadcasting System (Mode)

### NTSC mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **NTSC** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument triggers using the specified field and line of the NTSC signal as trigger conditions.

The screenshot shows a vertical menu with the following items and annotations:

- ENHANCED** (header)
- Type
- TV
- Mode → **Set the broadcasting system to NTSC.**
- NTSC
- Source → **Trigger source**
- CH1
- Polarity → **Polarity**
- Pos **Neg**
- Line → **Line number**
- One** All
- Field → **Field number**
- 1** 2 X → You can set this when the line number is set to 1.
- Frame Skip → **frame skip**
- 1 → You can set this when the line number is set to 1.
- Push **Toggle** Level
- 0.3div**
- Line No. 5

### PAL mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **PAL** soft key. The following menu appears.

The instrument triggers using the specified field and line of the PAL signal as trigger conditions.

The screenshot shows a vertical menu with the following items and annotations:

- ENHANCED** (header)
- Type
- TV
- Mode → **Set the broadcasting system to PAL.**
- PAL
- Source → **Trigger source**
- CH1
- Polarity → **Polarity**
- Pos **Neg**
- Line → **Line number**
- One** All
- Field → **Field number**
- 1** 2 X → You can set this when the line number is set to 1.
- Frame Skip → **frame skip**
- 1 → You can set this when the line number is set to 1.
- Push **Toggle** Level
- 0.3div**
- Line No. 2

### SDTV (480/60p) Mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **SDTV (480/60p)** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument triggers using the specified line of the SDTV signal as trigger conditions.

ENHANCED  
Type  
TV  
Mode  
SDTV (480/60p) — Set the broadcasting system to SDTV(480/60p).  
Source — Trigger source  
CH1  
Polarity  
Pos Neg — Polarity  
Line  
One All — Line number  
Frame Skip  
1 — Frame skip  
You can set this when the line number is set to 1.  
Push : Toggle Level  
0.3div  
Line No. 8

### HDTV mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **HDTV** soft key. From the video format selection menu, select the format. The following menu appears.

The instrument triggers using the specified field and line of the HDTV signal as trigger conditions.

ENHANCED  
Type  
TV  
Mode  
NTSC — Broadcasting system selection menu  
Source  
CH1  
Polarity  
Pos Neg  
Line  
One All  
Field  
1 2 X  
Frame Skip  
1  
Push : Toggle Level  
0.3div  
Line No. 5

**Broadcasting system selection menu**

Mode  
NTSC  
PAL  
SDTV (480/60p)  
HDTV — Video format selection menu  
1080/60i  
Userdef TV

**Video format selection menu**

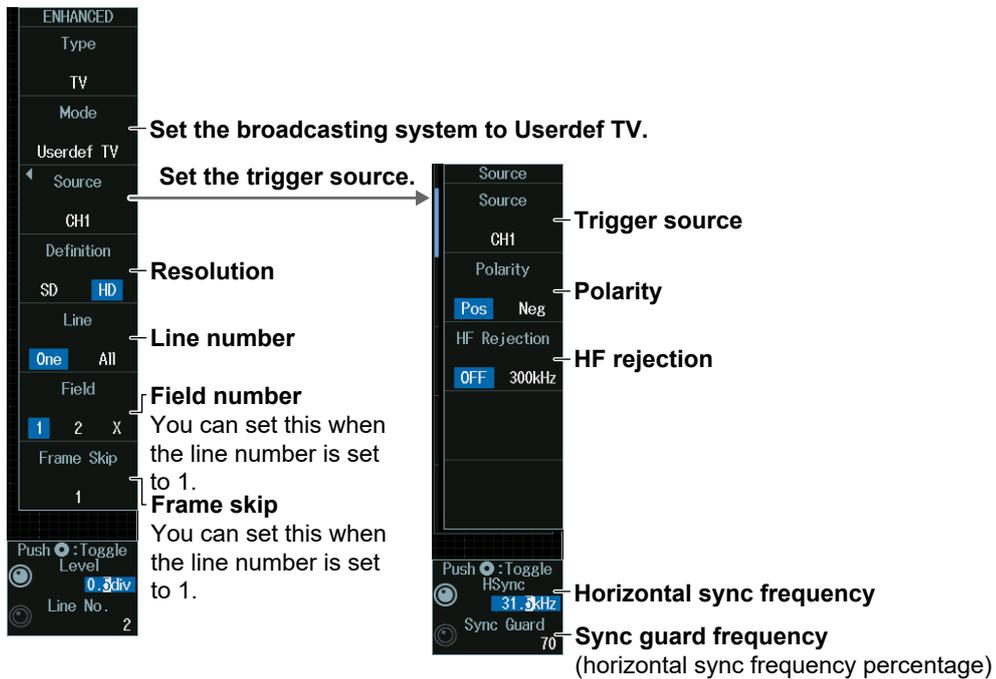
HDTV  
1080/60i  
1080/50i  
720/60p  
1080/25p  
1080/24p  
1080/24sF  
1080/60p

ENHANCED  
Type  
TV  
Mode  
HDTV (1080/60i) — Set the broadcasting system to HDTV.  
Source — Trigger source  
CH1  
Polarity  
Pos Neg — Polarity  
Line  
One All — Line number  
Field  
1 2 X — Field number  
You can set this when the line number is set to 1.  
Frame Skip  
1 — Frame skip  
You can set this when the line number is set to 1.  
Push : Toggle Level  
0.3div  
Line No. 2

### Userdef TV Mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Userdef TV** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument triggers using the user-defined field and line as trigger conditions.



### Level and Line Number for Detecting Trigger Source States (Level, Line No.)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level or line number.

- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
- To set the level, you can drag the level display line on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



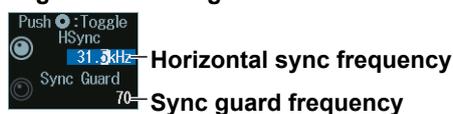
Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between level and line number.

### Setting the Horizontal Sync Frequency and Sync Guard Frequency (HSync/Sync Guard)

You can set these parameters when the broadcasting system is set to Userdef TV.

1. Press the **Source** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the horizontal sync frequency or sync guard frequency. You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between horizontal sync frequency and sync guard frequency.

## 2.24 Triggering on Combination Triggers (B TRIG)

This section explains the following settings for triggering on a combination trigger:

- Combination  
Delay time for condition B, number of times condition B must be met
- Trigger A: Condition A
- Trigger B: Condition B

► “Trigger B [B TRIG]” in the Features Guide

### B TRIG Menu

Press **B TRIG** to display the following menu.

You can also tap **MENU** (⌘) in the upper left of the screen and select the B TRIG menu from TRIGGER on the top menu that is displayed.

The diagram illustrates the B TRIG menu structure. On the left, a vertical menu shows the following options: B TRIG, Combination, OFF, A Trigger, Edge, B Trigger, and Edge. Arrows point from the text labels 'Combination', 'Trigger A', and 'Trigger B' to their respective menu items. An arrow also points from 'OFF' to a sub-menu. The sub-menu, titled 'OFF', contains three options: 'A Delay B' (with a timing diagram showing a delay between A and B), 'A to B(N)' (with a timing diagram showing N occurrences of B after A), and 'OFF' (highlighted in blue). To the right of the sub-menu, text boxes provide descriptions for each option: 'OFF' (The instrument triggers when the trigger A conditions are met.), 'A Delay B' (After the trigger A conditions are met and the specified amount of time (the delay time) elapses, the instrument triggers when the trigger B conditions are met.), and 'A to B(N)' (After the trigger A conditions are met, the instrument triggers when the trigger B conditions are met N times.).

### Combination (Combination)

#### OFF

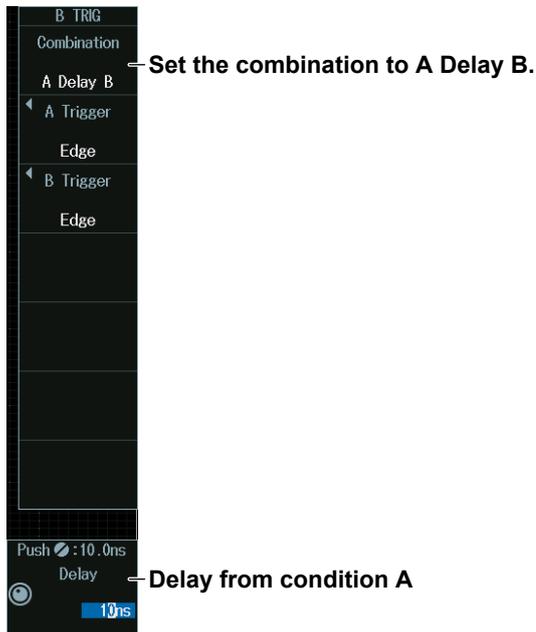
Press the **Combination** soft key and then the **OFF** soft key to display the following menu.

The diagram shows the B TRIG menu with the 'OFF' option highlighted. An arrow points from the text 'Set the combination to OFF.' to the 'OFF' menu item.

## 2.24 Triggering on Combination Triggers (B TRIG)

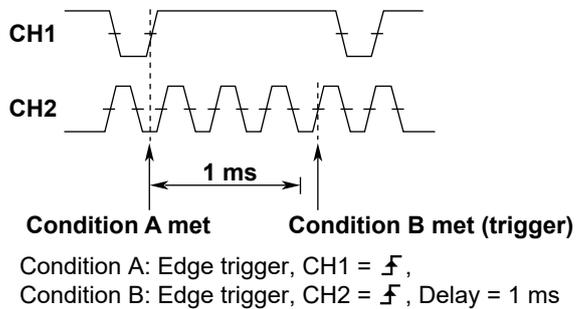
### A Delay B

Press the **Combination** soft key and then the **A Delay B** soft key to display the following menu.



### A Delay B

After the trigger A conditions are met and the specified amount of time elapses, the instrument triggers when the trigger B conditions are first met.



### Delay (Delay) from Condition A

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the delay.

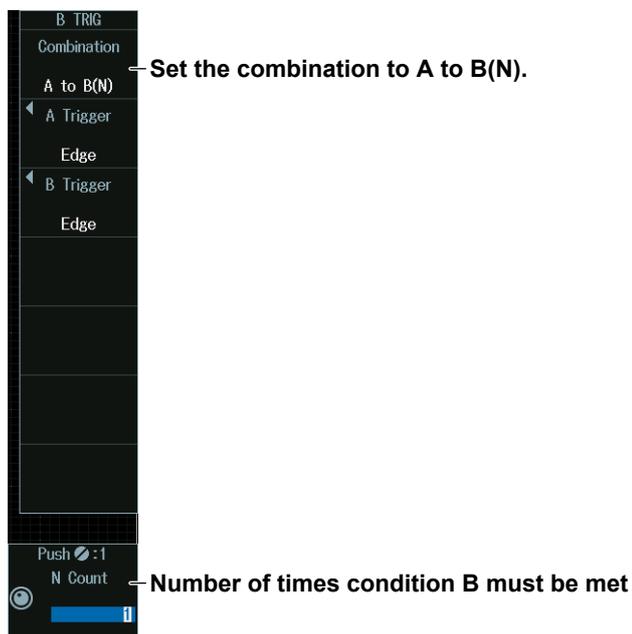
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



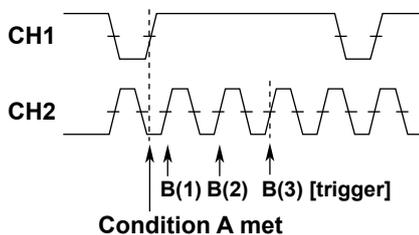
### A to B(N)

Press the **Combination** soft key and then the **A to B(N)** soft key to display the following menu.



### A to B(N)

After the trigger A conditions are met, the instrument triggers when the trigger B conditions are met N times.



Condition A: Edge trigger, CH1 =  $\bar{F}$ ,  
 Condition B: Edge trigger, CH2 =  $\bar{F}$ , N = 3

### Number of Times Condition B Must Be Met (N Count)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the number of times the conditions must be met.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



### Trigger A (A Trigger)

Press the **A Trigger** soft key to display the following menu.

The procedure using the menu is same as that for edge trigger (section 2.3) and enhanced trigger (sections 2.4 to 2.23).

When you press EDGE or ENHANCED, the specified trigger conditions are assigned directly to trigger A conditions.

**Trigger type**  
 The specified trigger type menu appears.  
 For details on the settings, see sections 2.3 to 2.23.

The screenshot shows a vertical menu for 'A Trigger' with the following items and their corresponding section references:

- Edge** (section 2.3) ----- EDGE key
- Edge OR** (section 2.4) ----- OR of multiple edges (section 2.4)
- Pattern** (section 2.5) ----- Multiple input pattern (section 2.5)
- Pulse Width** (section 2.6) ----- Pulse width (section 2.6)
- Rise/Fall Time** (section 2.7) ----- Rising/falling edge (section 2.7)
- Runt** (section 2.8) ----- Runt signal (section 2.8)
- Timeout** (section 2.9) ----- Timeout (section 2.9)
- Window** (section 2.10) ----- Window (section 2.10)
- Window OR** (section 2.11) ----- OR of multiple window trigger (section 2.11)
- Interval** (section 2.12) ----- Edge interval (section 2.12)
- Serial** (section 2.13) ----- FlexRay bus signal (section 2.13)
- CAN** (section 2.14) ----- CAN bus signal (section 2.14)
- CAN FD** (section 2.15) ----- CAN FD bus signal (section 2.15)
- LIN** (section 2.16) ----- LIN bus signal (section 2.16)
- CXPI** (section 2.17) ----- CXPI bus signal (section 2.17)
- SENT** (section 2.18) ----- SENT signal (section 2.18)
- UART** (section 2.19) ----- UART signal (section 2.19)
- I2C** (section 2.20) ----- I2C bus signal (section 2.20)
- SPI** (section 2.21) ----- SPI bus signal (section 2.21)
- User Define** (section 2.22) ----- User-defined bus signal (section 2.22)
- TV** (section 2.23) ----- TV (section 2.23)

The 'Serial' through 'User Define' options are grouped under the **ENHANCED key**.

**Note**

The serial bus trigger (sections 2.13 to 2.22) can be assigned either to condition A or condition B.

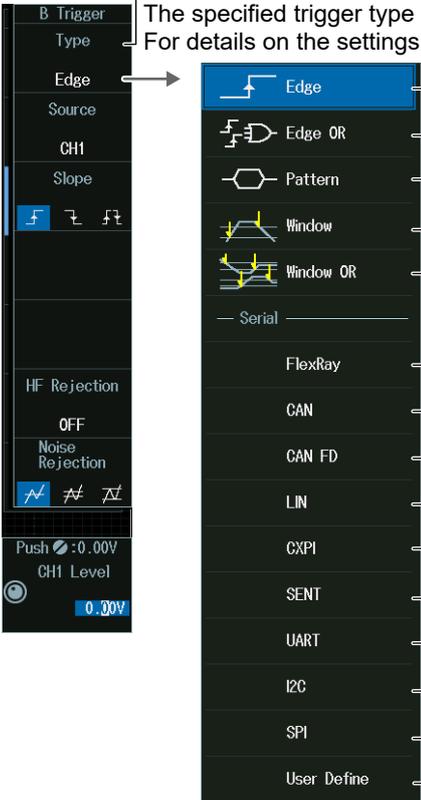
## Trigger B (B Trigger)

Press the **B Trigger** soft key to display the following menu.

The procedure using the menu is same as that for edge trigger (section 2.3) and enhanced trigger (only the types in the following figure can be used). Note that because the settings are not passed on, set trigger B from the beginning.

**Trigger type**

The specified trigger type menu appears.  
For details on the settings, see the appropriate sections for the following types.



Edge	Edge	Edge (section 2.3)
Edge OR	Edge OR	OR of multiple edges (section 2.4)
Pattern	Pattern	Multiple input pattern (section 2.5)
Window	Window	Window (section 2.10)
Window OR	Window OR	OR of multiple window trigger (section 2.11)
Serial		
FlexRay	FlexRay	FlexRay bus signal (section 2.13)
CAN	CAN	CAN bus signal (section 2.14)
CAN FD	CAN FD	CAN FD bus signal (section 2.15)
LIN	LIN	LIN bus signal (section 2.16)
CXPI	CXPI	CXPI bus signal (section 2.17)
SENT	SENT	SENT signal (section 2.18)
UART	UART	UART signal (section 2.19)
I2C	I2C	I2C bus signal (section 2.20)
SPI	SPI	SPI bus signal (section 2.21)
User Define	User Define	User-defined bus signal (section 2.22)

### Note

- The serial bus trigger can be assigned either to condition A or condition B.
- When condition B is set to Window trigger, Time Qualification is fixed to None.
- When condition B is set to Pattern and the clock source is set to None, trigger conditions True and False cannot be selected.

---

## 2.25 Forcing the Instrument to Trigger (FORCE TRIG)

► [“Trigger Type \(Type\)” in the Features Guide](#)

### Forced Trigger [FORCE TRIG]

Press **SHIFT+B TRIG (FORCE TRIG)**. The instrument triggers even when the trigger conditions are not met.

You can also tap **MENU**  in the upper left of the screen and select FORCE TRIG from TRIGGER on the top menu that is displayed.

## 2.26 Setting the Action-On-Trigger Function

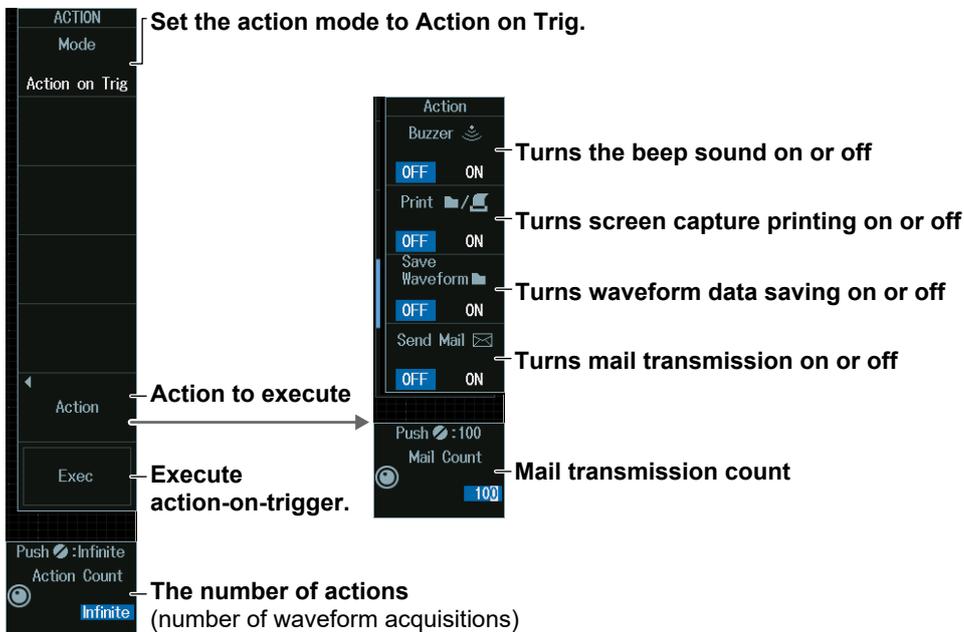
This section explains the following settings for executing the action-on-trigger function:

- Action mode
- Action to execute
- The number of actions
- Execute action-on trigger.

► “Executing Actions” in the Features Guide

### ACTION Action on Trig Menu

1. Press **SHIFT+MODE**(ACTION GO/NO-GO) to display the ACTION menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the ACTION menu (ACTION GO/NO-GO) from TRIGGER on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Action on Trig** soft key to display the following menu.



### Executing an Action-on-Trigger (Exec)

Press the **Exec** soft key.

- While an action-on-trigger is in progress, Exec changes to Abort. If you want to abort, press the **Abort** soft key.
- The instrument executes the action each time it triggers until the specified number of actions is reached.

#### Note

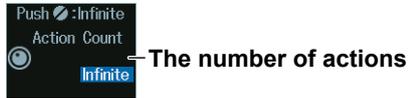
- You cannot execute action-on-trigger if Print To is set to Multi when Print is set to ON on the PRINT menu. ► section 16.6
- If the action to execute is mail transmission and the specified number of mail transmissions is less than the number of specified actions, mail transmission will stop after the specified number of transmissions. If the specified number of mail transmissions is greater than the number of specified actions, mail transmission will stop after the specified number of actions.

### Number of Actions (Action Count)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the number of actions.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



### E-mail Send Count (Mail Count)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the number of actions.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



## 2.27 Performing GO/NO-GO Determination

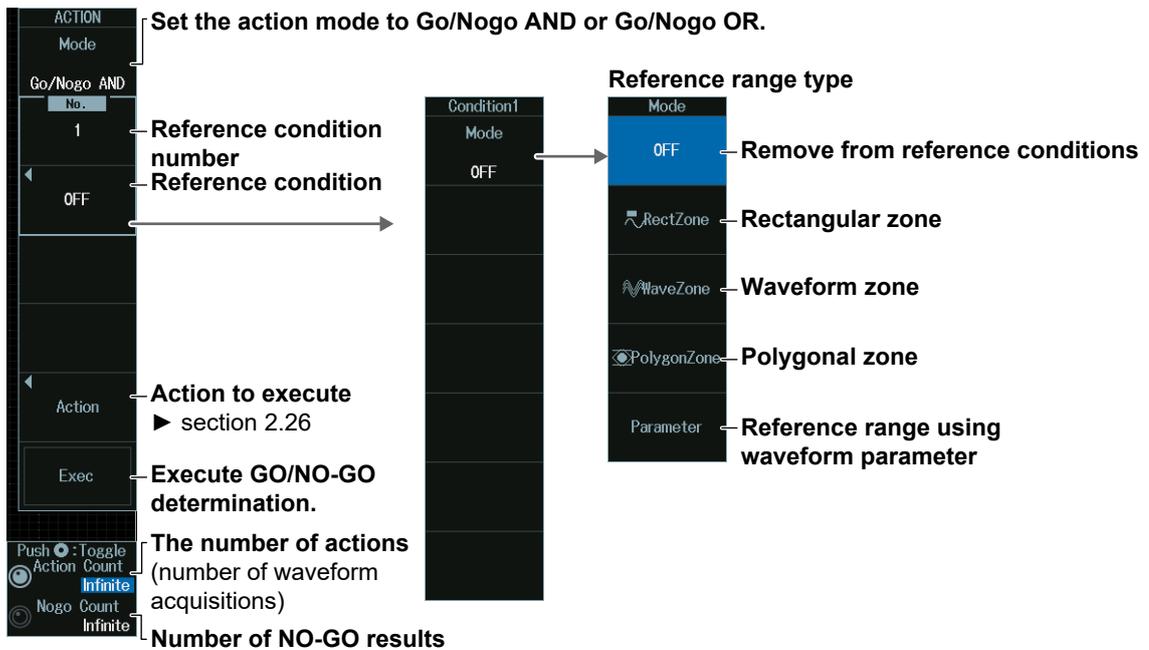
This section explains the following settings for performing GO/NO-GO determination:

- Action mode
- Number of actions, number of NO-GO determinations
- Reference condition  
Reference range type, determination source waveform, reference condition, determination source window, and zone settings
- Executing GO/NO-GO Determination

► “Executing Actions” in the Features Guide

### ACTION Go/Nogo Menu

1. Press **SHIFT+MODE**(ACTION GO/NO-GO) to display the ACTION menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (MENU) in the upper left of the screen and select the ACTION menu (ACTION GO/NO-GO) from TRIGGER on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Go/Nogo AND** or **Go/Nogo OR** soft key to display the following menu.



### Executing GO/NO-GO Determination (Exec)

Press the **Exec** soft key.

- While a GO/NO-GO determination is in progress, Exec changes to Abort. If you want to abort, press the **Abort** soft key.
- The instrument executes actions until either the specified number of actions or the number of NO-GO determinations is reached.

#### Note

- You cannot execute action-on-trigger if Print To is set to Multi when Print is set to ON on the PRINT menu. ► section 16.6
- If the action to execute is mail transmission and the specified number of mail transmissions is less than the number of specified actions, mail transmission will stop after the specified number of transmissions. If the specified number of mail transmissions is greater than the number of specified actions, mail transmission will stop after the specified number of actions.

## 2.27 Performing GO/NO-GO Determination

### Reference Condition and Reference Range

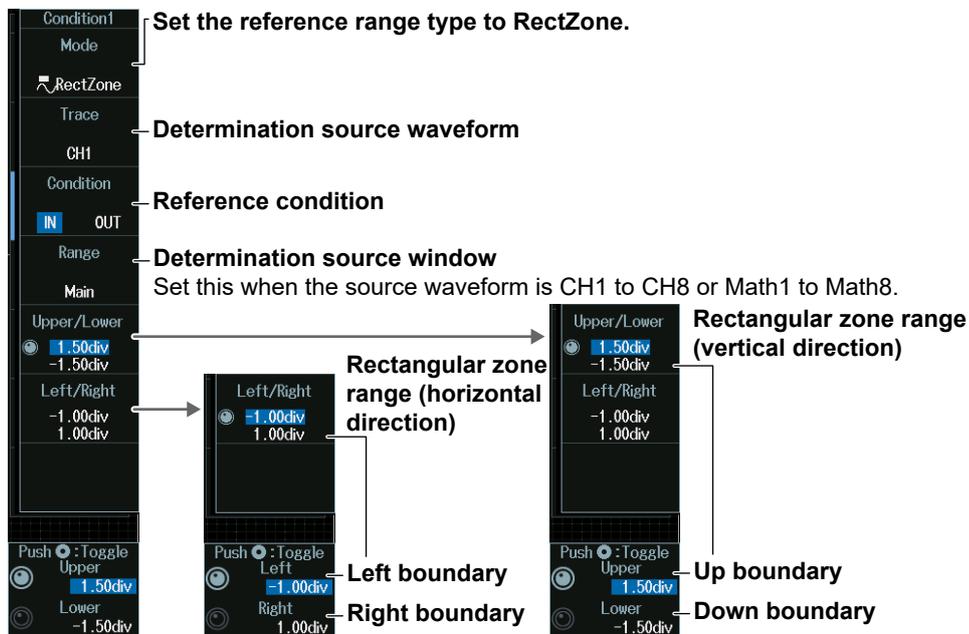
Depending on the determination source waveform, there are reference range types that you cannot specify.

Source Waveform	Reference Range Type			
	Rectangular zone	Waveform zone	Polygonal zone	Reference range using waveform parameter
CH1 to CH8	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Logic	No	No	No	Yes
Math1 to Math8	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
XY1 to XY4	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
FFT1, FFT2	No	No	No	Yes

### Rectangular Zone (RectZone)

Set the reference range (rectangular zone).

1. Press any of the reference condition **1** to **8** soft keys and then the **Mode** soft key.  
(Reference conditions 1 to 4 on 4ch models)
2. Press the **RectZone** soft key to display the following menu.



### Note

The available source waveforms are as follows:

- No.1 to No.4  
CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math4, XY1 to XY2
- No.5 to No.8 (8ch model)  
CH5 to CH8, Math5 to Math8, XY3 to XY4

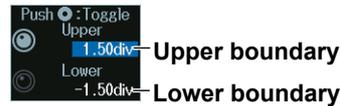
### Determination Source Window

To make Zoom1 or Zoom2 a determination source, turn on the Zoom1 or Zoom2 display from the ZOOM menu. For details, see section 10.1.

## Rectangular Zone Range (Upper/Lower)

1. Press the **Upper/Lower** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the upper boundary (Upper) or lower boundary (Lower).
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between upper and lower boundaries.
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu

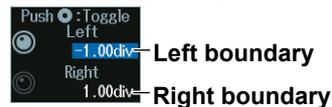


Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between upper and lower boundaries.

## Rectangular Zone Range (Left/Right)

1. Press the **Left/Right** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the left boundary (Left) or right boundary (Right).
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between left and right boundaries.
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between left and right boundaries.

### Waveform Zone (WaveZone)

Set the reference range (waveform zone).

1. Press any of the reference condition 1 to 8 soft keys and then the **Mode** soft key.  
(Reference conditions 1 to 4 on 4ch models)
2. Press the **WaveZone** soft key to display the following menu.

**Edit the entire waveform zone** (it takes a few seconds to switch to the editing screen).

**Set the reference range type to WaveZone.**

**Determination source waveform Reference condition**

**Determination source window**  
Set this when the source waveform is CH1 to CH8 or Math1 to Math8.

**Waveform zone**  
Select the waveform zone to use for determination and the waveform zone to edit.

**Edit the waveform zone**

**Determination area (left limit)**

**Determination area (right limit)**

**Select the edit range (Whole).**

**Horizontal**

**Vertical range**

**Base waveform for creating a zone**

**Start editing the waveform zone.**

**Confirm the waveform zone edit.**

**Finish editing the waveform zone.**

**Left edge**

**Right edge**

**Up limit**

**Down limit**

**Edit the waveform zone in the specified range.**

**Edit range**  
Select the Part.

**Specified range**

**Vertical range**

**Left edge**

**Right edge**

**Up limit**

**Down limit**

**Note**

The available source waveforms are as follows:

- No.1 to No.4  
CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math4
- No.5 to No.8 (8ch model)  
CH5 to CH8, Math5 to Math8

## Editing the Waveform Zone

### (Edit 1 to Edit 4: Reference conditions 1 to 4)

### (Edit 5 to Edit 8: Reference conditions 5 to 8)

1. Press the **Zone No** soft key, and select the number of the waveform zone that you want to edit.  
The appearance of the waveform zone edit soft keys (Edit 1 to Edit 8) changes depending on the selected waveform zone number.
2. Press one of the soft keys from **Edit 1** to **Edit 8**, whichever is shown on the menu. An edit menu for the waveform zone that you selected will be displayed.

- **Selecting the Base Waveform**

To edit without changing the base waveform, proceed to step 5.

3. Press the **Trace (New)** soft key, and from the displayed menu, select the base waveform.
4. Press the **Exec (New)** soft key. A waveform zone is created from the base waveform.

- **Editing the Entire Waveform Zone**

5. Press the **Edit** soft key to select **Whole**.
6. Press the **Upper/Lower** soft key or the **Left/Right** soft key to select the zone boundaries to edit.
7. Turn the **jog shuttle** to edit the waveform zone.  
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu

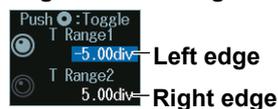


Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between left and right boundaries.

- **Editing a Part of the Waveform Zone**

5. Press the **Edit** soft key to select **Part**.
6. Press the **T Range1/2** soft key.
7. Turn the **jog shuttle** to edit the time scale range.  
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



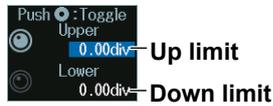
Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between left and right edges.

## 2.27 Performing GO/NO-GO Determination

---

8. Press the **Upper/Lower** soft key to select the upper and lower zone boundaries.
9. Turn the **jog shuttle** to edit the waveform zone.  
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between up limit and down limit.

### • Confirming the Waveform Zone

10. Press the Store soft key to confirm the waveform zone that you edited and store it in the internal memory.

### • Finishing Waveform Zone Editing

11. Press the **Quit** soft key to return from the edit screen to the previous menu.  
If you do not confirm the edited waveform zone at step 10, the changes that you made will be lost.

### Note

---

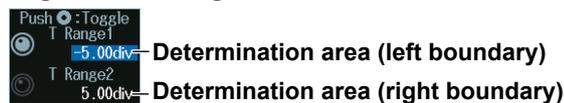
- If you change the base waveform (Trace (New)) for creating a zone, the waveform zone that you edited up to that point will be lost.
  - If you want to switch from the edit menu to a different menu, you need to finish editing first. Press the Quit soft key to finish editing.
- 

## Determination Area (T Range)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the determination area.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between left and right determination period boundaries.

## Polygonal Zone (PolygonZone)

Set the reference range (polygonal zone).

1. Press any of the reference condition 1 to 8 soft keys and then the **Mode** soft key.  
(Reference conditions 1 to 4 on 4ch models)
2. Press the **PolygonZone** soft key to display the following menu.

The screenshot shows the PolygonZone menu with the following options and annotations:

- Condition1**: Set the reference range type to PolygonZone.
- Mode**: (Annotated with a bracket pointing to the PolygonZone option)
- PolygonZone**: (Selected option, indicated by a radio button)
- Trace**: Determination source waveform
- CH1**: (Annotated with a bracket pointing to the Trace option)
- Condition**: Reference condition
- IN OUT**: (Annotated with a bracket pointing to the Condition option)
- Range**: Determination source window
- Main**: Set this when the source waveform is CH1 to CH8 or Math1 to Math8.
- Zone No.**: Select the polygonal zone.
- 1**: Load a polygonal shape in advance into the specified zone number (Zone No.1 to Zone No.8) using the file load feature (see section 17.7). Create polygonal shapes on your PC using the dedicated software (Mask Editor Software).
- Push [ ] : Toggle**: Moves the polygonal zone (vertical position)
- V-Position 0.00div**: (Annotated with a bracket pointing to the Push [ ] : Toggle option)
- H-Position 0.00div**: Moves the polygonal zone (horizontal position)

### Note

The available source waveforms are as follows:

- No.1 to No.4  
CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math4, XY1 to XY2
- No.5 to No.8 (8ch model)  
CH5 to CH8, Math5 to Math8, XY3 to XY4

## Moving the Polygonal Zone (V-Position, H-Position)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to move the polygonal zone.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu

The screenshot shows the Jog shuttle setting menu with the following options and annotations:

- Push [ ] : Toggle**: Moves the polygonal zone (vertical position)
- V-Position 0.00div**: (Annotated with a bracket pointing to the Push [ ] : Toggle option)
- H-Position 0.00div**: Moves the polygonal zone (horizontal position)

Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between moving the polygonal zone horizontally or vertically.

### Setting a Reference Range Using Parameters (Parameter)

Set the reference range (parameter).

1. Press any of the reference condition **1** to **8** soft keys and then the **Mode** soft key.  
(Reference conditions 1 to 4 on 4ch models)
2. Press the **Parameter** soft key to display the following menu.

When CH1 to CH8 or Math1 to Math8 Is the Determination Source Waveform

**Set the reference range type to Parameter.**

**Determination source waveform**  
(Set to the CH1, CH8, Math1, and Math8.)

**Reference condition**

**Waveform parameters to use for the GO/NO-GO determination**

Item Setup

- Max
- Min
- P-P
- High
- Low
- Amplitude
- Rms
- Mean
- Sdev
- +Over
- Over
- Pulse Count
- Edge Count
- IntegTY+
- IntegTY-
- Freq
- Period
- Avg Freq
- Avg Period
- Burst
- Rise
- Fall
- +Width
- Width
- Delay

**Reference range (upper limit)**  
0.00000

**Reference range (lower limit)**  
0.00000

**Set**

**Enters the selected waveform parameters**

### Note

#### Waveform Parameters

You can select the measurement items to use in GO/NO-GO determination from all of the items used for automated measurement of waveform parameters. For information on setting automated measurement of waveform parameters, see section 9.1.

#### Source Waveform

The available determination source waveform settings vary depending on the model.

- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8, Math1 to Math8
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math4

### When Logic Is the Determination Source Waveform

**Condition1**

- Mode: Set the reference range type to Parameter.
- Parameter: Determination source waveform
- Trace: Set to Logic.
- Logic
- Source Bit: A0
  - Source bit: Select the logic bit.
- Item: Freq
  - Reference range (upper limit): 0.00000
  - Reference range (lower limit): 0.00000

**Waveform parameters to use for the GO/NO-GO determination**

Item Setup

- Freq
- Period
- Avg Freq
- Duty
- Pulse Count
- Delay

Set Set

Enters the selected waveform parameters

### Note

#### Waveform Parameters

You can select the measurement item to use in the GO/NO-GO determination from the items used for time axis measurement of waveform parameters shown below.

Freq, Period, Avg Freq, Duty, Pulse Count, Delay

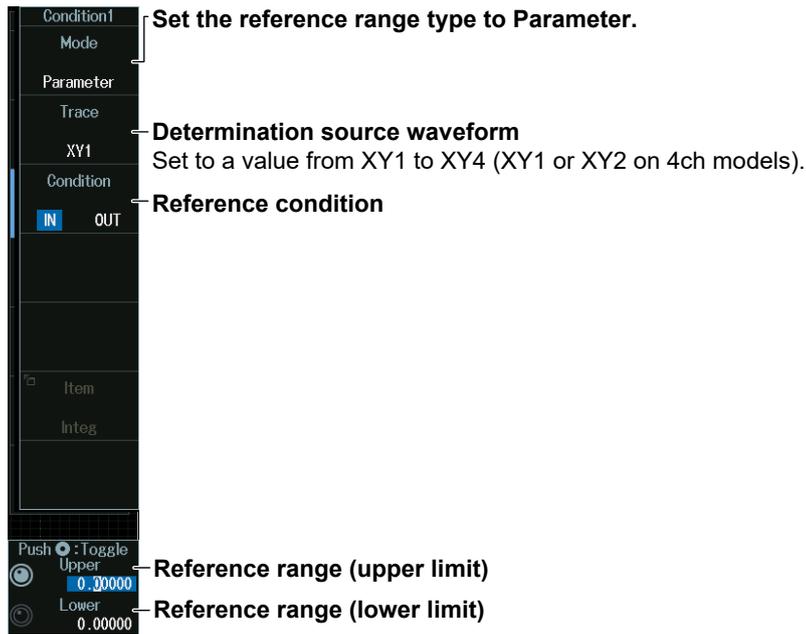
For information on setting automated measurement of waveform parameters, see section 9.1.

#### Source bit

The following source bit display applies to models with the /L32 option.

C0 to C7 (LOGIC port C), D0 to D7 (LOGIC port D)

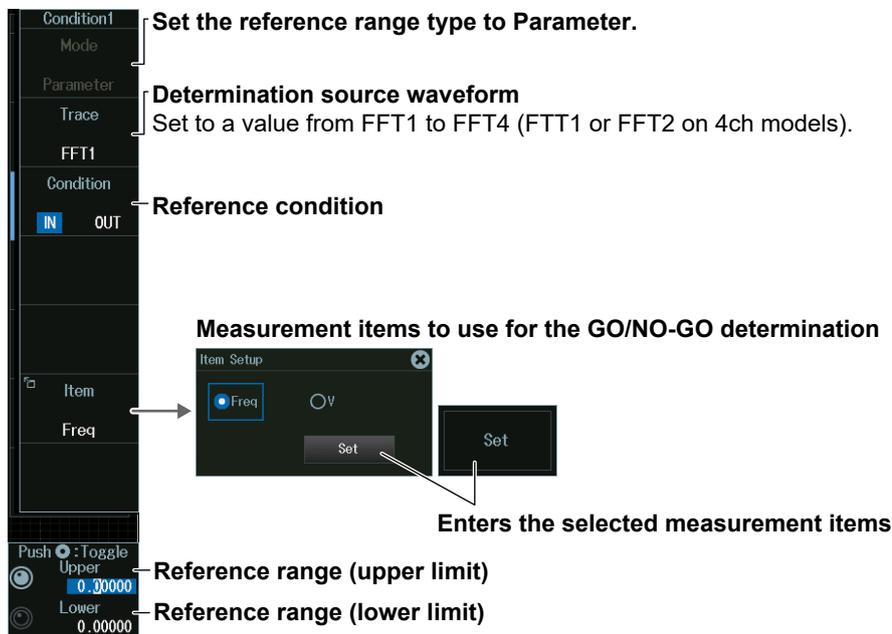
**When XY1 to XY4 Is the Determination Source Waveform**



**Note**

The measurement item to use in the GO/NO-GO determination is the waveform area of XY1 to XY4 (XY1 and XY2 on 4ch models). For information on setting how the XY waveform is displayed and how its area is determined, see chapter 5 of this manual and appendix 1 of the *Features Guide*, IM DLM5058-01EN.

**When FFT1 to FFT4 Is the Determination Source Waveform**



**Note**

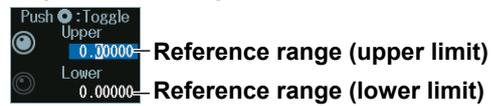
You can select the measurement item to use in the GO/NO-GO determination from the peak cursor measurement items (Freq, V) for FFT. For details on peak cursor measurements, see section 7.2.

## Reference Range (Upper/Lower)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the reference range.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between upper and lower reference range limits.

## 3.1 Setting Conditions for Waveform Acquisition

This section explains the following settings for acquiring waveforms:

- Record length
- Acquisition mode
- Trigger mode
- Turning high resolution mode on or off
- Sampling mode
- Number of waveforms to acquire, attenuation constant, and number of times to average

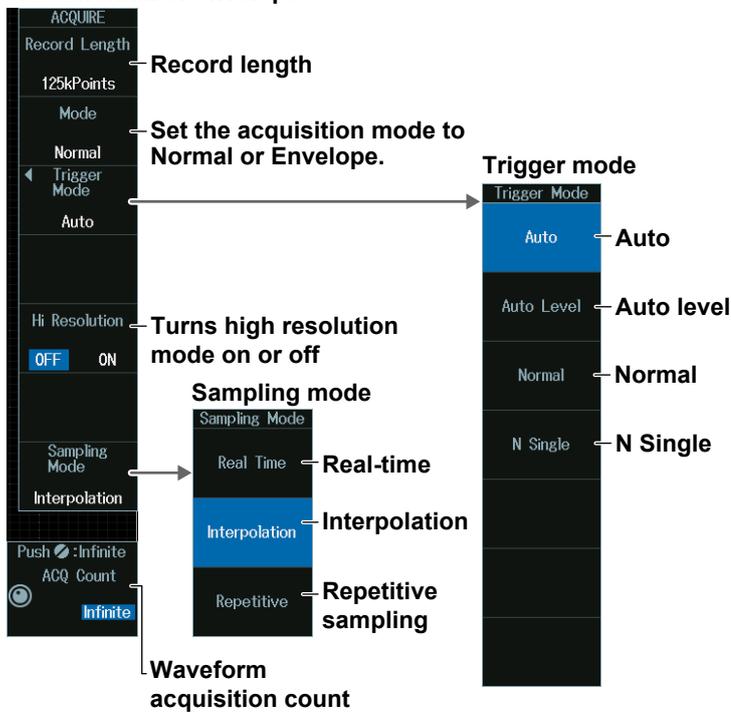
► “Waveform Acquisition” in the Features Guide

### ACQUIRE Menu

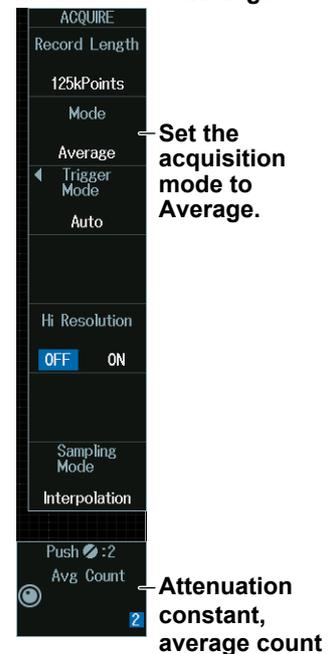
Press **ACQUIRE** to display the following menu.

You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the ACQUIRE menu from ACQ/DISP on the top menu that is displayed.

**When the acquisition mode is set to normal or envelope**



**When the acquisition mode is set to average**



#### Acquisition Mode (Mode)

Set the waveform acquisition mode.

<b>Normal</b>	Displays waveforms without processing the sampled data. Set the waveform acquisition count.
<b>Envelope</b>	Displays waveforms in envelope mode. Set the waveform acquisition count.
<b>Average</b>	Displays averaged waveforms. Set the attenuation constant and the number of times to average.

#### Note

- If you set the acquisition mode to Envelope when the sample rate is set to 1.25 GS/s or higher, the instrument actually operates in Normal mode. In envelope mode, [Envelope] appears in the upper right of the screen. If envelope is in use in high resolution mode, [Env:Hi-Res] appears.
- To average waveforms that have been acquired in N Single mode, set the acquisition mode to Normal, and turn on history feature’s averaging.

### 3.1 Setting Conditions for Waveform Acquisition

#### Trigger Mode (Trigger Mode)

The trigger mode determines the conditions for updating the displayed waveforms. You can set the trigger mode by pressing the MODE key. For details, see section 2.1.

#### Sampling Mode (Sampling Mode)

Set how to sample the number of waveform data points per unit time.

<b>Realtime</b>	The instrument samples at the specified time scale.
<b>Interpolation</b>	In Interpolation mode, the instrument interpolates the data sampled at 2.5 GS/s up to 100 times using the (sinx)/x function.
<b>Repetitive</b>	The instrument acquires repetitive signals multiple times and displays them as a single waveform. This makes it possible to sample at an apparent rate higher than the actual rate.

#### Note

In the following cases, repetitive sampling mood (Repetitive) cannot be used.

- When the trigger source is Logic
- When the record length is 2.5 Mpoint or more

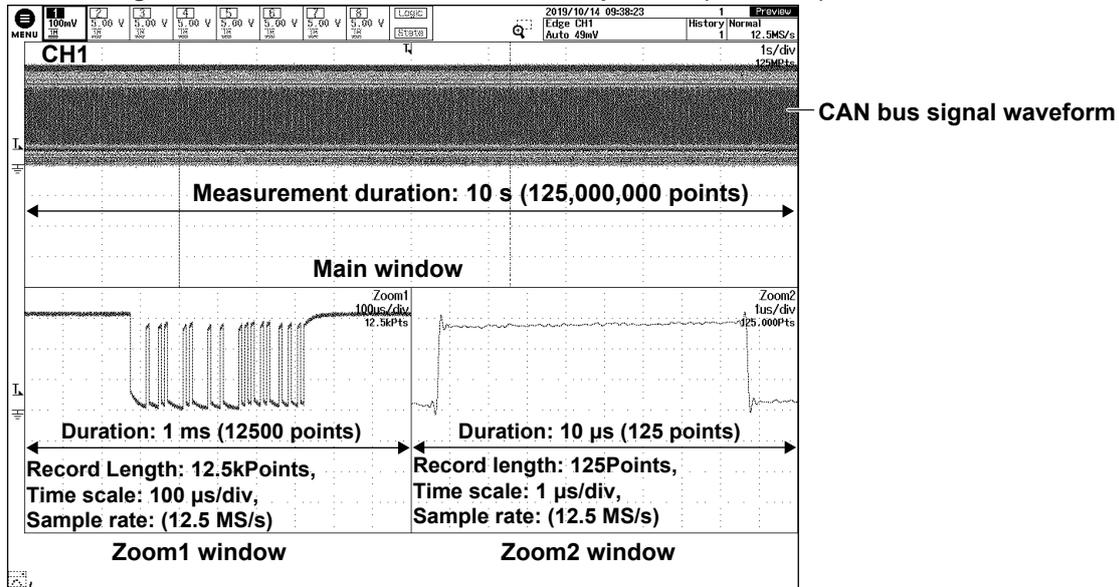
#### Relationship between the Time Scale, Record Length, and Sample Rate

*Record length* refers to the number of data points that are stored to the acquisition memory for each channel.

Decreasing the time scale increases the sample rate. If you want to observe a long-term phenomenon at a high time resolution (at a high sample rate), set the record length to a high value. In the following waveform display example, the waveform of a CAN bus signal is measured for 10 seconds. The waveform is acquired for a long period (10 seconds), and the waveform is zoomed. This allows fine waveform variations to be viewed at a high sample rate.

#### Main window

**Record length: 125MPoints, time scale: 1 s/div, sample rate: (12.5 MS/s)**

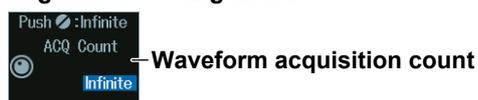


**Note**

- When the record length is set the following values, a single waveform is acquired.
  - Models without the memory option  
25MPoints, 50MPoints, 125MPoints
  - Models with the /M1 option  
50MPoints, 125MPoints, 250MPoints
  - Models with the /M2 option  
125MPoints, 250MPoints, 500MPoints
- Note that when the record length is long, computation and measurement processing take longer than when the record length is short.
- There are limitations on waveform acquisition conditions and the number of waveforms that can be stored in the acquisition memory (the number of history waveforms) depending on the specified record length. For details, see chapter 6 in the Features Guide (IM DLM5058-01EN).

**Number of Waveform Acquisitions (ACQ Count)**

1. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Normal** or **Envelope** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the acquisition count.  
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

**Jog shuttle setting menu****Attenuation Constant and Average Count (Avg Count)**

1. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Average** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the attenuation constant or average count.  
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

**Jog shuttle setting menu****Note**

The calculation process of the attenuation constant and average count inside the instrument varies depending on the averaging process. Depending on the trigger mode of averaging mode (Average), they are processed as follows:

- **Auto, Auto Level, Normal, N Single**  
Avg Count indicates the attenuation constant (exponential averaging).
- **Single**  
Avg Count indicates the average count (simple averaging).

---

## 3.2 Acquiring Waveforms

- “Waveform Acquisition (RUN/STOP),” “Acquiring the Waveform Once (SINGLE)”  
in the Features Guide

### Starting and Stopping Waveform Acquisition (RUN/STOP)

1. Press **RUN/STOP**.
  - The RUN/STOP key illuminates, and waveform acquisition starts. The acquired waveform is displayed.
  - If you set the record length to a value that allows only one waveform to be acquired, pressing the RUN/STOP key will produce the same result as pressing the SINGLE key.
  - You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the RUN/STOP menu on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press **RUN/STOP** again.

The RUN/STOP key light turns off, and waveform acquisition stops.

### Acquiring a Waveform Once (SINGLE)

1. Press **SINGLE**.
  - The SINGLE key illuminates, and when the instrument triggers, it acquires and displays only one waveform and then stops waveform acquisition. The SINGLE key light turns off.
  - You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select SINGLE on the top menu that is displayed.
  - The trigger mode is set to single mode.
  - To stop waveform acquisition, press the RUN/STOP key.

## 4.1 Setting Display Conditions

This section explains the following settings for viewing the display:

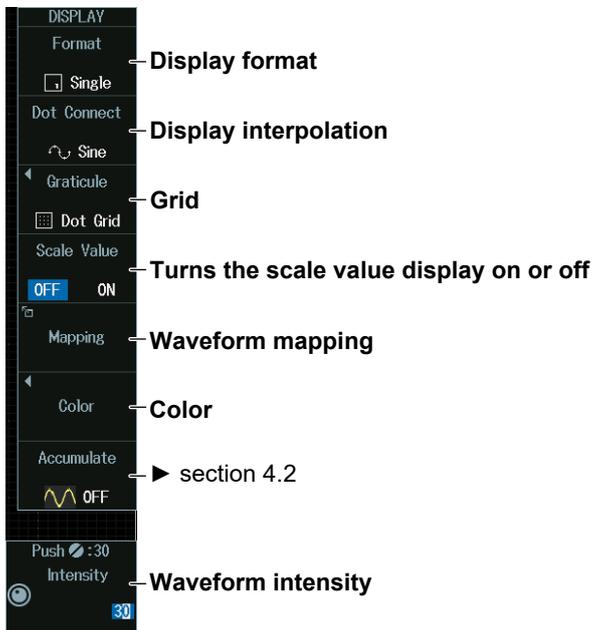
- Display format
- Display interpolation
- Grid
- Turning scale value display on or off
- Waveform mapping
- Color
- Waveform intensity

▶ “Display” in the Features Guide

### DISPLAY Menu

Press **DISPLAY** to display the following menu.

You can also tap **MENU** (  ) in the upper left of the screen and select the DISPLAY menu from ACQ/DISP on the top menu that is displayed.



### Display Format (Format)

Press the **Format** soft key to display the following menu.

Format	
Auto	<b>Automatically divide the areas</b> The number of areas is automatically determined by the number of displayed waveforms.
Single	<b>Not divide the screen</b>
Dual	<b>Divide the screen into two areas</b>
Triad	<b>Divide the screen into three areas</b>
Quad	<b>Divide the screen into four areas</b>
Hexa	<b>Divide the screen into six areas</b>
Octal	<b>Divide the screen into eight areas</b>

#### Note

---

Changing the number of screen divisions does not change the A/D converter resolution.

---

### Display Interpolation (Dot Connect)

Press the **Dot Connect** soft key to display the following menu.

Dot Connect	
OFF	<b>Display interpolation disabled</b> Displays waveforms with dots
Sine	<b>Sine interpolation</b> Interpolates between two points using the sin x/x function
Line	<b>Linear interpolation</b> Linearly interpolates between two points
Pulse	<b>Pulse interpolation</b> Interpolates between two points in a staircase pattern

#### Note

---

In the following cases, the interpolation method is set to Pulse regardless of the interpolation method setting.

- The input signal is a logic signal.
  - The acquisition mode is Envelope.
  - The sampling mode is Repetitive Sampling.
-

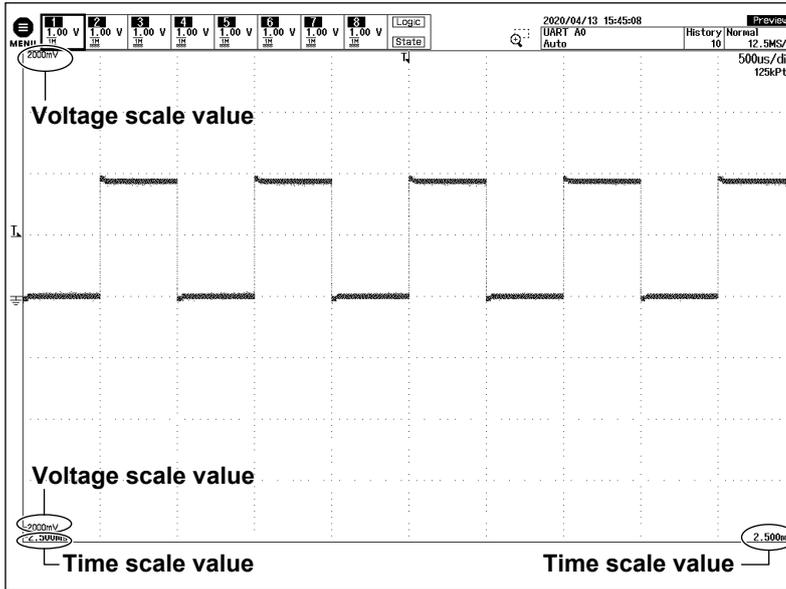


## 4.1 Setting Display Conditions

### Scale Value Display (Scale Value)

Press the **Scale Value** soft key to select On or Off.

You can display the upper and lower limits (scale values) of each channel's vertical or horizontal axes.



### Waveform Mapping (Mapping)

Press the **Mapping** soft key to display the following menu.

#### 8ch model

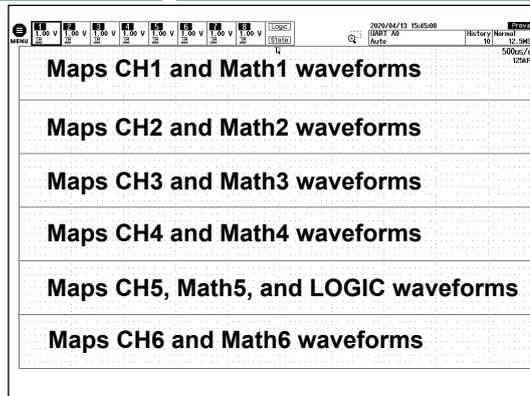


#### 4ch model



Mapping mode

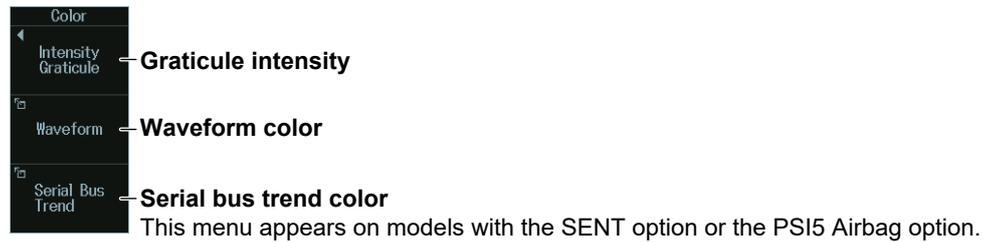
When the waveform mapping mode is set to Manual, set how to map each channel's waveform to the divided screens.



Example when the screen is divided into six areas (Manual mode)

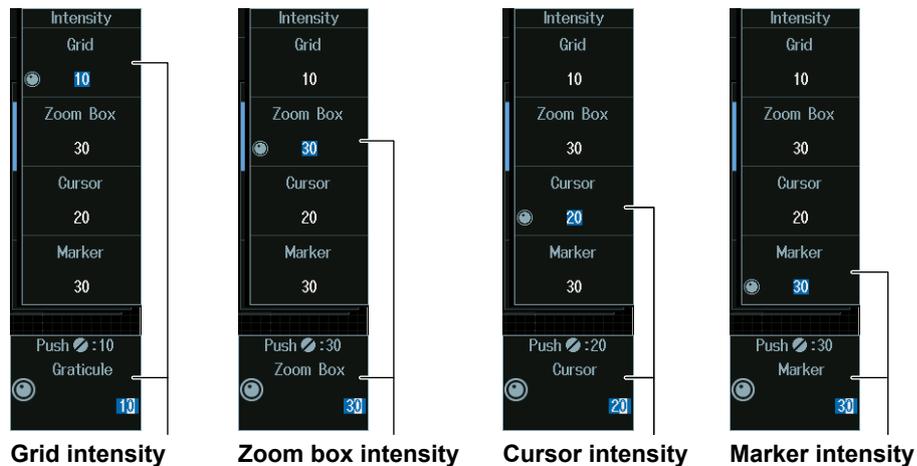
## Display Color (Color)

Press the **Color** soft key to display the following menu.



## Intensity of the Grid, Zoom Box, Cursor, or Marker

Press the **Intensity Graticule** soft key to display the following menu.



\* You can enter the value when the jog shuttle icon is displayed on the soft key that controls each intensity. For instructions on how to use the numeric keypad through the touch panel, see section 3.3 in IM DLM5058-03EN.

## Waveform Color

Press the **Waveform** soft key to display the following menu.



## 4.1 Setting Display Conditions

### Serial Bus Trend Color

Press the **Serial Bus Trend** soft key to display the following menu.



Display color of each trend

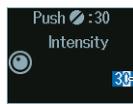
### Waveform Intensity (Intensity)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the intensity.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu

##### When accumulation is set to OFF



Intensity

Pressing RESET (upper right on the front panel) returns the value to 30.

##### When accumulation is set to Intensity or Color



Intensity

Set the accumulation time

Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between Intensity and accumulation time.

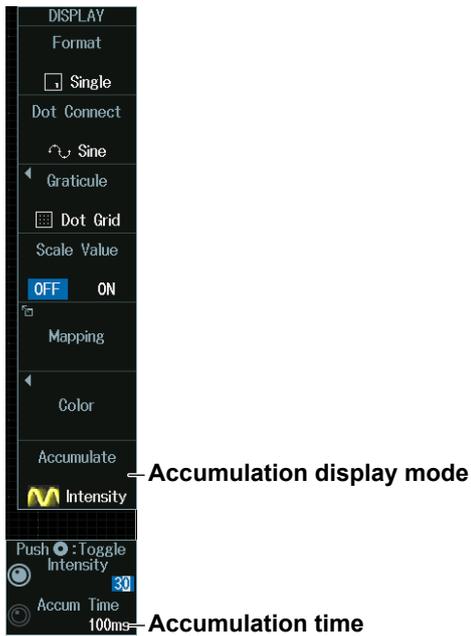
## 4.2 Using the Accumulate Feature

This section explains the following settings for using the accumulate feature:

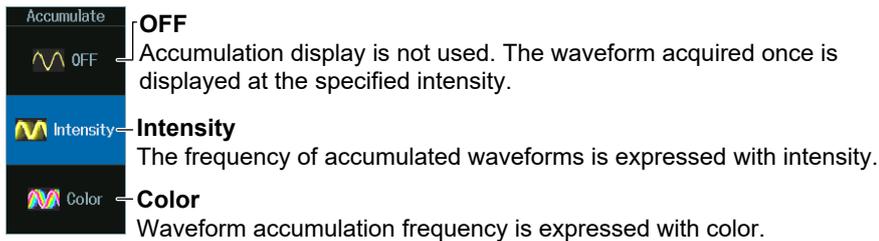
- Accumulation frequency
  - Accumulation time
- [“Accumulation \(Accumulate\)” in the Features Guide](#)

### DISPLAY Menu

1. Press **DISPLAY** to display the following menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (M) in the upper left of the screen and select the DISPLAY menu from ACQ/DISP on the top menu that is displayed.



2. Press the **Accumulate** soft key to display the following menu.



### Color

The 15 waveform accumulation frequency levels are expressed using different colors that range from blue to green to yellow to red to white starting with the lowest frequency.

### Accumulation Time

1. Press **SET** to set the jog shuttle setting menu display to Accum Time.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the accumulation time.  
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the menu that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



### Note

---

Pressing CLEAR TRACE clears the accumulated waveforms.

#### Notes about Waveform Accumulation

- Automated measurement of waveform parameters and GO/NO-GO determination are performed on the most recent waveform.
- If you press RUN/STOP to stop waveform acquisition, accumulation stops. When you restart waveform acquisition, all the waveforms are cleared, and accumulation starts from the beginning.
- If the instrument does not trigger when the trigger mode is set to Normal, the waveform intensity is retained until the next time the instrument triggers.
- If you change the display format when accumulated waveforms are displayed, the instrument operates in the following manner.

During accumulation: The instrument clears the screen and restarts displaying from the beginning.

When accumulation is stopped: The instrument clears the waveforms and displays the most recent waveform.

---

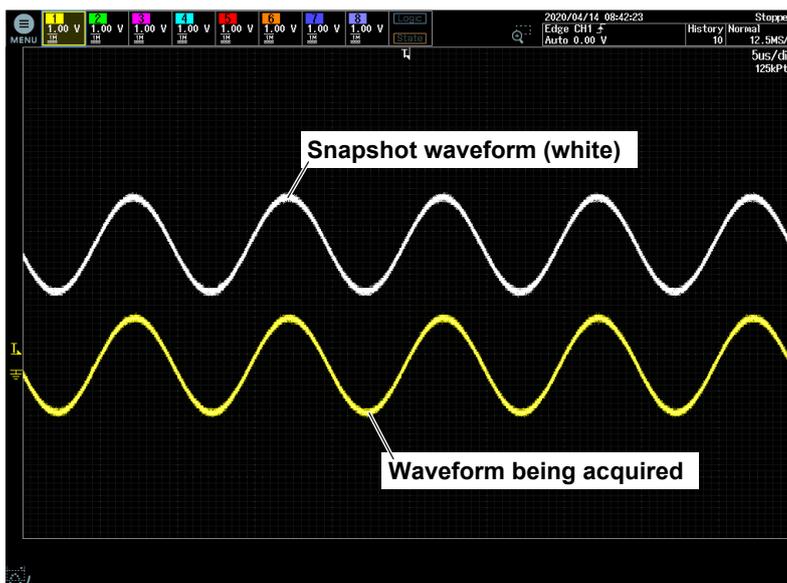
## 4.3 Using the Snapshot and Clear Trace Features

This section explains how to clear snapshots (temporary storage during waveform acquisition) and the waveform display.

- Snapshot
- Clear trace
  - ▶ “Snapshot (SNAP SHOT),” “Clear Trace (CLEAR TRACE)” in the Features Guide

### Snapshot (SNAP SHOT)

1. Acquire waveforms.
  - ▶ section 3.2
2. Press **SNAP SHOT** (📷📶).
  - The currently displayed waveform is retained on the screen as a snapshot displayed in white. Snapshot waveforms remain on the screen until you execute a clear trace operation.
  - You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the SNAP SHOT menu on the top menu that is displayed.



### Clear Trace (CLEAR TRACE)

3. Press **CLEAR TRACE** (CLR📶).
  - All waveforms on the screen are cleared.
  - You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the CLEAR TRACE menu on the top menu that is displayed.

#### Note

If you execute a clear trace operation during waveform acquisition, the instrument clears all the history waveforms that it has acquired and restarts waveform acquisition from the first acquisition.

## 4.4 Adjusting the Backlight

This section explains the following settings for adjusting the backlight:

- Brightness adjustment
- Auto-off time
- Turning auto power-off on or off
- Turning the backlight off

▶ “System Configuration (System Configuration)” in the Features Guide

### UTILITY System Configuration menu

1. Press **UTILITY** to display the UTILITY menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (MENU) in the upper left of the screen and select the UTILITY menu from UTILITY on the top menu.
2. Press the **System Configuration** soft key to display the following menu.

**Adjust the brightness.**

The screenshot shows the 'System Configuration' menu with a 'Display' section. The 'Brightness' is set to 8. The 'Auto OFF' is set to OFF, with an annotation 'Turns auto-off on or off'. The 'Timeout' is set to 1min, with an annotation 'Auto-off time'. There is a 'Turn OFF' button with an annotation 'Turns the backlight off (The backlight turns off. Press any key to turn on the backlight.)'. Other settings include 'Menu Transparency' (Mode: OFF, Level: 3), 'Measurement' (Offset Cancel: OFF, Delay Cancel: OFF), and 'Others' (TRIG OUT Polarity: Positive, USB Function: USBTMC, Click Sound: OFF).

## 4.5 Displaying the Operation Screen Transparently

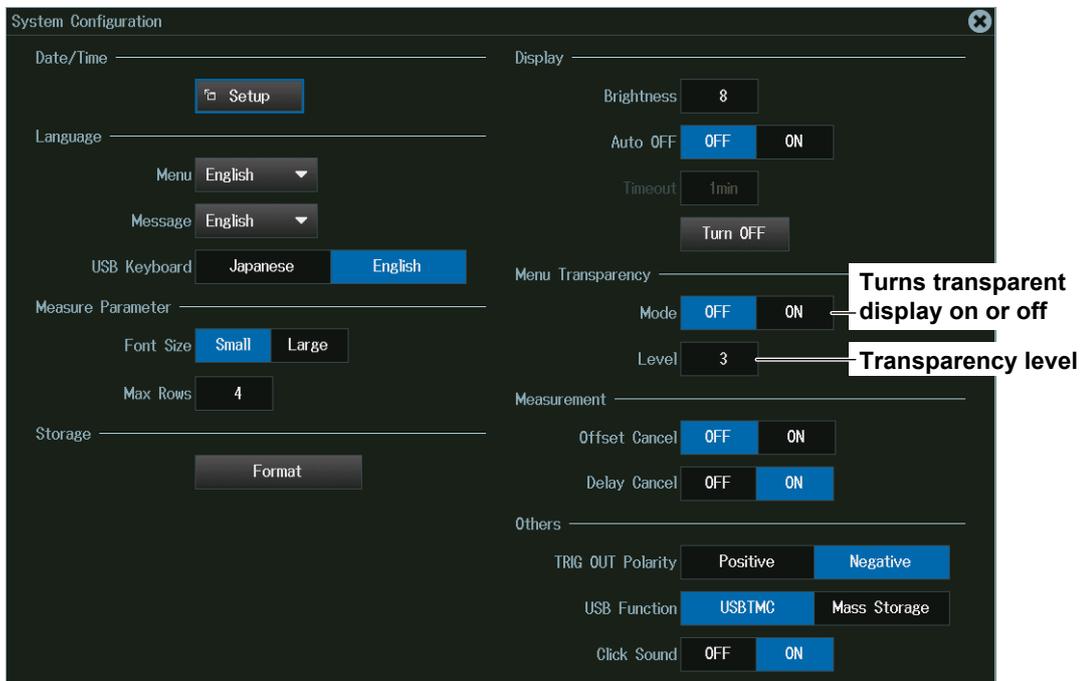
This section explains the following setting for displaying the operations screen (menus, dialog boxes, etc.) transparently.

- Turning transparent display on or off
- Transparency Level

▶ “System Configuration (System Configuration)” in the Features Guide

### UTILITY System Configuration menu

1. Press **UTILITY** to display the UTILITY menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (MENU) in the upper left of the screen and select the UTILITY menu from UTILITY on the top 4menu.
2. Press the **System Configuration** soft key to display the following menu.



### Transparent Display

#### • Turning Transparent Display On and Off (Mode)

When you turn transparent display on, the setup menus and dialog boxes that appear on the waveform display screen become transparent, allowing you to control the setup menus and dialog boxes while viewing the waveform shown in the background. You can also turn the mode on and off by tapping the transparent mode on/off icon  displayed in the lower left of the waveform display screen.

#### • Transparency Level (Level)

You can set the transparency level in the range of 1 (low) to 5 (high). The higher the transparency level, the clearer the waveform display shown in the background.

## 5.1 Displaying XY Waveforms

This section explains the following settings for displaying XY waveforms:

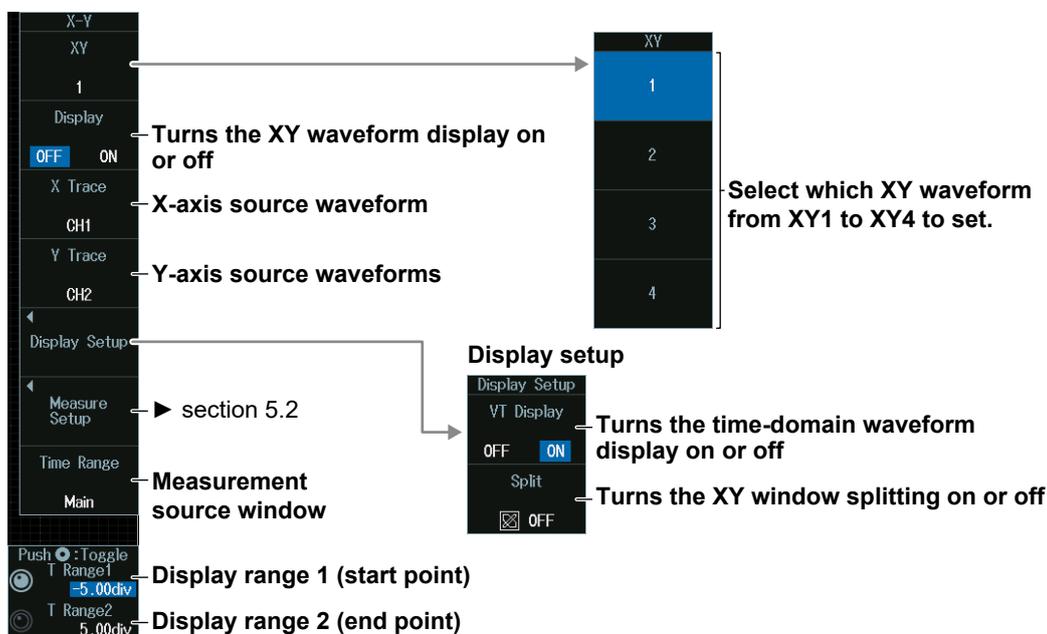
- XY waveform display
- X-axis and Y-axis source waveforms
- Display settings
- Measurement source window
- Display range
- Display settings
- Turning time-domain waveform on or off, turning split display on or off

► [“Displaying XY Waveforms” in the Features Guide](#)

### XY Menu

Press **SHIFT+DISPLAY (X-Y)** to display the X-Y menu.

- You can also tap **MENU** (ⓘ) in the upper left of the screen and select the X-Y menu from ACQ/DISP on the top menu that is displayed.
- Up to four XY waveforms can be displayed. To switch the setup menu, press the XY soft key.



### Note

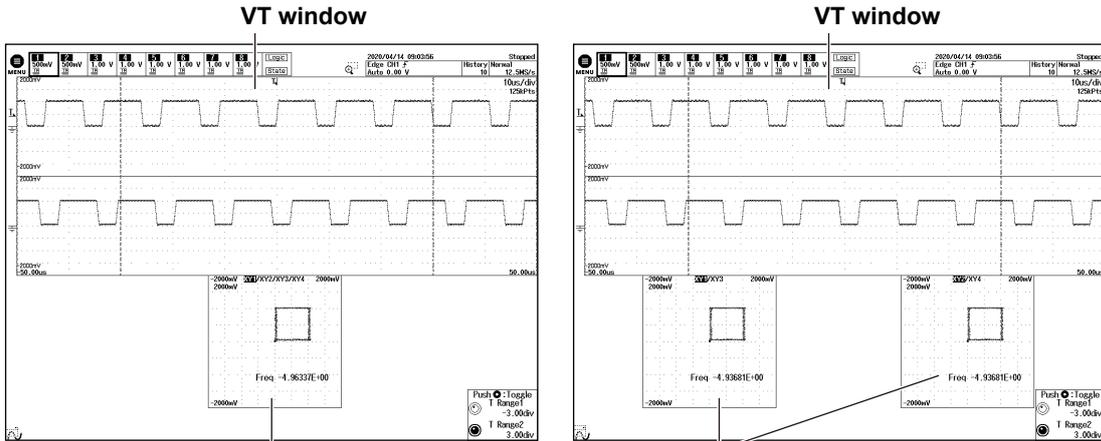
#### Source Waveform (X Trace/Y Trace)

The available channel settings vary depending on the model.

- The available channel settings on 8ch models are as follows:
  - XY1 and XY2: CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math4
  - XY3 and XY4: CH5 to CH8, Math5 to Math8
- The available channel settings on 4ch models are as follows:
  - XY1 and XY2: CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math4

## 5.1 Displaying XY Waveforms

### XY Waveform Display (XY Window), VT Waveform Display (VT Window), XY Window Splitting



**XY window (split display off)**  
XY1 to XY4 waveforms are displayed in the same window.

**XY window (split display on)**  
XY1 to XY4 waveforms whose display is turned on are displayed in order starting with the left XY window, then the right XY window, then the left XY window, and so on.

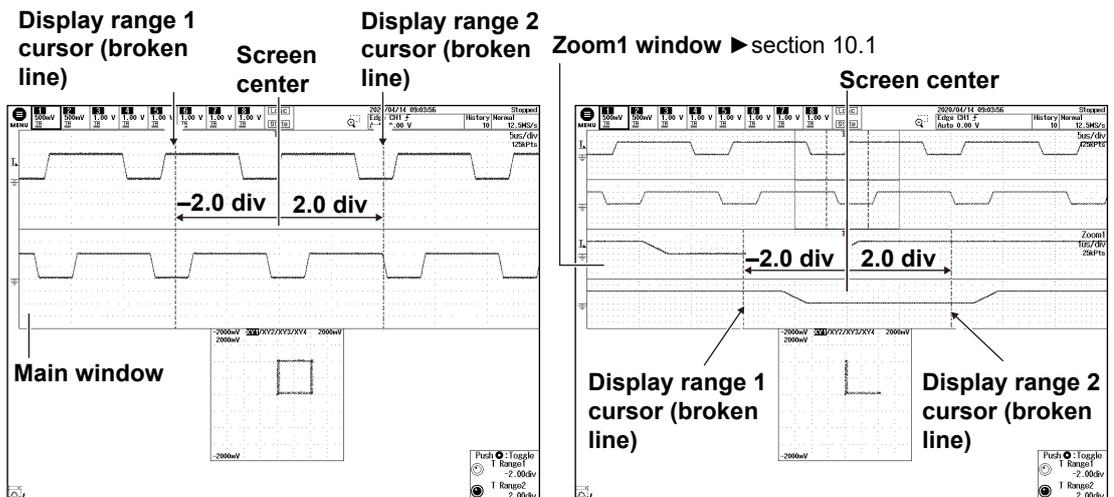
### Measurement Source Window (Time Range) and Display Range (T Range1/T Range2)

1. Press the **Time Range** soft key to select the measurement source window.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the display range.
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between display range 1 (start point) and display range 2 (end point).
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



### Measurement Source Window and Display Range



**When the source window is Main**  
The XY waveform in the range enclosed by the display range cursor on the main window is displayed.

**When the source waveform is Zoom1 to Zoom2**  
The XY waveform in the range enclosed by the display range cursor on the zoom window is displayed. The display range cursor cannot be moved outside the zoom window range.

## 5.2 Performing Cursor Measurements and Area Calculations

This section explains the following settings for determining cursor measurement values and the area of the displayed XY waveform:

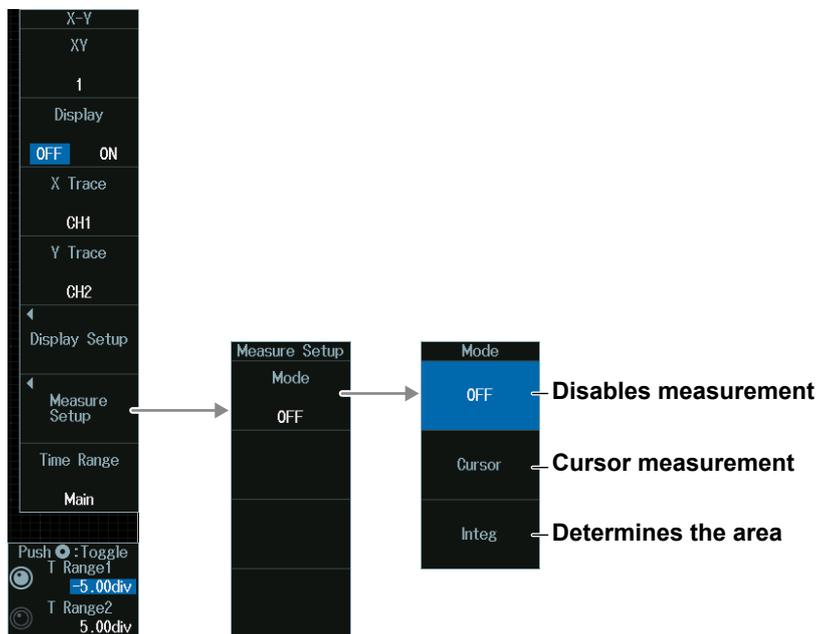
- Cursor measurements on the XY waveform display
- How to calculate the area of XY waveforms

► **“Measurement Setup (Measure Setup)” in the Features Guide**

### XY Menu

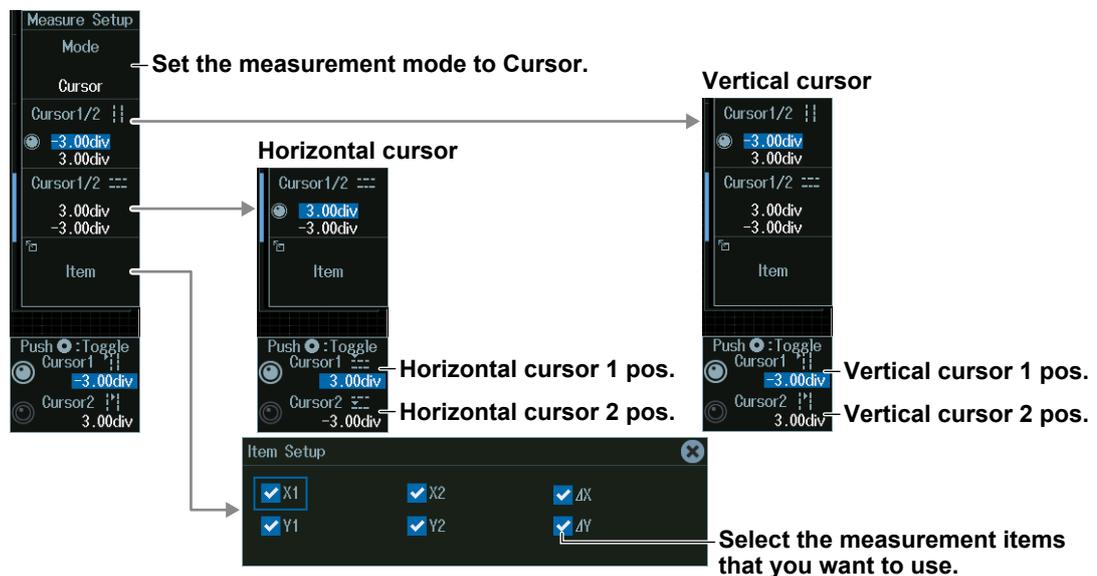
Press **SHIFT+DISPLAY (X-Y)** to display the X-Y menu.

You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the X-Y menu from ACQ/DISP on the top menu that is displayed.

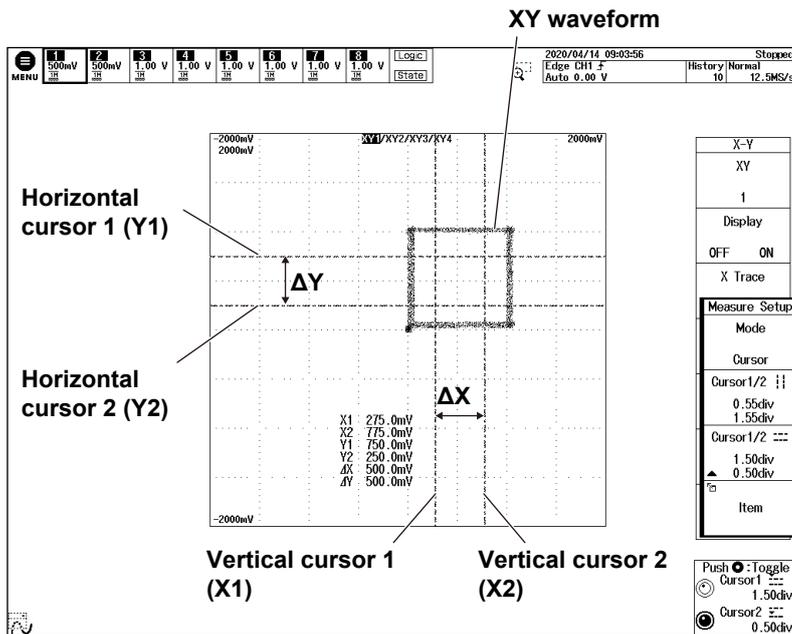


### Cursor Measurement (Cursor)

Press the **Cursor** soft key to display the following menu.



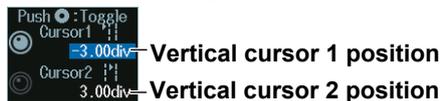
Cursor Measurements on the XY Waveform Display



Vertical Cursor Position (Cursor1||/Cursor2||)

1. Press the **Cursor1/2||** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set vertical cursor 1 (Cursor1||) or vertical cursor 2 (Cursor2||).
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between vertical cursor 1 and vertical cursor 2.
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

Jog shuttle setting menu



Note

Setting the Vertical Cursor Positions

If you press SET several times and make the jog shuttle control both vertical cursor 1 and vertical cursor 2, you can move them together. When you move the two cursors together, the cursors no longer move when one of the cursors reaches the edge of the screen.

### Horizontal Cursor Position (Cursor1===/Cursor2===)

1. Press the **Cursor1/2===** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set horizontal cursor 1 (Cursor1===) or horizontal cursor 2 (Cursor2===).
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between horizontal cursor 1 and horizontal cursor 2.
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



---

### Note

#### Setting the Horizontal Cursor Positions

If you press SET several times and make the jog shuttle control both horizontal cursor 1 and horizontal cursor 2, you can move them together.

When you move the two cursors together, the cursors no longer move when one of the cursors reaches the edge of the screen.

---

## 5.2 Performing Cursor Measurements and Area Calculations

### Performing Area Calculations (Integ)

Press the **Integ** soft key to display the following menu.

**Measure Setup**

- Mode
- Integ
- Loop
- Open
- Polarity
  - CW
  - CCW

Set the measurement mode to Integ.

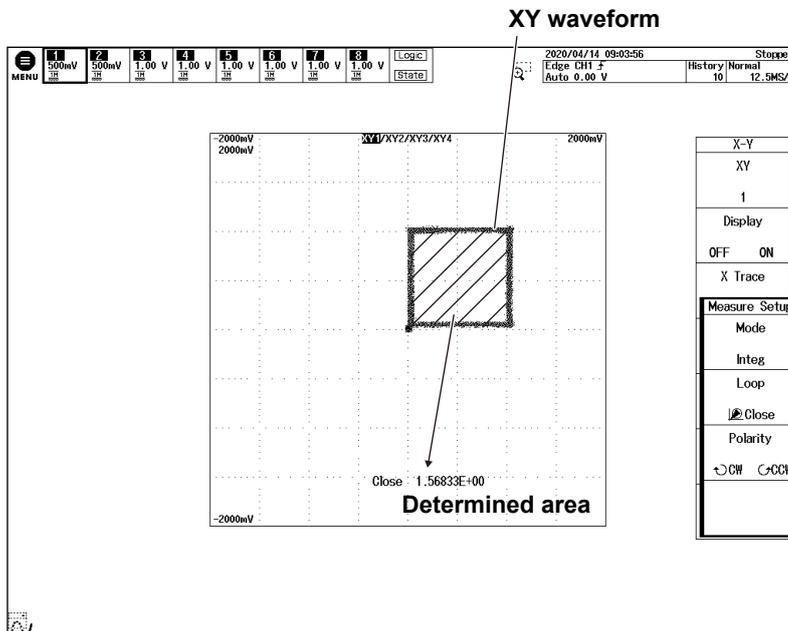
Direction to be made positive  
 CW: Clockwise  
 CCW: Counterclockwise

**Area determination method**

- Loop
  - Open — Trapezoid sum
  - Close — Triangle sum

For details on how areas are determined, see appendix 1 in IM DLM5058-01EN.

### Area of XY Waveforms



## 6.1 Setting the Computation Mode

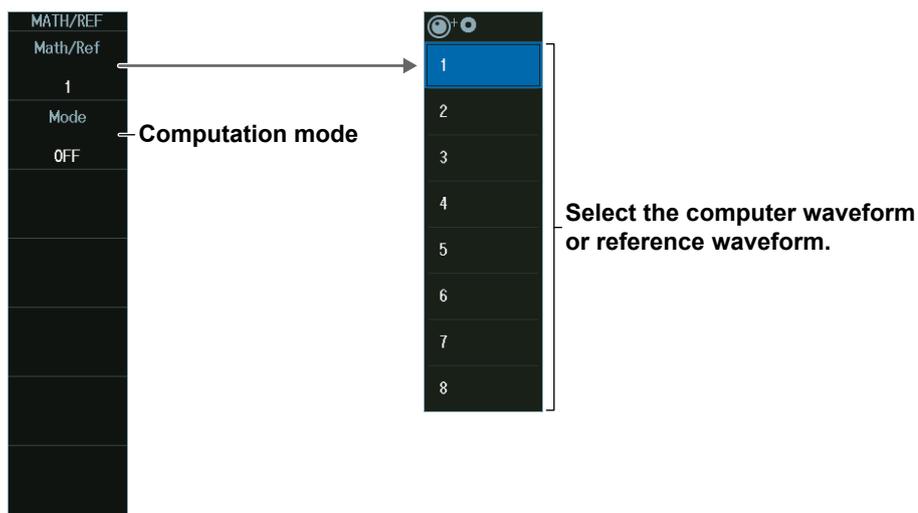
This section explains how to set the computation mode.

► [“Computation Mode \(Mode\)” in the Features Guide](#)

### MATH/REF Menu

Press **MATH/REF** to display the following menu.

You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the MATH/REF menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.



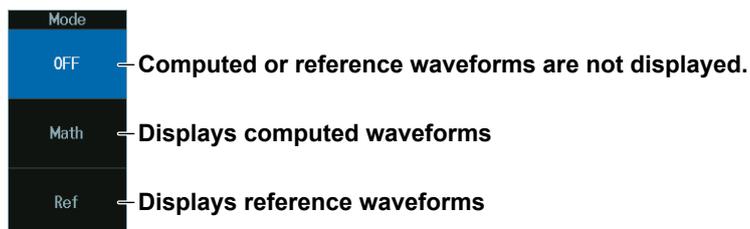
### Note

#### Computed Waveforms or Reference Waveform (Math/Ref)

- The available settings vary depending on the model.
  - 8ch models: Math/Ref1 to Math/Ref8
  - 4ch models: Math/Ref1 to Math/Ref4
- Computed waveforms (MATH waveforms) are not displayed while acquiring waveforms in single mode. The instrument will display computed waveforms after it triggers and the roll mode display stops.
- On the ACQUIRE menu, if you set the record length (Record Length) to the maximum record length, Math/Ref2, Math/Ref4, Math/Ref6, and Math/Ref8 cannot be used. For details on the ACQUIRE menu, see section 3.1.

### Computation Mode (Mode)

Press the **Mode** soft key to display the following menu.



## 6.2 Performing Addition, Subtraction, and Multiplication

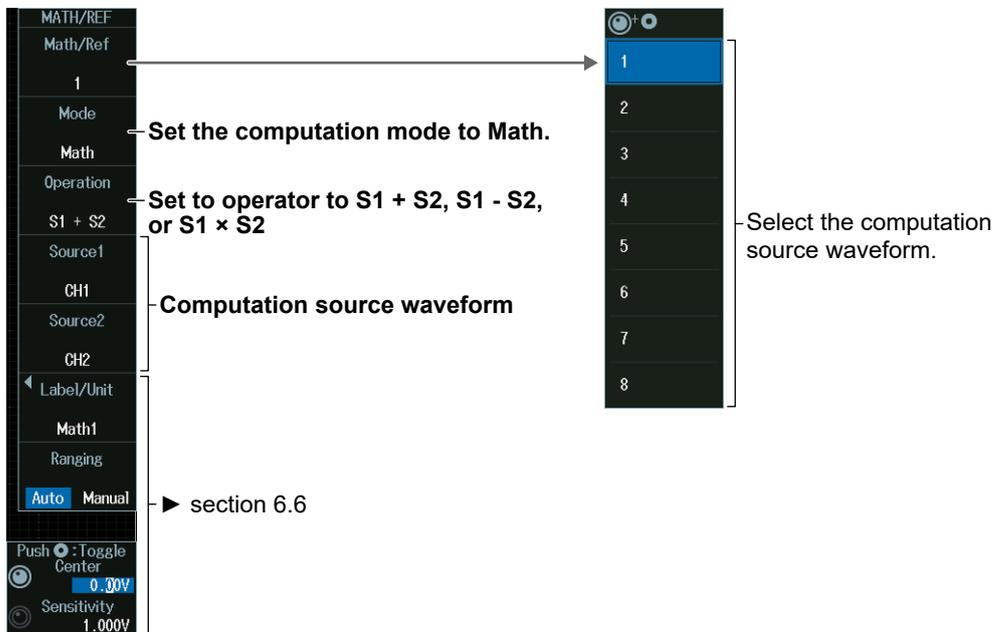
This section explains the following settings for performing addition, subtraction, and multiplication:

- Operators
- Computation source waveforms

► “Operators (Operation)” in the Features Guide

### MATH/REF Menu

1. Press **MATH/REF** to display the following menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the MATH/REF menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Math** soft key.
3. Press the **Operation** soft key, and then the **S1 + S2**, **S1 - S2**, or **S1 x S2** soft key to display the following menu.



### Math Source Waveforms (Source1 and Source2)

Below are the computation source waveforms that you can assign to Source1 and Source2.

Model	Computed Waveform (Waveform of Computer Result)	Computation Source Waveforms That You Can Assign to Source1 and Source2
8ch	Math1	CH1 to CH4
	Math2	CH1 to CH4, Math1
	Math3	CH1 to CH4, Math1, Math2
	Math4	CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math3
	Math5	CH5 to CH8
	Math6	CH5 to CH8, Math5
	Math7	CH5 to CH8, Math5, Math6
	Math8	CH5 to CH8, Math5 to Math7
4ch	Math1	CH1 to CH4
	Math2	CH1 to CH4, Math1
	Math3	CH1 to CH4, Math1, Math2
	Math4	CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math3

## 6.3 Performing Filter Functions

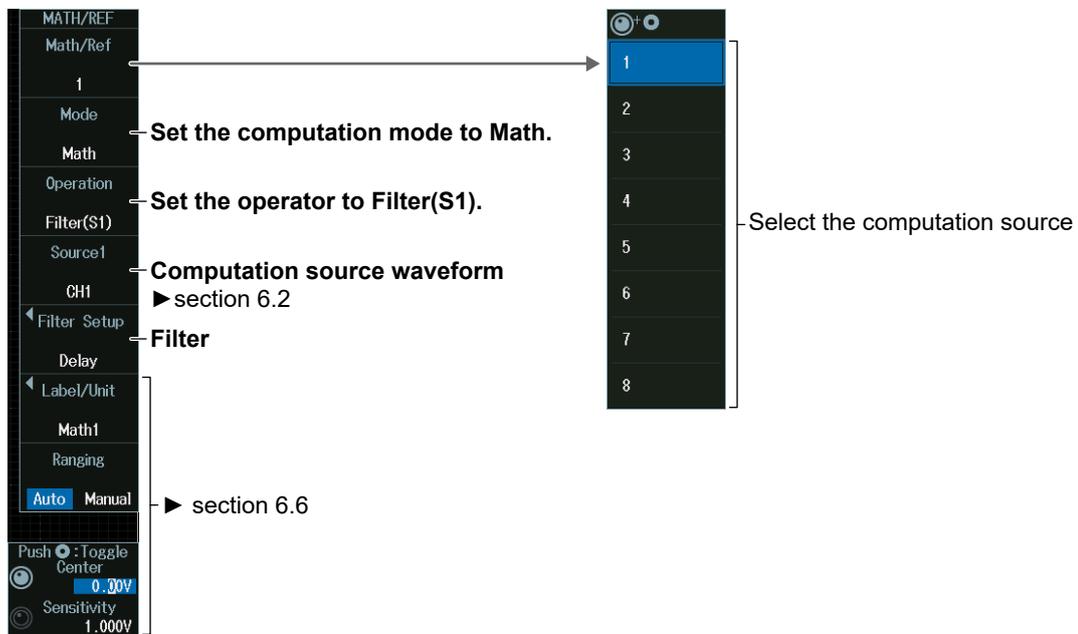
This section explains the following settings for applying filter functions (phase shift, moving average, IIR filter):

- Operators
- Computation source waveforms
- Filter

► “Operators (Operation)” in the Features Guide

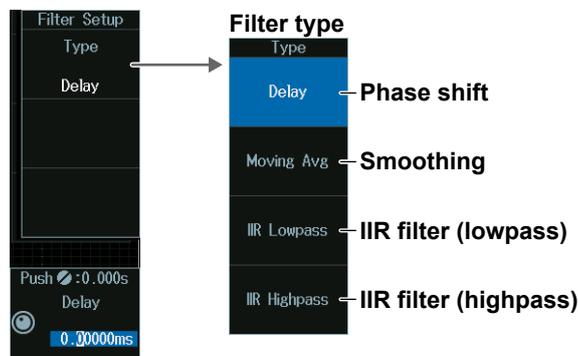
### MATH/REF Menu

1. Press **MATH/REF** to display the following menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (MENU) in the upper left of the screen and select the MATH/REF menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Math** soft key.
3. Press the **Operation** soft key and then the **Filter (S1)** soft key to display the following menu.



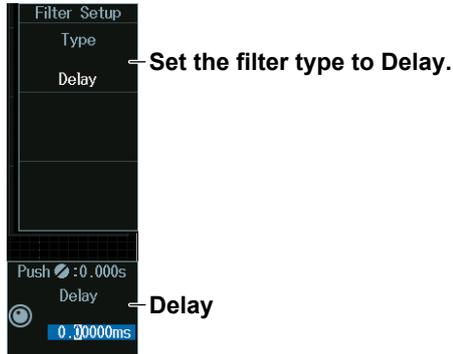
### Filter (Filter Setup)

Press the **Filter Setup** soft key, then the **Type** soft key to display the following menu.



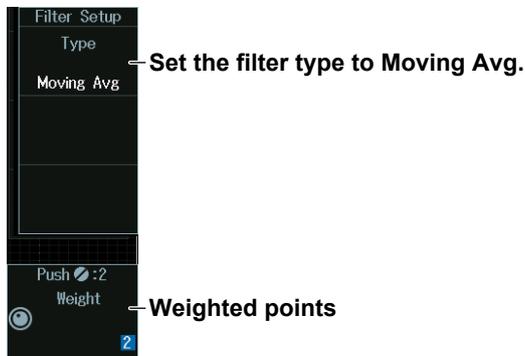
### Phase Shifting (Delay)

Press the **Delay** soft key to display the following menu.



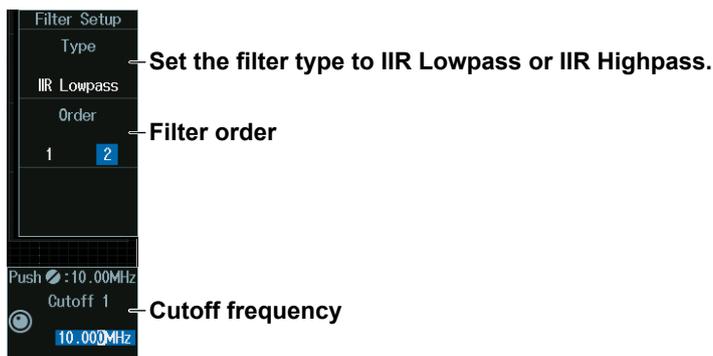
### Smoothing (Moving Avg)

Press the **Moving Avg** soft key to display the following menu.



### IIR Filter (IIR Lowpass/IIR Highpass)

Press the **IIR Lowpass** or **IIR Highpass** soft key to display the following menu.



## 6.4 Performing Integration

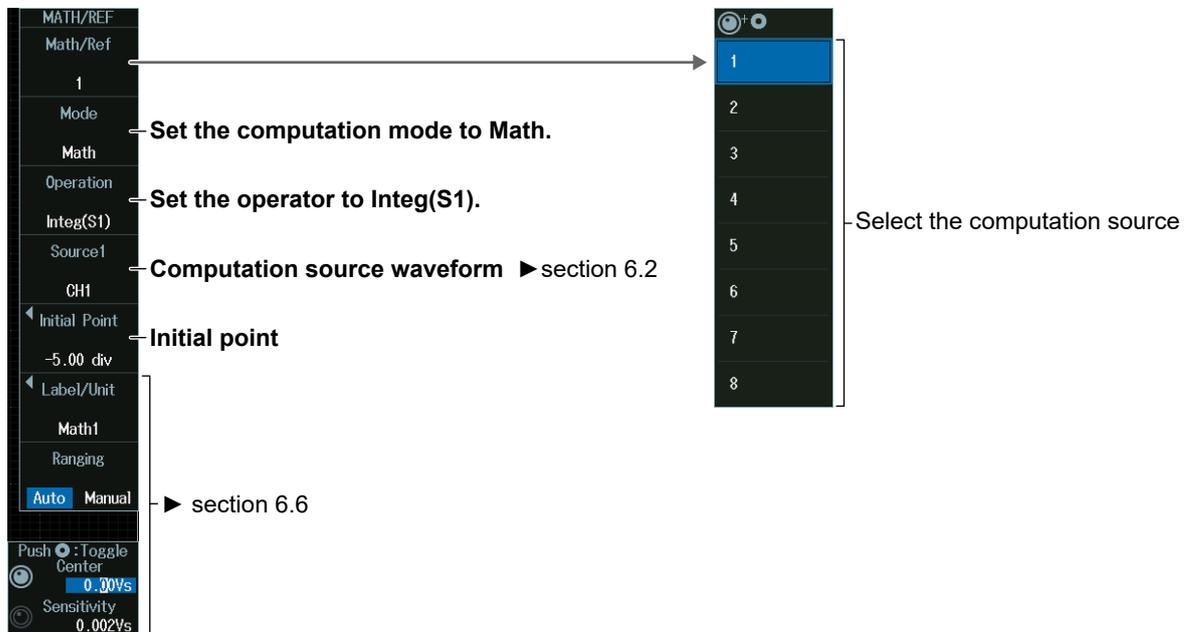
This section explains the following settings for performing integration:

- Operators
- Computation source waveforms
- Initial point

► “Operators (Operation),” “Initial Point (Initial Point)”  
in the Features Guide

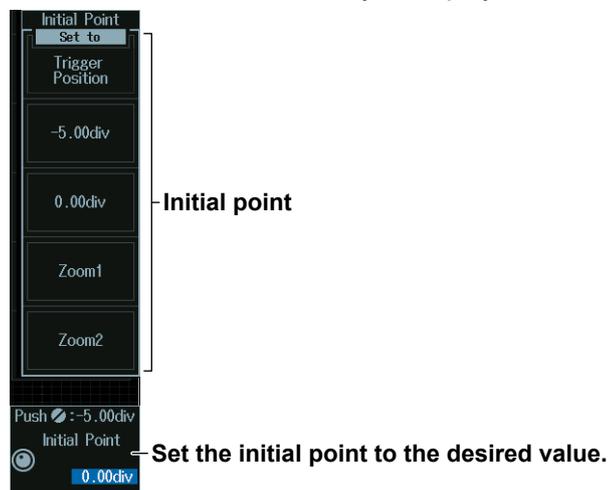
### MATH/REF Menu

1. Press **MATH/REF** to display the following menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the MATH/REF menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Math** soft key.
3. Press the **Operation** soft key and then the **Integ(S1)** soft key to display the following menu.



### Initial Point

Press the **Initial Point** soft key to display the following menu.



## 6.5 Performing Count Computations

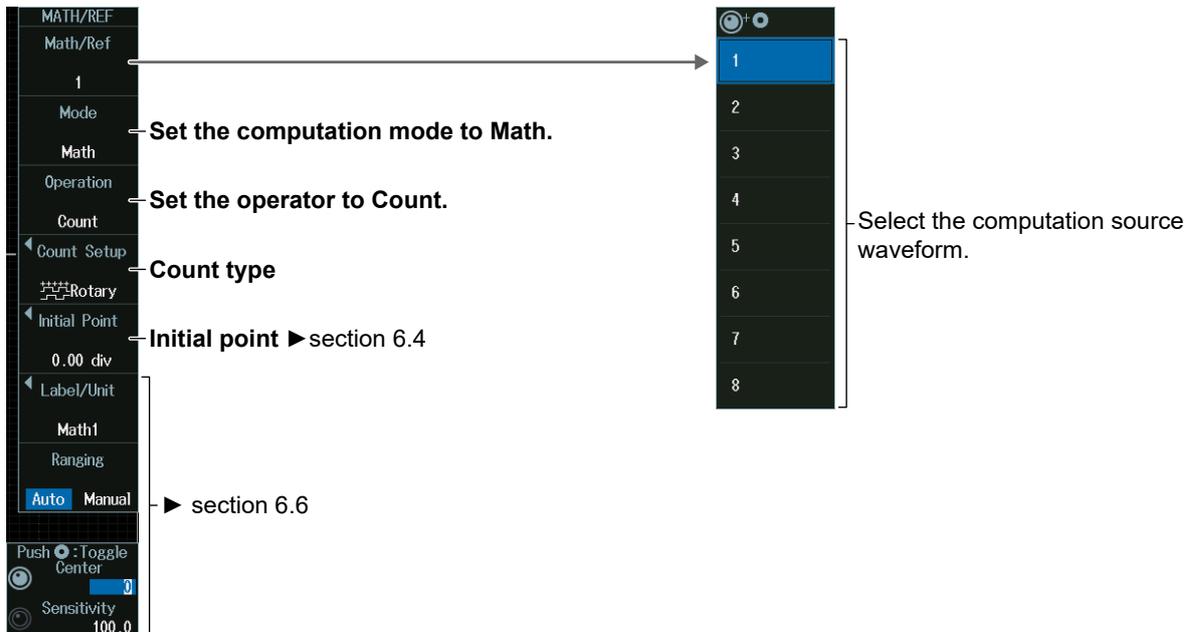
This section explains the following settings for performing edge count or rotary count:

- Operators
- Initial Point
- Count type
- Computation source waveform, polarity, level for detecting edges, rotary count threshold level, hysteresis

► “Operators (Operation),” “Edge Count or Rotary Count (Count)” in the Features Guide

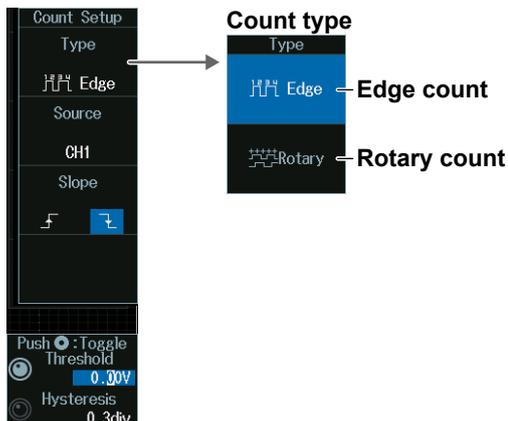
### MATH/REF Menu

1. Press **MATH/REF** to display the following menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the MATH/REF menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Math** soft key.
3. Press the **Operation** soft key and then the **Count(S1)** soft key to display the following menu.



### Count Type (Type)

Press the **Count Setup** soft key, then the **Type** soft key to display the following menu.



### Edge Count (Edge)

Press the **Edge** soft key to display the following menu.

The screenshot shows the 'Count Setup' menu for the Edge count type. The 'Type' is set to 'Edge'. The 'Source' is 'CH1'. The 'Slope' is set to a rising edge. The 'Push' button is labeled 'Toggle'. The 'Threshold' is set to '0.30V'. The 'Hysteresis' is set to '0.3div'. Annotations point to the 'Source' field (labeled 'Computation source waveform' with a reference to section 6.2), the 'Slope' field (labeled 'Polarity'), the 'Threshold' field (labeled 'Level used to detect edges'), and the 'Hysteresis' field (labeled 'Hysteresis').

### Rotary Count (Rotary)

Press the **Rotary** soft key to display the following menu.

The screenshot shows the 'Count Setup' menu for the Rotary count type. The 'Type' is 'Rotary'. The 'Source' fields are 'Source1(A)', 'Source2(B)', and 'Source3(Z)'. The 'None' option is also visible. Annotations point to the 'Source1(A)' field (labeled 'Phase A's computation source waveform' with a reference to section 6.2), the 'Source2(B)' field (labeled 'Phase B's computation source waveform' with a reference to section 6.2), and the 'Source3(Z)' field (labeled 'Phase Z's computation source waveform' with a reference to section 6.2). Below the source fields, there are two identical sub-menus for 'Source1(A)' and 'Source2(B)'. Each sub-menu has a 'Push' button labeled 'Toggle', a 'Threshold' of '0.30V', and a 'Hysteresis' of '0.3div'. Annotations point to the 'Threshold' field (labeled 'Level for detecting waveform state changes') and the 'Hysteresis' field (labeled 'Hysteresis') in both sub-menus. At the bottom, there are two sub-menus for 'Source3(Z)'. The left one is labeled 'When not using phase Z' and has 'None' selected in the 'Source' field. The right one is labeled 'When using phase Z' and has 'CH1' selected in the 'Source' field. Both have a 'Push' button labeled 'Toggle', a 'Threshold' of '0.30V', and a 'Hysteresis' of '0.3div'. The right sub-menu also has a 'Polarity' field with a rising edge icon. Annotations point to the 'Source' field (labeled 'Phase Z's computation source waveform' with a reference to section 6.2 and the instruction 'Select None when not using phase Z.'), the 'Threshold' field (labeled 'Level for detecting waveform state changes'), the 'Hysteresis' field (labeled 'Hysteresis'), and the 'Polarity' field (labeled 'Polarity').

## 6.6 Setting Labels, Units, and Scaling

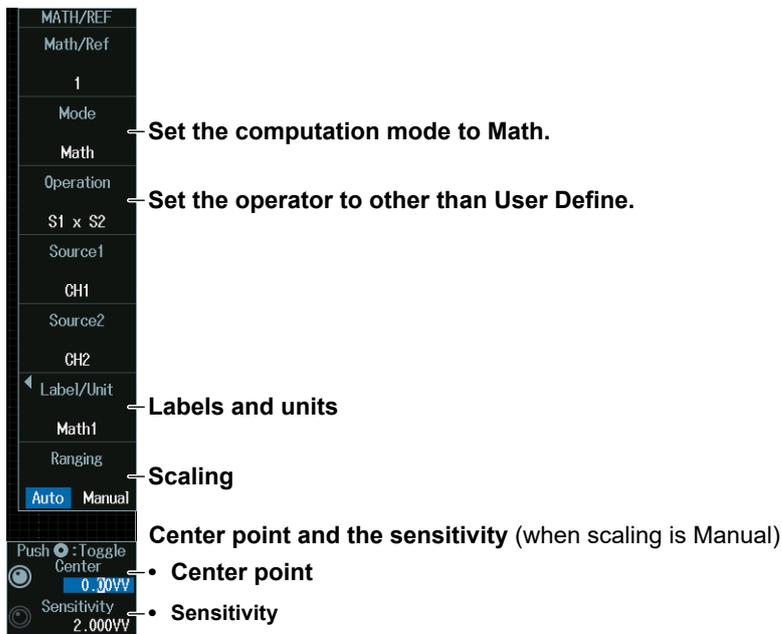
This section explains the following labels, units, and scaling settings:

- Labels and units
- Scaling

► “Setting Labels and Units (Label/Unit),”  
“Scaling (Ranging)” in the Features Guide

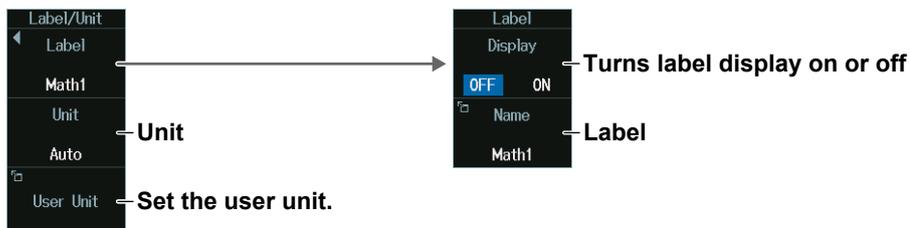
### MATH/REF Menu

1. Press **MATH/REF** to display the following menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the MATH/REF menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Math** soft key.
3. Press the **Operation** soft key and then a soft key other than the **User Define** soft key to display the following menu.



### Labels and Units (Label/Unit)

Press the **Label/Unit** soft key to display the following menu.



### Scaling (Ranging)

**Auto:** Automatically set the vertical display range of the computed waveform.

**Manual:** Manually set the sensitivity (Sensitivity) and the signal level at the vertical center (Center).

## 6.7 Loading Reference Waveforms

This section explains the following settings for loading reference waveforms:

- Loading reference waveforms
- Label
- Displaying the reference waveform information
- Vertical Position

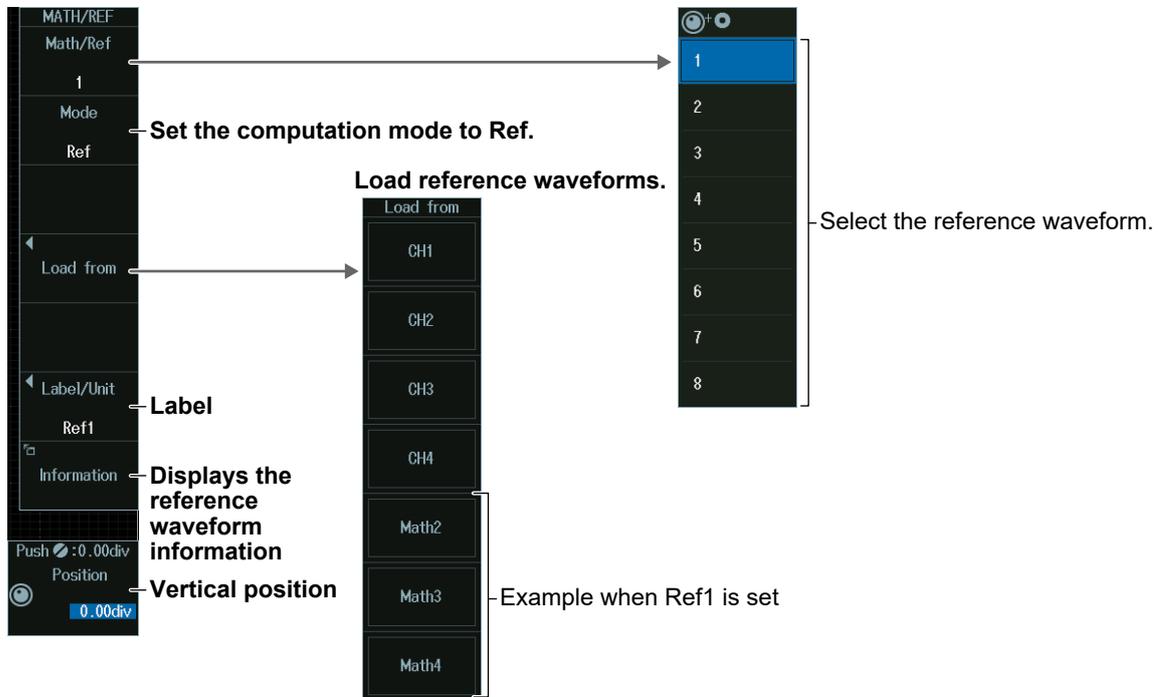
► “Reference Waveforms” in the Features Guide

### MATH/REF Menu

**1.** Press **MATH/REF**.

You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the MATH/REF menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.

**2.** Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Ref** soft key to display the following menu.



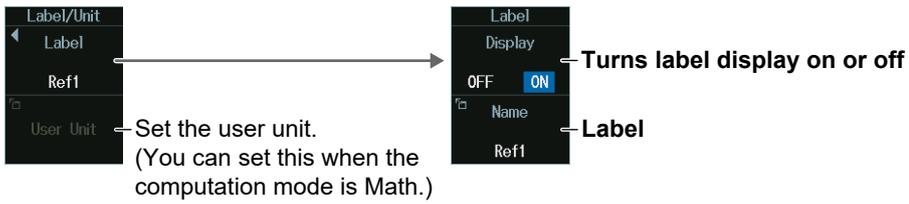
### Loading the Reference Waveform (Load from)

Waveforms that can be assigned to (loaded into) the reference waveform are as follows:

Model	Reference waveform	Waveforms that can be assigned to the reference waveform
8ch	Ref1	CH1 to CH4, Math2 to Math4
	Ref2	CH1 to CH4, Math1, Math3, Math4
	Ref3	CH1 to CH4, Math1, Math2, Math4
	Ref4	CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math3
	Ref5	CH5 to CH8, Math6 to Math8
	Ref6	CH5 to CH8, Math5, Math7, Math8
	Ref7	CH5 to CH8, Math5, Math6, Math8
	Ref8	CH5 to CH8, Math5 to Math7
4ch	Ref1	CH1 to CH4, Math2 to Math4
	Ref2	CH1 to CH4, Math1, Math3, Math4
	Ref3	CH1 to CH4, Math1, Math2, Math4
	Ref4	CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math3

### Label (Label)

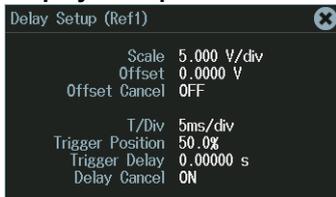
Press the **Label/Unit** soft key to display the following menu.



### Reference Waveform Information Display (Information)

Press the **Information** soft key to display the reference waveform information.

#### Display example



## 6.8 Performing User-Defined Computations (Optional)

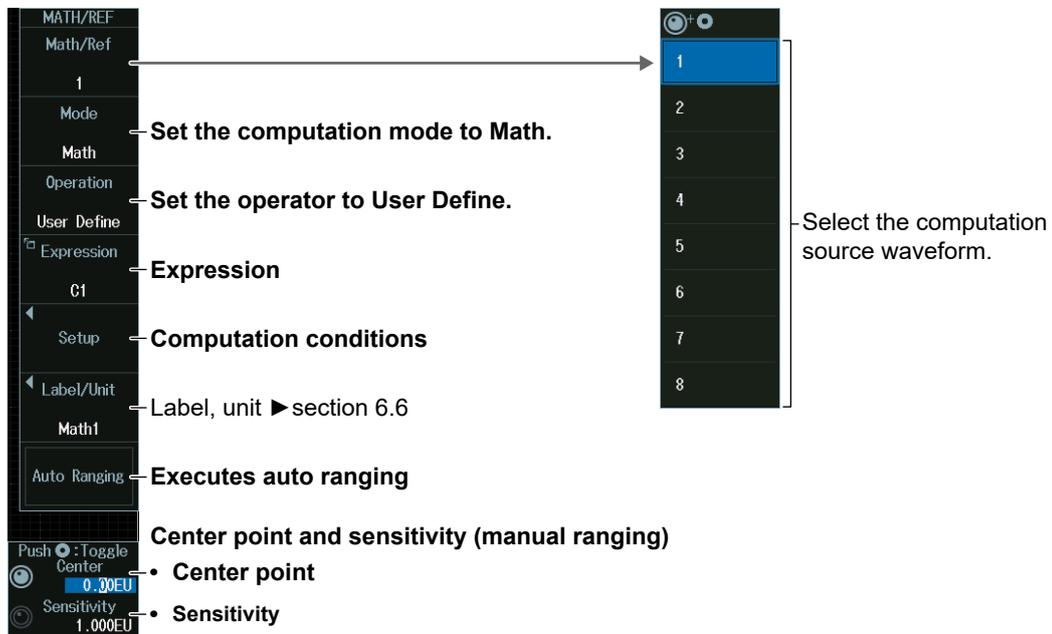
This section explains the following settings for performing user-defined computations:

- Operators
- Expression
- Computation conditions
- Labels and units
- Executing auto ranging

▶ “User-Defined Computation (User Define, Option)” in the Features Guide

### MATH/REF Menu

1. Press **MATH/REF** to display the following menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the MATH/REF menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Math** soft key.
3. Press the **Operation** soft key and then the **User Define** soft key to display the following menu.



## 6.8 Performing User-Defined Computations (Optional)

### Expression (Expression)

Press the **Expression** soft key to display the following screen.

Define an expression by combining computation source waveforms and operators.  
Add the results of automated measurement of waveform parameters to the expression.

Math 8

C8

Hint:

Measure

FILT1 FILT2 BIN DELAY DA K1 K2 K3 K4

HLBT MEAN INTEG DIFF PH P1 e fs 1/fs

C1 C5 M1 M5 Bus1 PWHH PWLL SIN COS TAN 7 8 9 /

C2 C6 M2 M6 Bus2 PWHL PWLH ASIN ACOS ATAN 4 5 6 \*

C3 C7 M3 M7 Bus3 PWXX FV EXP LN LOG 1 2 3 -

C4 C8 M4 Bus4 DUTYH DUTYL ABS P2 SQRT 0 . Exp +

T , ( ) Enter

) — Inserts a )

← — Moves the cursor to the left

→ — Moves the cursor to the right

Delete — Deletes the character at the cursor position

BS — Deletes the previous character

Clear — Deletes all characters

Enter — Enters the expression

Model	Computed waveform	Options
8ch	Math1	None
	Math2	M1
	Math3	M1 to M2
	Math4	M1 to M3
	Math5	M1 to M4
	Math6	M1 to M5
	Math7	M1 to M6
	Math8	M1 to M7

Model	Computed waveform	Options
4ch	Math1	None
	Math2	M1
	Math3	M1 to M2
	Math4	M1 to M3

### Computation Conditions (Setup)

Press the **Setup** soft key to display the following menu.

Setup

Math on History — Performs computations on history waveforms.

Const Setup — Constants

Filter1 — Digital filter

Lowpass IIR — Digital filter

Filter2 — Digital filter

Lowpass IIR — Digital filter

Average — Turns averaging on or off (This setting is shared by computed waveforms.)

When Averaging Is On

Average — OFF ON

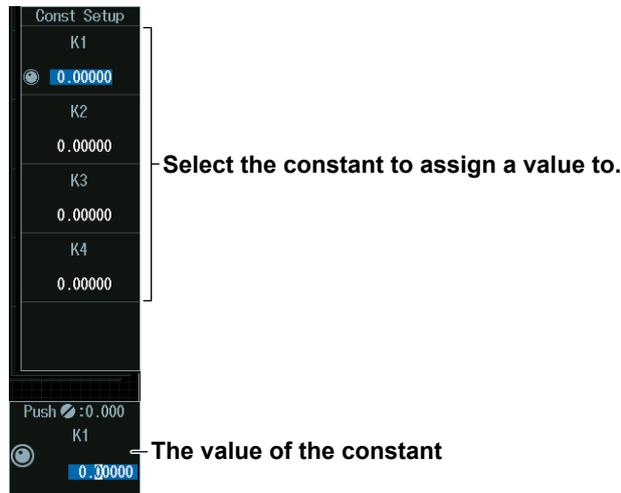
Push : 16

Avg Count — Average count

16

### Constant (Const Setup)

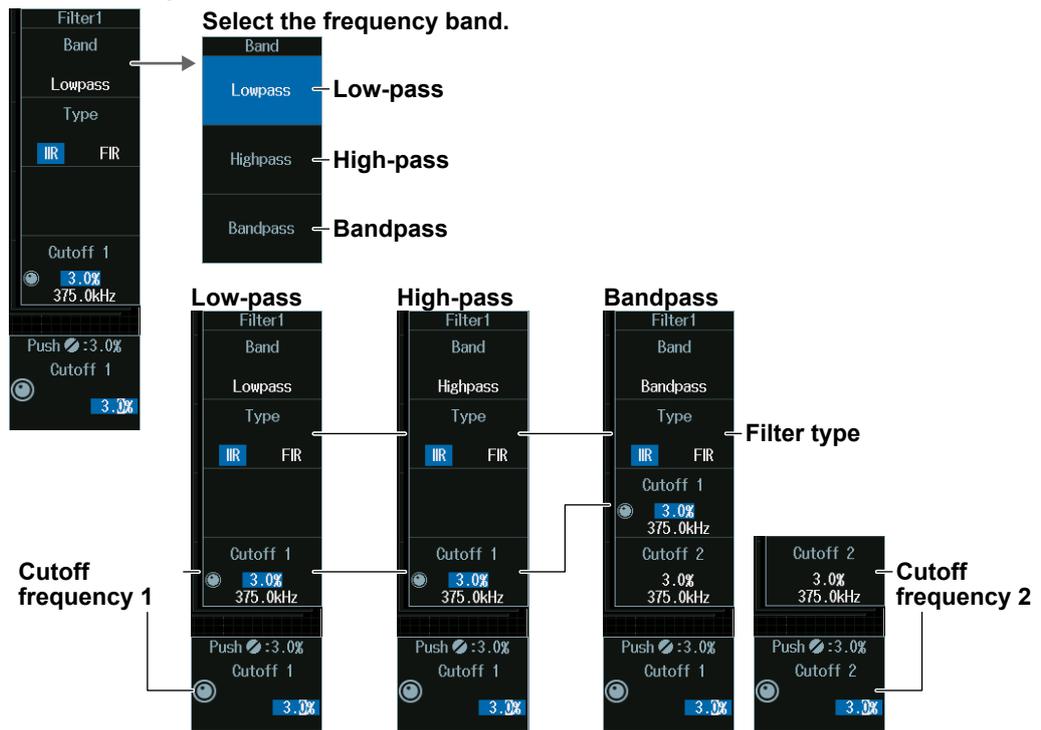
Press the **Const Setup** soft key to display the following menu.



### Digital Filter (Filter1/Filter2)

Press the **Filter1** or **Filter2** soft key to display the following menu.

#### Filter1 example



Set **Filter2** in the same manner.

## 7.1 Displaying FFT Waveforms

This section explains the following settings for performing FFT analysis:

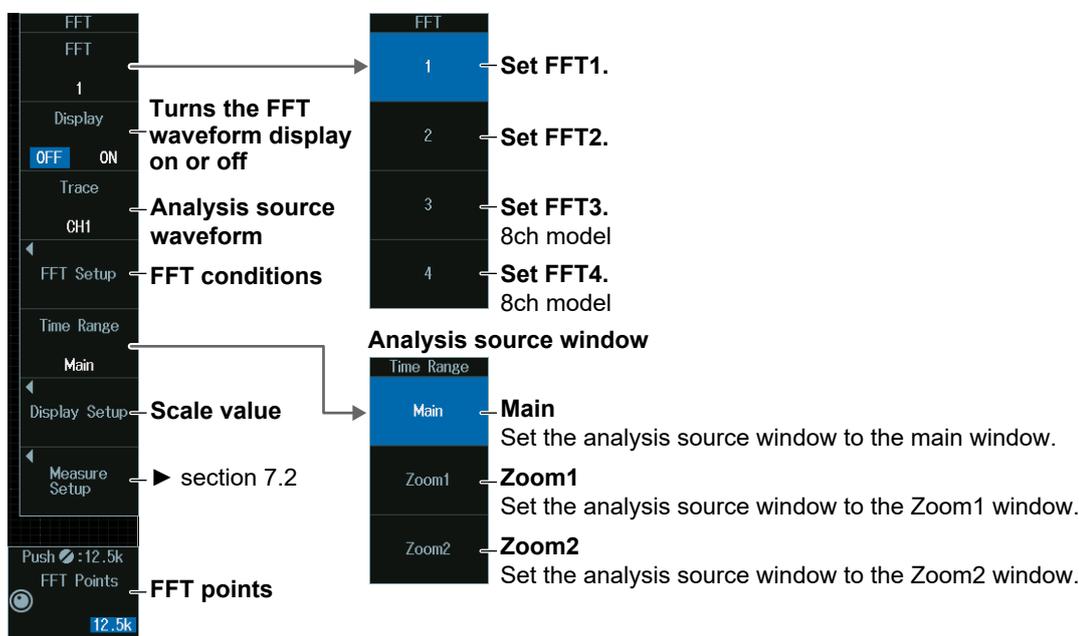
- Turning FFT waveform display on or off
- Analysis source waveform
- FFT conditions
- Analysis range
- Vertical and horizontal scale values
- FFT points

► “FFT” in the Features Guide

### FFT Menu

Press **SHIFT+MATH/REF (FFT)** to display the following menu.

- You can also tap **MENU** (E) in the upper left of the screen and select the FFT menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
- Up to four FFT waveforms can be displayed (two on 4ch models). To switch the setup menu, press the **FFT** soft key.



### Note

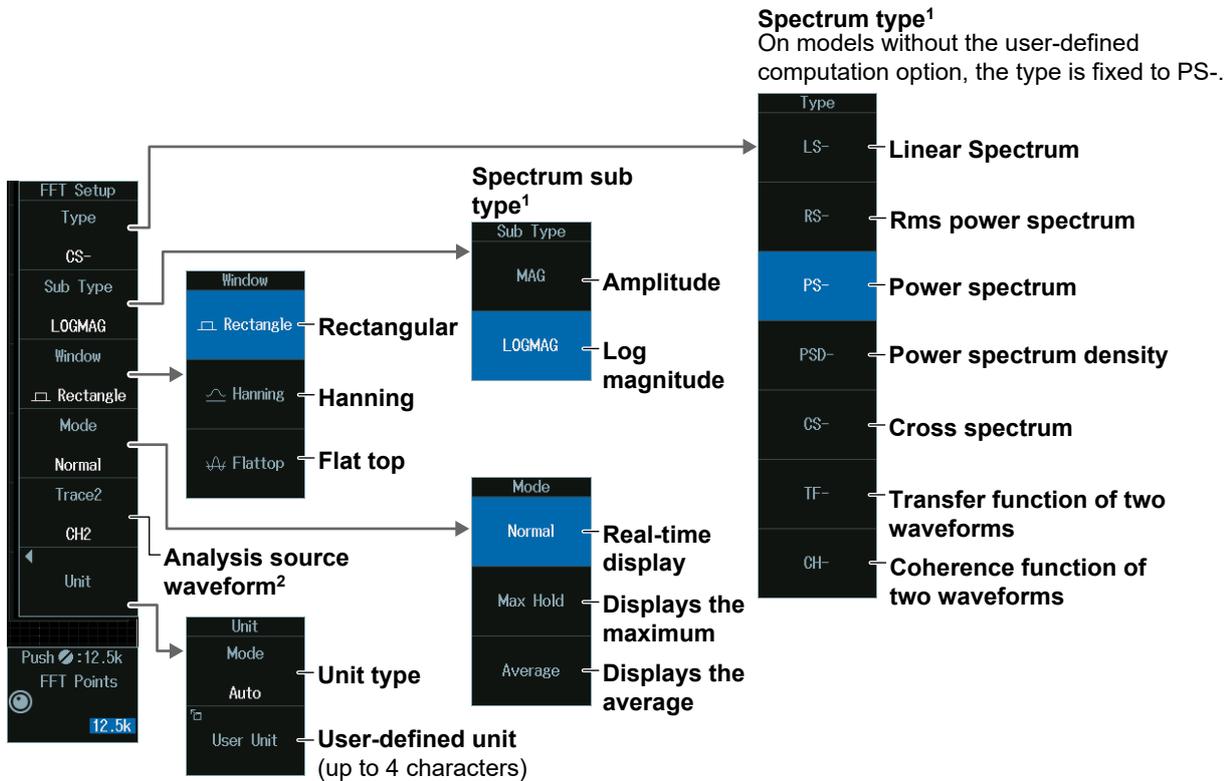
The available analysis source waveform settings vary depending on the model.

- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8, Math1 to Math8
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math4

## 7.1 Displaying FFT Waveforms

### FFT Conditions (FFT Setup)

Press the **FFT Setup** soft key to display the following menu.



1 This is available only on models with the user-defined computation option.

2 Can only be set when Type is CS-, TF-, or CH-.

### Spectrum Type (Type/Sub Type)

The sub types that you can set are as follows according to type.

Type	Sub Type
LS-, CS-, TF-	MAG, LOGMAG, PHASE, REAL, IMAG
RS-, PS-, SPD-	MAG, LOGMAG
CH-	MAG

## Scale Value (Display Setup)

Press the **Display Setup** soft key to display the following menu.

The diagram illustrates the **Display Setup** menu and its sub-menus with the following annotations:

- Display Setup** menu:
  - Vert. Scale**: Set the vertical scale to auto (Auto) or manual (Manual).
  - Center/Sens**: Center of the vertical axis (jog shuttle) and Value per div (sensitivity) (rotary knob).
  - Horiz. Scale**: Sets the horizontal scale to auto (Auto) or manual (center point/span, left edge/right edge).
  - VT Display**: Turns the VT waveform display on or off.
- Center/Span** sub-menu (Manual setting):
  - Center point and span**: Center of the horizontal axis (jog shuttle) and Span (rotary knob).
- Left/Right** sub-menu (Manual setting):
  - Left edge and right edge**: Left edge of the axis (jog shuttle) and Right edge of the axis (rotary knob).

## Manually Setting the Vertical Scale (Vert. Scale)

1. Press the **Vert. Scale** soft key to select Manual.
2. Press the **Center/Sens** soft key.
3. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the center point (Center) of the vertical scale or the value per division (Sensitivity).
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between the center point of the vertical scale and the value per division.
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu

The Jog shuttle setting menu shows the following options:

- Center**: Center of the vertical axis (jog shuttle).
- Sensitivity**: Value per div (rotary knob).

### Manually Setting the Horizontal Scale (Horiz. Scale)

1. Press the **Horiz. Scale** soft key to select Center/Span or Left/Right.
2. Press the **Center/Span** or **Left/Right** soft key.
3. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the center point (Center) of the horizontal scale or the left edge of the scale (Left), or the span (Span) or the right edge of the scale (Right).
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between the center point (Center) of the horizontal scale or the left edge of the scale (Left) and the span (Span) or the right edge of the scale (Right).
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu

##### When horizontal scale is set to Center/Span



##### When horizontal scale is set to Left/Right



### Number of FFT Points (FFT Points)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the number of FFT Points (FFT Points).

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



### Note

---

#### Relationship between the Number of FFT Points and Number of Displayed Points (Display Record Length)

Depending on the number of displayed points in the window that you select using the analysis range (Time Range) setting, the actual number of FFT points may be different from the number of FFT points that you selected.

- Number of FFT points < number of display points  
Display points are decimated to match the number of FFT points. The FFT may not cover the entire display range.
  - Number of FFT points > number of display points  
The number of FFT points is adjusted to an appropriate number less than or equal to the number of displayed points.
-

## 7.2 Measuring FFT Waveforms

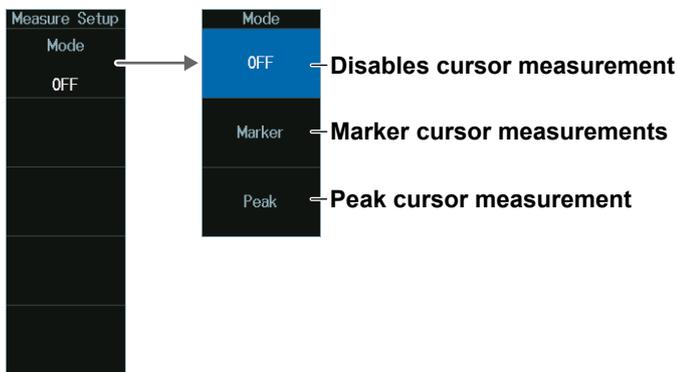
This section explains the following settings for measuring FFT waveforms:

- Cursor type
- Marker cursor measurements
- Peak cursor measurement

► “Cursor Measurement (Measure Setup)” in the Features Guide

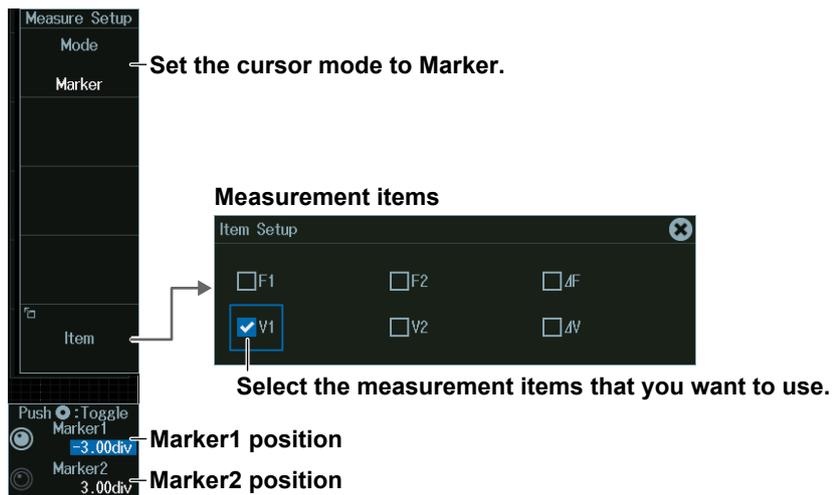
### FFT Measure Setup Menu

1. Press **SHIFT+MATH/REF (FFT)** to display the FFT menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (MENU) in the upper left of the screen and select the FFT menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Measure Setup** soft key to display the following menu.



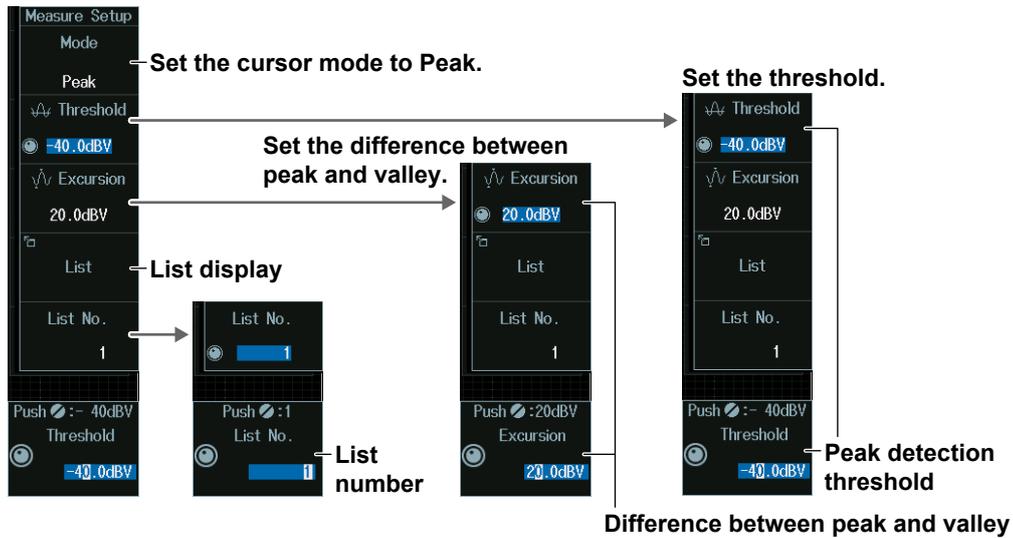
### Marker Cursor Measurement (Marker)

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Marker** soft key to display the following menu.



### Peak Cursor Measurement (Peak)

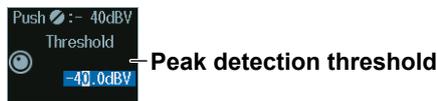
Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Peak** soft key to display the following menu.



### Peak Detection Threshold (Threshold)

1. Press the **Threshold** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the peak detection threshold (Threshold).  
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

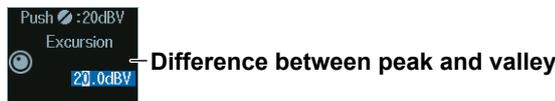
#### Jog shuttle setting menu



### Difference between Peak and Valley (Excursion)

1. Press the **Excursion** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the difference between peak and valley (excursion).  
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



### List Number (List No.)

1. Press the **List No.** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the list number (List No.).  
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu

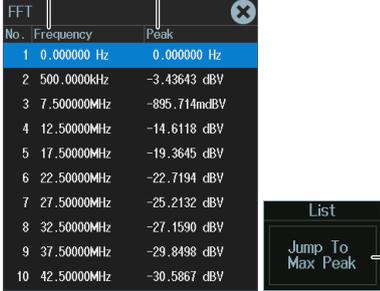


## List Display (List)

Press the **List** soft key to display the following screen.

**Frequency of each spectrum**

**Peak value of each spectrum**



No.	Frequency	Peak
1	0.000000 Hz	0.000000 Hz
2	500.0000kHz	-3.43643 dBV
3	7.50000MHz	-895.714m dBV
4	12.5000MHz	-14.6118 dBV
5	17.5000MHz	-19.3645 dBV
6	22.5000MHz	-22.7194 dBV
7	27.5000MHz	-25.2132 dBV
8	32.5000MHz	-27.1590 dBV
9	37.5000MHz	-29.8498 dBV
10	42.5000MHz	-30.5867 dBV

**List**

**Jump To Max Peak**

Displays the spectrum at the maximum peak value with a cursor

# 8.1 Measuring with $\Delta T$ Cursors

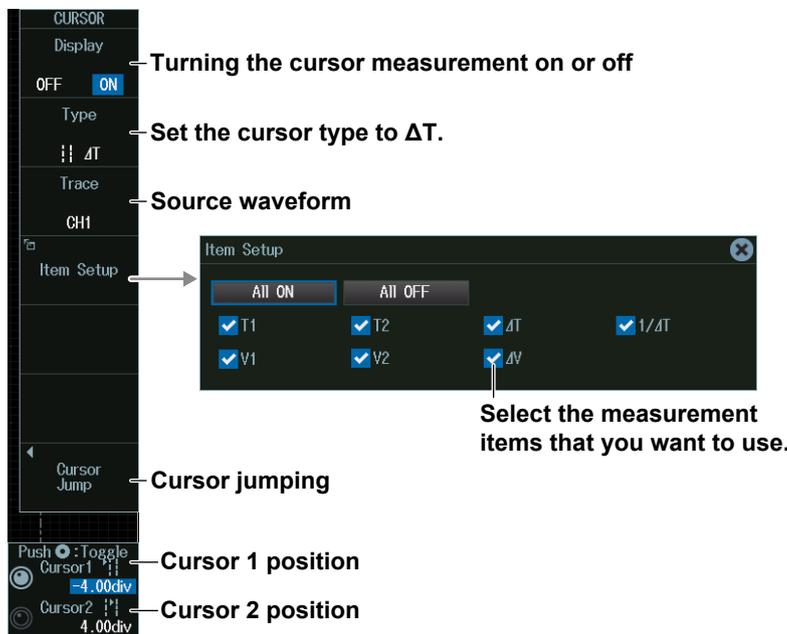
This section explains the following settings for measuring with  $\Delta T$  cursors:

- Turning cursor measurement on or off
- Cursor type
- Source waveform
- Measurement items
- Cursor jumping
- Cursor position

► “ $\Delta T$  Cursors ( $\Delta T$ )” in the Features Guide

## CURSOR Menu

1. Press **CURSOR** to display the CURSOR menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the CURSOR menu from MEASURE on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Type** soft key and then the  **$\Delta T$**  soft key to display the following menu.



### Note

#### Measurement Source Waveform (Trace)

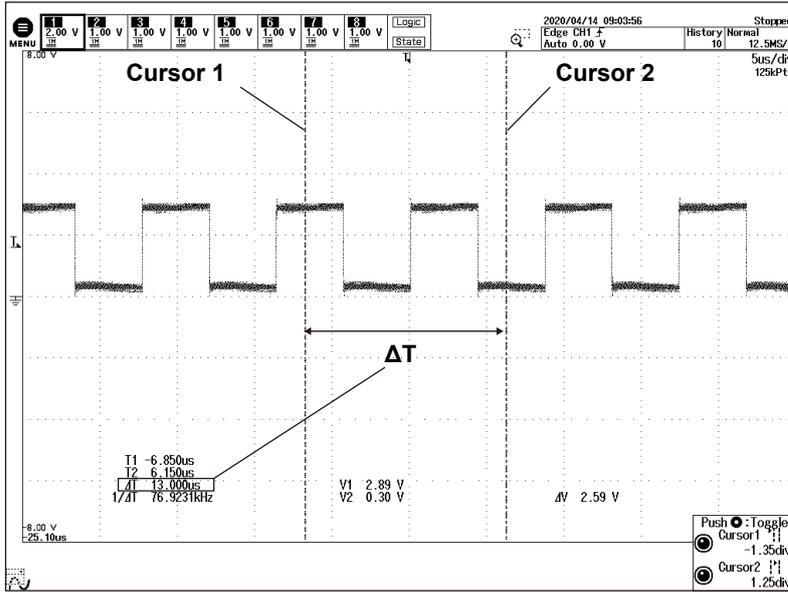
The available channel settings vary depending on the model and options.

- The available channel settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
All, CH1 to CH8, Logic, Math1 to Math8, LOGIC
- The available channel settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
All, CH1 to CH4, Logic, Math1 to Math4, LOGIC

## 8.1 Measuring with $\Delta T$ Cursors

### $\Delta T$ Cursor Measurement

You can measure time values using two  $\Delta T$  cursors.

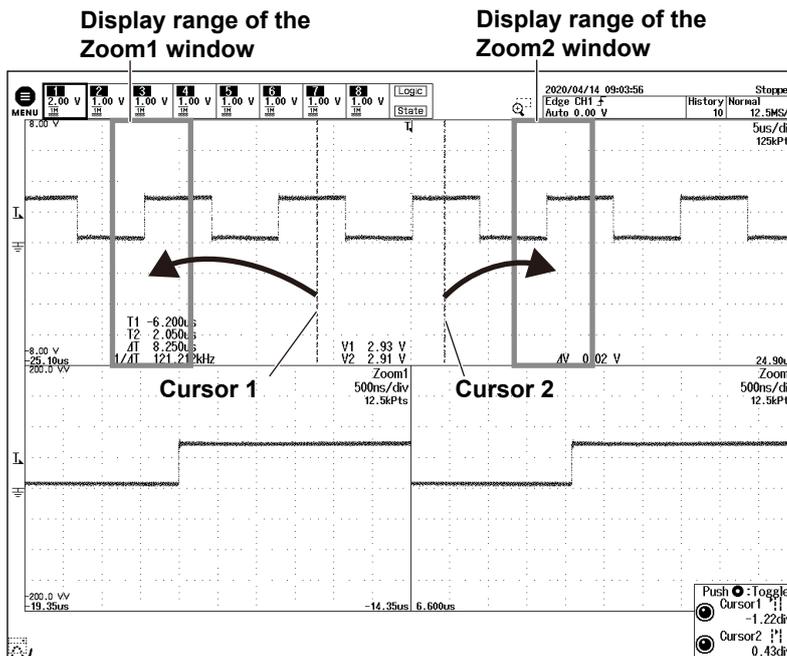


### Cursor Jumping (Cursor Jump)

Press the **Cursor Jump** soft key to display the following menu.

Cursor Jump	
Cursor 1	
to Zoom1	← Moves cursor 1 into the Zoom1 window
to Zoom2	← Moves cursor 1 into the Zoom2 window
Cursor 2	
to Zoom1	← Moves cursor 2 into the Zoom1 window
to Zoom2	← Moves cursor 2 into the Zoom2 window

### Cursor Jumping



## Cursor Positions (Cursor1/Cursor2)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set cursor 1 (Cursor1) or cursor 2 (Cursor2).

- Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between cursor 1 and cursor 2.
- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu



## Note

### Setting the Cursor Positions

If you press SET several times and make the jog shuttle control both cursor 1 and cursor 2, you can move them together.

When you move the two cursors together, the cursors no longer move when one of the cursors reaches the edge of the screen. Therefore, if you link cursor 1 and cursor 2 and make the cursor jump, the cursor may not jump properly.

## 8.2 Measuring with $\Delta V$ Cursors

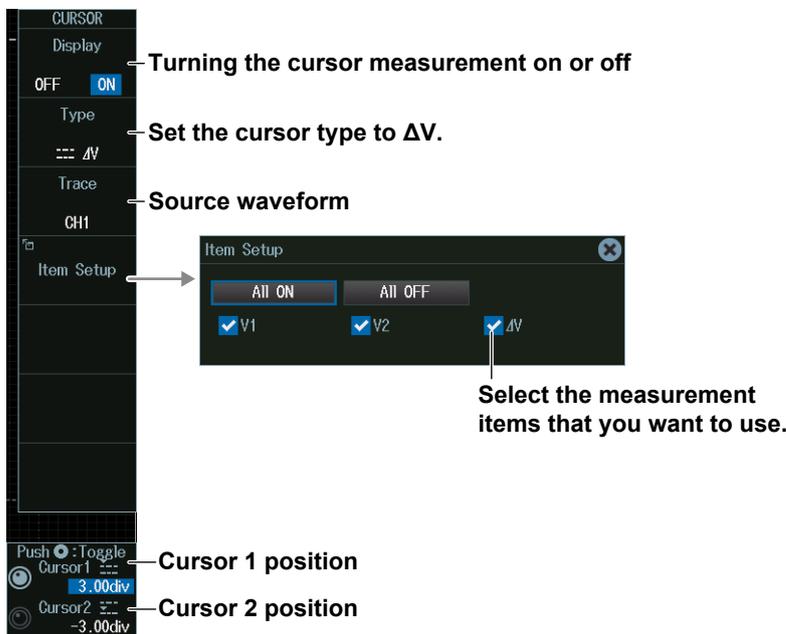
This section explains the following settings for measuring with  $\Delta V$  cursors:

- Turning cursor measurement on or off
- Cursor type
- Source waveform
- Measurement items
- Cursor position

► “ $\Delta V$  Cursors ( $\Delta V$ )” in the Features Guide

### CURSOR Menu

1. Press **CURSOR** to display the CURSOR menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the CURSOR menu from MEASURE on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Type** soft key and then the  **$\Delta V$**  soft key to display the following menu.



### Note

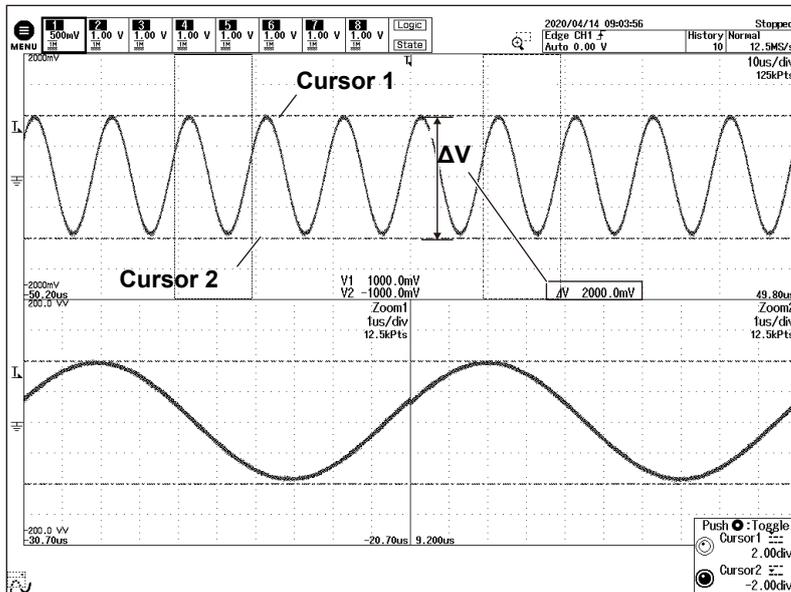
#### Measurement Source Waveform (Trace)

The available channel settings vary depending on the model and options.

- The available channel settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8, Math1 to Math8
- The available channel settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math4

### $\Delta V$ Cursor Measurement

You can measure vertical values using two  $\Delta V$  cursors.



### Cursor Positions (Cursor1/Cursor2)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set cursor 1 (Cursor1) or cursor 2 (Cursor2).

- Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between cursor 1 and cursor 2.
- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



### Note

#### Setting the Cursor Positions

If you press SET several times and make the jog shuttle control both cursor 1 and cursor 2, you can move them together.

When you move the two cursors together, the cursors no longer move when one of the cursors reaches the edge of the screen.

## 8.3 Measuring with $\Delta T$ and $\Delta V$ Cursors

This section explains the following settings for measuring with  $\Delta T$  and  $\Delta V$  cursors:

- Turning cursor measurement on or off
- Cursor type
- Source waveform
- Measurement items
- Cursor position
- $\Delta T$  Cursor Jumping

▶ “ $\Delta T$ & $\Delta V$  Cursors ( $\Delta T$ & $\Delta V$ )” in the Features Guide

### CURSOR Menu

1. Press **CURSOR** to display the CURSOR menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the CURSOR menu from MEASURE on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Type** soft key and then the  **$\Delta T$ & $\Delta V$**  soft key to display the following menu.

The diagram illustrates the CURSOR menu settings for  $\Delta T$  and  $\Delta V$  cursors. It shows the main CURSOR menu, the Item Setup sub-menu, and three panels showing cursor position adjustments.

**Item Setup** (Sub-menu):

- Buttons: All ON, All OFF
- Measurement items: T1, T2,  $\Delta T$ , 1/ $\Delta T$ , V1, V2,  $\Delta V$

**Annotations:**

- Turning the cursor measurement on or off (OFF/ON)
- Set the cursor type to  $\Delta T$ & $\Delta V$ .
- Source waveform (CH1)
- Select the measurement items that you want to use.
- $\Delta V$  cursor position (3.00div, -3.00div)
- $\Delta T$  cursor position (-4.00div, 4.00div)
- Make cursor  $\Delta T$  jump ▶ section 8.1 (T Cursor Jump)
- $\Delta T$  cursor position (-4.00div, 4.00div)
- $\Delta V$  cursor position (3.00div, -3.00div)

### Note

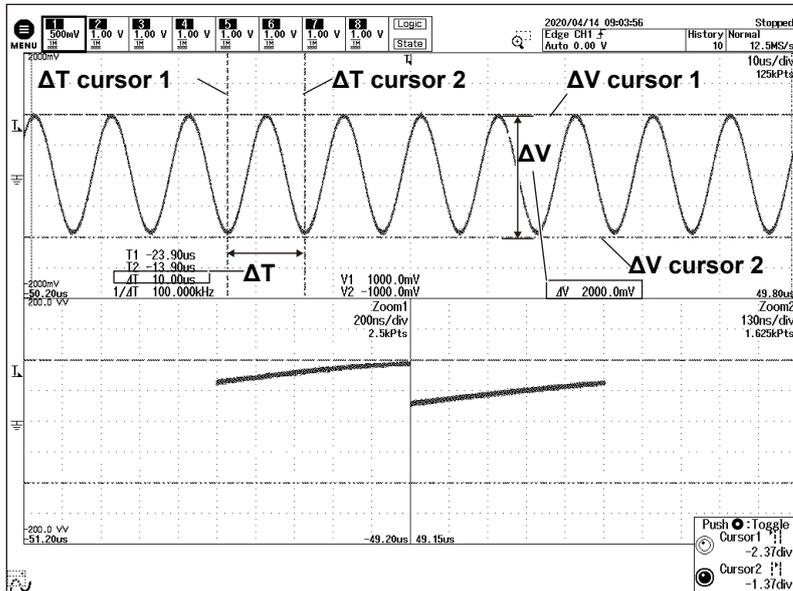
#### Measurement Source Waveform (Trace)

The available channel settings vary depending on the model and options.

- The available channel settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8, Math1 to Math8
- The available channel settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math4

### $\Delta T$ and $\Delta V$ Cursor Measurement

You can measure time values and vertical values by displaying two  $\Delta T$  cursors and two  $\Delta V$  cursors at the same time.



### $\Delta T$ Cursor Position (Cursor1/Cursor2)

1. Press the **T Cursor 1/2** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set cursor 1 (Cursor1) or cursor 2 (Cursor2).
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between search start point or search end point.
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



### Note

#### Setting the Cursor Positions

If you press SET several times and make the jog shuttle control both cursor 1 and cursor 2, you can move them together.

When you move the two cursors together, the cursors no longer move when one of the cursors reaches the edge of the screen. Therefore, if you link cursor 1 and cursor 2 and make the cursor jump, the cursor may not jump properly.

#### **$\Delta V$ Cursor Position (Cursor1/Cursor2)**

1. Press the **V Cursor 1/2** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set cursor 1 (Cursor1) or cursor 2 (Cursor2).
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between search start point or search end point.
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### **Jog shuttle setting menu**



#### **Note**

---

##### **Setting the Cursor Positions**

If you press SET several times and make the jog shuttle control both cursor 1 and cursor 2, you can move them together.

When you move the two cursors together, the cursors no longer move when one of the cursors reaches the edge of the screen.

---

## 8.4 Measuring with Marker Cursors (Marker)

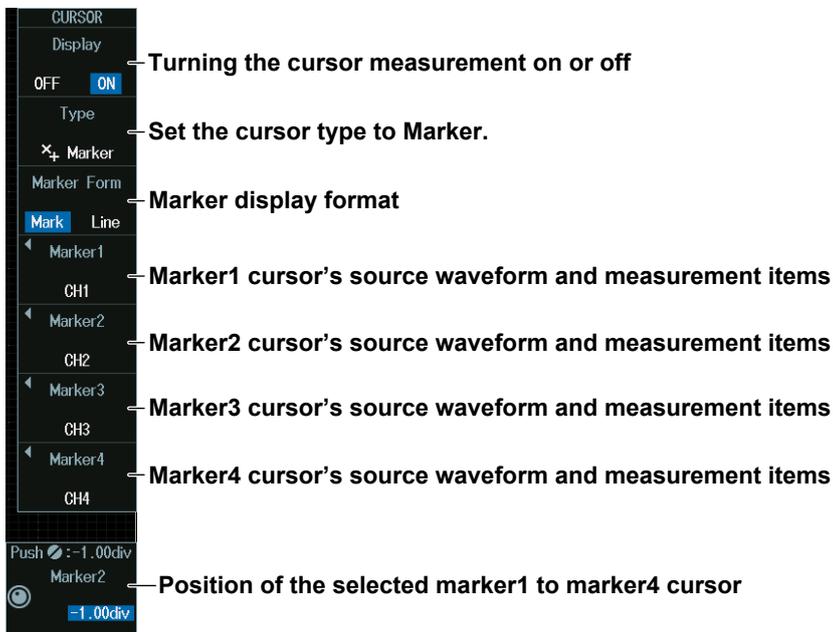
This section explains the following settings for measuring with marker cursors:

- Turning cursor measurement on or off
- Cursor type
- Marker display format
- The waveform to measure using the cursors
- Measurement items
- Cursor jumping
- Cursor position

► “Marker Cursors (Marker)” in the Features Guide

### CURSOR Menu

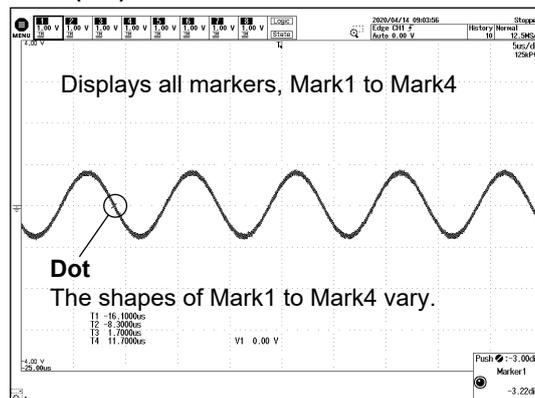
1. Press **CURSOR** to display the CURSOR menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the CURSOR menu from MEASURE on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Type** soft key and then the **Marker** soft key to display the following menu.



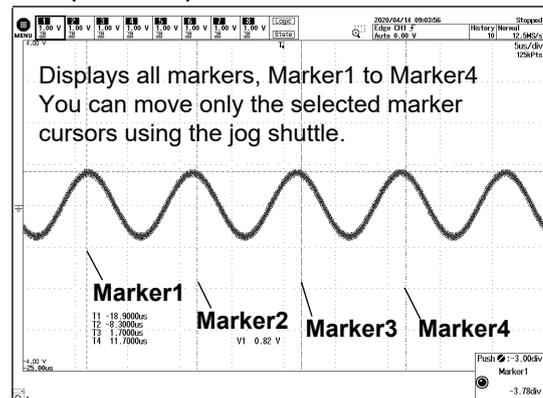
### Marker Display Format

Press the **Marker Form** soft key to select the marker display format.

#### Mark (dot)

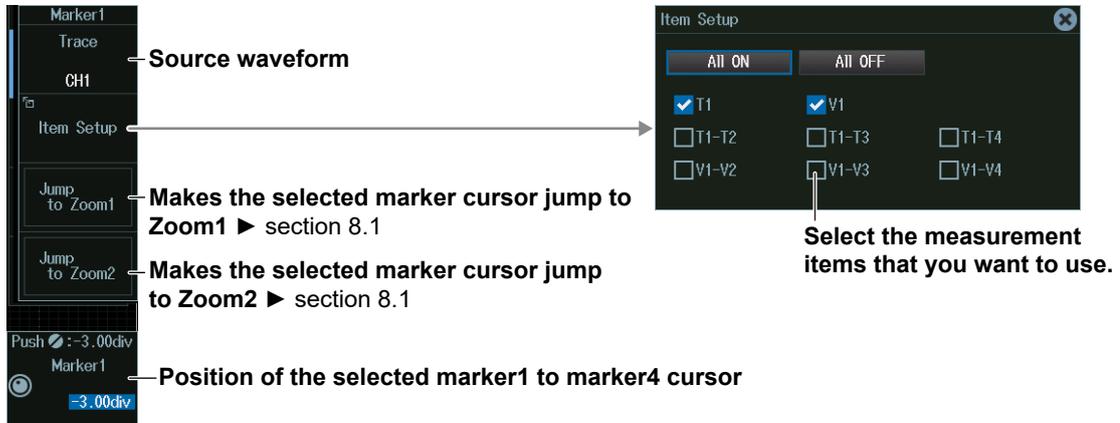


#### Line (crosshair)



### Cursor Source Waveform and Measurement Items (Marker1, Marker2, Marker3, and Marker4)

Press a soft key from **Marker1** to **Marker4** to display the following menu.



#### Note

##### Measurement Source Waveform (Trace)

The available channel settings vary depending on the model and options.

- The available channel settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
OFF, CH1 to CH8, Math1 to Math8
- The available channel settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
OFF, CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math4

### Position of the Selected Marker1 to Marker4 Cursor

1. Press a soft key from **Marker1** to **Marker4**.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the the marker cursor (Marker1 to Marker4).  
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



## 8.5 Measuring with Angle Cursors (Degree)

This section explains the following settings for measuring with angle cursors:

- Turning cursor measurement on or off
- Cursor type
- Source waveform
- Measurement items
- Reference setup
- Cursor jumping
- Cursor position

► “Angle Cursors (Degree)” in the Features Guide

### CURSOR Menu

1. Press **CURSOR** to display the CURSOR menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the CURSOR menu from MEASURE on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Type** soft key and then the **Degree** soft key to display the following menu.

**Turns cursor measurement on or off**

**Set the cursor type to Degree.**

**Source waveform**

**Select the measurement items that you want to use.**

**Make the cursor jump.**  
► section 8.1

**Cursor 1 position**

**Cursor 2 position**

**Unit**

**Reference angle**

**Reference cursor 1 position (zero point)**

**Reference cursor 2 position (end point)**

### Note

#### Measurement Source Waveform (Trace)

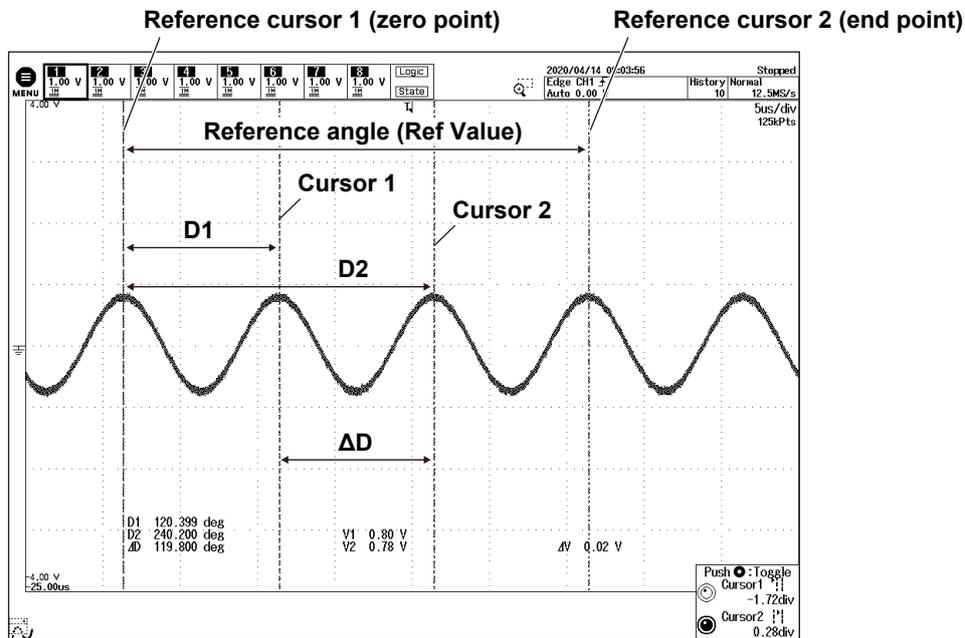
The available channel settings vary depending on the model and options.

- The available channel settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
All, CH1 to CH8, Math1 to Math8, Logic
- The available channel settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
All, CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math4, Logic

## 8.5 Measuring with Angle Cursors (Degree)

### Angle Cursor Measurement

On the time axis, set the zero point (Ref Cursor1 position), which will be the angle measurement reference, the end point (Ref Cursor2 position), and the reference angle that you want to assign to the difference between Ref Cursor1 and Ref Cursor2. Based on this reference angle, you can measure the angle between two angle cursors (Cursor1 and Cursor2).



### Setting the Reference (Reference Setup)

#### Setting the Reference Angle (Ref Value)

1. Press the **Reference Setup** soft key and then the **Ref Value** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the reference angle.  
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

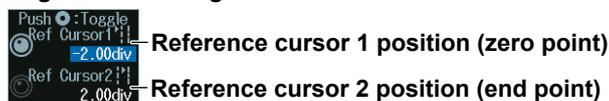
#### Jog shuttle setting menu



#### Reference Cursor Positions (Ref Cursor1/Ref Cursor2)

1. Press the **Reference Setup** soft key and then the **Ref Cursor** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the reference cursor.
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between reference cursor 1 (zero point) and reference cursor 2 (end point).
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu

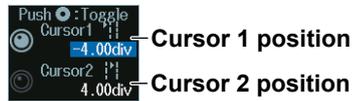


## Cursor Positions (Cursor1/Cursor2)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the cursor position.

- Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between cursor 1 and cursor 2.
- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu



## Note

### Setting the Cursor Positions

If you press SET several times and make the jog shuttle control both cursor 1 and cursor 2, you can move them together.

When you move the two cursors together, the cursors no longer move when one of the cursors reaches the edge of the screen. Therefore, if you link cursor 1 and cursor 2 and make the cursor jump, the cursor may not jump properly.

# 9.1 Automatically Measuring Waveform Parameters

This section explains the following settings for automatically measuring waveform parameters:

- Turning automated measurement on or off
- Measurement source waveform and measurement items
- Measurement location indicator
- Reference levels for automated measurements
- Measurement source window
- Measurement range

► “Automated Measurement of Waveform Parameters” in the Features Guide

## MEASURE Menu

Press **MEASURE** to display the following menu.

You can also tap **MENU** (MENU) in the upper left of the screen and select the MEASURE menu from MEASURE on the top menu that is displayed.

The screenshot shows the MEASURE menu with the following options and annotations:

- Mode**: OFF ON — Turns auto measurement on or off
- Item Setup** — Source waveform and measurement items
- Indicator**: OFF — Measurement location indicator
- Ref Levels** — Reference levels for automated measurements
- Statistics**: OFF — section 9.2
- Enhanced** — section 9.3
- Time Range**: Main — Measurement source window
  - Main**: Set the measurement source window to the main window.
  - Zoom1**: Set the measurement source window to the Zoom1 window.
  - Zoom2**: Set the measurement source window to the Zoom2 window.
- Measurement time period**: T Range1: -5.00div, T Range2: 5.00div

## Measurement Time Period (T Range1, T Range2)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the measurement time period.

- Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between the start point of the measurement time period (T Range1) or the end point of the measurement time period (T Range2).
- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu

The Jog shuttle setting menu shows the following options:

- T Range1**: -5.00div — Start point of measurement time period (T Range1)
- T Range2**: 5.00div — End point of measurement time period (T Range2)

### Measurement Source Waveform and Measurement Items (Item Setup)

1. Press the **Item Setup** soft key.
2. Press the **Source** soft key. Select the source waveform from the setup menu that is displayed. A menu appears according to the measurement source waveform you specified.

#### When the Measurement Source Waveform Is CH1 to CH8 or Math1 to Math8

**Clear the check boxes of all the measurement items.**  
**Copies the settings on this screen to all channels**  
**Cycle mode**

**Set the source waveform to CH1 to CH8 or Math1 to Math8.**

**Measurement of delay between waveforms**  
**When the reference is Trigger Position**

**Slope of the edge to be detected**  
**Which counted edge to use as a detected point**  
**Reference (set to Trigger Position)**

**When the reference is other than Trigger Position**

**Edge slope of the source waveform**  
**Which counted edge of the source waveform to use as a detected point**  
**Reference waveform settings**

- Source waveform (not Trigger Position)
- Edge slope
- Which counted edge to use as a detected point

**Unit**

**Note**

**Cycle Mode**

- When the power analysis type is switching loss, the cycle mode is fixed to SW Loss.
- When power measurement is ON, the cycle mode changes according to the setting of the cycle mode of power measurement.

**Measurement Source Waveform**

The available channel settings vary depending on the model.

- The available settings are CH1 to CH8 and Math1 to Math8 on 8ch models.
- The available settings are CH1 to CH4 and Math1 to Math4 on 4ch models.

When the Search Source Waveform Is Logic

Clear the check boxes of all the measurement items.

Measure Item

All OFF

	A7	A6	A5	A4	A3	A2	A1	A0
Freq	<input type="checkbox"/>							
Period	<input type="checkbox"/>							
Avg Freq	<input type="checkbox"/>							
Duty	<input type="checkbox"/>							
Pulse Count	<input type="checkbox"/>							
Delay	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>						
Delay Setup								

Item Setup

Source Logic(A)

Set the measurement source waveform to Logic(A) to Logic(D).

Measurement of delay between waveforms

Select the measurement items that you want to use.

When the reference is Trigger Position

A7 Delay Setup

Polarity

Count 1

Reference Trigger Position

Unit Time Degree

Slope of the edge to be detected

Which counted edge to use as a detected point

Reference (set to Trigger Position)

When the reference is other than Trigger Position/Logic

A7 Delay Setup

Polarity

Count 1

Reference CH1

Unit Time Degree

Edge slope of the source waveform

Which counted edge of the source waveform to use as a detected point

Reference waveform settings

- Source waveform (not Trigger Position/Logic)
- Edge slope
- Which counted edge to use as a detected point

Unit

When Reference is set to Logic

A7 Delay Setup

Polarity

Count 1

Reference Logic

Unit Time Degree

Edge slope of the source waveform

Which counted edge of the source waveform to use as a detected point

Reference waveform settings

- Source waveform (set to Logic)
- Edge slope
- Which counted edge to use as a detected point

Unit Source bit

Note

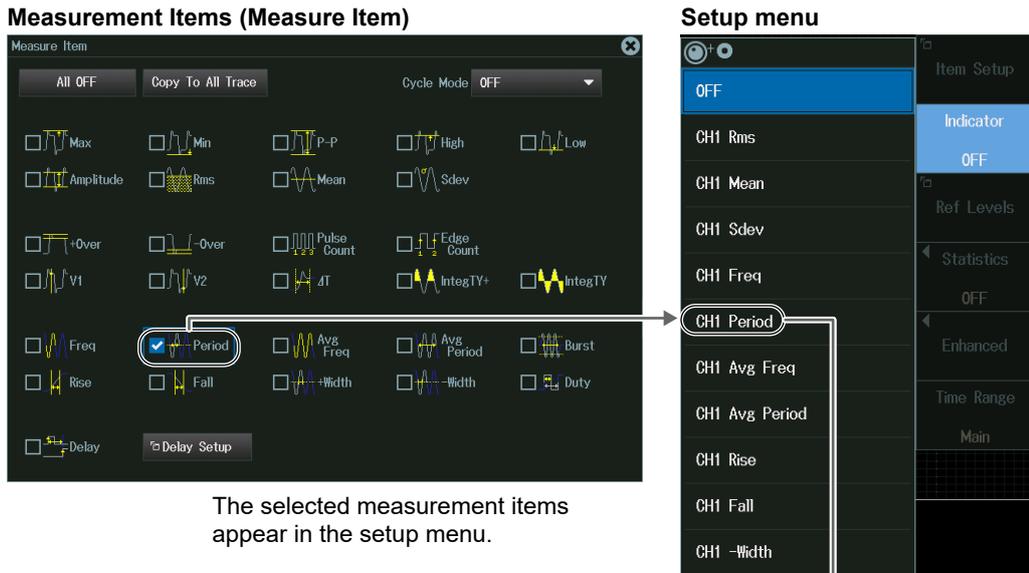
Measurement Source Waveform

The following source bit display applies to models with the /L32 option.

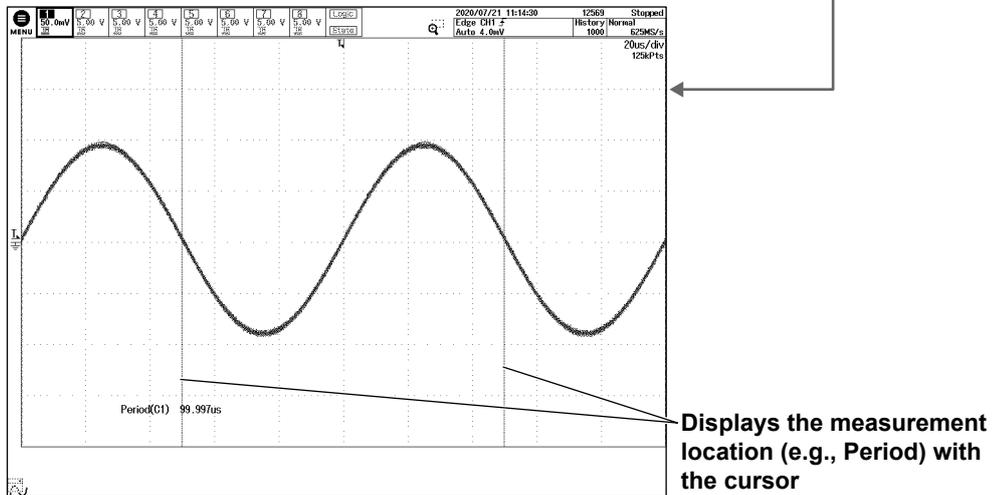
- C0 to C7 (LOGIC port C), D0 to D7 (LOGIC port D)

### Measurement Location Indicator (Indicator)

1. Press the **Indicator** soft key.  
A portion of the items selected in “Measurement Source Waveform and Measurement Items (Item Setup)” is listed in the setup menu (see Note).
2. Use the **jog shuttle** or the **SET** key to select the item whose measurement location you want to indicate.
3. Press **SET** to confirm your selection.  
The measurement location of the item you specify is indicated by a cursor.



The selected measurement items appear in the setup menu.



Displays the measurement location (e.g., Period) with the cursor

**Note**

The measurement locations of the following items can be indicated.  
Max, Min, P-P, High, Low, Amplitude, Rms, Mean, Sdev, +Over, –Over, V1, V2, IntegTY+, IntegTY, Freq, Period, Avg Freq, Avg Period, Burst, Rise, Fall, +Width, –Width, Duty, Delay

## Reference Level for Automated Measurement (Ref Levels)

Press the **Ref Levels** soft key to display the following menu.

### 8ch model

Reference level setting unit

Distal value      Proximal value

Mesial value      High/Low level

Mode	Distal	Mesial	Proximal	High/Low
CH1	90%	50%	10%	Auto
CH2	90%	50%	10%	Auto
CH3	90%	50%	10%	Auto
CH4	90%	50%	10%	Auto
CH5	90%	50%	10%	Auto
CH6	90%	50%	10%	Auto
CH7	90%	50%	10%	Auto
CH8	90%	50%	10%	Auto
Math1	90%	50%	10%	Auto
Math2	90%	50%	10%	Auto
Math3	90%	50%	10%	Auto
Math4	90%	50%	10%	Auto
Math5	90%	50%	10%	Auto
Math6	90%	50%	10%	Auto
Math7	90%	50%	10%	Auto
Math8	90%	50%	10%	Auto

Automatically take into account the effects of ringing and spikes

Use the maximum and minimum values in the measurement range

Make the maximum frequent values the maximum and minimum values

### 4ch model

Mode	Distal	Mesial	Proximal	High/Low
CH1	90%	50%	10%	Auto
CH2	90%	50%	10%	Auto
CH3	90%	50%	10%	Auto
CH4	90%	50%	10%	Auto
Math1	90%	50%	10%	Auto
Math2	90%	50%	10%	Auto
Math3	90%	50%	10%	Auto
Math4	90%	50%	10%	Auto

## Note

### About the Roll-Mode Display

- The instrument will not display computed waveforms that have been generated through user-defined computation while it is acquiring waveforms in roll mode. The instrument will display the computed waveforms after it stops acquiring waveforms.
- If normal statistical processing (Continuous), serial bus analysis, waveform histogram display, or harmonic analysis is being executed, automatically measured parameter values are not displayed when waveforms are being acquired in roll mode. The instrument will display the computed waveforms after it stops acquiring waveforms.
- If the record length is set such that waveform acquisition operates in single mode,\* neither computed waveforms (Math waveforms) nor automated measurement values of waveform parameters are shown while waveform acquisition in roll mode is in progress. The instrument will display the computed waveforms and automatically measured values after it stops acquiring waveforms.

\* The record length that causes waveform acquisition to operate in single mode varies depending on whether a memory expansion option (/M1, /M2, /M1S, /M2S) is available. For details, see chapter 6, "Waveform Acquisition," in the Features Guide (IM DLM5058-01EN).

## 9.2 Processing Statistics on Automatically Measured Values

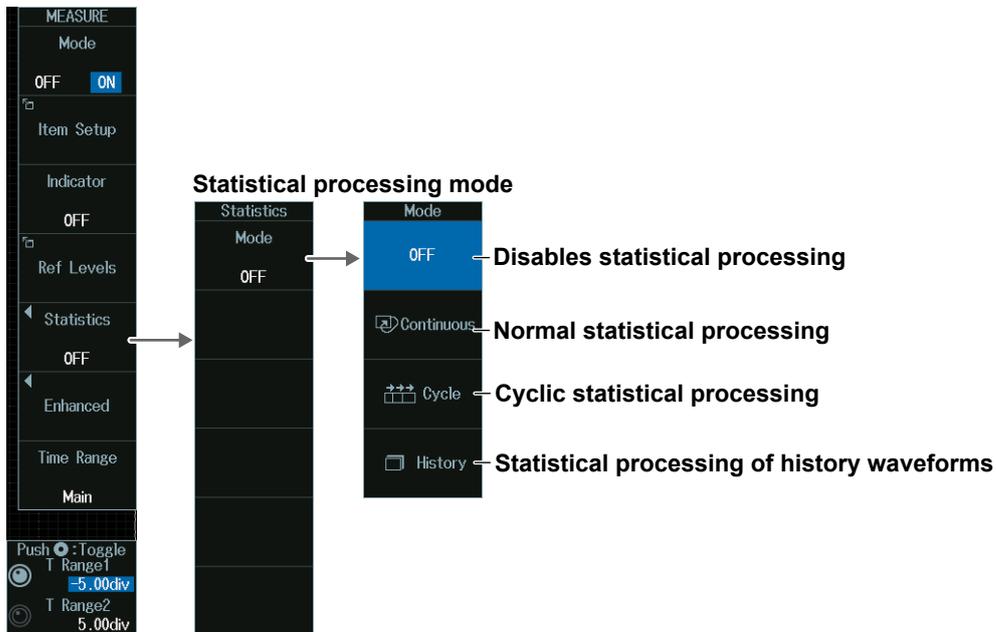
This section explains the following settings for processing statistics on automatically measured waveform parameters:

- Statistical processing mode
- Normal statistical processing
- Cyclic statistical processing
- Statistical processing of history waveforms

► [“Statistics \(Statistics\)” in the Features Guide](#)

### MEASURE Statistics Menu

1. Press **MEASURE** to display the MEASURE menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (ⓘ) in the upper left of the screen and select the MEASURE menu from MEASURE on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Statistics** soft key to display the following menu.

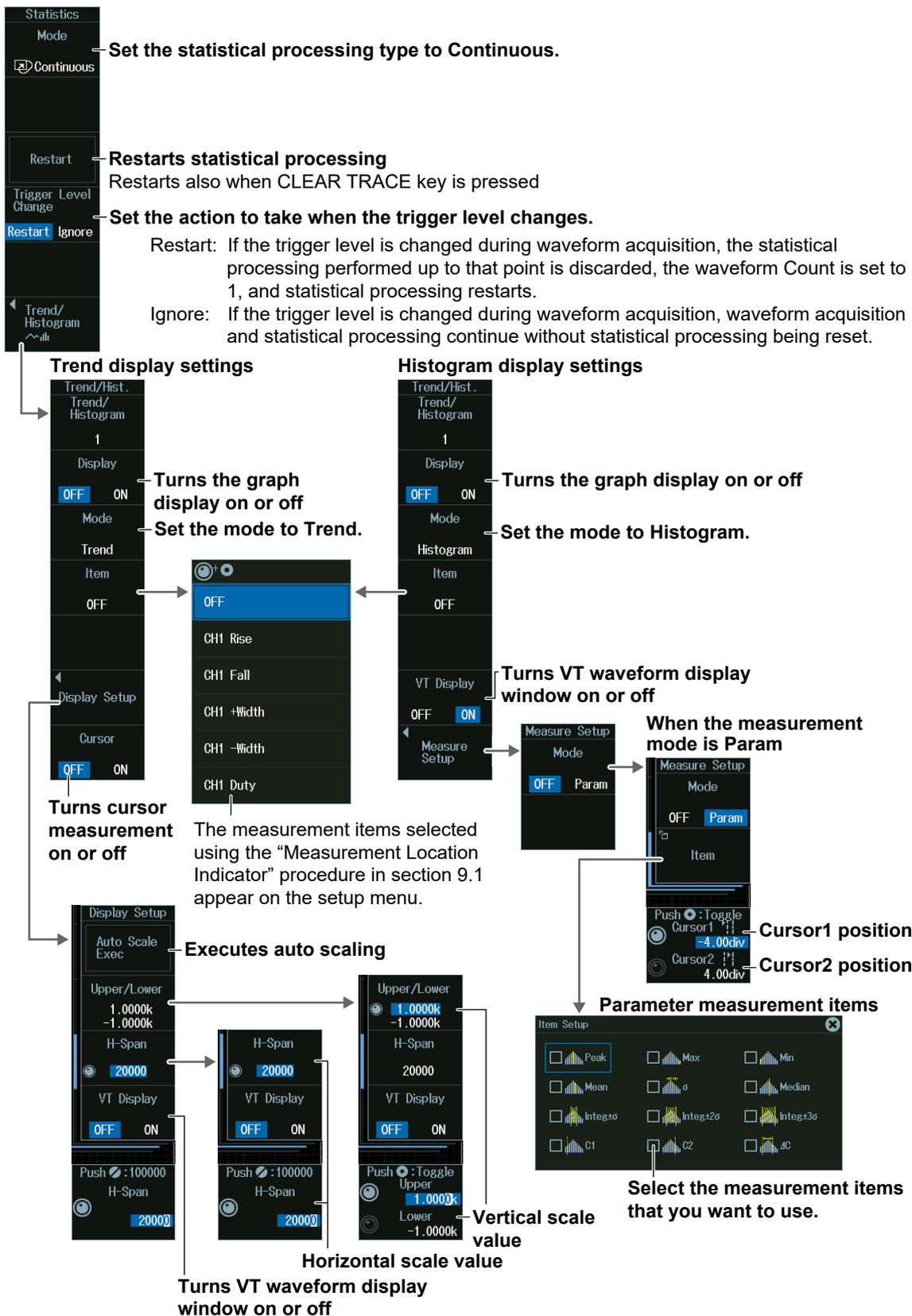


### Note

If you change the statistical processing type (Statistics), the statistical processing type (Statistics) of Measure Setup for power measurement (Power Measurement menu) too changes in sync.

### Normal statistical processing (Continuous)

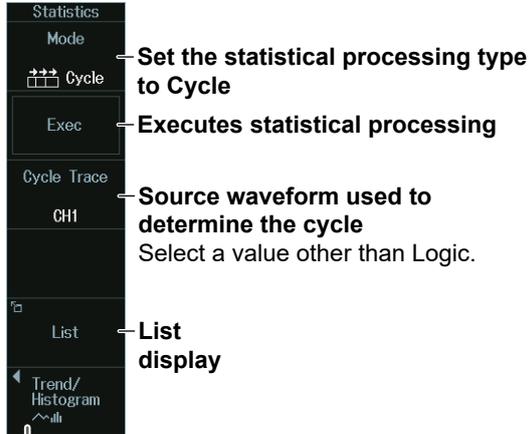
Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Continuous** soft key to display the following menu.



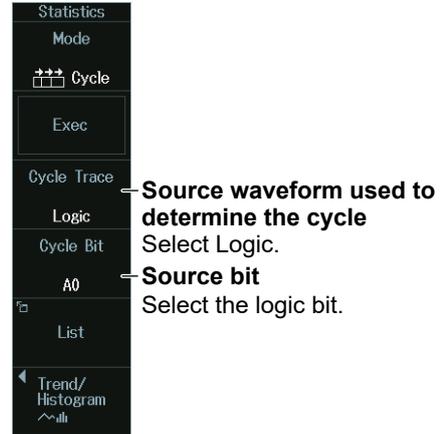
### Cyclic Statistical Processing (Cycle)

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Cycle** soft key to display the following menu.

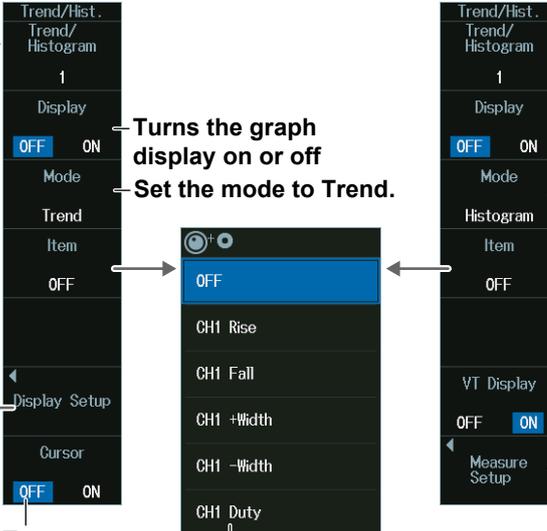
When the source waveform used to determine the cycle is not Logic



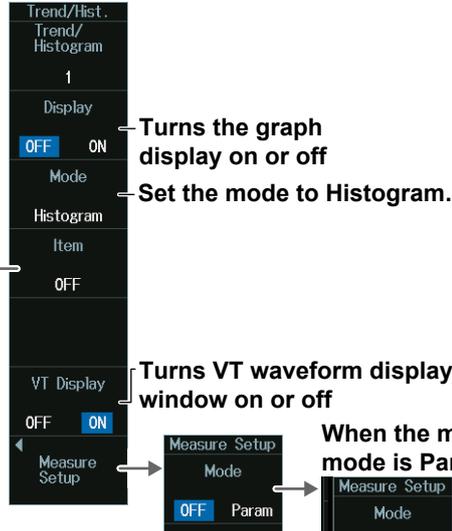
When the source waveform used to determine the cycle is Logic



Trend display settings

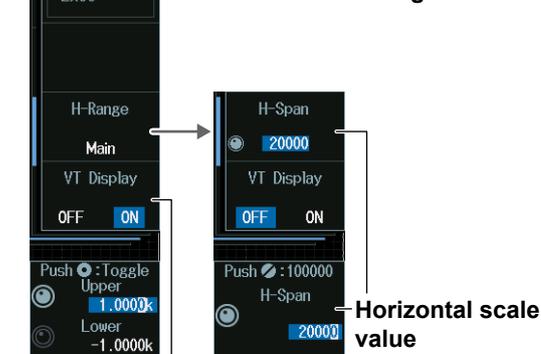


Histogram display settings



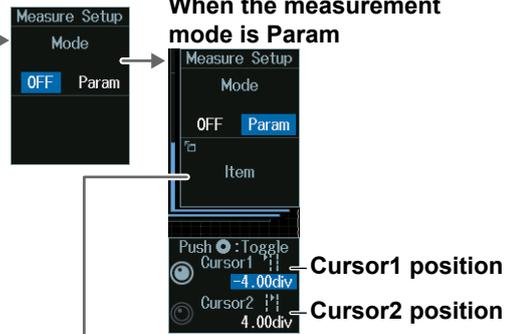
The measurement items selected using the "Measurement Location Indicator" procedure in section 9.1 appear on the setup menu.

Executes auto scaling

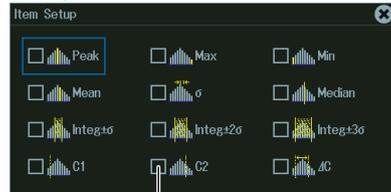


Turns VT waveform display window on or off

When the measurement mode is Param



Parameter measurement items



Select the measurement items that you want to use.

**Note**

The available source waveforms used to determine the cycle vary depending on the model.

- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8, Math1 to Math8, Logic
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math4, Logic

The following source bit display applies to models with the /L32 option.  
C0 to C7 (LOGIC port C), D0 to D7 (LOGIC port D)

**List Display (List)**

Press the **List** soft key to display the following menu.

**Highlight display**

↑: Displayed next to the maximum value of each measurement item

↑: Displayed next to the minimum value of each measurement item

— Scrollbar (vertical)

— Scrollbar (horizontal)

	+Width(C1)	-Width(C1)	Duty(C1)	Rise(C1)	Fall(C1)
1	49.818us	50.301us↑	49.8%	26.835us	27.008us
2	49.787us	50.072us	49.9%	26.885us	26.915us
3	49.917us	50.106us	49.9%	26.912us	26.800us
4	49.741us	50.150us	49.8%	26.870us	26.856us
5	50.005us	50.133us	49.9%	26.738us	26.774us
6	49.882us	50.232us	49.8%	26.958us	26.830us
7	49.842us	50.221us	49.8%	26.694us	26.874us
8	49.854us	50.178us	49.8%	26.749us	26.862us
9	49.845us	50.046us	49.9%	26.936us↑	26.741us
10	49.816us	50.238us	49.8%	26.686us	26.936us
11	49.931us	50.160us	49.9%	26.714us	26.770us

When a scroll bar appears, you can move the SET key left and right or up and down to move the highlighted position and scroll through the displayed items.

**List**

Search Mode — Search mode

OFF

Jump To — Search mode OFF

Statistics Max — Moves to the maximum

Statistics Min — Moves to the minimum

Oldest — Moves to the oldest data

Latest — Moves to the latest data

Search mode not OFF

Jump To

Previous — Moves to previous data

Next — Moves to later data

Oldest

Latest

Sort

Forward — Sort (oldest first)

Reverse — Sort (newest first)

Zoom Link

Zoom Link — Hides the zoom waveform

Zoom1 — Displays the waveform of the highlighted measured value in the Zoom1 window

Zoom2 — Displays the waveform of the highlighted measured value in the Zoom2 window

List Size

Full Screen — Full size

Half(Upper) — Top half

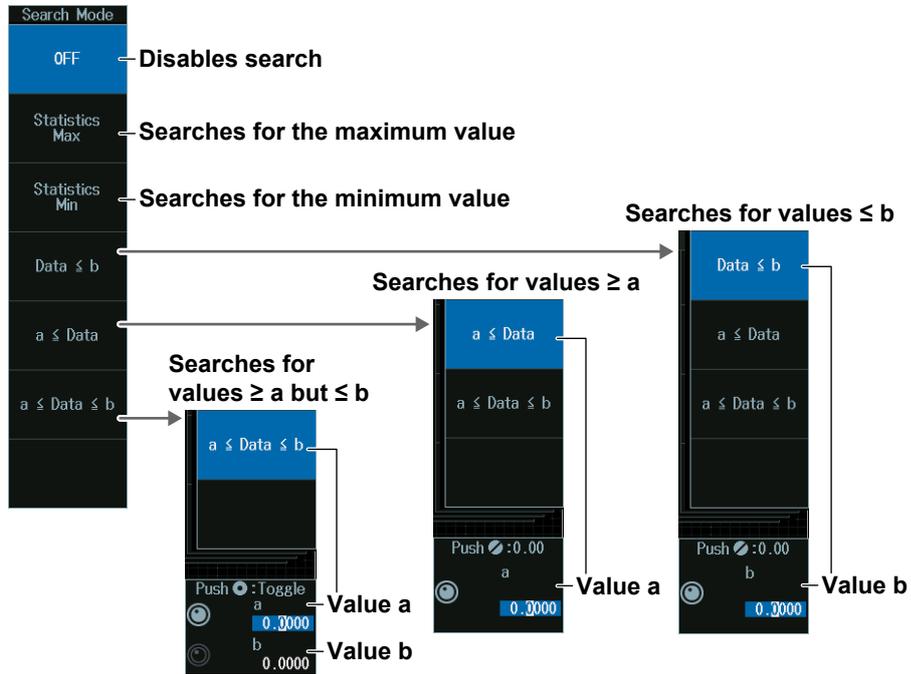
Half(Lower) — Bottom half

**Note**

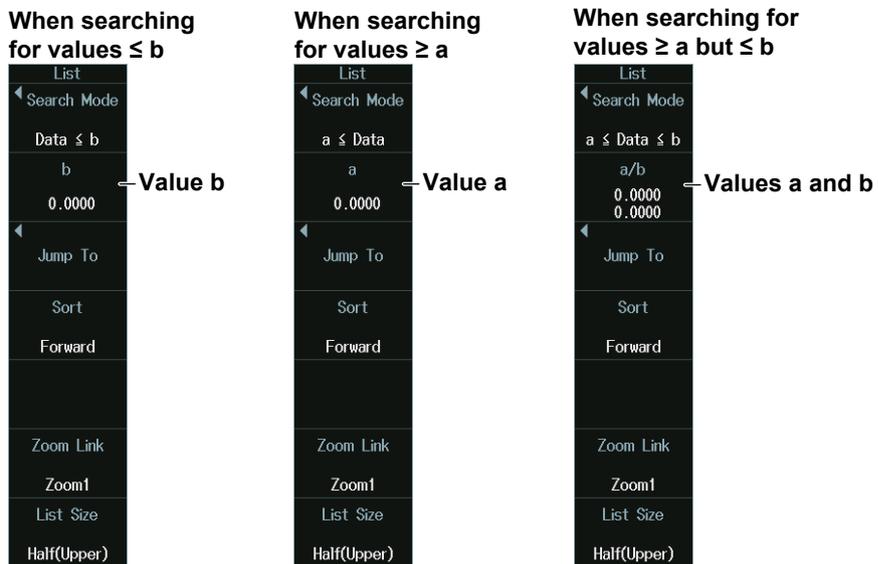
If you move the highlight display for the measured values up and down, the zoom position moves to the corresponding position of the waveform.

**Search Item (Search Mode)**

1. Press the **Search Mode** soft key to display the following menu. If you select “Data ≤ b”, “a ≤ Data,” or “a ≤ Data ≤ b”, set the value of a or b with the **jog shuttle**.

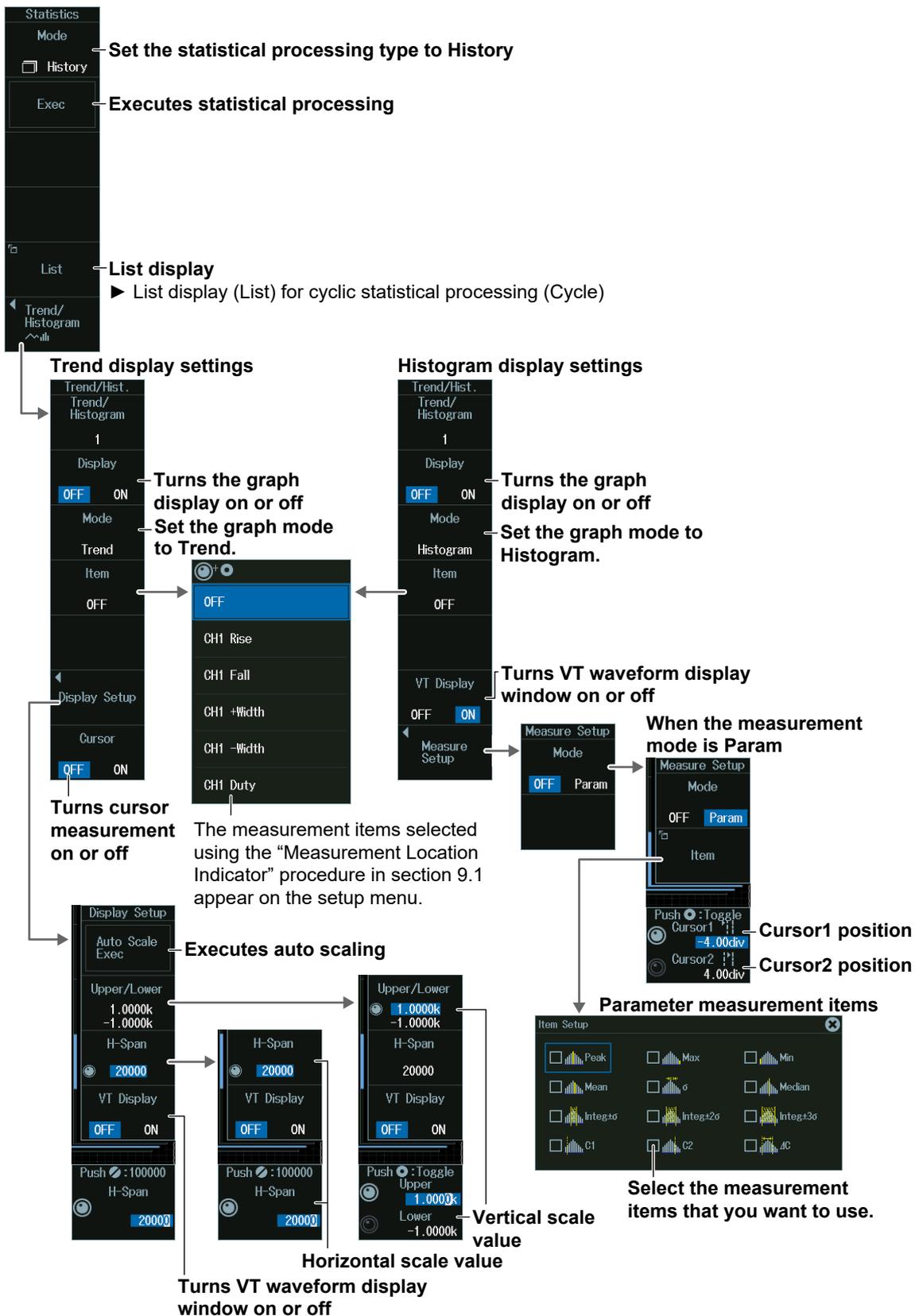


2. Select the search item, and then press **ESC**. The menu returns to the list display menu.



## Statistical Processing of History Waveforms (History)

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **History** soft key to display the following menu.



## 9.3 Measuring Enhanced Parameters

This section explains the settings for performing automated measurement of the waveform parameters on two areas and the settings used when performing calculations using waveform parameters.

► **“Enhanced Parameter Measurement (ENHANCED)” in the Features Guide**

### MEASURE Enhanced Menu

1. Press **MEASURE** to display the MEASURE menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the MEASURE menu from MEASURE on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Enhanced** soft key to display the following menu.

**Measurement source waveform and measurement items of Area2**

► Measurement Source Waveform and Measurement Items (Item Setup) in section 9.1

**Select the expressions to use**

Calc	Name	Expression	Unit
<input type="checkbox"/>	Calc1	Max(C1)	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Calc2	Min(C2)	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Calc3	High(M1)	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Calc4	Low(M2)	

**Combine waveforms and operators.**

**Expression**

Calc 1

Low(M2)

Hint:

Measure				PI	e	fs	1/fs			
C1	C5	M1	M5	SIN	COS	TAN	7	8	9	/
C2	C6	M2	M6	ASIN	ACOS	ATAN	4	5	6	*
C3	C7	M3	M7	EXP	LN	LOG	1	2	3	-
C4	C8	M4	M8	ABS	P2	SQRT	0	.	Exp	+
A1	A2			,	(	)				Enter

**Add the results of automated measurement of waveform parameters to the expression.**

Measure Item

<input checked="" type="radio"/> Max	<input type="radio"/> Min	<input type="radio"/> P-P	<input type="radio"/> High	<input type="radio"/> Low
<input type="radio"/> Amplitude	<input type="radio"/> Rms	<input type="radio"/> Mean	<input type="radio"/> Sdev	
<input type="radio"/> +Over	<input type="radio"/> -Over	<input type="radio"/> Pulse Count	<input type="radio"/> Edge Count	
<input type="radio"/> V1	<input type="radio"/> V2	<input type="radio"/> ΔT	<input type="radio"/> IntegTY+	<input type="radio"/> IntegTY
<input type="radio"/> Freq	<input type="radio"/> Period	<input type="radio"/> Avg Freq	<input type="radio"/> Avg Period	<input type="radio"/> Burst
<input type="radio"/> Rise	<input type="radio"/> Fall	<input type="radio"/> +Width	<input type="radio"/> -Width	<input type="radio"/> Duty
<input type="radio"/> Delay				

**Area2's measurement source window**

Time Range	Label	Description
Main	<b>Main</b>	Set the measurement source window to the main window.
Zoom1	<b>Zoom1</b>	Set the measurement source window to the Zoom1 window.
Zoom2	<b>Zoom2</b>	Set the measurement source window to the Zoom2 window.

**Measurement time period of Area2**

Enhanced

Item Setup (Area2)

Calc Setup

Time Range (Area2)

Main

Push : Toggle

T Range1 -5.00div

T Range2 5.00div

Unit (up to 4 characters)

Unit

Inserts a )

Moves the cursor

Deletes the character at the cursor position

Deletes the previous character

Deletes all characters

Enters the expression

### Measurement Source Waveform and Measurement Items of Area2 (Item Setup (Area2))

Press the **Item Setup (Area2)** soft key. The screen is displayed for setting the source waveform of Area2 and the measurement items. The screen is the same as the Item Setup screen shown in section 9.1.

### Setting the Equation (Calc Setup)

Press the Calc Setup soft key to display a screen for setting an equation using the waveform parameters of Area2.

#### **Note**

---

The measurement time period (T Range1, T Range2) in the MEASURE Enhanced menu is that of Area2.

On the Calc Setup screen, you can also set an equation using the waveform parameters of the MEASURE menu (Area1). But, even in this case, the measurement time period of Area1 is the measurement time period (T Range1, T Range2) in the MEASURE menu.

---

# 10.1 Zooming In on or Out of Waveforms

This section explains the following settings for zooming in on or out of waveforms:

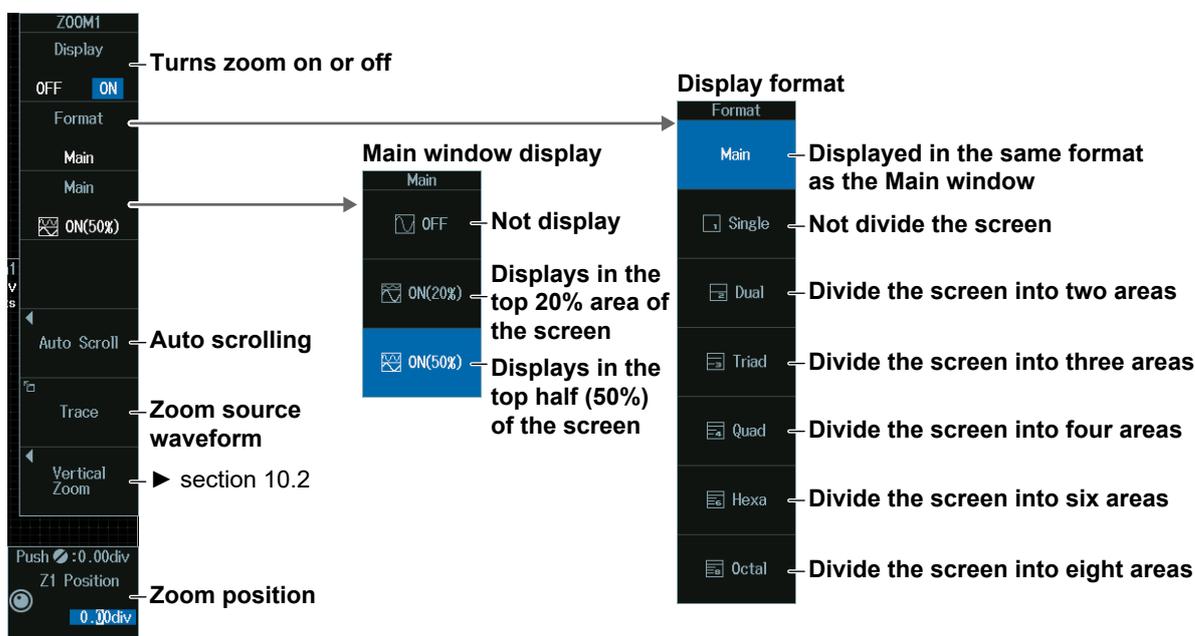
- Turning zoom on or off
- Display format
- Main window display
- Auto scrolling
- Zoom source waveform
- Zoom position
- Zoom factor

► “Zooming in on Waveforms” in the Features Guide

## ZOOM Menu

Press **ZOOM1** or **ZOOM2** to display the following menu.

- You can also tap **MENU** (E) in the upper left of the screen and select the ZOOM1 menu or the ZOOM2 menu from ZOOM on the top menu.
- The zoomed waveform of up to two locations can be displayed. To switch the setup menu, press ZOOM1 or ZOOM2.



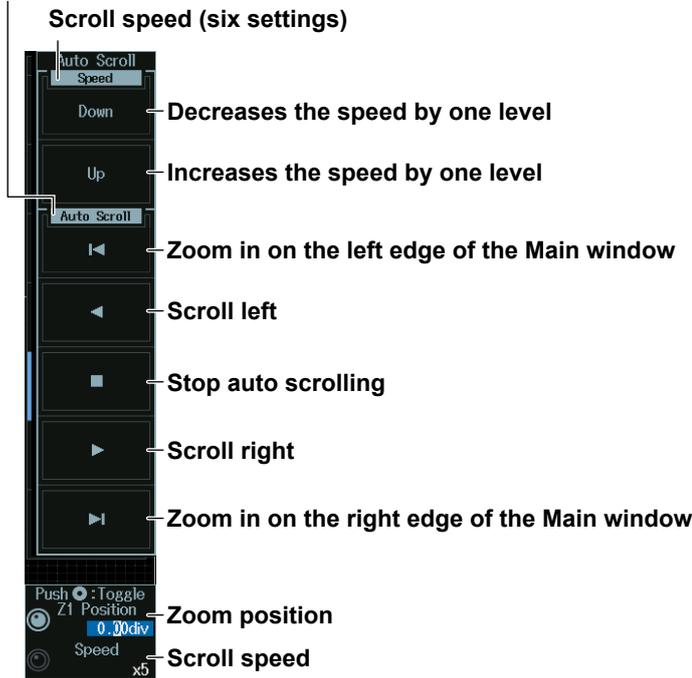
### Note

- If the main window (which displays normal waveforms) and the Zoom1 or Zoom2 window are displayed at the same time, a zoom box appears in the Main window so that you can check the zoom position.
- The ZOOM1 and ZOOM2 keys illuminate when the zoom feature is on. When both are illuminated, the ZOOM knob controls the waveform in the window corresponding to the brighter key.
- When both ZOOM1 and ZOOM2 are illuminated, if you press SET several times and make the jog shuttle control both Z1 Position and Z2 Position, you can move them together.

### Auto Scrolling (Auto Scroll)

Press the **Auto Scroll** soft key to display the following menu.

#### Scroll control

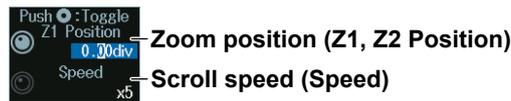


### Zoom Position and Scroll Speed (Z1/Z2Position/Speed)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the zoom position (Z1/Z2 Position) or scroll speed (Speed).

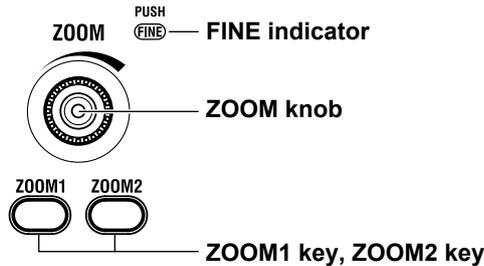
- You can also set the zoom position by tapping the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and using the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
- You can also set the scroll speed by tapping the setup menu in the lower right of the screen and using pop-up menu menu that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu

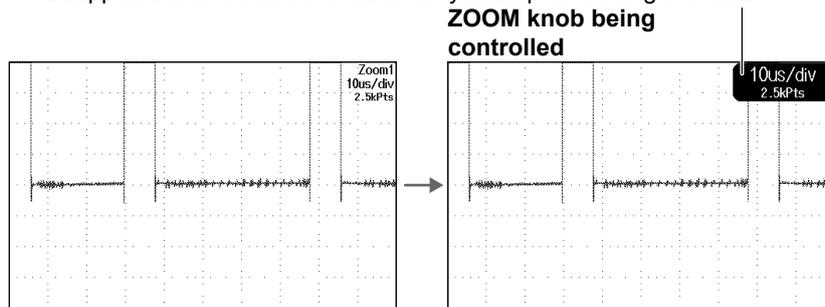


## Zoom Factor (ZOOM knob)

1. Press **ZOOM1** or **ZOOM2** to select which the ZOOM knob will control.  
When both Zoom1 and Zoom2 windows are displayed, the ZOOM knob controls the waveform in the window corresponding to the brighter key.
2. Use the **ZOOM** knob to set the zoom factor.
  - If you push the ZOOM knob, the FINE indicator illuminates, and you can set the zoom factor with higher resolution. If the FINE indicator is not illuminated, the zoom time scale will be set to 1-2-5 steps.
  - To adjust the zoom position, turn the jog shuttle.



While you control the knob, the zoom value and display record length are displayed in the upper right of the zoom window. The display disappears after a few seconds when you stop controlling the knob.



## Zoom Position (Z1, Z2 Position)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the zoom position.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu

When **ZOOM1** or **ZOOM2** is on



Zoom position (Z1, Z2 Position)

You can control Z1 Position or Z2 Position.

When both **ZOOM1** and **ZOOM2** are on



ZOOM1 zoom position (Z1 Position)

ZOOM2 zoom position (Z2 Position)

Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between ZOOM1 and ZOOM2.

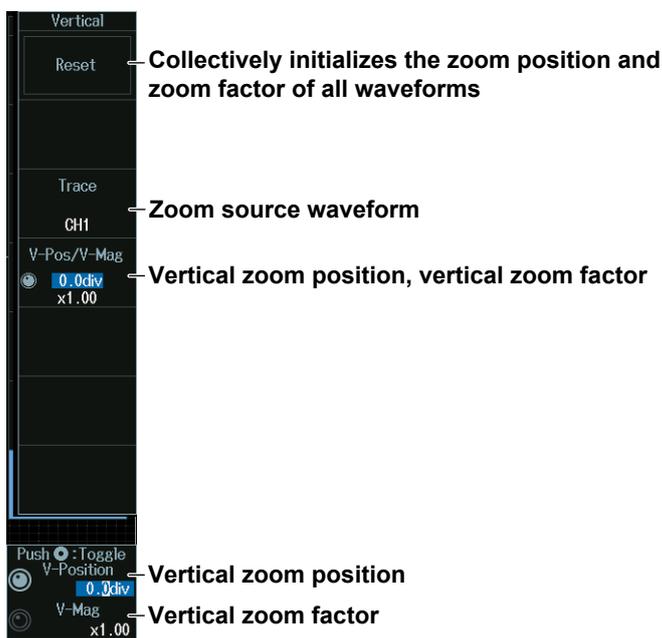
## 10.2 Zooming in on or out from Waveforms in the Vertical Direction

This section explains the following settings for zooming in on or out from waveforms in the vertical direction:

► [“Vertical Zoom \(Vertical Zoom\)” in the Features Guide](#)

### ZOOM Vertical Zoom Menu

1. Press **ZOOM1** or **ZOOM2** to display the ZOOM menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (MENU) in the upper left of the screen and select the ZOOM1 menu or the ZOOM2 menu from ZOOM on the top menu.
2. Press the **Vertical Zoom** soft key to display the following menu.



### Note

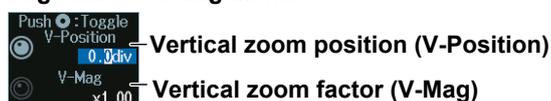
- You can initialize the zoom position and zoom factor of the target waveform by pressing RESET on the front panel.
- You can initialize the zoom position and zoom factor of all waveforms by pressing the Reset soft key.

### Vertical Zoom Position and Vertical Zoom Factor (V-Position/V-Mag)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the vertical zoom position (V-Position) or vertical zoom factor (V-Mag).

- Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between vertical zoom position and vertical zoom factor.
- You can also set the vertical zoom position by tapping the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and using the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
- You can also set the vertical zoom factor by tapping the setup menu in the lower right of the screen and using pop-up menu menu that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



## 11.1 Basic Waveform Search Operation

This section explains the following settings for searching waveforms: For details on the different search types (edge, pattern, pulse width, timeout period), see sections 11.2 to 11.5.

- Search range
- Search skipping
- Displaying detected waveforms
- Detected waveform display
- Executing searches

### Note

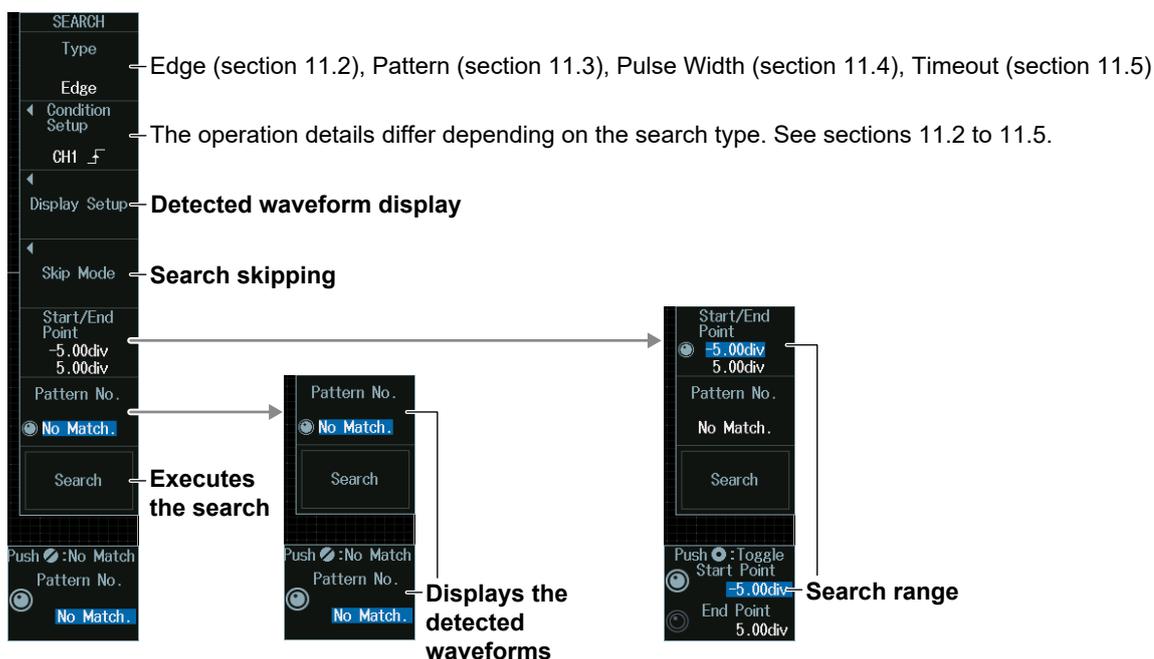
When you press SEARCH to display the SEARCH menu, the display configuration will change. Locations (detected points) that match the search conditions are displayed in the zoom window. The display configuration of the SEARCH menu is same as that of the ZOOM menu (waveform zoom). For setting the display configuration, see section 10.1.

- ▶ “Search Range (Start/End Point),” “Displaying Detected Waveforms (Display Setup),” “Search Skip (Skip Mode),” “Executing a Search (Search),” “Detected Point number (Pattern No.),” “Zooming in on Waveforms” in the Features Guide

### SEARCH Menu

Press **SEARCH** to display the following menu.

You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the SEARCH menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.



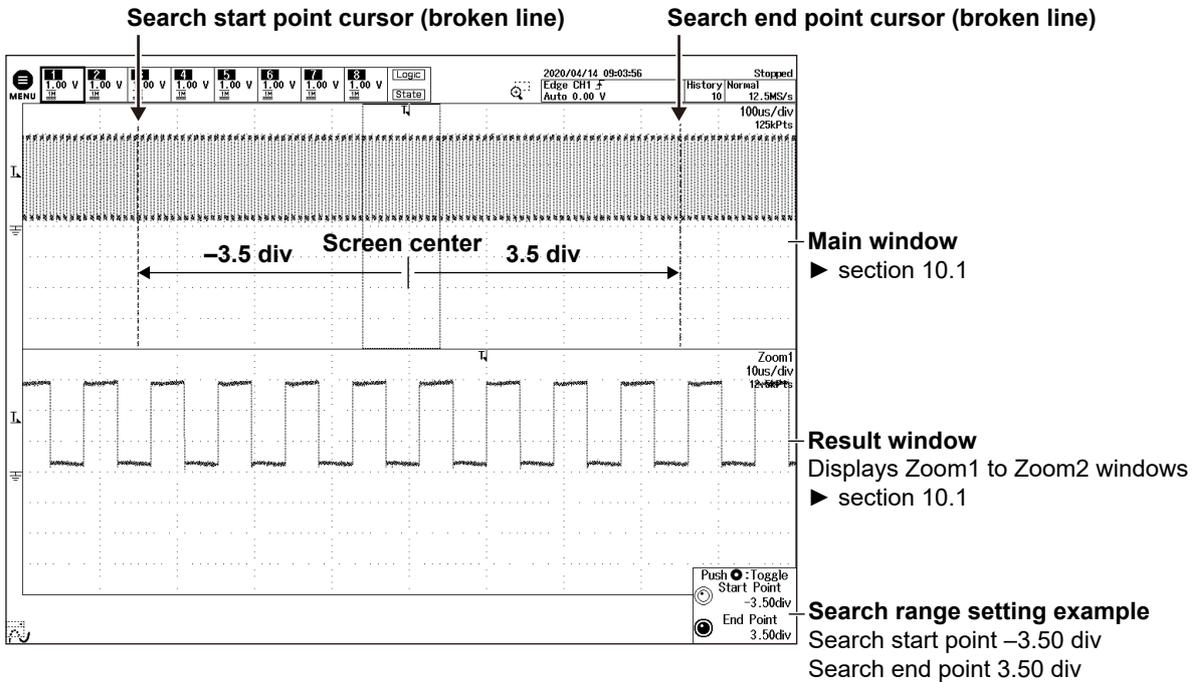
### Search Range (Start/End Point)

1. Press the **Start/End Point** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the search start point (Start Point) or Search End Point (End Point).
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between search start point or search end point.
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu

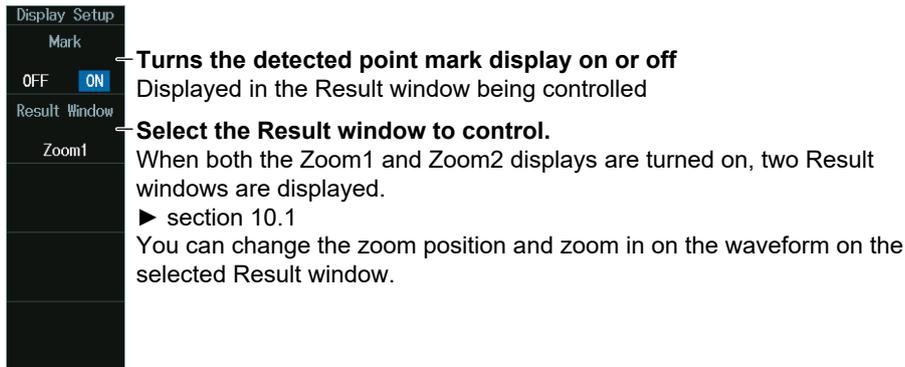


### Search Range (Setting Example)



## Detected Waveform Display (Display Setup)

1. Press the **Display Setup** soft key to display the following menu.

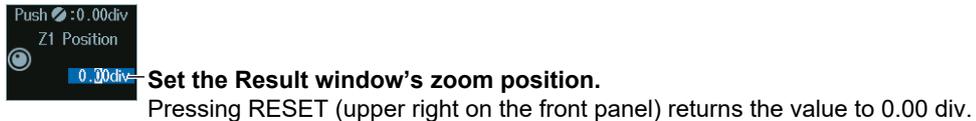


### Note

If only Zoom1 or Zoom2 display is turned on, the one that is turned on becomes the Result window. If both the Zoom1 and Zoom2 displays are turned off, Zoom1 becomes the Result window. If you press SEARCH in this condition, the Zoom1 display will be turned on.

2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the position to zoom.  
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



### Note

The zoom display positions (Z1 Position, Z2 Position) of the detected points can only be controlled when the Display Setup menu is displayed.

### Executing a Search (Search)

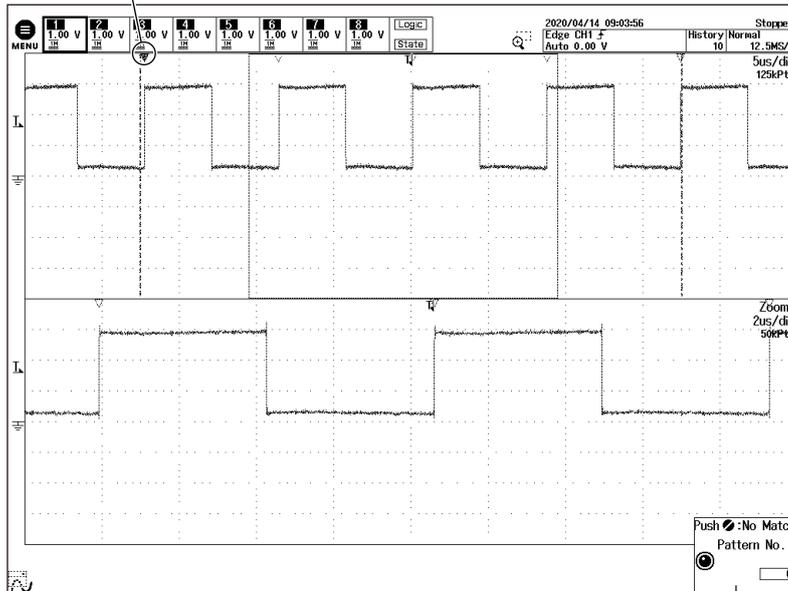
Press the **Search** soft key to execute a waveform search.

When you execute a search, the detected point is displayed at the center of the Result window (zoom window).

### Search Results

#### Detected point

When a location (detected point) that matches the search conditions is found, a triangle mark (Mark) is displayed. The triangle mark selected with Pattern No. is filled.



#### Pattern No.

Numbers 0, 1, 2, and so on are assigned in the detected order from the left of the waveform screen.

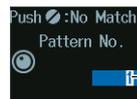
### Note

- You cannot search while waveform acquisition is in progress (RUN).
- You cannot search accumulated waveforms.

### Displaying Detected Waveforms (Pattern No.)

1. Press the **Pattern No.** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to display the waveforms that have been found. You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



Displays the detected waveforms

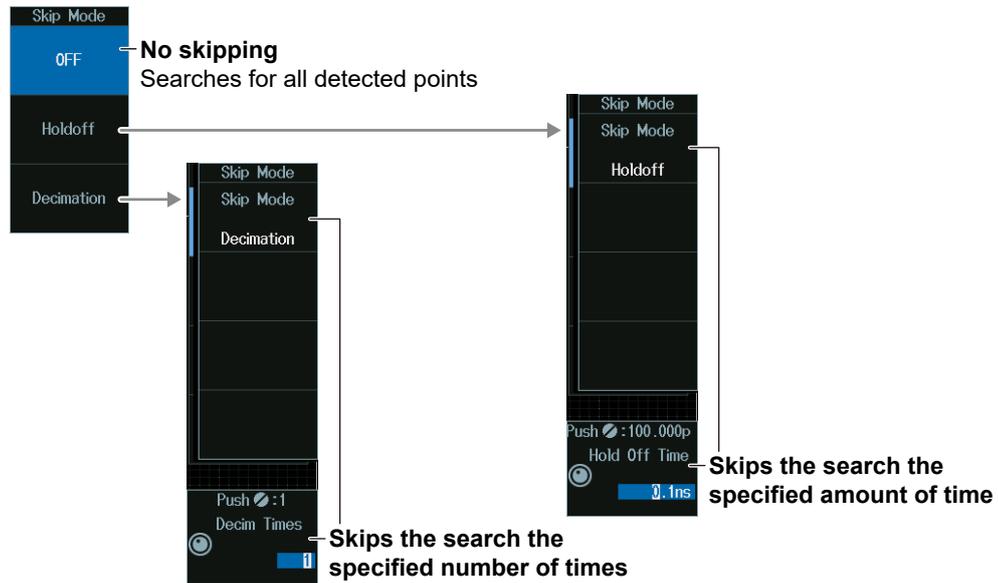
### Displaying Detected Waveforms

Turning the jog shuttle changes Pattern No. The waveform (detected point) selected by Pattern No. is displayed with a filled triangle mark (Mark), and the triangle mark location is displayed at the center of the Result window (zoom window).

For details on the triangle mark, see “Search Results” above.

### Search Skip Conditions (Skip Mode)

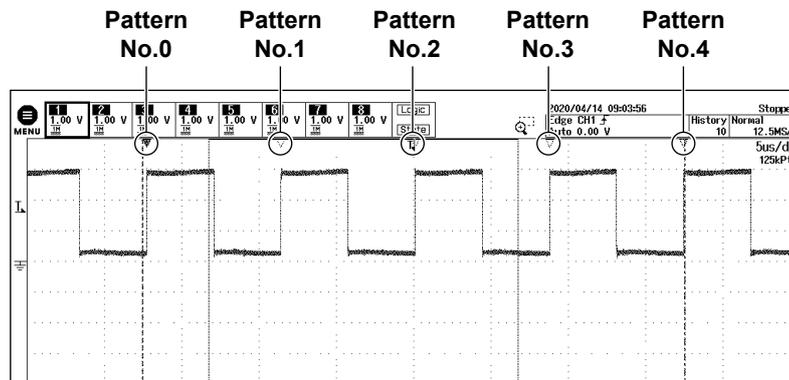
Press the **Skip Mode** soft key to display the following menu.



#### Skipping Search Conditions

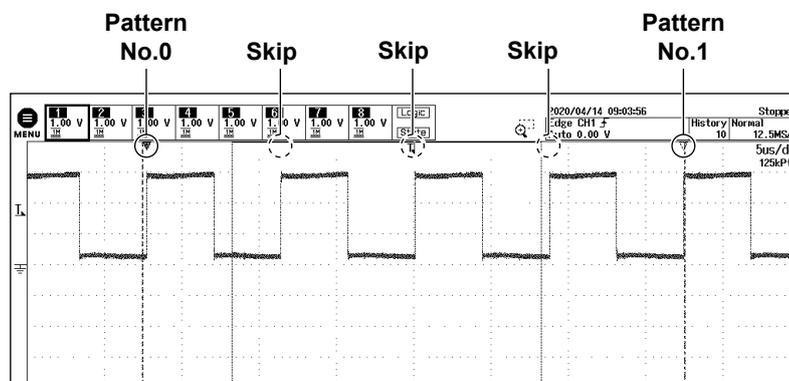
##### When the skip condition is off

An example of an edge search (see section 11.2). There is a detected point at each rising edge.



##### When the skip condition is Decimation (Decim Times = 3)

An example of an edge search. Three rising edges are skipped.



#### Note

The Skip Mode soft key is displayed for Timeout and Pattern.

## 11.2 Searching for Edges

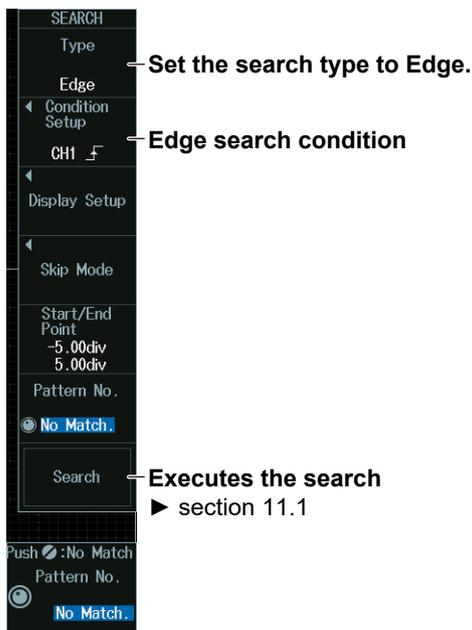
This section explains the following settings for searching for edges:

- Search type
- Search conditions  
search source waveform, slope, level used to detect source waveform edges, hysteresis

► “Search Type (Type),” “Search Conditions (Condition Setup)”  
in the Features Guide

### SEARCH Edge Menu

1. Press **SEARCH** to display the following menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (Ⓜ) in the upper left of the screen and select the SEARCH menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Type** soft key and then the **Edge** soft key to display the following menu.



### Search Conditions (Condition Setup)

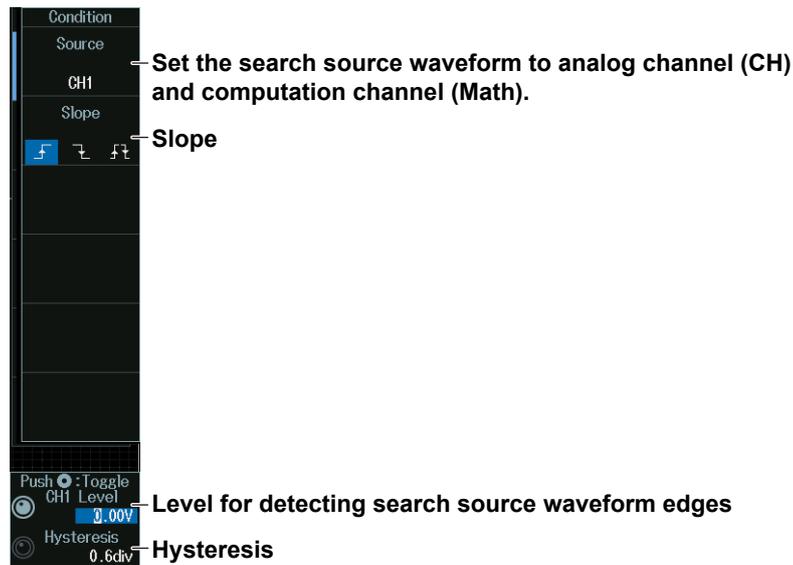
Press the **Condition Setup** soft key. The menu that appears varies depending on the specified source.

#### Note

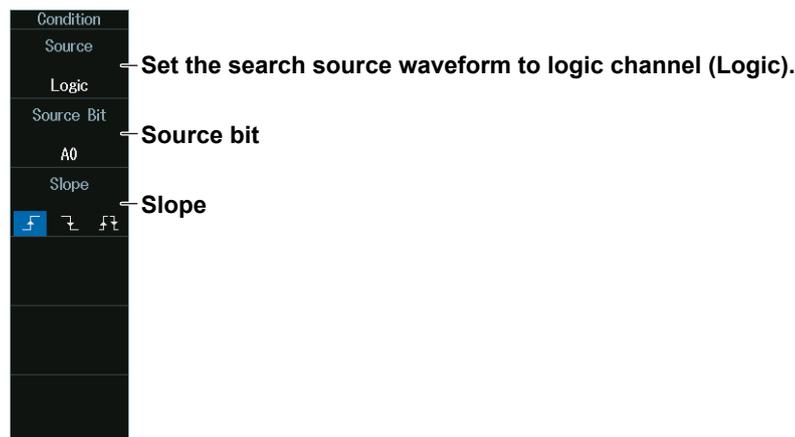
The available channel and source settings vary depending on the model and options.

- The available source displays on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8, Math1 to Math8, Logic
- The available source displays on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math4, Logic
- The following source bit display applies to models with the /L32 option.  
C0 to C7 (LOGIC port C), D0 to D7 (LOGIC port D)

### When the Search Source Waveform (Source) Is Set to an Analog Channel (CH) or Computation Channel (Math)



### When the Search Source Waveform (Source) Is Set to a Logic Channel

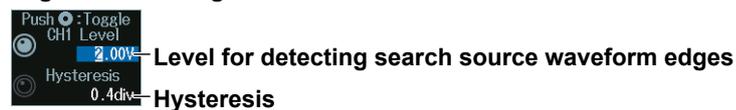


### Level for Detecting Search Source Waveform Edges (CH LEVEL/ Hysteresis)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level or hysteresis.

- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
- To set the level, you can drag the level display line on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu

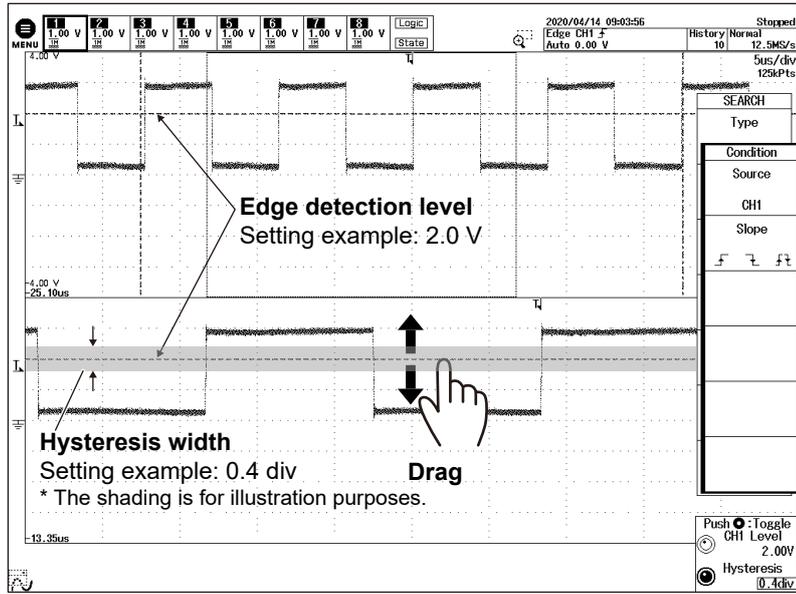


Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between level and hysteresis.

### Note

You can control the level and hysteresis settings when you set the search source waveform to an analog channel (CH) or computation channel (Math).

### Edge Detection Level and Hysteresis



## 11.3 Searching with Multiple Input Patterns

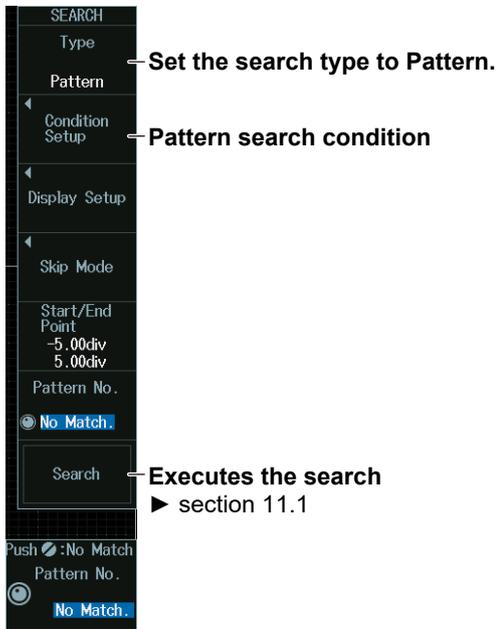
This section explains the following settings for searching with multiple input patterns.

- Search type
- Search conditions

► “Search Type (Type),” “Search Conditions (Condition Setup)”  
in the Features Guide

### SEARCH Pattern Menu

1. Press **SEARCH** to display the following menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the SEARCH menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Type** soft key and then the **Pattern** soft key to display the following menu.



### Search Conditions (Condition Setup)

Press the **Condition Setup** soft key. The menu that appears varies depending on the specified source.

#### Note

The available clock source settings vary depending on the model and options.

- The available source displays on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8, Math1 to Math8, Logic, None
- The available source displays on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math4, Logic, None
- The following source bit display applies to models with the /L32 option.  
C0 to C7 (LOGIC port C), D0 to D7 (LOGIC port D)

### 11.3 Searching with Multiple Input Patterns

#### When the Clock Source (Clock) Is Set to an Analog Channel (CH) or Computation Channel (Math)

Condition

- Clock — Set the clock source to analog channel (CH) and computation channel (Math).
- CH1
- Pattern — Search source pattern
- Logic — Logic
- AND OR — Comparison condition
- Condition — Achievement condition
- Enter
- Level/Hys — Threshold level and hysteresis of the search source pattern
- Push : Toggle CH1 Level 2.00V — Level for detecting clock source waveform edges
- Hysteresis 0.4div — Clock source waveform hysteresis

For details, see “Level for Detecting Search Source Waveform Edges” in section 11.2.

#### When the Clock Source (Clock) Is Set to a Logic Channel (Logic)

Condition

- Clock — Set the clock source to logic channel (Logic).
- Logic
- Source Bit
- A0
- Pattern — Search source pattern
- Logic — Logic
- AND OR — Comparison condition
- Condition — Achievement condition
- Enter
- Level/Hys — Threshold level and hysteresis of the search source pattern

#### When a Clock Source (Clock) Is Not Available (None)

Condition

- Clock — Set the clock source to None.
- None
- Pattern — Search source pattern
- Logic — Logic
- AND OR — Comparison condition
- Condition — Achievement condition
- Enter
- Level/Hys — Threshold level and hysteresis of the search source pattern

When the achievement condition is True or False

Condition

- True
- Time Qualification — Time condition
- More than
- Level/Hys
- Push : 1.000ns — Reference time
- Time 1.0ns

Time

- More than — More than
- Less than — Less than
- Inside — Inside
- Outside — Outside
- Timeout — Timeout

### Search Source Pattern (Pattern)

Press the **Pattern** soft key to display the following menu.

- **When There Is a Clock Source**  
Set the clock source slope and pattern.

#### 8ch model example

Set the slope of the signal set as the clock

The screenshot shows the 'Pattern' menu with the following settings:

- CH1-CH8:** CH1 has a slope icon and a pattern of H, L, X. CH2-CH8 have patterns of H, L, X.
- Math1-Math8:** All have patterns of H, L, X.
- Logic port B (B0-B7):** All bits are set to H, L, X.
- Logic port A (A0-A7):** All bits are set to H, L, X.

**Logic port B**  
Setting example: 10101111 (MSB;B7)  
H: High level  
L: Low level  
X: Don't care

**Logic port A**  
Setting example: 00000101 (MSB;A7)

- **No Clock Source**

The settings are the same as the pattern settings explained in “When the Clock Source Is a Channel from CH1 to CH8 or Logic” above.

Set the pattern of the source channels (all CH1 to CH8 and Logic signals) to search for.

#### 8ch model example (a model with the /L32 option)

The screenshot shows the 'Pattern' menu with the following settings:

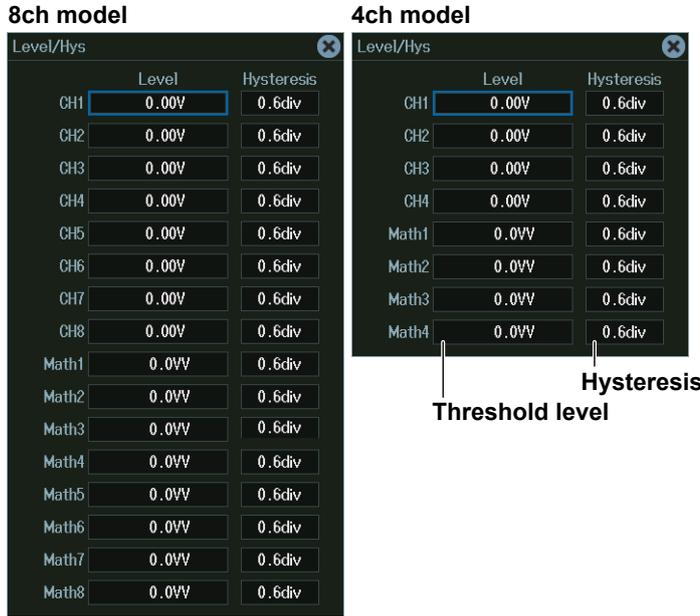
- CH1-CH8:** All have patterns of H, L, X.
- Math1-Math8:** All have patterns of H, L, X.
- Logic port B (B0-B7):** All bits are set to H, L, X.
- Logic port A (A0-A7):** All bits are set to H, L, X.
- Logic port D (D0-D7):** D0-D6 are H, L, X; D7 is X.
- Logic port C (C0-C7):** C0-C6 are H, L, X; C7 is X.

**Logic port D**  
Setting example: xxxx1010 (MSB;D7)  
H: High level  
L: Low level  
X: Don't care

**Logic port C**  
Setting example: xxxx1010 (MSB;C7)

### Threshold Level and Hysteresis Of The Search Source Pattern (Level/Hys)

Press the **Level/Hys** soft key to display the following menu.



### Time Conditions (Time Qualification) and Reference Times (Time) (Procedure When a Clock Source (Clock) Is Not Available (None))

1. Press the **Condition** soft key to set the achievement condition to True or False.
2. Press the **Time Qualification** soft key to set the time conditions.
3. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the reference times.  
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu

When the time condition is More than, Less than, or Timeout



When the time condition is Inside



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between reference time 1 and reference time 2.

#### Satisfaction of Comparison Conditions

Set what kind of relationship (True or False) must be established between the achievement time of the comparison condition and the specified reference times (Time1 and Time2) for a point to be detected.

<b>More than</b>	When the comparison condition achievement time is longer than the specified reference time (Time)
<b>Less than</b>	When the comparison condition achievement time is shorter than the specified reference time (Time)
<b>Inside</b>	When the comparison condition achievement time is longer than reference time Time1 but shorter than reference time Time2.
<b>Outside</b>	When the comparison condition achievement time is shorter than reference time Time1 or longer than reference time Time2.
<b>Timeout</b>	When the comparison condition achievement time exceeds the specified reference time (Time)

## 11.4 Searching for Pulse Width

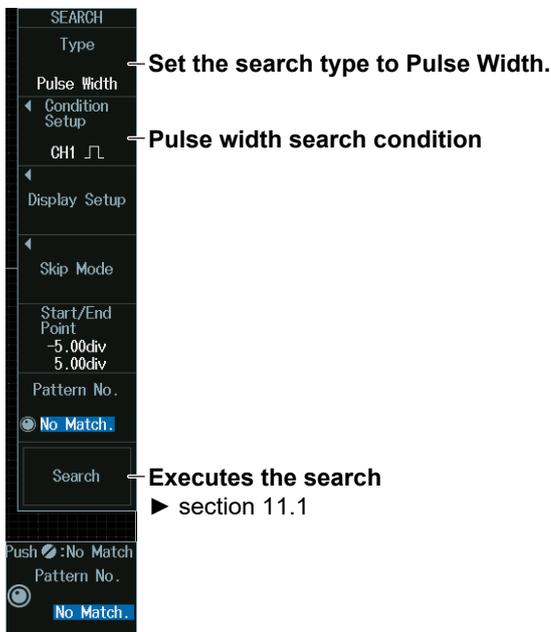
This section explains the following settings for searching for pulse width:

- Search type
- Search conditions

► “Search Type (Type),” “Search Conditions (Condition Setup)”  
in the Features Guide

### SEARCH Pulse Width Menu

1. Press **SEARCH** to display the following menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (E) in the upper left of the screen and select the SEARCH menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Type** soft key and then the **Pulse Width** soft key to display the following menu.



### Search Conditions (Condition Setup)

Press the **Condition Setup** soft key. The menu that appears varies depending on the specified source.

#### Note

- The available source settings vary depending on the model and options.
- The available source displays on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8, Math1 to Math8, Logic
  - The available source displays on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math4, Logic
  - The following source bit display applies to models with the /L32 option.  
C0 to C7 (LOGIC port C), D0 to D7 (LOGIC port D)

**When the Search Source Waveform (Source) Is Set to an Analog Channel (CH) or Computation Channel (Math)**

Condition

- Source: CH1 — Set the search source waveform to analog channel (CH) and computation channel (Math).
- Polarity: [Polarity icons] — Search source polarity
- Time Qualification: More than — (points to Time condition menu)
- Time: 1.0ns — Reference time
- Level/Hys: 0.00V / 0.6div — Threshold level and hysteresis of the search source pulse width
- Push: 1.000ns
- Time: 1.0ns — Reference time

**Time condition**

- More than — More than
- Less than — Less than
- Inside — Inside
- Outside — Outside
- Timeout — Timeout

**When the Search Source Waveform (Source) Is Set to a Logic Channel (Logic)**

Condition

- Source: Logic — Set the search source waveform to logic channel (Logic).
- Source Bit: A0 — Source bit
- Polarity: [Polarity icons] — Search source polarity
- Time Qualification: More than — (points to Time condition menu)
- Push: 1.000ns
- Time: 1.0ns — Reference time

**Time condition**

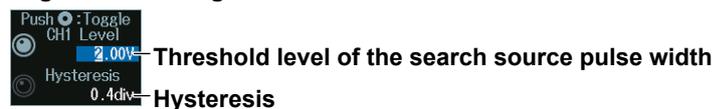
- More than — More than
- Less than — Less than
- Inside — Inside
- Outside — Outside
- Timeout — Timeout

## Threshold Level and Hysteresis of the Search Source Pulse Width (Level/Hys)

### When the Search Source Waveform Is an Analog Channel or Competition Channel

1. Press the **Level/Hys** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level or hysteresis.
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
  - To set the level, you can drag the level display line on the screen. For details, see “Edge Detection Level and Hysteresis” in section 11.2.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between level and hysteresis.

## Time Conditions (Time Qualification) and Reference Times(Time)

### When the Search Source Waveform Is an Analog Channel or Competition Channel

1. Press the **Time Qualification** soft key to set the time conditions.
2. Press the **Time** soft key.
3. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the reference times.
 

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

### When the Search Source Waveform Is a Logic Channel

1. Press the **Time Qualification** soft key to set the time conditions.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the reference times.
 

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu

##### When the time condition is More than, Less than, or Timeout



##### When the time condition is Inside



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between reference time 1 and reference time 2.

## 11.4 Searching for Pulse Width

---

### Satisfaction of Conditions

Set what kind of relationship (True or False) must be established between the achievement time of the comparison condition and the specified reference times (Time1 and Time2) for a point to be detected.

<b>More than</b>	When the comparison condition achievement time is longer than the specified reference time (Time)
<b>Less than</b>	When the comparison condition achievement time is shorter than the specified reference time (Time)
<b>Inside</b>	When the comparison condition achievement time is longer than reference time Time1 but shorter than reference time Time2.
<b>Outside</b>	When the comparison condition achievement time is shorter than reference time Time1 or longer than reference time Time2.
<b>Timeout</b>	When the comparison condition achievement time exceeds the specified reference time (Time)

## 11.5 Searching for Timeout Periods

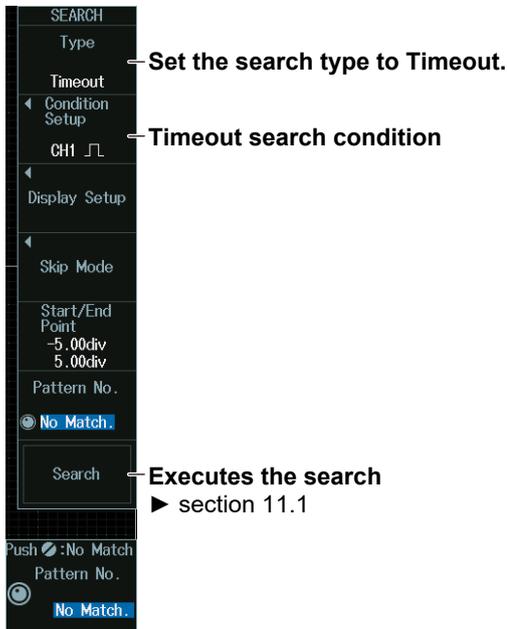
This section explains the following settings for searching for timeouts:

- Search type
- Search conditions

► “Search Type (Type),” “Search Conditions (Condition Setup)”  
in the Features Guide

### SEARCH Timeout Menu

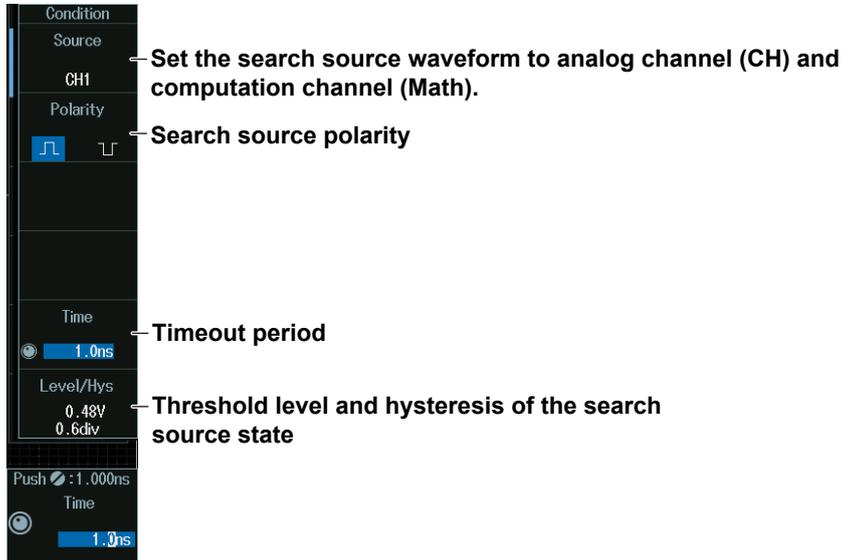
1. Press **SEARCH** to display the following menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (Ⓜ) in the upper left of the screen and select the SEARCH menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Type** soft key and then the **Timeout** soft key to display the following menu.



### Search Conditions (Condition Setup)

Press the **Condition Setup** soft key. The menu that appears varies depending on the specified source.

#### When the Search Source Waveform (Source) Is Set to an Analog Channel (CH) or Computation Channel (Math)

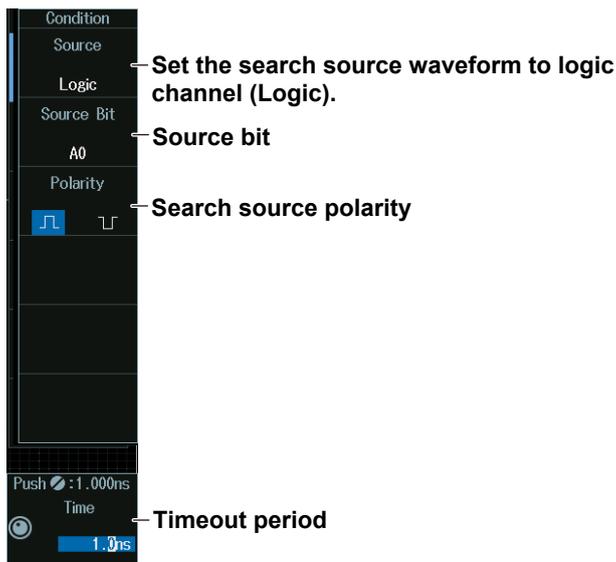


#### Note

The available source settings vary depending on the model and options.

- The available source displays on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8, Math1 to Math8, Logic
- The available source displays on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math4, Logic

#### When the Search Source Waveform (Source) Is Set to a Logic Channel (Logic)



#### Note

The following source bit display applies to models with the /L32 option.  
C0 to C7 (LOGIC port C), D0 to D7 (LOGIC port D)

## Threshold Level and Hysteresis of the Search Source State (Level/Hys)

### When the Search Source Waveform Is an Analog Channel or Competition Channel

1. Press the **Level/Hys** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level or hysteresis.
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
  - To set the level, you can drag the level display line on the screen. For details, see “Edge Detection Level and Hysteresis” in section 11.2.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between level and hysteresis.

## Timeout Period (Timeout)

### When the Search Source Waveform Is an Analog Channel or Competition Channel

1. Press the **Time** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the timeout period.
 

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

### When the Search Source Waveform Is a Logic Channel

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the timeout period.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



## 12.1 Analyzing and Searching FlexRay Bus Signals (Option)

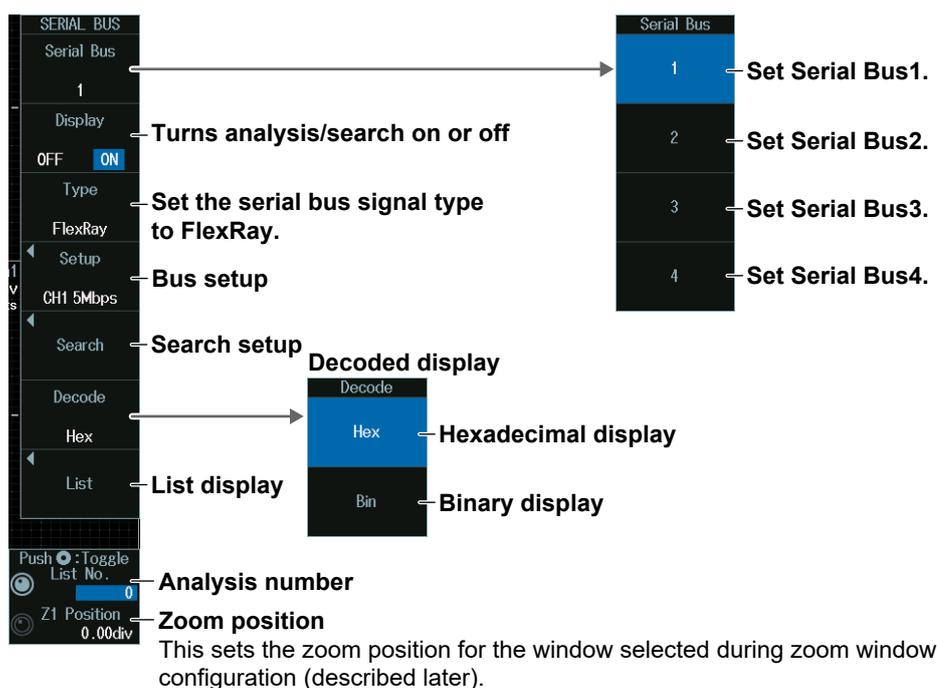
This section explains the following settings for analyzing or searching FlexRay bus signals:

- Turning analysis and search displays on or off
- Serial bus signal types
- Bus setup
  - Auto setup, analysis/search source waveform, bit rate, bus channel, level and hysteresis for detecting analysis/search source waveform states
- Decoded display
- List display
  - List size, display position, and zoom linking
- Analysis number
- Zoom position
- Search settings
  - Jumping to a specified field, zoom window, search type, and search execution

► “Analyzing and Searching Serial Bus Signals,”  
 “Analyzing and Searching FlexRay Bus Signals (Option)”  
 in the Features Guide

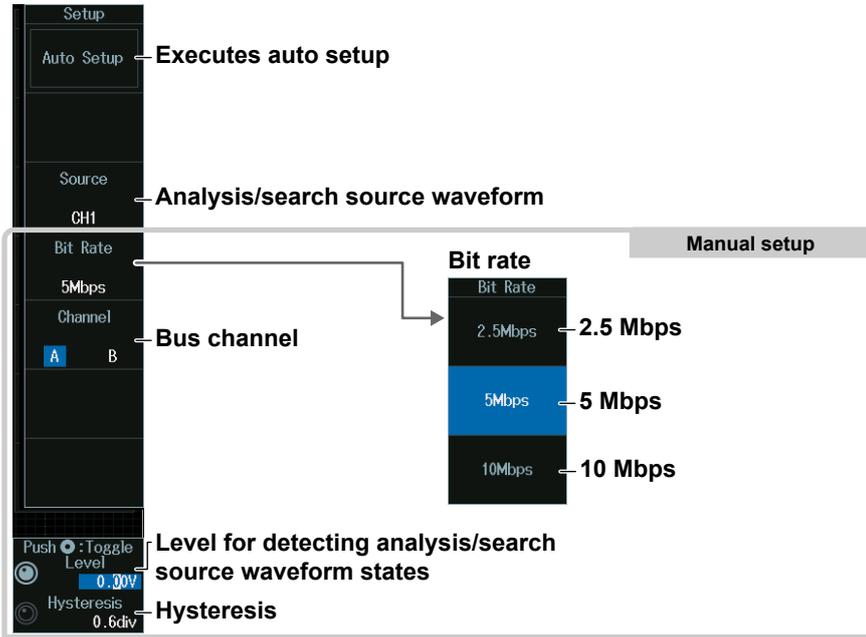
### SERIAL BUS FlexRay Menu

1. Press **SHIFT+SEARCH** (SERIAL BUS) to display the SERIAL BUS menu.
  - You can also tap **MENU** (M) in the upper left of the screen and select the SERIAL BUS menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
  - You can also press **ANALYSIS** and then the **To SERIAL BUS** soft key to display the SERIAL BUS menu.
  - The instrument can analyze and search up to four serial bus signals. To switch to the setup menu, press the **Serial Bus** soft key and select a number from 1 to 4.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. Select **FlexRay** from the setup menu that is displayed. The following menu appears.



### Bus Setup (Setup)

Press the **Setup** soft key to display the following menu.



### Executing Auto Setup (Auto Setup)

1. Set the analysis/search source waveform.  
Auto setup cannot be performed when the source is set to Math1 to Math8.
2. Press the **Auto Setup** soft key to execute auto setup.
  - The instrument automatically sets the bit rate, bus channel, level, and hysteresis and triggers on the start of frame (SOF) of the FlexRay bus signal.
  - While the serial bus is being configured, Auto Setup changes to Abort. If you want to stop, press the **Abort** soft key.

### Note

- The auto setup feature will not work properly on some input signals.
- The available source waveforms vary depending on the model.
  - The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8, Math1 to Math8
  - The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math4

### Manual Setup

After running auto setup, you can change the following settings and display decoded results.

- Bit rate
- Bus channel
- Level for detecting analysis/search source waveform states
- Hysteresis

## Level for Detecting Analysis/Search Source Waveform States (Level/Hysteresis)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level or hysteresis.

- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
- To set the level, you can drag the level display line on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between level and hysteresis.

## List Display (List)

1. Press the **Display** soft key, and turn on the analysis and search displays.
2. Press the **List** soft key and then the **Show List** soft key.
  - The list of analysis results and the next menu appear.
  - If several display settings of Serial Bus 1 to 4 are on, all the lists of analysis results of the serial buses whose display setting is on are displayed. For details, see section 12.11.

### List of analysis results

No.	Time(ms)	S/D	IND	ID	Len	CC	Data	Information
-1	0.051424	S	1111	4	4	6	01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08	
0	0.000211	S	0000	5	4	6	00 00 00 00 00 00 00	
1	0.050373		1111	6	5	6	C8 C9 CA CB CC CD CE CF D0 D1	

Analysis Number

List  
 Zoom Link OFF ON ← Turns zoom link on or off  
 List Size ← List size and display position  
 Half(Upper)  
 Show List ← List display  
 Push : 0  
 List No. ← Analysis number  
 0

### Note

#### Analysis Number

Data before the trigger position (on the left side of the waveform display) is assigned analysis numbers in descending order (-1, -2, and so on). Data after the trigger position (on the right side of the waveform display) is assigned analysis numbers in ascending order (0, 1, 2, and so on).

## Analysis Number (List No.)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the analysis number (List No.).

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu



### Search Setup (Search)

Press the **Search** soft key to display the following menu.

**Zoom window**  
You can configure zoom windows Zoom1 and Zoom2 when they are displayed. Zoom1 is automatically displayed during the automatic setup of the analysis settings.

**Search Type**

**Executes the search**  
The instrument searches for the search conditions. If the instrument finds points that match the search conditions (detected points), it shows numbers (0, 1, 2, etc.) from the left of the waveform display in the order that the points were detected.

**Detected point number**

**Zoom position**

**Jump to the specified field**

- ID ← **ID Field**
- Payload Length ← **Payload Length**
- Header CRC ← **Header CRC**
- Cycle Count ← **Cycle Count**
- CRC ← **CRC**

### Search Type (Mode)

#### Frame Start Mode (Frame Start)

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Frame Start** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument searches for the start position of FlexRay bus signal frames.

**Set the search mode to Frame Start.**

**Error Mode (Error)**

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Error** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument searches for FlexRay bus signal errors.

The screenshot shows a vertical menu with the following items: Search, Field Jump, Result Window, Zoom1, Mode, Error, Error Type OR, and Search. An arrow points from the 'Error' key to the 'Error Type OR' menu. This menu contains four options, each with 'OFF' and 'ON' buttons and a description:

- Header CRC**: Turns header CRC error detection on or off. When a header CRC error is detected.
- CRC**: Turns CRC error detection on or off. When a CRC error is detected.
- BSS**: Turns BSS error detection on or off. When the falling edge of the first byte sequence is not at the specified position.
- FES**: Turns FES error detection on or off. When the rising edge of the frame end sequence is not at the specified position.

At the bottom of the screen, there is a status bar with the following information: Push : Toggle, Pattern No., No Match., Z1 Position, 0.00div.

## 12.1 Analyzing and Searching FlexRay Bus Signals (Option)

### ID/Data Mode (ID/Data)

1. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **ID/Data** soft key.
2. Press the **Condition Setup** soft key. The following menu appears.

The instrument searches for the position where the AND condition of the Frame Start, Indicator, ID, Cycle Count, and Data is met.

**Set the search type to ID/Data.**

**When the Comparison Condition of Data1 Is True or False**

**Indicator search condition**  
You can set four types of bit patterns.

Indicator Setup	0	1	X
Payload Preamble	0	1	X
Null Frame	0	1	X
Sync Frame	0	1	X
Startup Frame	0	1	X

**Frame Start**  
(Always selected)

**ID comparison condition**  
**Reference value**  
**Cycle Count comparison condition**  
**Reference value**  
**Comparison start position**  
**Data length**  
**Comparison condition**  
**Data patterns**

Sets the value of up to eight consecutive bytes of data from Data 0 to Data 253 as a search condition

**When the Comparison Condition of Data1 Is Data = a; Data ≠ a; a ≤ Data; Data ≤ b; a ≤ Data ≤ b; or Data < a, b < Data**

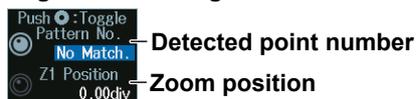
**Frame Start** (always selected)  
**Indicator**  
**ID comparison condition**  
**Reference Values (a and b)**  
**Cycle Count comparison condition**  
**Reference Values (a and b)**  
**Data length**  
**Comparison start position**  
**Comparison condition**  
**Reference Values (a and b)**  
**Comparison range**  
**Whether to use a signed or unsigned data format**  
**Byte order**

Sets the value of up to eight consecutive bytes of data from Data 0 to Data 253 as a search condition

## Detected Point Number and Zoom Position (Pattern No. /Z1 Position or Z2 Position)

1. Execute a search. Check that a location matching the search conditions is found.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the detected point number (Pattern No.) and zoom position (Z1 Position or Z2 Position).
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between detected point number (Pattern No.) and zoom position (Z1 Position or Z2 Position).

### Jog shuttle setting menu



## 12.2 Analyzing and Searching CAN Bus Signals (Option)

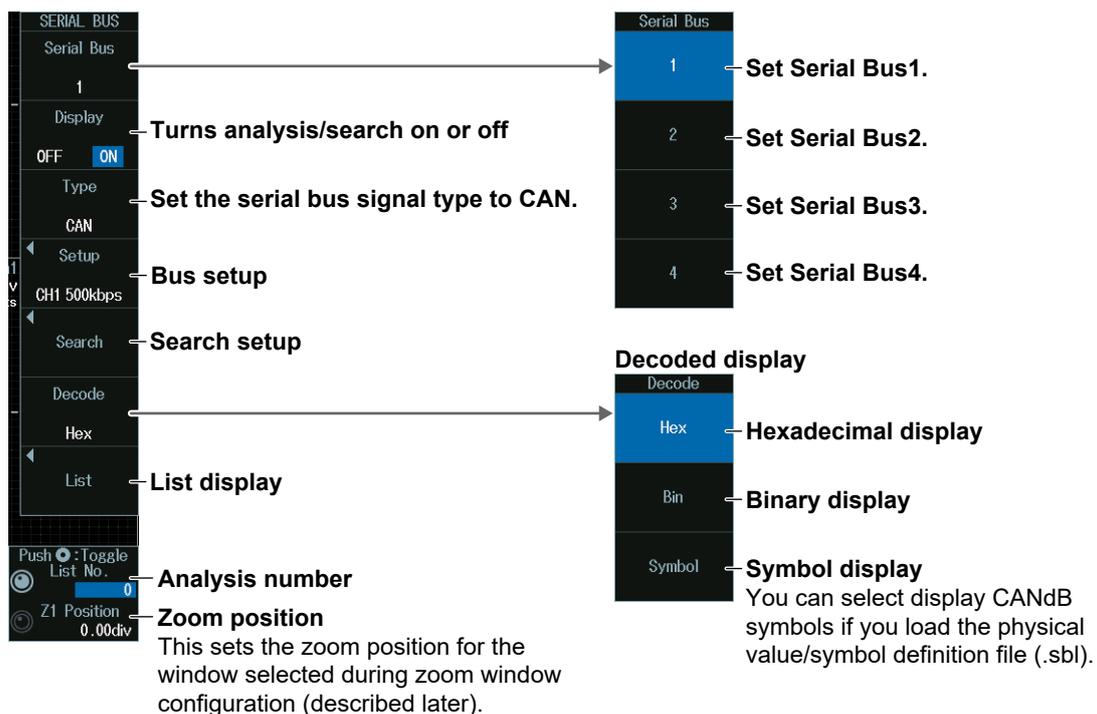
This section explains the following settings for analyzing or searching CAN bus signals:

- Turning analysis and search displays on or off
- Serial bus signal types
- Bus setup
  - Auto setup, analysis/search source waveform, bit rate, recessive level, sample point, level and hysteresis for detecting analysis/search source waveform states
- Decoded display
- List display
  - List size, display position, zoom linking, filter (list display filtering)
- Analysis number
- Zoom position
- Search settings
  - Jumping to a specified field, zoom window, search type, and search execution

► “Analyzing and Searching Serial Bus Signals,”  
 “Analyzing and Searching CAN Bus Signals (Option)”  
 in the Features Guide

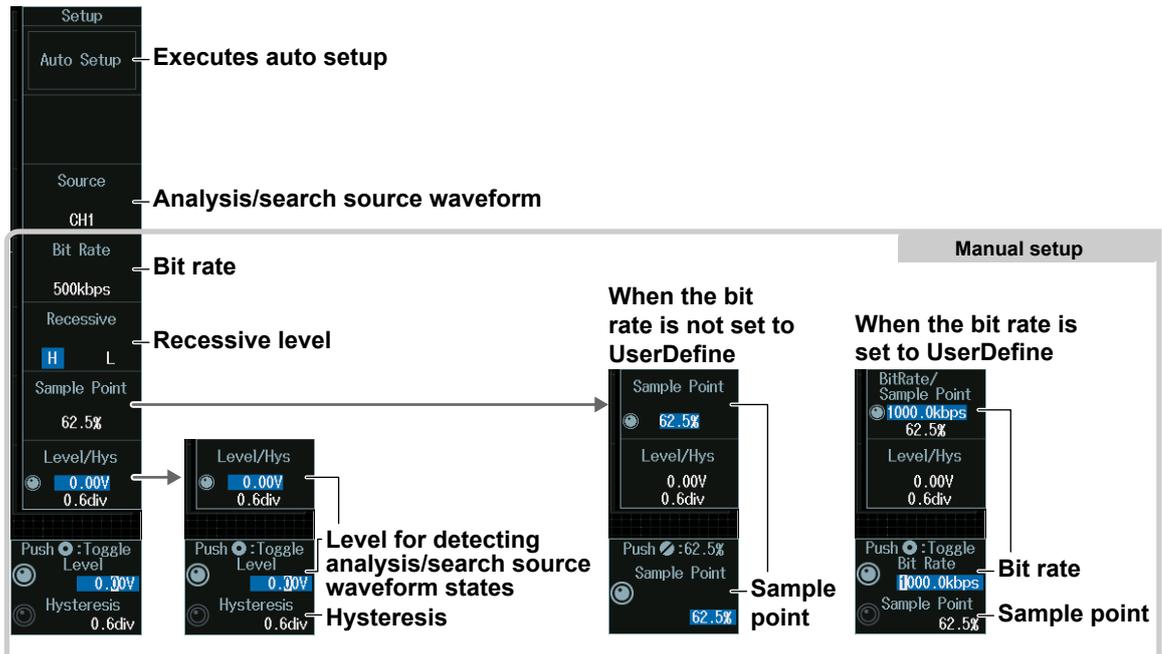
### SERIAL BUS CAN Menu

1. Press **SHIFT+SEARCH** (SERIAL BUS) to display the SERIAL BUS menu.
  - You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the SERIAL BUS menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
  - You can also press **ANALYSIS** and then the **To SERIAL BUS** soft key to display the SERIAL BUS menu.
  - The instrument can analyze and search up to four serial bus signals. To switch to the setup menu, press the Serial Bus soft key and select a number from 1 to 4.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. From the setup menu that appears, select **CAN** to display the following menu.



## Bus Setup (Setup)

Press the **Setup** soft key to display the following menu.



### Executing Auto Setup (Auto Setup)

1. Set the analysis/search source waveform.  
Auto setup cannot be performed when the source is set to Math1 to Math8.
2. Press the **Auto Setup** soft key to execute auto setup.
  - The instrument automatically configures the bit rate, recessive level, sample point, level, and hysteresis and triggers on the start of frame (SOF) of the CAN bus signal.
  - While the serial bus is being configured, Auto Setup changes to Abort. If you want to stop, press the **Abort** soft key.

### Note

- The auto setup feature will not work properly on some input signals.
- The available source waveforms vary depending on the model.
  - The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8, Math1 to Math8
  - The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math4

### Manual Setup

After running auto setup, you can change the following settings and display decoded results.

- Bit rate
- Recessive level
- Sample point
- Level for detecting analysis/search source waveform states
- Hysteresis

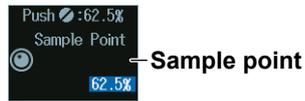
## Sample Point (Sample Point) and Bit Rate (Bit Rate)

### When the bit rate is not set to User Define

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the sample point.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the pop-up list that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu

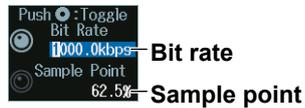


### When the bit rate is set to User Define

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the sample point.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the pop-up list that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between bit rate and sample point.

## Level for Detecting Analysis/Search Source Waveform States (Level/Hysteresis)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level or hysteresis.

- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
- To set the level, you can drag the level display line on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between level and hysteresis.

## List Display (List)

1. Press the **Display** soft key, and turn on the analysis and search displays.
2. Press the **List** soft key and then the **Slow List** soft key.
  - The list of analysis results and the next menu appear.
  - If several display settings of Serial Bus 1 to 4 are on, all the lists of analysis results of the serial buses whose display setting is on are displayed. For details, see section 12.11.

### List of analysis results

The screenshot shows the 'Serial Bus' analysis interface. On the left, a table displays analysis results for 'S1: CAN'. A vertical line indicates the 'Analysis number' at the start of the waveform. On the right, a 'List' settings menu is open, with callouts explaining various options.

No.	Time(ms)	Frame	ID	DLC	Data	CRC	Ack	Information
-1	-2.44512	Data	012	1	FE	2263	Y	
0	-0.00512	Data	100	3	FF 01 A4	6C6E	Y	
1	2.86688	Error						

**Analysis number** (points to the vertical line in the waveform)

**List** menu options and callouts:

- Zoom Link**: Turns zoom link on or off (OFF/ON)
- Time Ref**: Time (ms) Reference Time (Trigger Position)
- Filter**: Filtering the List Display
- List Size**: List size and display position (Half(Upper))
- Show List**: List display
- Push**: :0
- List No.**: Analysis number (-1)

### Note

#### Analysis Number

Data before the trigger position (on the left side of the waveform display) is assigned analysis numbers in descending order (-1, -2, and so on). Data after the trigger position (on the right side of the waveform display) is assigned analysis numbers in ascending order (0, 1, 2, and so on).

### Time (ms) Reference Time

Press the **Time Ref** soft key to select **Trigger Position** or **Previous Row**.

#### Time (ms) Reference Time

Select the reference for determining the time to the start of the frame to be analyzed.

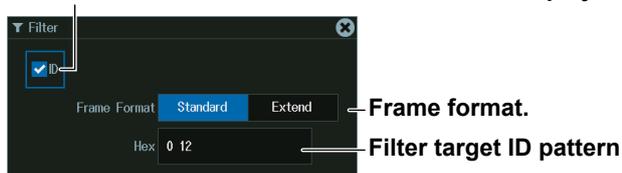
**Trigger Position:** The reference time is set to the trigger point.

**Previous Row:** The reference time is set to the start position (SOF) of the frame previous to the frame to be analyzed.

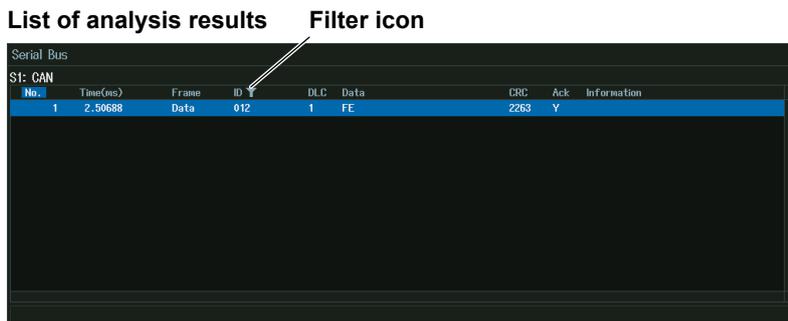
### Filtering the List Display

1. Press the **Filter** soft key to display the following screen.

Select this check box to enable the list display filter.



2. Set the hexadecimal value of the ID to search for. Only the frames that contain the filter target ID pattern are listed.



### Analysis Number (List No.)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the analysis number (List No.).

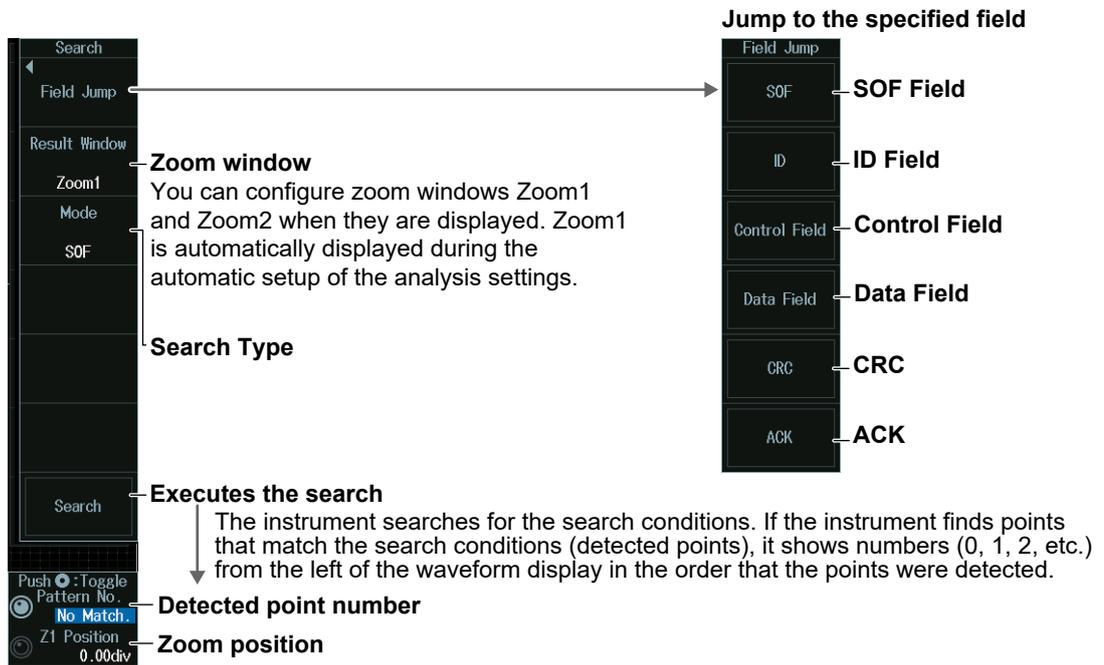
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



## Search Setup (Search)

Press the **Search** soft key to display the following menu.

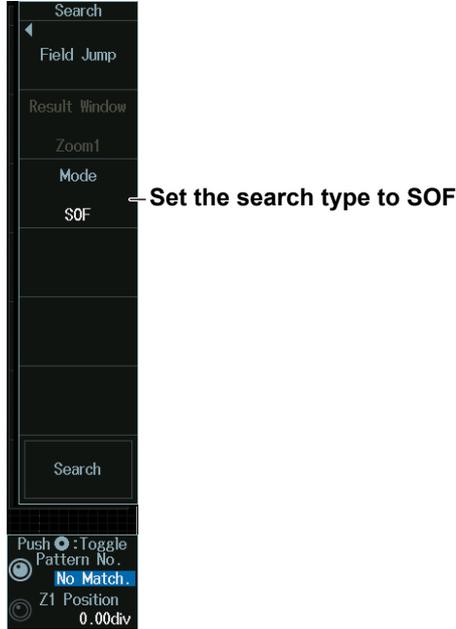


### Search Type (Mode)

#### SOF Mode (Start of Frame)

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **SOF** soft key to display the following menu.

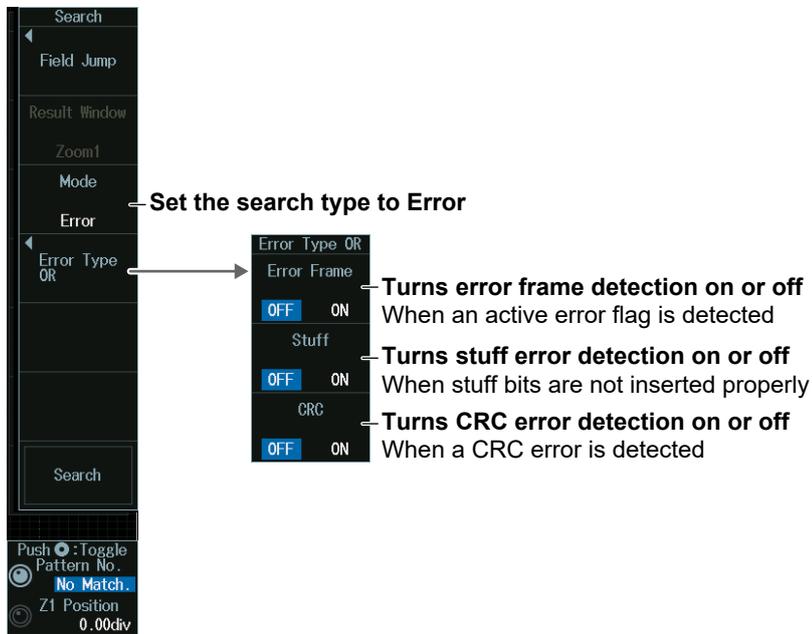
The instrument searches for the start position of CAN bus signal frames.



#### Error Mode (Error)

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Error** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument searches for error frames (when the error flag is active) or various errors.



**ID/Data Mode (ID/Data)**

1. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **ID/Data** soft key.
2. Press the **Condition Setup** soft key to display the following menu.  
The instrument searches for the position where the AND condition of the SOF, ID, Frame type, (Remote Frame/Data Frame), Data and ACK Mode is met.

• **When ID Input Format Is Pattern**

Set the search type to ID/Data.



**When the data frame comparison condition is True or False**

SOF (always selected)

**Frame format**

Set the ID input format to Pattern.

Bit pattern of ID  
(If you select Extend for the frame format, 29 bits are displayed here)

Set the search source frame.

Data length of the data field

Comparison condition

Data Pattern

ACK slot state

**When the data frame condition is Data = a; Data ≠ a; a ≤ Data; Data ≤ b; a ≤ Data ≤ b; or Data < a, b < Data**

SOF (always selected)

**Frame format**

Set the ID input format to Pattern.

Bit pattern of ID  
(If you select Extend for the frame format, 29 bits are displayed here)

Set the search source frame

Data length of the data field

Reference Values (a and b)

Bit positions of the most significant bit (MSB) and the least significant bit (LSB) in the data to be compared

Whether to use a signed (Sign) or unsigned (Unsign) data format

Byte order

• When ID Input Format Is Message

Set the search type to ID/Data.

Set the ID input format to Message.

Select an ID from the message list in the physical value/symbol definition file (.sbl) loaded in advance using the file load feature (see section 17.7). Edit physical value/symbol definition files on your PC using the dedicated software (Symbol Editor).

SOF (always selected)

Input Format: Pattern, Message

Message

Signal

Condition:  $a \leq \text{Data} \leq b$

a: 0      b: 255

Select a data item from the message list in the loaded physical value/symbol definition file (.sbl).

Comparison condition

Reference Values (a and b)

**Detected Point Number and Zoom Position (Pattern No. /Z1 Position or Z2 Position)**

1. Execute a search. Check that a location matching the search conditions is found.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the detected point number (Pattern No.) and zoom position (Z1 Position or Z2 Position).
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between detected point number (Pattern No.) and zoom position (Z1 Position or Z2 Position).

**Jog shuttle setting menu**

Push :Toggle  
Pattern No. — Detected point number  
Z1 Position — Zoom position  
0.00div

## 12.3 Analyzing and Searching CAN FD Bus Signals (Option)

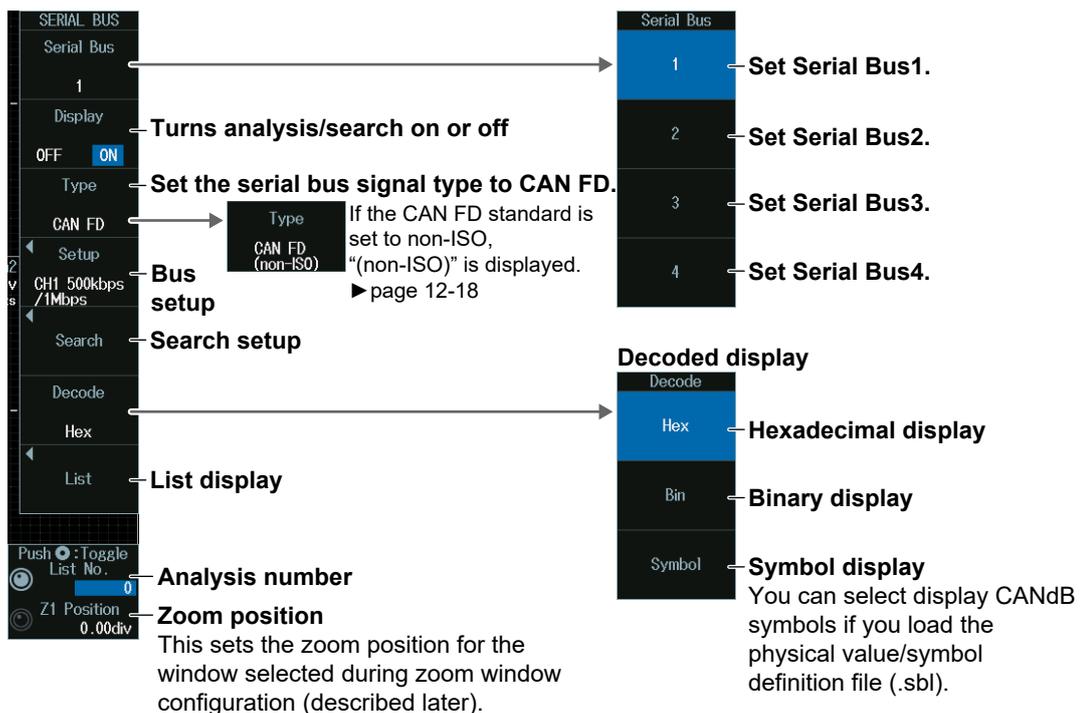
This section explains the following settings for analyzing or searching CAN FD bus signals:

- Turning analysis and search displays on or off
- Serial bus signal types
- Bus setup
  - Auto setup, analysis/search source waveform, bit rate, sample point, data phase bit rate, data phase sample point, recessive level, CAN FD standard, level and hysteresis for detecting analysis/search source waveform states
- Decoded display
- List display
  - List size, display position, zoom linking, filter (list display filtering)
- Analysis number
- Zoom position
- Search settings
  - Jumping to a specified field, zoom window, search type, and search execution

▶ “Analyzing and Searching Serial Bus Signals,”  
“Analyzing and Searching CAN FD Bus Signals (Option)” in the Features Guide

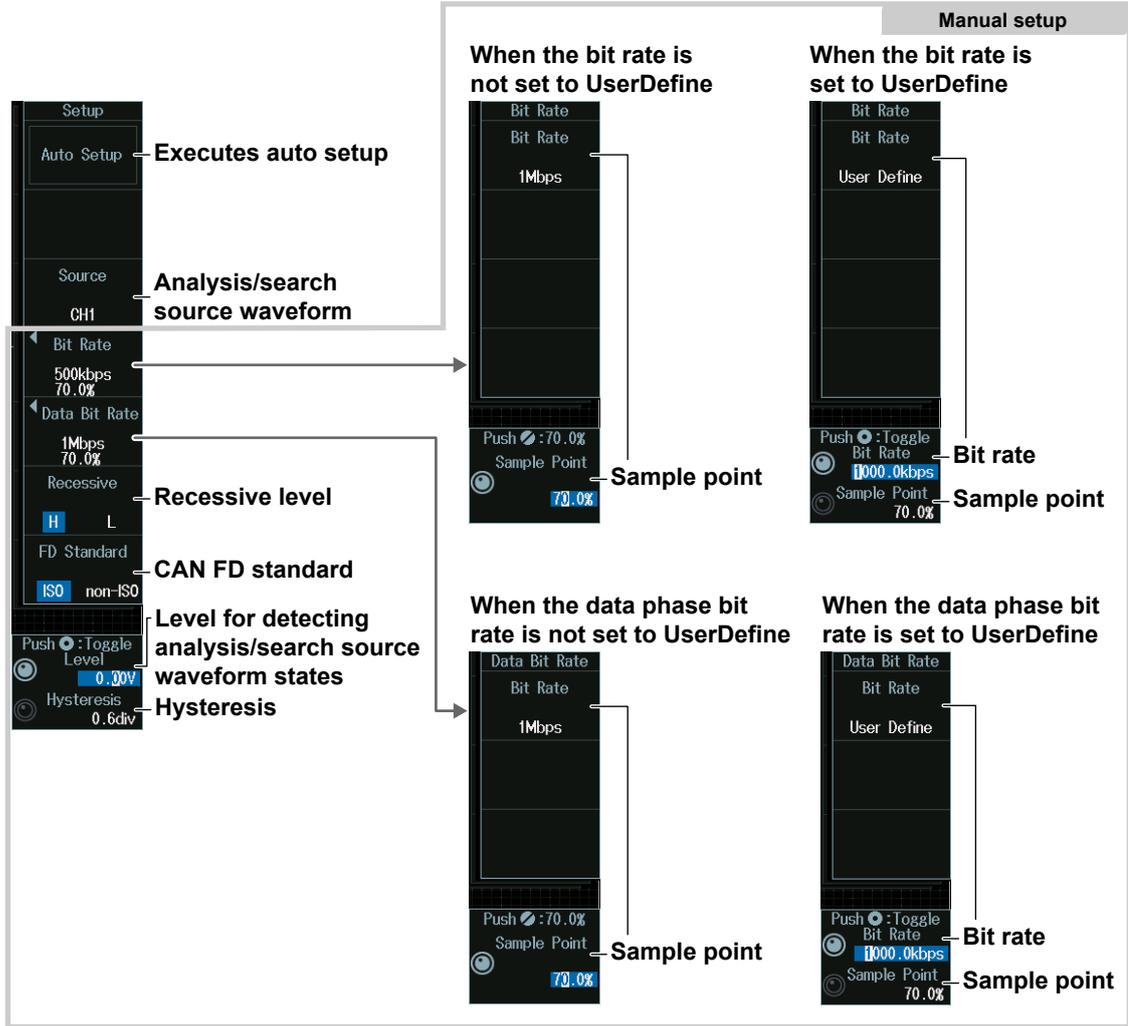
### SERIAL BUS CAN FD Menu

1. Press **SHIFT+SEARCH** (SERIAL BUS) to display the SERIAL BUS menu.
  - You can also tap **MENU** (MENU) in the upper left of the screen and select the SERIAL BUS menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
  - You can also press **ANALYSIS** and then the **To SERIAL BUS** soft key to display the SERIAL BUS menu.
  - The instrument can analyze and search up to four serial bus signals. To switch to the setup menu, press the Serial Bus soft key and select a number from 1 to 4.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. From the setup menu that appears, select **CAN FD** to display the following menu.



### Bus Setup (Setup)

Press the **Setup** soft key to display the following menu.



### Executing Auto Setup (Auto Setup)

1. Set the analysis/search source waveform and the CAN FD standard. Auto setup cannot be performed when the source is set to Math1 to Math8.
2. Press the **Auto Setup** soft key to execute auto setup.
  - The instrument automatically sets the bit rate, sample point, data phase bit rate, data phase sample point, recessive level, level, and hysteresis and triggers on the start of frame (SOF) of the CAN FD bus signal.
  - While the serial bus is being configured, Auto Setup changes to Abort. If you want to stop, press the **Abort** soft key.

### Note

- The auto setup feature will not work properly on some input signals.
- The available source waveforms vary depending on the model.
  - The available settings on 8ch models are as follows: CH1 to CH8, Math1 to Math8
  - The available settings on 4ch models are as follows: CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math4

### Manual Setup

After running auto setup, you can change the following settings and display decoded results.

- Bit rate
- Sample point
- Data phase bit rate
- Data phase sample point
- Recessive level
- CAN FD Standard
- Level for detecting analysis/search source waveform states
- Hysteresis

### Level for Detecting Analysis/Search Source Waveform States (Level/Hysteresis)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level or hysteresis.

- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
- To set the level, you can drag the level display line on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between level and hysteresis.

### List Display (List)

1. Press the **Display** soft key, and turn on the analysis and search displays.
2. Press the **List** soft key and then the **Show List** soft key.
  - The list of analysis results and the next menu appear.
  - If several display settings of Serial Bus 1 to 4 are on, all the lists of analysis results of the serial buses whose display setting is on are displayed. For details, see section 12.11.

#### List of analysis results

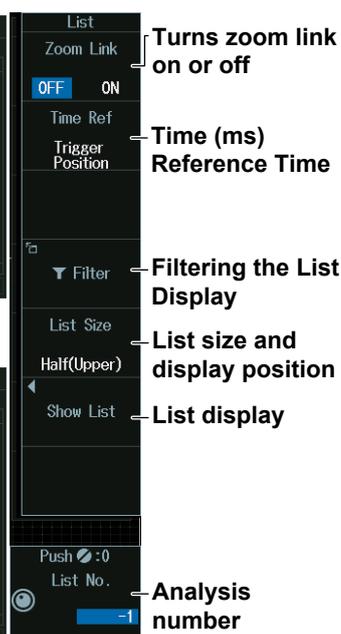
##### When the CAN FD standard is set to ISO

No.	Time(ms)	Frame	ID	DLC	Data	SC	CRC	Ack	Information
-1	-0.565275	FD Data	555	4	55 AA C3 0F	F		Y	CRC Error(SC),Fixed Stuff Error
0	-0.001277	FD Data	2AA	4	AA 55 3C F0	C		Y	CRC Error(SC),Fixed Stuff Error
1	0.562722	FD Data	000	4	00 00 00 00	7		Y	CRC Error(SC),Fixed Stuff Error

##### Analysis number

##### When the CAN FD standard is set to non-ISO

No.	Time(ms)	Frame	ID	DLC	Data	CRC	Ack	Information
-1	-0.653274	Data	100	3	FF 01 A4	6C5E	Y	
0	-0.001275	FD Data	555	4	55 AA C3 0F	1F13B	Y	
1	0.562723	FD Data	2AA	4	AA 55 3C F0	18164	Y	



**Note**

**Analysis Number**

Data before the trigger position (on the left side of the waveform display) is assigned analysis numbers in descending order (-1, -2, and so on). Data after the trigger position (on the right side of the waveform display) is assigned analysis numbers in ascending order (0, 1, 2, and so on).

**Time (ms) Reference Time**

Press the **Time Ref** soft key to select **Trigger Position** or **Previous Row**.

**Time (ms) Reference Time**

Select the reference for determining the time to the start of the frame to be analyzed.

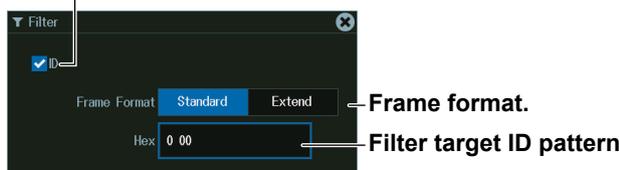
Trigger Position: The reference time is set to the trigger point.

Previous Row: The reference time is set to the start position (SOF) of the frame previous to the frame to be analyzed.

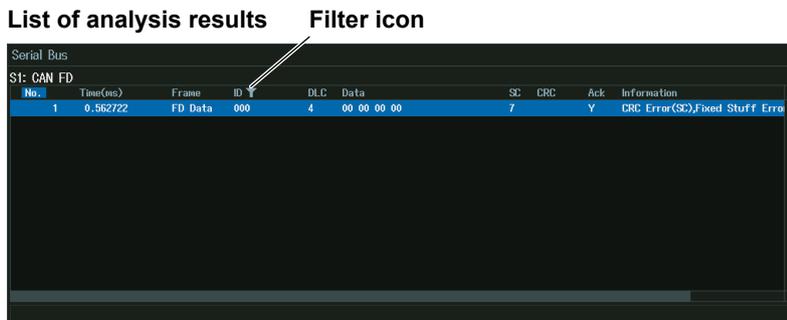
**Filtering the List Display**

1. Press the  **Filter** soft key to display the following screen.

Select this check box to enable the list display filter.



2. Set the hexadecimal value of the ID to search for. Only the frames that contain the filter target ID pattern are listed.



**Analysis Number (List No.)**

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the analysis number (List No.).

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

**Jog shuttle setting menu**



### Search Setup (Search)

Press the **Search** soft key to display the following menu.

**Jump to the specified field**

- Field Jump
- SOF — **SOF Field**
- ID — **ID Field**
- Control Field — **Control Field**
- Data Field — **Data Field**
- CRC — **CRC**
- ACK — **ACK**

**Zoom window**  
You can configure zoom windows Zoom1 and Zoom2 when they are displayed. Zoom1 is automatically displayed during the automatic setup of the analysis settings.

**Search Type**

**Executes the search**  
The instrument searches for the search conditions. If the instrument finds points that match the search conditions (detected points), it shows numbers (0, 1, 2, etc.) from the left of the waveform display in the order that the points were detected.

**Detected point number**  
No Match

**Zoom position**  
Z1 Position 0.00div

### Search Type (Mode)

#### SOF Mode (Start of Frame)

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **SOF** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument searches for the start position of CAN FD bus signal frames.

**Set the search type to SOF**

Search

- Field Jump
- Result Window
- Zoom1
- Mode
- SOF
- Search

Push : Toggle  
Pattern No.  
No Match

Z1 Position  
0.00div

### Error Mode (Error)

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Error** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument searches for error frames (when the error flag is active) or various errors.

**When FD Standard is set to ISO**

- Error Type OR**
- Error Frame**  OFF  ON — Turns error frame detection on or off. When an active error flag is detected
- Stuff**  OFF  ON — Turns stuff error detection on or off. When stuff bits are not inserted properly
- Fixed Stuff**  OFF  ON — Turns fixed stuff error detection on or off. When fixed CRC stuff bits are not inserted properly
- CRC**  OFF  ON — Turns CRC error detection on or off. When a CRC error is detected. When the specified error factor is detected if the CAN FD standard (FD Standard) is set to ISO
- CRC Error Factor**  OFF  ON

**When FD Standard is set to non-ISO**

- Error Type OR**
- Error Frame**  OFF  ON
- Stuff**  OFF  ON
- Fixed Stuff**  OFF  ON
- CRC**  OFF  ON

**CRC Error Factor**

- Stuff Count
- CRC Sequence

Select the check boxes for the CRC error factors to detect. CRC errors are not detected if both check boxes are cleared.

(When CRC is set to ON)

**Set the trigger mode to Error.**

**Error trigger conditions**

### ID/Data Mode (ID/Data)

1. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **ID/Data** soft key.
2. Press the **Condition Setup** soft key to display the following menu.  
The instrument searches for the position where the AND condition of the SOF, ID, Frame type (Remote Frame/Data Frame), Data and ACK Mode is met.

• **When ID Input Format Is Pattern**

**Set the search type to ID/Data.**  
**When the data frame comparison condition is True or False**

**SOE (always selected)**

**Frame format**

Frame Format: Standard | Extend

SOF:

ID:

Input Format: Pattern | Message

Hex: X XX

Bin: XXX XXXX XXXX

Remote Frame:

Data Frame:

Size: 8 byte | Position: 0 byte

Condition: True

Hex: XX XX XX XX XX XX XX XX

Bin: XXXX XXXX XXXX XXXX XXXX XXXX XXXX XXXX

ACK Mode:  ACK

**Set the ID input format to Pattern.**

**Bit pattern of ID**  
(If you select Extend for the frame format, 29 bits are displayed here)

**Set the search source frame.**

**Comparison size**

**Comparison start position**

**Comparison condition**

**Data Pattern**

**ACK slot state**

Set the value of up to eight consecutive bytes of data from Data 0 to Data 63 as a search condition

When the data frame condition is Data = a; Data ≠ a; a ≤ Data; Data ≤ b; a ≤ Data ≤ b; or Data < a, b < Data

**SOE (always selected)** **Frame format**

Frame Format: Standard | Extend

SOF:

ID:

Input Format: Pattern | Message

Hex: X XX

Bin: XXX XXXX XXXX

Remote Frame:

Data Frame:

Size: 8 byte | Position: 0 byte

Condition: a ≤ Data ≤ b

a: 0

b: 255

MSB: 7

LSB: 0

Endian: Big | Little

Sign: Sign | Unsign

ACK Mode:  ACK

**Set the ID input format to Pattern.**

**Bit pattern of ID**  
(If you select Extend for the frame format, 29 bits are displayed here)

**Set the search source frame**

**Comparison size**

**Comparison start position**

**Comparison condition**

**Reference Values (a and b)**

**Bit positions of the most significant bit (MSB) and the least significant bit (LSB) in the data to be compared**

**Whether to use a signed (Sign) or unsigned (Unsign) data format**

**Byte order**

Set the value of up to eight consecutive bytes of data from Data 0 to Data 63 as a search condition

## 12.3 Analyzing and Searching CAN FD Bus Signals (Option)

- When ID Input Format Is Message

**Set the search type to ID/Data.**

**Set the ID input format to Message.**

**SOF (always selected)**

**Select an ID from the message list in the physical value/symbol definition file (.sbl) loaded in advance using the file load feature (see section 17.7). Edit physical value/symbol definition files on your PC using the dedicated software (Symbol Editor).**

**Select a data item from the message list in the loaded physical value/symbol definition file (.sbl).**

**Comparison condition**

**Reference Values (a and b)**

The screenshot shows the 'CAN FD ID/Data Condition Setup' window. The 'Input Format' is set to 'Message'. The 'Signal' checkbox is checked. The 'Condition' is set to 'a ≤ Data ≤ b'. The reference values are 'a: 0' and 'b: 255'. The 'SOF' checkbox is checked. The 'Search' button is at the bottom.

### FDF Mode (FDF)

1. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **FDF** soft key.
2. Press the **Condition Setup** soft key to display the following menu. Set the FDF bit state as a search condition.

**Set the search type to FDF**

**0 (CAN)**  
When the FDF bit is dominant, the instrument assumes that the frame is a CAN bus signal frame and searches for it.

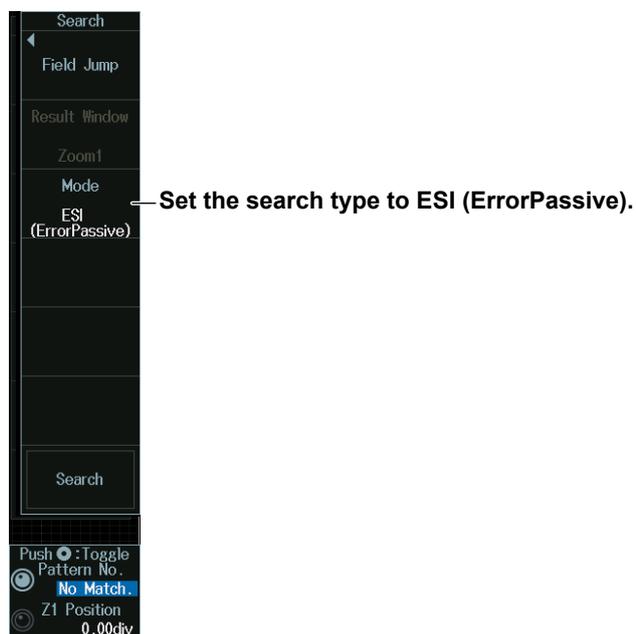
**1 (CAN FD)**  
When the FDF bit is recessive, the instrument assumes that the frame is a CAN FD bus signal frame and searches for it.

The screenshot shows the 'Condition Setup' menu. The 'Condition' is set to '0 (CAN)'. The 'Search' button is at the bottom.

## ESI Mode (ESI (Error Passive))

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **ESI (ErrorPassive)** soft key.

The instrument searches for frames whose ESI bit is recessive (error passive).



## Detected Point Number and Zoom Position (Pattern No. /Z1 Position or Z2 Position)

1. Execute a search. Check that a location matching the search conditions is found.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the detected point number (Pattern No.) and zoom position (Z1 Position or Z2 Position).
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between detected point number (Pattern No.) and zoom position (Z1 Position or Z2 Position).

### Jog shuttle setting menu



## 12.4 Analyzing and Searching LIN Bus Signals (Option)

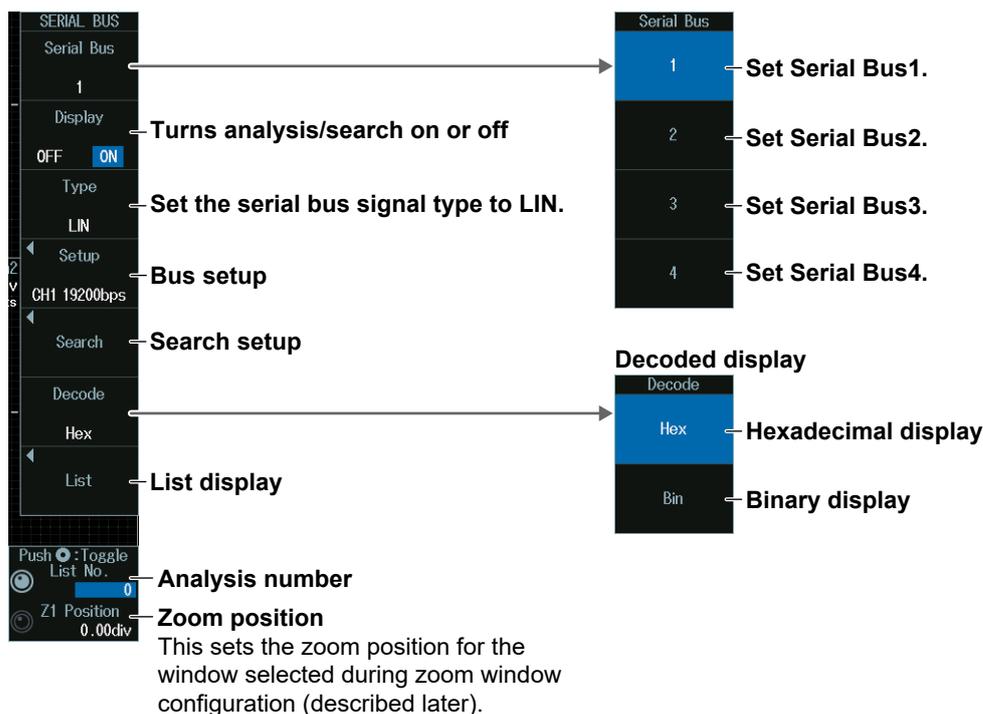
This section explains the following settings for analyzing or searching LIN bus signals:

- Turning analysis and search displays on or off
- Serial bus signal types
- Bus setup
  - Auto setup, analysis/search source waveform, bit rate, revision, sample point, level and hysteresis for detecting analysis/search source waveform states
- Decoded display
- List display
  - List size, display position, and zoom linking
- Analysis number
- Zoom position
- Search settings
  - Jumping to a specified field, zoom window, search type, and search execution

▶ [“Analyzing and Searching Serial Bus Signals,”](#)  
[“Analyzing and Searching LIN Bus Signals \(Option\)”](#) in the Features Guide

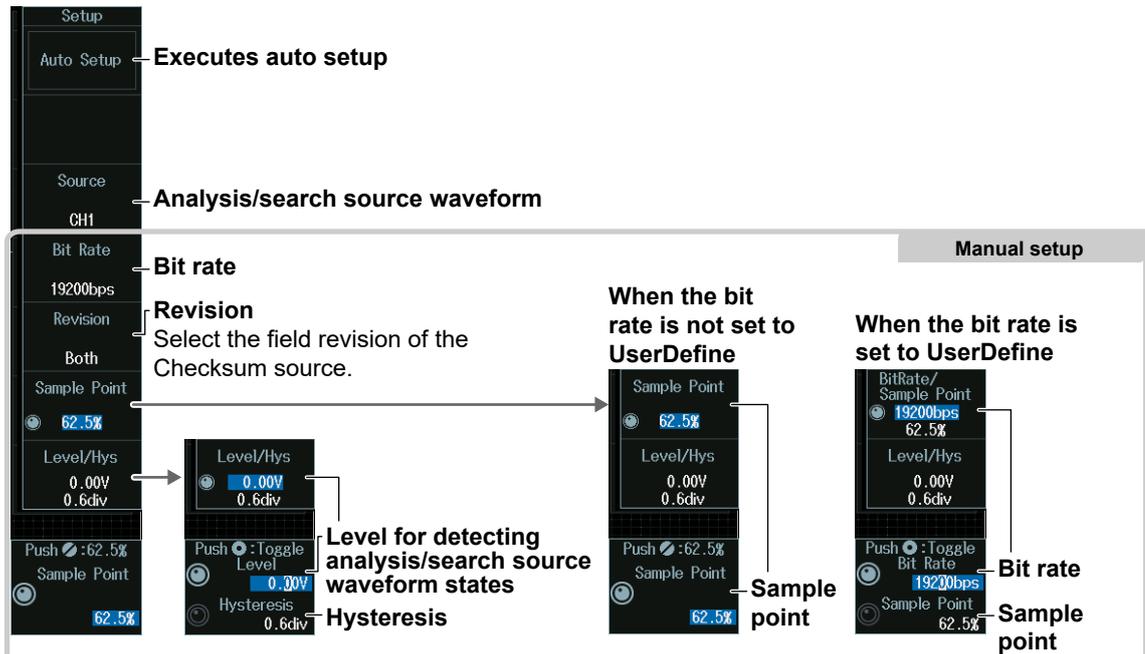
### SERIAL BUS LIN Menu

1. Press **SHIFT+SEARCH** (SERIAL BUS) to display the SERIAL BUS menu.
  - You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the SERIAL BUS menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
  - You can also press **ANALYSIS** and then the **To SERIAL BUS** soft key to display the SERIAL BUS menu.
  - The instrument can analyze and search up to four serial bus signals. To switch to the setup menu, press the Serial Bus soft key and select a number from 1 to 4.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. From the setup menu that appears, select **LIN** to display the following menu.



## Bus Setup (Setup)

Press the **Setup** soft key to display the following menu.



### Executing Auto Setup (Auto Setup)

1. Set the analysis/search source waveform.  
Auto setup cannot be performed when the source is set to Math1 to Math8.
2. Press the **Auto Setup** soft key to execute auto setup.
  - The Instrument automatically configures the bit rate, revision, sample point, level, and hysteresis and triggers on the LIN bus signal's Break Synch.
  - While the serial bus is being configured, Auto Setup changes to Abort. If you want to stop, press the **Abort** soft key.

### Note

- The auto setup feature will not work properly on some input signals.
- The available source waveforms vary depending on the model.
  - The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8, Math1 to Math8
  - The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math4

### Manual Setup

After running auto setup, you can change the following settings and display decoded results.

- Bit rate
- Revision
- Sample point
- Level for detecting analysis/search source waveform states
- Hysteresis

### Level for Detecting Analysis/Search Source Waveform States (Level/Hysteresis)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level or hysteresis.

- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
- To set the level, you can drag the level display line on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between level and hysteresis.

### List Display (List)

1. Press the **Display** soft key, and turn on the analysis and search displays.
2. Press the **List** soft key and then the **Show List** soft key.
  - The list of analysis results and the next menu appear.
  - If several display settings of Serial Bus 1 to 4 are on, all the lists of analysis results of the serial buses whose display setting is on are displayed. For details, see section 12.11.

#### List of analysis results

No.	Time(µs)	ID	ID-Field	Data	Checksum	Information
-1	33.3152	30	F0	05 02	F3	
0	2.6672	26	A6	00 00	FF	
1	28.5808	30	F0	04 02	F9	

Analysis number

List menu items:  
 Zoom Link — Turns zoom link on or off  
 List Size — List size and display position  
 Show List — List display  
 List No. — Analysis number

#### Note

##### Analysis Number

Data before the trigger position (on the left side of the waveform display) is assigned analysis numbers in descending order (-1, -2, and so on). Data after the trigger position (on the right side of the waveform display) is assigned analysis numbers in ascending order (0, 1, 2, and so on).

### Analysis Number (List No.)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the analysis number (List No.).

- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



### Search Setup (Search)

Press the **Search** soft key to display the following menu.

**Field Jump**

- Break — Break field
- Synch — Synch field
- ID — ID Field
- Data — Data field
- CheckSum — Checksum

**Zoom window**  
You can configure zoom windows Zoom1 and Zoom2 when they are displayed. Zoom1 is automatically displayed during the automatic setup of the analysis settings.

**Search Type**

**Executes the search**  
The instrument searches for the search conditions. If the instrument finds points that match the search conditions (detected points), it shows numbers (0, 1, 2, etc.) from the left of the waveform display in the order that the points were detected.

**Detected point number**

**Zoom position**

### Search Type (Mode)

#### Break Synch Mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Break Synch** soft key to display the following menu.

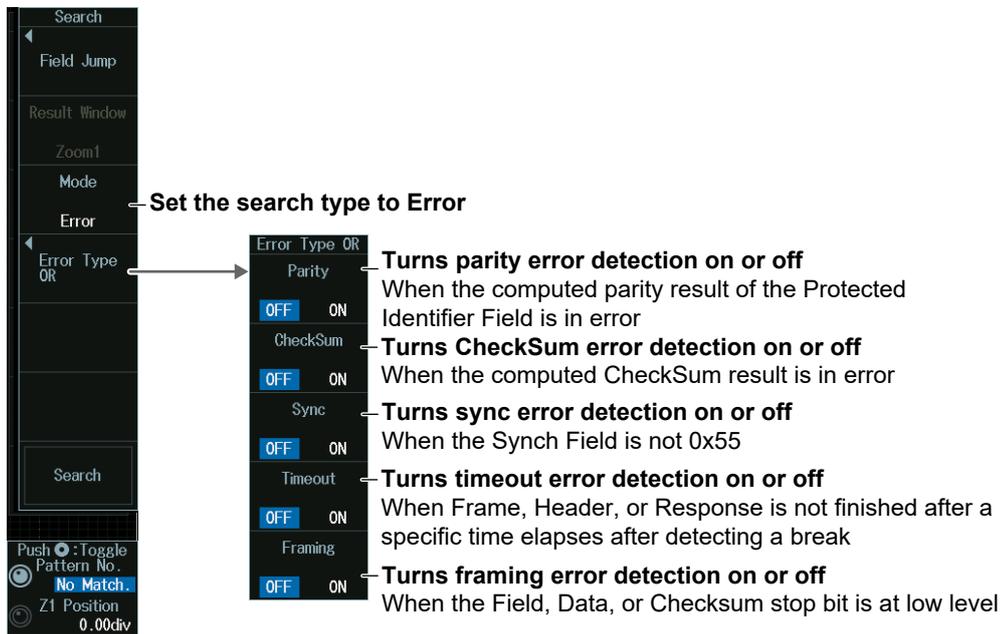
The instrument searches for a position where a break field and then a synch field (Break Field + Synch Field) is detected.

**Set the search mode to Break Synch.**

### Error Mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Error** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument searches for errors.





## 12.5 Analyzing and Searching CXPI Bus Signals (Option)

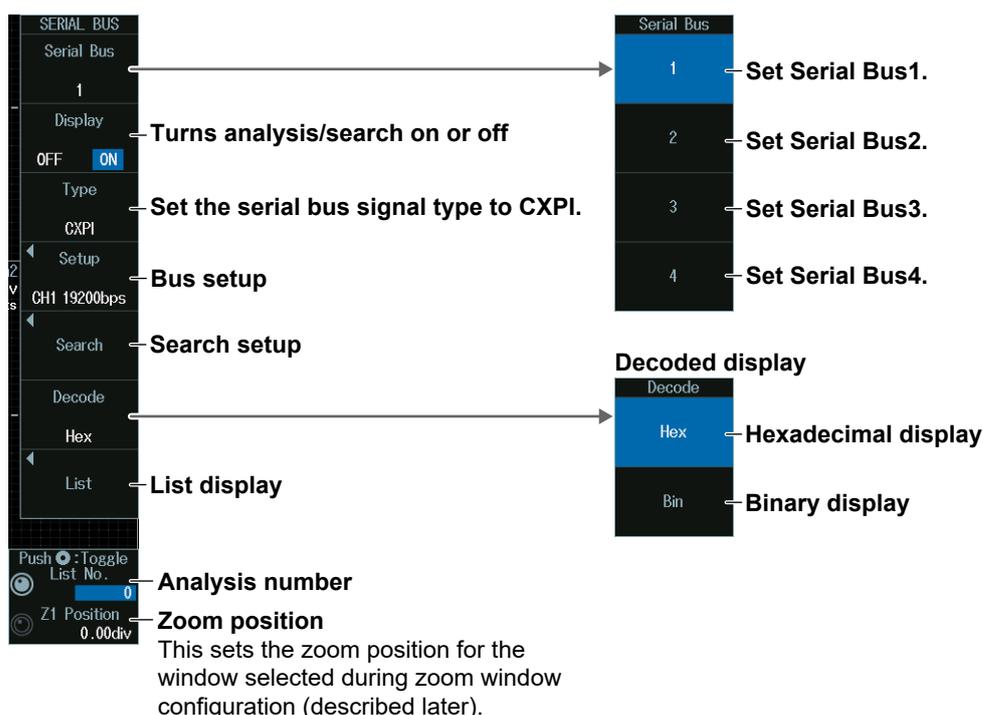
This section explains the following settings for analyzing or searching CXPI bus signals:

- Turning analysis and search displays on or off
- Serial bus signal types
- Bus setup
  - Auto setup, analysis/search source waveform, bit rate, T Sample, clock tolerance, counter error detection, level and hysteresis for detecting analysis/search source waveform states
- Decoded display
- List display
  - List size, display position, and zoom linking
- Analysis number
- Zoom position
- Search settings
  - Jumping to a specified field, zoom window, search type, and search execution

▶ [“Analyzing and Searching Serial Bus Signals,”](#)  
[“Analyzing and Searching CXPI Bus Signals \(Option\)”](#) in the Features Guide

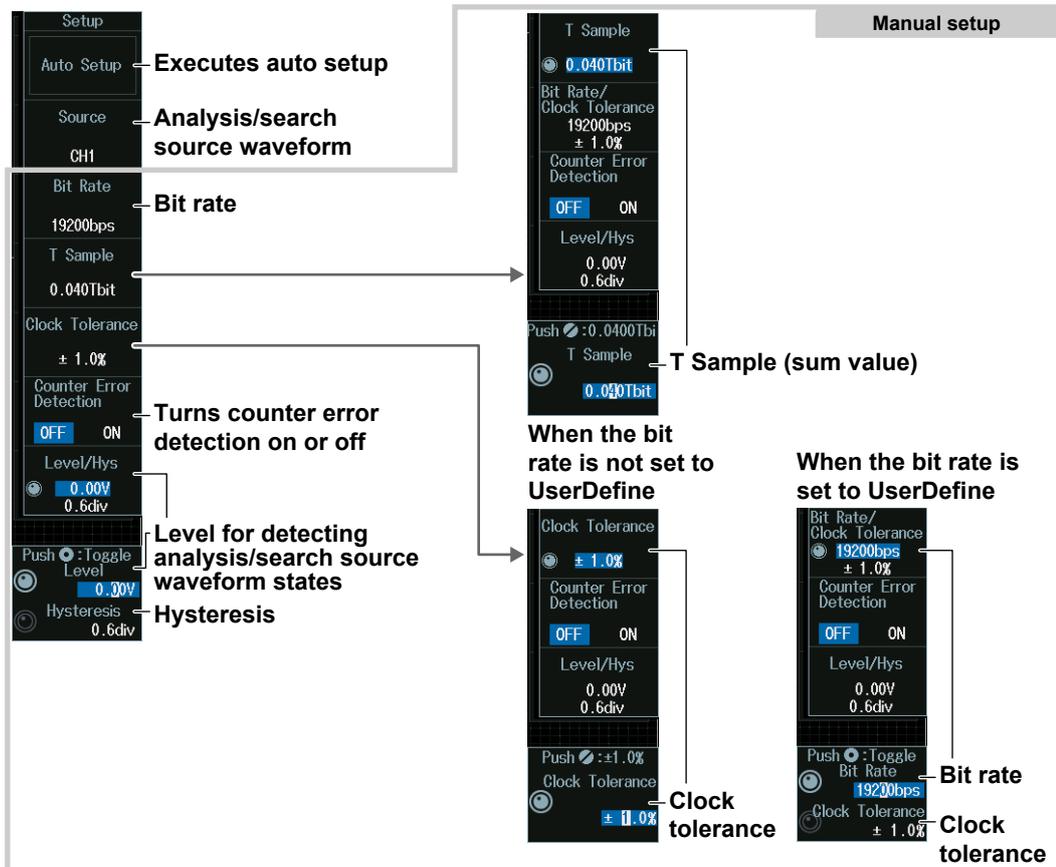
### SERIAL BUS CXPI Menu

1. Press **SHIFT+SEARCH** (SERIAL BUS) to display the SERIAL BUS menu.
  - You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the SERIAL BUS menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
  - You can also press **ANALYSIS** and then the **To SERIAL BUS** soft key to display the SERIAL BUS menu.
  - The instrument can analyze and search up to four serial bus signals. To switch to the setup menu, press the Serial Bus soft key and select a number from 1 to 4.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. From the setup menu that appears, select **CXPI** to display the following menu.



## Bus Setup (Setup)

Press the **Setup** soft key to display the following menu.



### Executing Auto Setup (Auto Setup)

1. Set the analysis/search source waveform.  
Auto setup cannot be performed when the source is set to Math1 to Math8.
2. Press the **Auto Setup** soft key to execute auto setup.
  - The instrument automatically sets the bit rate, level, and hysteresis and triggers on the start position (SOF) of the CXPI bus signal.
  - While the serial bus is being configured, Auto Setup changes to Abort. If you want to stop, press the **Abort** soft key.

### Note

- The auto setup feature will not work properly on some input signals.
- The available source waveforms vary depending on the model.
- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8, Math1 to Math8
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math4

### Manual Setup

After running auto setup, you can change the following settings and display decoded results.

- Bit rate
- T Sample
- Clock tolerance
- Counter error detection
- Level for detecting analysis/search source waveform states
- Hysteresis

### Sum Value (T Sample)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the sum value.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



### Clock Tolerance (Clock Tolerance) and Bit Rate (Bit Rate)

#### When the bit rate is not set to User Define

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the clock tolerance.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



#### When the bit rate is set to User Define

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the bit rate or clock tolerance.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between bit rate and clock tolerance.

## Level for Detecting Analysis/Search Source Waveform States (Level/Hysteresis)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level or hysteresis.

- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
- To set the level, you can drag the level display line on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between level and hysteresis.

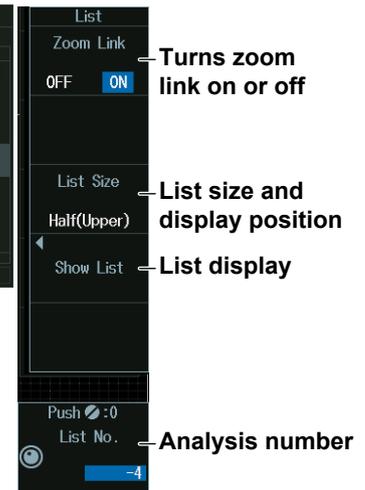
## List Display (List)

- Press the **Display** soft key, and turn on the analysis and search displays.
- Press the **List** soft key and then the **Show List** soft key.
  - The list of analysis results and the next menu appear.
  - If several display settings of Serial Bus 1 to 4 are on, all the lists of analysis results of the serial buses whose display setting is on are displayed. For details, see section 12.11.

### List of analysis results

No.	Time (sec)	ID	BLD	M/S	CI	Data	CRC	Information
-4	-35.7296	10	4	01	3	18 30 E7 CF	61	
-3	-29.9516	5E	L16	00	3	0E EA A0 0E F1 15 5F F1 0E EA A0 0E F1 15 5F F1	9044	
-2	-13.6476	01	2	00	0	5A 56	63	
-1	-9.2200	POB	8	11	0	83 5C 7C A3 8A 0F 75 F0	9F	
0	-0.0520	10	4	01	0	3F 35 C0 CA	38	
1	5.7300	5E	L16	00	0	50 07 75 10 AF F8 8A EF 50 07 75 10 AF F8 8A EF	7630	
2	22.0340	01	2	00	1	79 5E	A2	
3	26.4616	POB	8	11	1	36 54 C9 AB 5E 11 A1 EE	52	
4	35.6296	10	4	01	1	09 3A F6 C5	80	
5	41.4116	5E	L16	00	1	92 24 49 12 6D DB B6 ED 92 24 49 12 C8 08 08 C8	AF15	

Analysis number



## Note

### Analysis Number

Data before the trigger position (on the left side of the waveform display) is assigned analysis numbers in descending order (-1, -2, and so on). Data after the trigger position (on the right side of the waveform display) is assigned analysis numbers in ascending order (0, 1, 2, and so on).

## Analysis Number (List No.)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the analysis number (List No.).

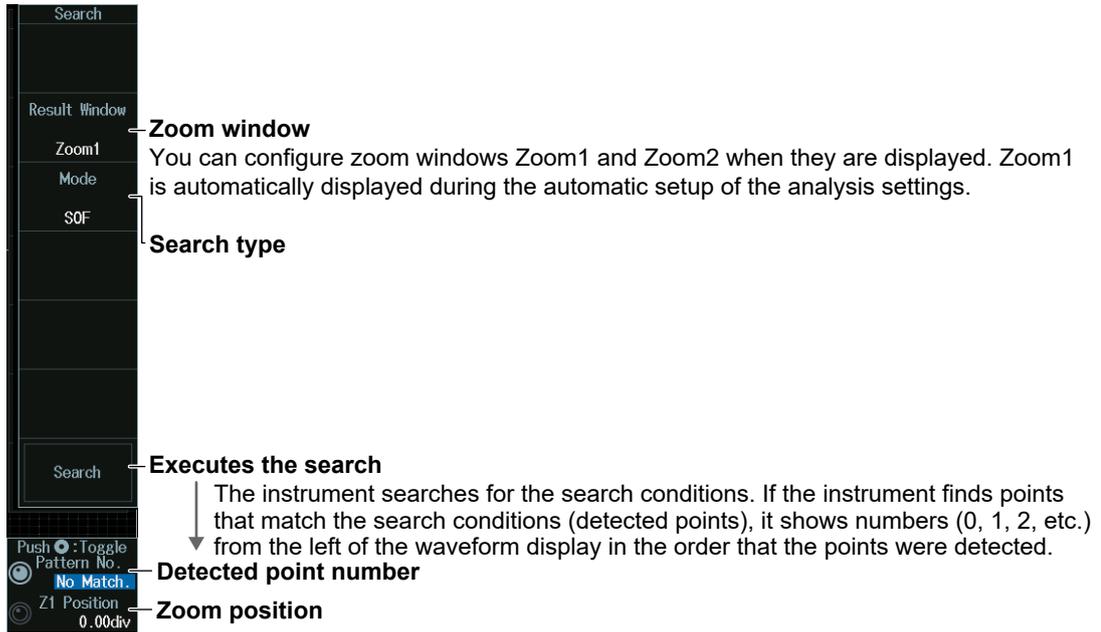
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu



### Search Setup (Search)

Press the **Search** soft key to display the following menu.

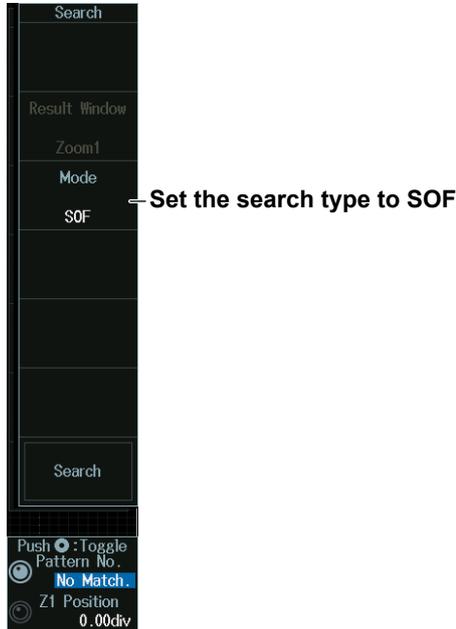


### Search Type (Mode)

#### SOF Mode (Start of Frame)

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **SOF** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument searches for the start position of CXPI bus signal frames.



### Error Mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Error** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument searches for various errors.

#### Zoom window

You can configure zoom windows Zoom1 and Zoom2 when they are displayed. Zoom1 is automatically displayed during the automatic setup of the analysis settings.

#### Set the search type to Error

The screenshot shows the 'Error Type OR' menu with the following options:

- Parity**: OFF ON. Turns parity error detection on or off. When a parity error is detected.
- CRC**: OFF ON. Turns CRC error detection on or off. When a CRC error is detected.
- Data Length**: OFF ON. Turns data length error detection on or off. When the DLC value and the number of data pieces in the data field (data length) do not match.
- Framing**: OFF ON. Turns framing error detection on or off. When the logical value of the stop bit of a field or the stop bit of data is 0.
- IBS**: OFF ON. Turns IBS error detection on or off. When the number of IBS bits is 10 or more.
- Counter**: OFF ON. Turns counter error detection on or off. (Can be set when the counter error detection is set to on).
- Clock**: OFF ON. Turns clock error detection on or off. When the clock width exceeds the specified tolerance.

The main menu on the left shows the navigation path: Search → Result Window → Zoom1 → Mode → Error → Error Type OR.

### PTYPE Mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **PTYPE** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument searches for the PTYPE of the CXPI bus signal.

The screenshot shows the 'Condition' menu with the following options:

- Every PTYPE**: Searches for all PTYPEs.
- No Response**: Searches for positions where a PID is not detected after PTYPE.

The main menu on the left shows the navigation path: Search → Result Window → Zoom1 → Mode → PTYPE → Condition.



### Wakeup/Sleep Mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Wakeup/Sleep** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument searches for wakeup pulses, wakeup states, sleep frames, or sleep states.

**Zoom window**  
You can configure zoom windows Zoom1 and Zoom2 when they are displayed. Zoom1 is automatically displayed during the automatic setup of the analysis settings.

**Set the search type to Wakeup/Sleep**

- W/S Type OR** Turns wakeup pulse search on or off  
Searches for pulses in the dominant period between 250  $\mu$ s and 2500  $\mu$ s
- Wakeup** Turns wakeup search on or off  
Searches for transitions from a state in which there is no clock after a sleep detection to a state in which there is a clock
- Sleep Frame** Turns sleep frame search on or off  
When the sleep frame ID value is 1F (hexadecimal)
- Sleep** Turns sleep search on or off  
When 5 ms elapses after a transition is made from a state in which there is a clock to a state in which there is no clock

Push  $\odot$ : Toggle Pattern No. No Match.  
Z1 Position 0.00div

### Detected Point Number and Zoom Position (Pattern No. /Z1 Position or Z2 Position)

1. Execute a search. Check that a location matching the search conditions is found.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the detected point number (Pattern No.) and zoom position (Z1 Position or Z2 Position).
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between detected point number (Pattern No.) and zoom position (Z1 Position or Z2 Position).

#### Jog shuttle setting menu

Push  $\odot$ : Toggle Pattern No. No Match.  
Z1 Position 0.00div

- Detected point number**
- Zoom position**

## 12.6 Analyzing and Searching SENT Signals (Option)

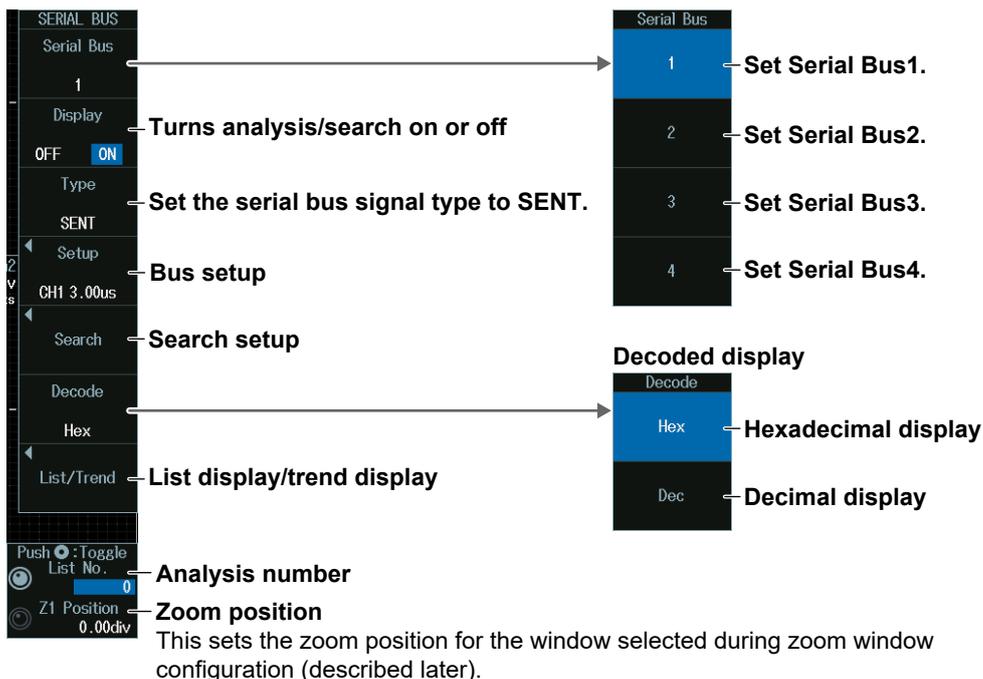
This section explains the following settings for analyzing or searching SENT signals:

- Turning analysis and search displays on or off
- Serial bus signal types
- Bus setup
  - Auto setup, analysis/search source waveform, format, display channel, fast channel data type, slow channel message type, level and hysteresis for detecting analysis/search source waveform states
- Decoded display
- List display
  - List size, display position, and zoom linking
- Trend Display
  - Display source, User Data, display settings, cursor measurement on/off, message ID
- Analysis number
- Zoom position
- Search settings
  - Zoom window, search type, and search execution

▶ [“Analyzing and Searching Serial Bus Signals,”](#)  
[“Analyzing and Searching SENT Signals \(Option\)”](#) in the Features Guide

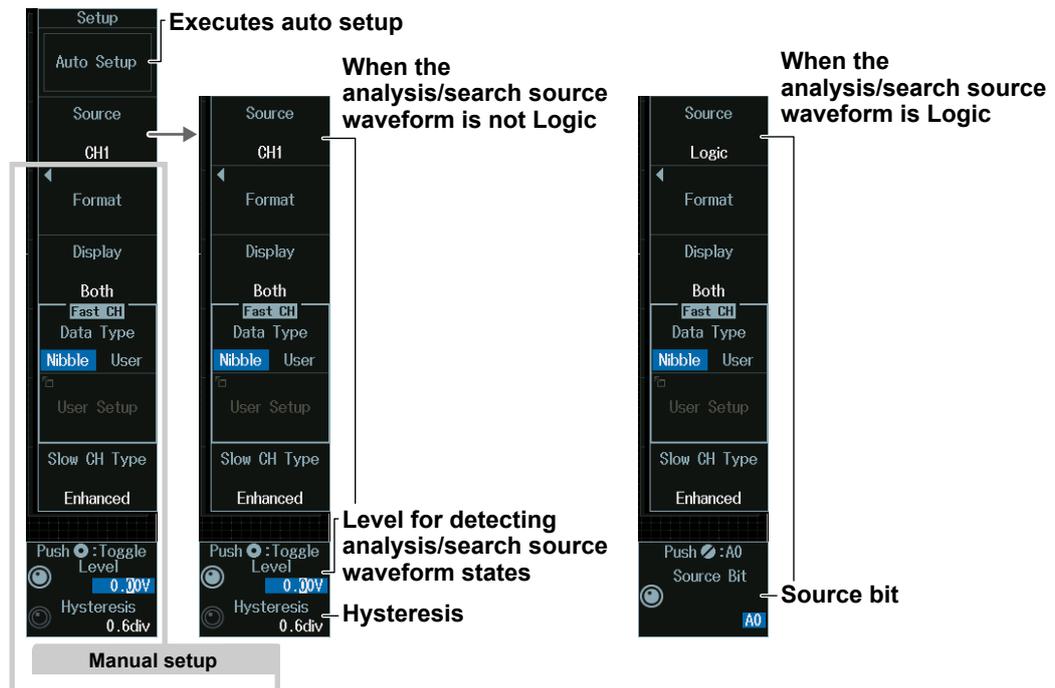
### SERIAL BUS SENT Menu

1. Press **SHIFT+SEARCH** (SERIAL BUS) to display the SERIAL BUS menu.
  - You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the SERIAL BUS menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
  - You can also press **ANALYSIS** and then the **To SERIAL BUS** soft key to display the SERIAL BUS menu.
  - The instrument can analyze and search up to four serial bus signals. To switch to the setup menu, press the Serial Bus soft key and select a number from 1 to 4.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. From the setup menu that appears, select **SENT** to display the following menu.



## Bus Setup (Setup)

Press the **Setup** soft key to display the following menu.



### Executing Auto Setup (Auto Setup)

1. Set the analysis/search source waveform.
2. If you set the trigger source to Logic, set the source bit.
3. Press the **Auto Setup** soft key to execute auto setup.
  - The instrument automatically sets the format, level, and hysteresis and then triggers at the end of S&C of the fast channel.
  - While the serial bus is being configured, Auto Setup changes to Abort. If you want to stop, press the **Abort** soft key.

### Note

- The auto setup feature will not work properly on some input signals.
- You cannot use auto setup under the following circumstances.
  - When the Analysis/Search Source Waveform Is Math1 to Math8
  - When state display is applied to a LOGIC bit that is set as the analysis/search source waveform.
- The available source waveforms vary depending on the model.
  - The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8, Logic, Math1 to Math8
  - The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4, Logic, Math1 to Math4

### Source Bit

The following source bit display applies to models with the /L32 option.  
C0 to C7 (LOGIC port C), D0 to D7 (LOGIC port D)

## 12.6 Analyzing and Searching SENT Signals (Option)

### Level for Detecting Analysis/Search Source Waveform States (Level/Hysteresis)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level or hysteresis.

- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
- To set the level, you can drag the level display line on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



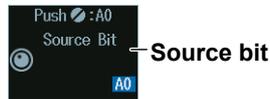
Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between level and hysteresis.

### Source Bit (Source Bit)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the source bit.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the pop-up menu that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



## Manual Setup

Manually set the format, data type, and so on.

Setup  
Auto Setup  
Source — Analysis/search source waveform  
CH1  
Format — Format ▶ section 2.18  
Display — Display channel  
Both — Data type  
Fast CH  
Data Type — Data type  
Nibble User — When the data type is User  
User Setup  
Slow CH Type  
Enhanced  
Push : Toggle Level  
Level 0.30V  
Hysteresis 0.6div

When the version is other than APR2016

	Size	Order
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Data1	12	Big Little
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Data2	12	Big Little
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Data3	0	Big Little
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Data4	0	Big Little

Nibble order  
Data size <sup>1</sup>

Select the check boxes for the items that you want to use as comparison conditions.

When the version is APR2016

	Size	Order
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Multiplexing		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Data1(FC)	4	Big Little
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Data2	12	Big Little
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Data3	0	Big Little
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Data4	0	Big Little

Select this check box in the case of a multiplexed signal<sup>2</sup>

**Slow channel message type**  
(Can be set when the format version is APR2016 or JAN2010 ▶ section 2.18)

- The total number of bits for Data1 to Data4 is up to 24. If you try to exceed the total number of bits, the data size of other pieces of Data is reduced.
- When the check box for Multiplexing is selected, the Size of Data1 is fixed to 4 to correspond to FC.

## List Display (List/Trend\_List)(List/Trend\_List)

1. Press the **Display** soft key, and turn on the analysis and search displays.
2. Press the **List/Trend** soft key and then the **Show List** soft key.
  - The list of analysis results and the next menu appear.
  - If several display settings of Serial Bus 1 to 4 are on, all the lists of analysis results of the serial buses whose display setting is on are displayed. For details, see section 12.11.

### List of analysis results

No.	Time(ms)	Sync(us)	Tick(us)	SBC	Data	CRC	Length(tick)	Information	SlowCH
-2	-1.943992	168.00	3.00	0000	9 6 8 E 0 6	3	284.00		
-1	-1.091992	168.00	3.00	0000	9 5 C E 1 6	3	284.01		
0	-0.239996	168.00	3.00	1100	9 5 0 E 2 6	F	284.01		
1	0.612000	168.00	3.00	1100	9 4 8 E 3 6	4	284.00		
2	1.463996	168.00	3.00	1000	9 3 C E 4 6	A	284.00		
3	2.315992	168.00	3.00				56.00		

**Analysis number** (points to the 'No.' column in the table)

**List/Trend** menu options:

- Zoom Link: OFF  ON → Turns zoom link on or off
- List Size: Half(Upper) → List size and display position
- Show List → List display
- Trend → See the next page.
- Push :0
- List No.: 0 → Analysis number

### Note

#### Analysis Number

Data before the trigger position (on the left side of the waveform display) is assigned analysis numbers in descending order (-1, -2, and so on). Data after the trigger position (on the right side of the waveform display) is assigned analysis numbers in ascending order (0, 1, 2, and so on).

### Analysis Number (List No.)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the analysis number (List No.).

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu

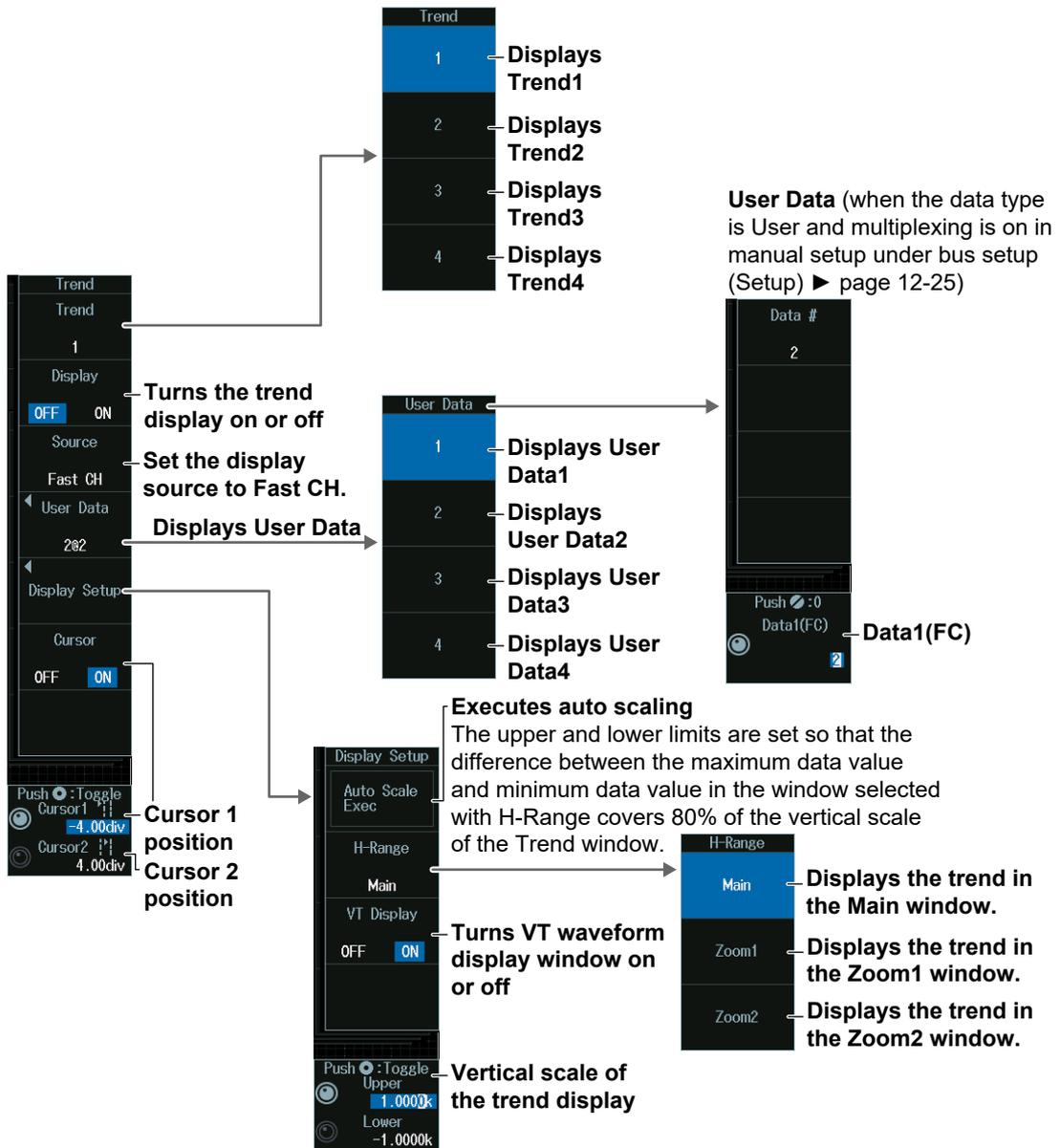
**Analysis number** (points to the 'List No.' field)

### Trend Display (List/Trend\_Trend)

1. Press the **Display** soft key, and turn on the analysis and search displays.
2. Press the **List/Trend** soft key and then the **Trend** soft key.
  - Up to four trends can be displayed. To switch to the setup menu, press the **Trend** soft key and select a number from 1 to 4.

### When the Display Source Is Set to Fast Channel

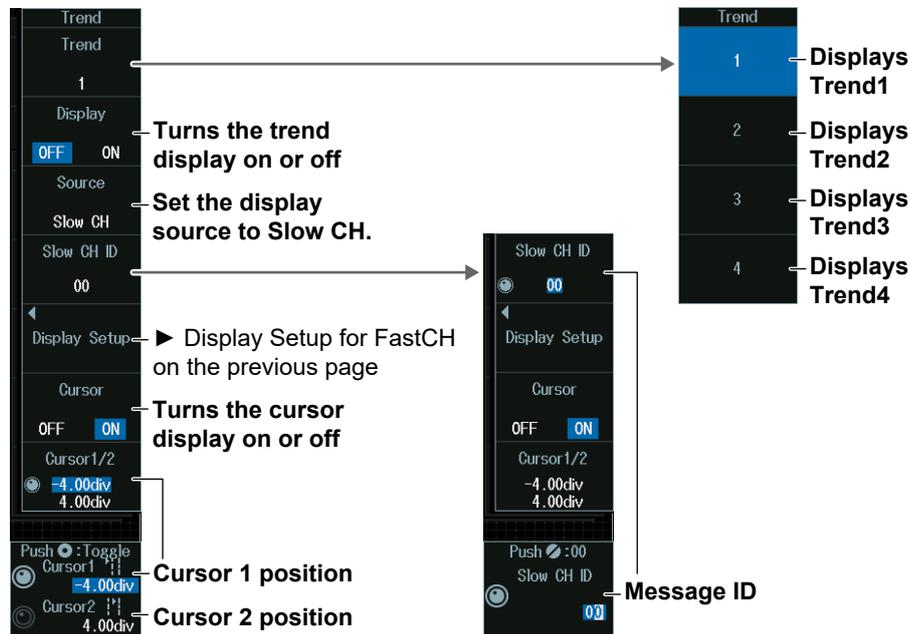
Press the **Source** soft key and then the **Fast CH** soft key to display the following menu. Up to four trends can be displayed. To switch to the setup menu, press the **Trend** soft key and select a number from 1 to 4.



### When the Display Source Is Set to Slow Channel

Press the **Source** soft key and then the **Slow CH** soft key to display the following menu.

Up to four trends can be displayed. To switch to the setup menu, press the **Trend** soft key and select a number from 1 to 4.



### Cursor Positions (Cursor1/Cursor2)

1. Press the **Cursor1/2** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set cursor 1 (Cursor1) or cursor 2 (Cursor2).
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between cursor 1 and cursor 2.
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



### Note

#### Setting the Cursor Positions

If you press SET several times and make the jog shuttle control both cursor 1 and cursor 2, you can move them together.

When you move the two cursors together, the cursors no longer move when one of the cursors reaches the edge of the screen.

### Message ID (Slow CH ID)

1. Press the **Slow CH ID** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the message ID (Slow CH ID).  
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



Message ID

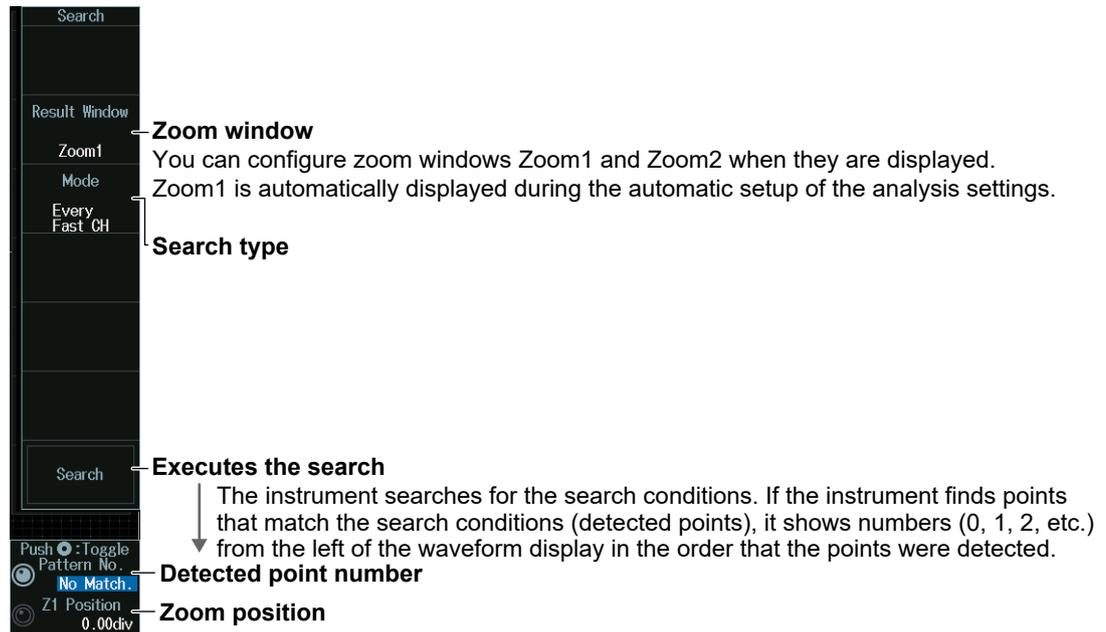
### Message ID (Slow CH ID)

Set the message ID of the data you want to display the trend of. The selectable ID range varies depending on the decode display setting in the SERIAL BUS\_SENT Menu (page 12-23), format version in the bus setup (Setup) (page 12-24), and the slow channel message type.

Version	FEB2008 and older		—	
	APR2016, JAN2010			
Slow channel message type	Short		Enhanced	
Decode display setting	Hex	Dec	Hex	Dec
Range	0 to F	0 to 15	00 to FF	0 to 255

## Search Setup (Search)

Press the **Search** soft key to display the following menu.

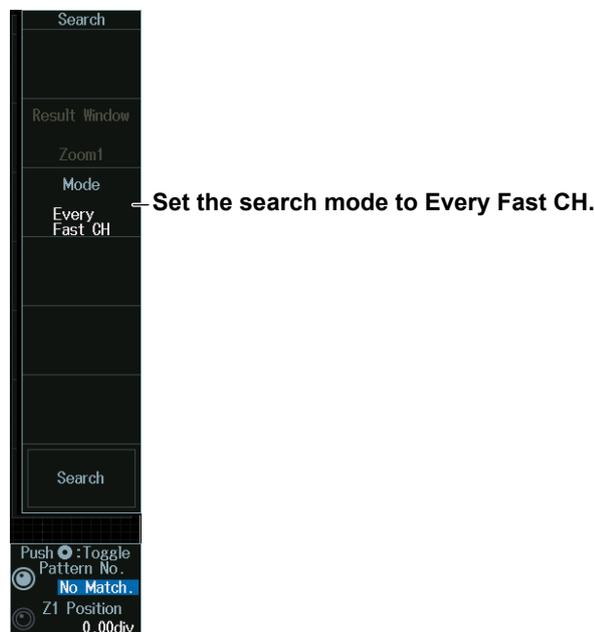


## Search Type (Mode)

### Every Fast CH mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Every Fast CH** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument searches when it detects a fast channel message.

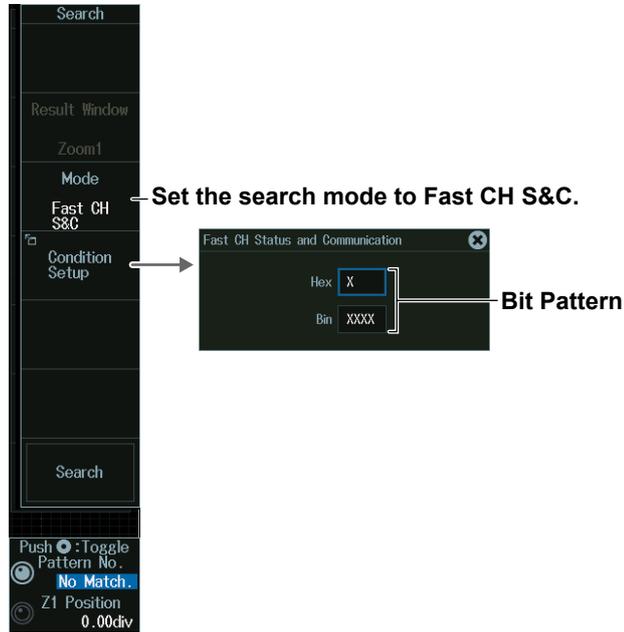


## 12.6 Analyzing and Searching SENT Signals (Option)

### Fast CH S&C mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Fast CH S&C** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument searches on the status and communication bit pattern.



**Fast CH Data mode**

1. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Fast CH Data** soft key to display the following menu.
2. Press the **Condition Setup** soft key. The screen that appears varies depending on the specified fast channel data type.

The instrument searches on the AND of fast channel Data conditions. Items whose check boxes are selected are used as trigger conditions.

**Set the search mode to Fast CH Data.**

**When the data type is nibble**

Fast CH Data Condition Setup

Condition: True False

Hex: XX XX XX

Bin: XXXX XXXX XXXX XXXX XXXX

**Comparison condition Data pattern**

**When the data type is User**

Fast CH Data Condition Setup

Condition	a	b
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Data1	a ≤ Data ≤ b	0 15
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Data2	a ≤ Data ≤ b	0 4095
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Data3	a ≤ Data ≤ b	0 0
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Data4	a ≤ Data ≤ b	0 0

**Select the check boxes for the Comparison condition Reference Values (a and b) items that you want to use as comparison conditions.**

**Data type**

**When the data type is User**

User Data Type Setup

	Size	Order
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Data1	12	Big Little
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Data2	12	Big Little
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Data3	0	Big Little
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Data4	0	Big Little

**nibble order Data size<sup>1</sup>**

**Select the check boxes for the items that you want to use as comparison conditions.**

User Data Type Setup

	Size	Order
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Multiplexing		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Data1(FC)	4	Big Little
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Data2	12	Big Little
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Data3	0	Big Little
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Data4	0	Big Little

**Select this check box in the case of a multiplexed signal<sup>2</sup>**

1 The total number of bits for Data1 to Data4 is up to 24. If you try to exceed the total number of bits, the data size of other pieces of Data is reduced.

2 When the check box for Multiplexing is selected, the Size of Data1 is fixed to 4 to correspond to FC.

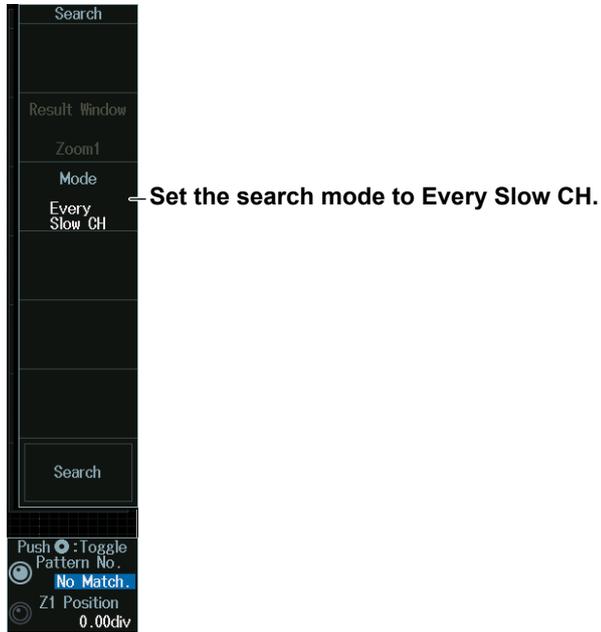
## 12.6 Analyzing and Searching SENT Signals (Option)

---

### Every Slow CH mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Every Slow CH** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument searches when it detects an “Every Slow CH” message.



**Slow CH ID/Data mode**

1. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Slow CH ID/Data** soft key.
2. Press the **Condition Setup** soft key. The menu that appears varies depending on the specified slow channel message type.

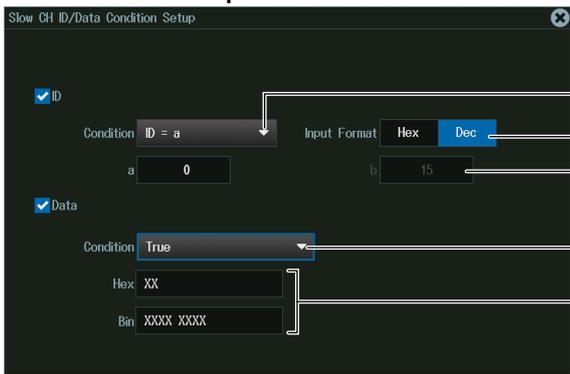
The instrument searches on the AND of the slow channel ID and Data conditions. Items whose check boxes are selected are used as trigger conditions. Set ID and data reference values a and b in Hex (hexadecimal) or Dec (decimal) according to the input format setting.

• **When the Message Type Is Short**

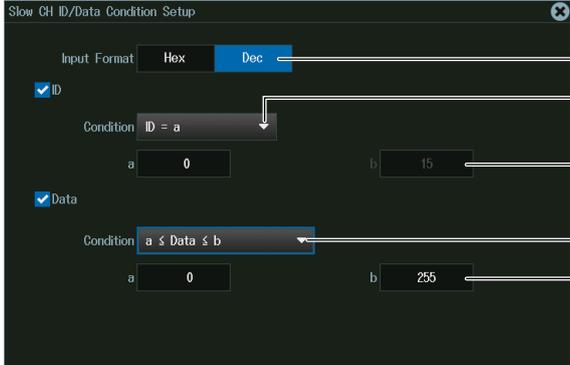
**Set the search mode to Slow CH ID/Data.**



**When the data comparison condition is True or False**



**When the data comparison condition is Data = a; Data ≠ a; a ≤ Data; Data ≤ b; a ≤ Data ≤ b; or Data < a, b < Data**



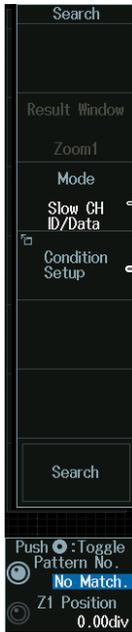
**Setting ID/Data Reference Values a and b**

Input format setting	Hex	Dec
Selectable range for reference values a and b	ID	0 to F
	Data	00 to FF

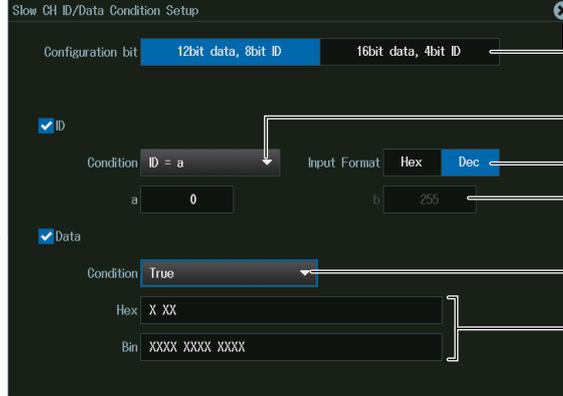
- When the Message Type Is Enhanced

- When the ID and Data Message Formats Are Set to “12bit data, 8bit ID”

Set the search mode to Slow CH ID/Data.



**When the data comparison condition is True or False**



Set the ID and data message formats to 12bit data and 8bit ID.

ID comparison condition

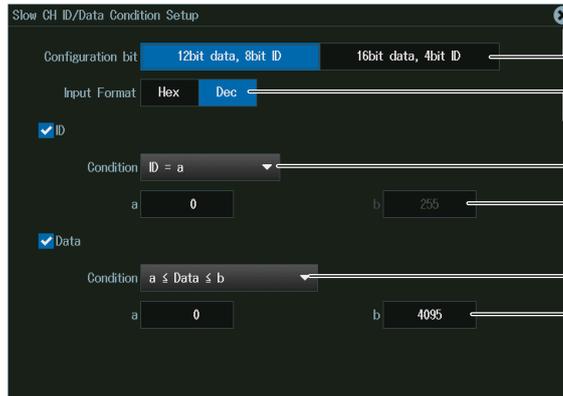
ID input format

ID reference values (a, b)

Data comparison condition

Data pattern

**When the data comparison condition is Data = a; Data ≠ a; a ≤ Data; Data ≤ b; a ≤ Data ≤ b; or Data < a, b < Data**



Set the ID and data message formats to 12bit data and 8bit ID.

ID and Data input formats

ID comparison condition

ID reference values (a, b)

Data comparison condition

Data reference values (a, b)

**Setting ID/Data Reference Values a and b**

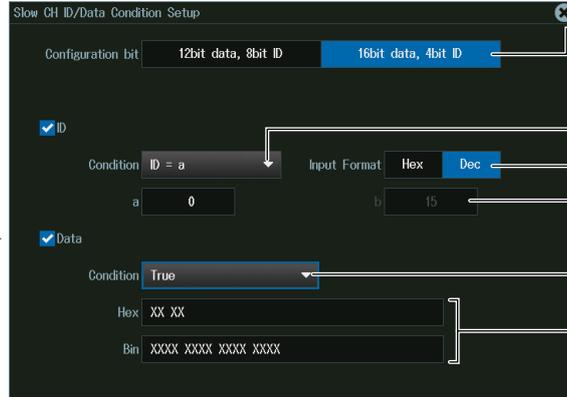
Input format setting	Hex	Dec
Selectable range for reference values a and b	ID	00 to FF
	Data	000 to FFF
		0 to 255
		0 to 4095

• When the ID and Data Message Formats Are Set to “16bit data, 4bit ID”

Set the search mode to Slow CH ID/Data.



When the data comparison condition is True or False



Set the ID and data message formats to 16bit data and 4bit ID.

ID comparison condition

ID input format

ID reference values (a, b)

Data comparison condition

Data pattern

When the data comparison condition is Data = a; Data ≠ a; a ≤ Data; Data ≤ b; a ≤ Data ≤ b; or Data < a, b < Data



Set the ID and data message formats to 16bit data and 4bit ID.

ID and Data input formats

ID comparison condition

ID reference values (a, b)

Data comparison condition

Data reference values (a, b)

Setting ID/Data Reference Values a and b

Input format setting	Hex	Dec	
Selectable range for reference values a and b	ID	0 to F	0 to 15
	Data	0000 to FFFF	0 to 65535

**Error Mode**

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Error** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument searches when it detects various types of errors.

**Set the search mode to Error.**

**Error trigger conditions**

Error	Type	OR
Successive CAL Pulses	OFF	ON
Nibble Number	OFF	ON
Nibble Data Value	OFF	ON
Fast CH CRC	OFF	ON
Status and Communication	OFF	ON
Slow CH CRC	OFF	ON

- Turns Successive CAL Pulses<sup>1</sup> error detection on or off**  
When there is a difference of 1/64 tick or more in the next or previous SYNC/CAL
- Turns Nibble Number error detection on or off**  
When the number of nibbles in a single message does not match the specified value
- Turns Nibble Data Value error detection on or off**  
When any of the Status and Communication, Data, and CRC tick counts is abnormal
- Turns Fast CH CRC error detection on or off**  
When a Fast CH CRC error is detected
- Turns Status and Communication<sup>2</sup> error detection on or off**  
Status and Communication bit 0 or bit 1 is 1
- Turns Slow CH CRC error detection on or off**  
When a Slow CH CRC error is detected

- 1 Not selectable when Successive Calibration Pulses is set to OFF for Customize Error Factor in “Setting the Format (Format) (page 2-68)
- 2 Selectable when the Bit 0 or Bit 1 check box is selected under Status and Communication for Customize Error Factor in “Setting the Format (Format) (page 2-68)

**Detected Point Number and Zoom Position (Pattern No. /Z1 Position or Z2 Position)**

1. Execute a search. Check that a location matching the search conditions is found.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the detected point number (Pattern No.) and zoom position (Z1 Position or Z2 Position).
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between detected point number (Pattern No.) and zoom position (Z1 Position or Z2 Position).

**Jog shuttle setting menu**

Push :Toggle  
Pattern No. — **Detected point number**  
No Match  
Z1 Position — **Zoom position**  
0.00div

## 12.7 Analyzing and Searching UART Signals (Option)

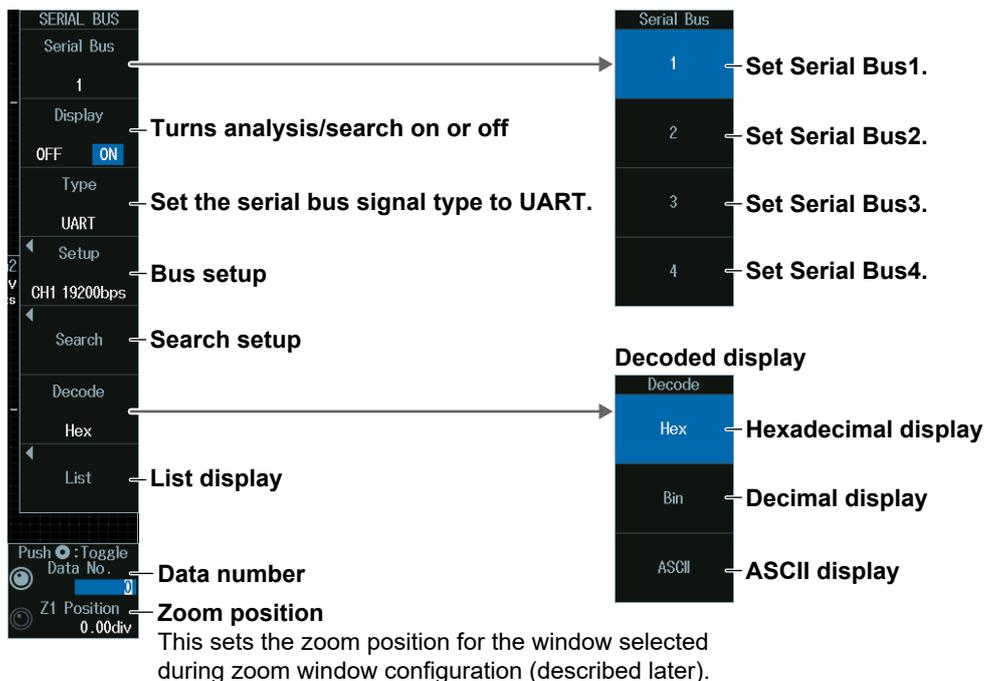
This section explains the following settings for analyzing or searching UART signals:

- Turning analysis and search displays on or off
- Serial bus signal types
- Bus setup
  - Auto setup, analysis/search source waveform, data format, parity, grouping, level and hysteresis for detecting analysis/search source waveform states
- Decoded display
- List display
  - List size, display position, grouping, detailed display, and zoom linking
- Analysis and data numbers
- Zoom position
- Search settings
  - Zoom window, search type, and search execution

▶ “Analyzing and Searching Serial Bus Signals,”  
“Analyzing and Searching UART Signals (Option)” in the Features Guide

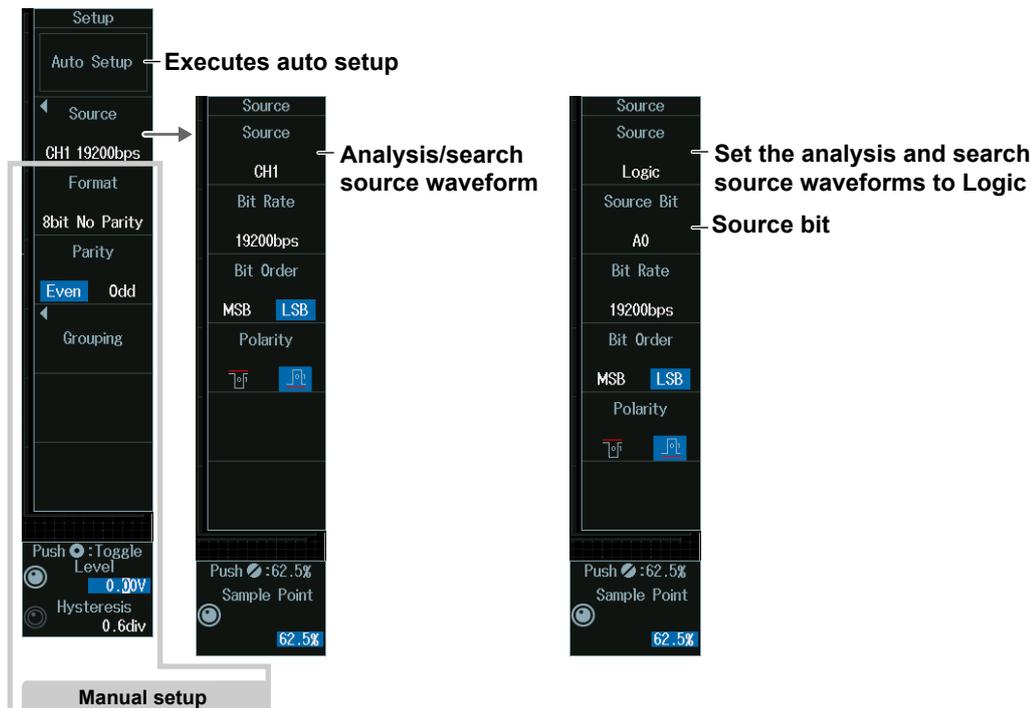
### SERIAL BUS UART Menu

1. Press **SHIFT+SEARCH** (SERIAL BUS) to display the SERIAL BUS menu.
  - You can also tap **MENU** (M) in the upper left of the screen and select the SERIAL BUS menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
  - You can also press **ANALYSIS** and then the **To SERIAL BUS** soft key to display the SERIAL BUS menu.
  - The instrument can analyze and search up to four serial bus signals. To switch to the setup menu, press the Serial Bus soft key and select a number from 1 to 4.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. From the setup menu that appears, select **UART** to display the following menu.



## Bus Setup (Setup)

Press the **Setup** soft key to display the following menu.



### Executing Auto Setup (Auto Setup)

1. Set the analysis/search source waveform.
2. If you set the trigger source to Logic, set the source bit.
3. Press **ESC**. The menu returns to the bus setup menu.
4. Press the **Auto Setup** soft key to execute auto setup.
  - The Instrument automatically configures the bit rate, sample point, level, and hysteresis and then triggers on the UART signal's Stop Bit.
  - While the serial bus is being configured, Auto Setup changes to Abort. If you want to stop, press the **Abort** soft key.

### Note

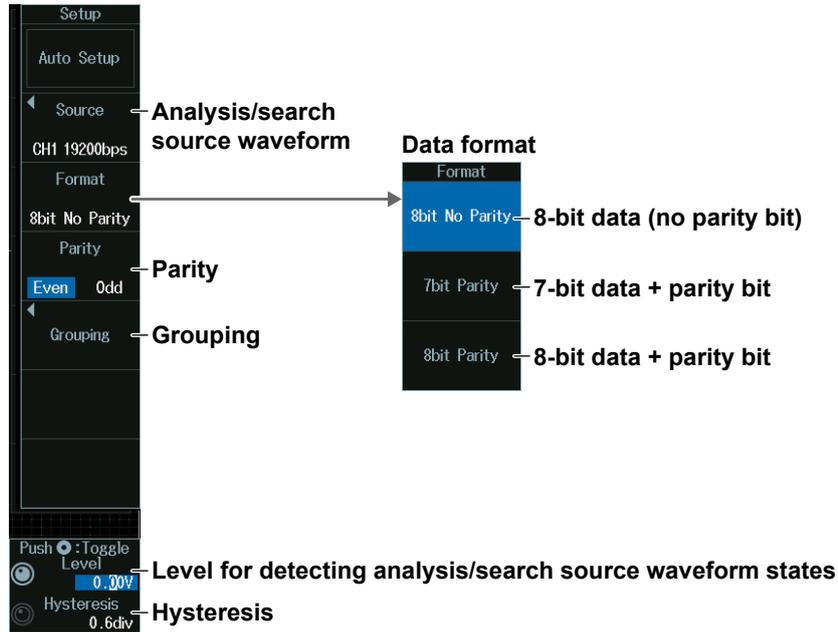
- The auto setup feature will not work properly on some input signals.
- You cannot use auto setup under the following circumstances.
  - When the Analysis/Search Source Waveform Is Math1 to Math8
  - When state display is applied to a Logic bit that is set as the analysis/search source waveform.
- The available source waveforms vary depending on the model.
  - The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8, Logic, Math1 to Math8
  - The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4, Logic, Math1 to Math4

### Source Bit

The following source bit display applies to models with the /L32 option.  
C0 to C7 (LOGIC port C), D0 to D7 (LOGIC port D)

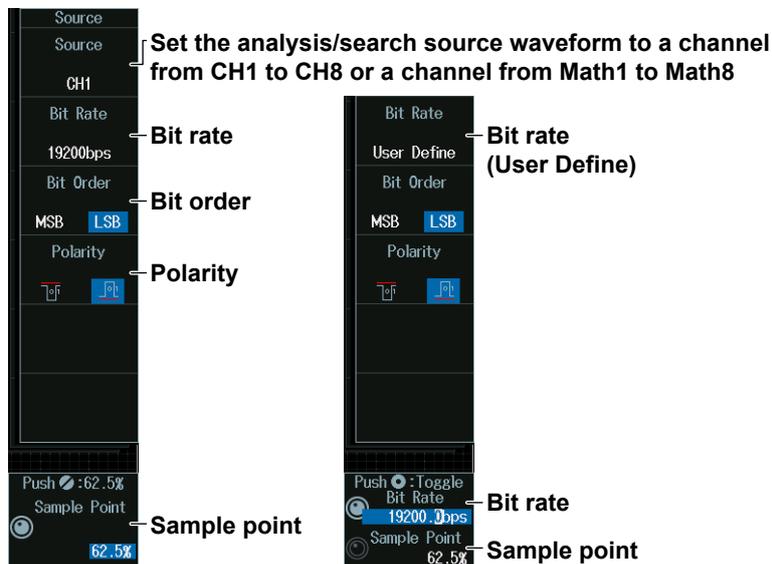
## Manual Setup

Manually set the bus format, parity, and so on.



- **Analysis/Search Source Waveform (when the source is CH1 to CH8, Math1 to Math8)**

Press the **Source** soft key to display the following menu.



### Note

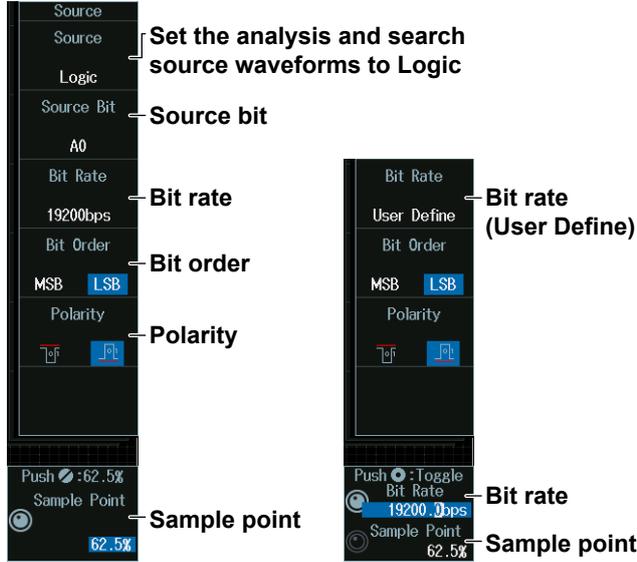
The available source waveforms vary depending on the model.

- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8, Logic, Math1 to Math8
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4, Logic, Math1 to Math4

## 12.7 Analyzing and Searching UART Signals (Option)

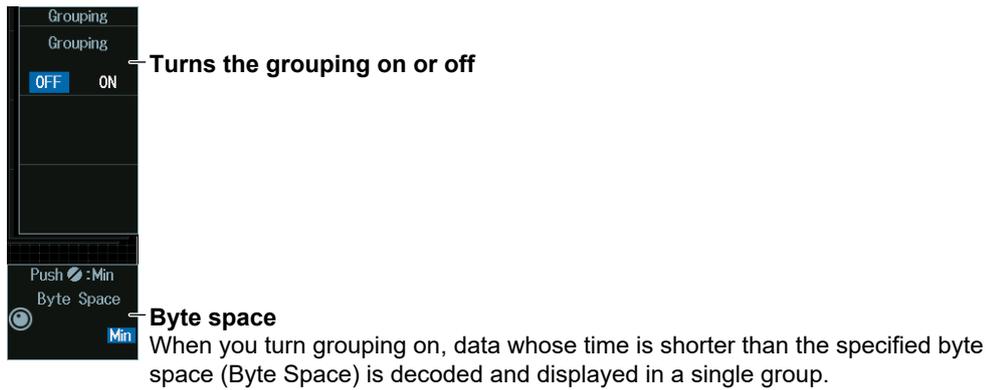
- **Analysis/Search Source Waveform (when Source is Logic)**

Press the **Source** soft key to display the following menu.



- **Grouping (Grouping)**

Press the **Grouping** soft key to display the following menu.

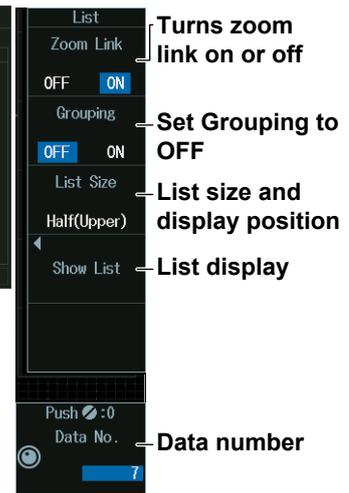
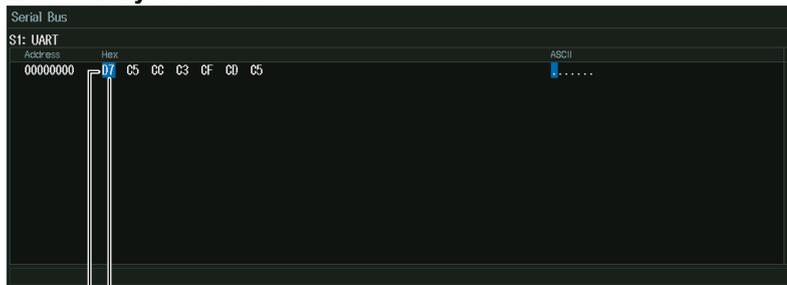


## List Display (List)

1. Press the **Display** soft key, and turn on the analysis and search displays.
2. Press the **List** soft key and then the **Show List** soft key.
  - The list of analysis results and the next menu appear.
  - If several display settings of Serial Bus 1 to 4 are on, all the lists of analysis results of the serial buses whose display setting is on are displayed. For details, see section 12.11.

### When Grouping Is Set to OFF

#### List of analysis results

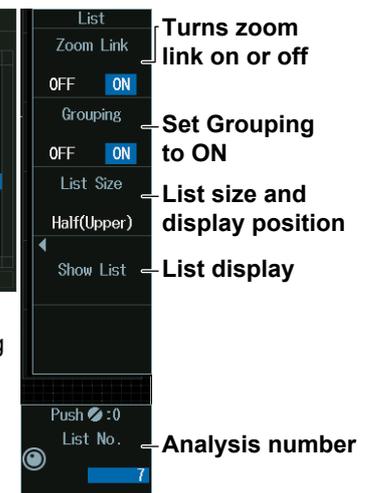
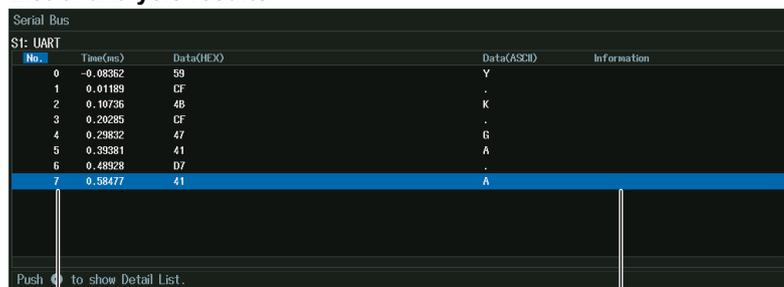


- Data number (e.g., Data No.7)**  
The data that corresponds to the selected data number is highlighted.
- **When a framing error is detected**  
An asterisk is appended to the data number.
  - **When a parity error is detected**  
An x mark is appended to the data number.
  - **When both a framing error and a parity error are detected**  
The asterisk used for marking framing errors is appended to the data number.

Data from the leftmost side of the waveform display

### When Grouping Is Set to ON

#### List of analysis results



- Analysis number**  
If multiple errors are detected in one piece of data, the instrument only displays the framing error indication.
- Framing Error
  - Parity Error

**This is the detailed list of analysis results that is displayed when you press SET.**

All data for the specified analysis number is displayed.



The data that corresponds to the selected data number is highlighted.



Set the data number.

**Note**

**Analysis number**

Data before the trigger position (on the left side of the waveform display) is assigned analysis numbers in descending order (-1, -2, and so on). Data after the trigger position (on the right side of the waveform display) is assigned analysis numbers in ascending order (0, 1, 2, and so on).

**Analysis Number (List No.), Data Number (Data No.)**

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the analysis number (List No.) or data number (Data No.).

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

**Jog shuttle setting menu**

**When grouping is set to ON**

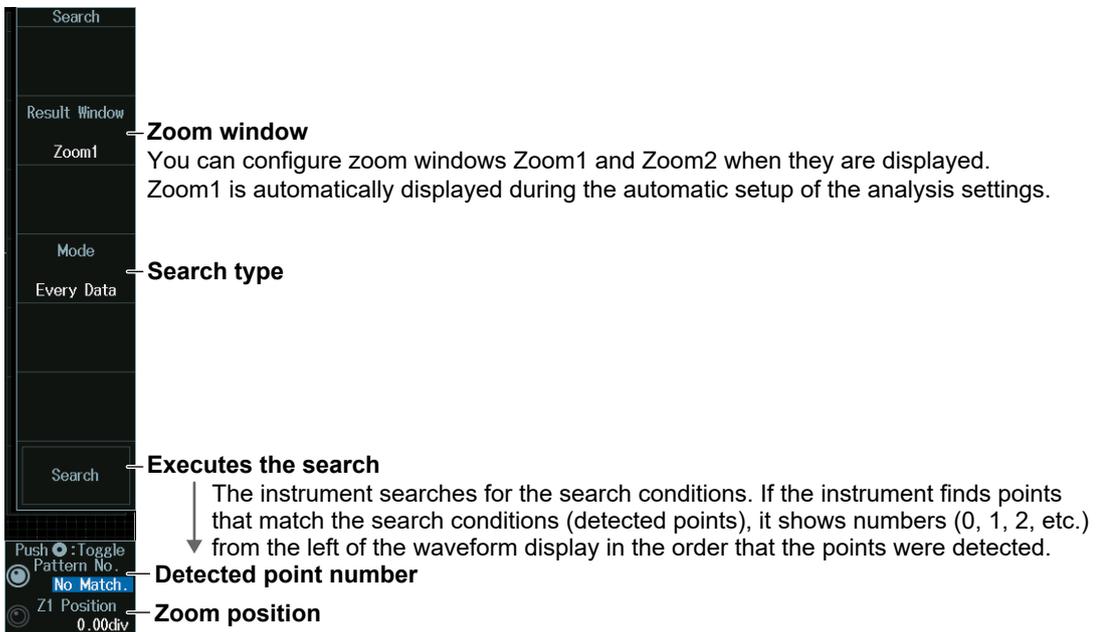


**Detail display when grouping is set to OFF or when grouping is set to ON and SET is pressed**



**Search Setup (Search)**

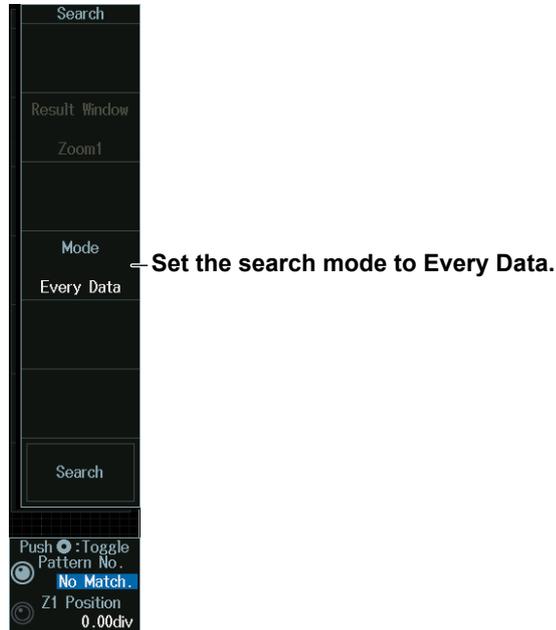
Press the **Search** soft key to display the following menu.



## Search Type (Mode)

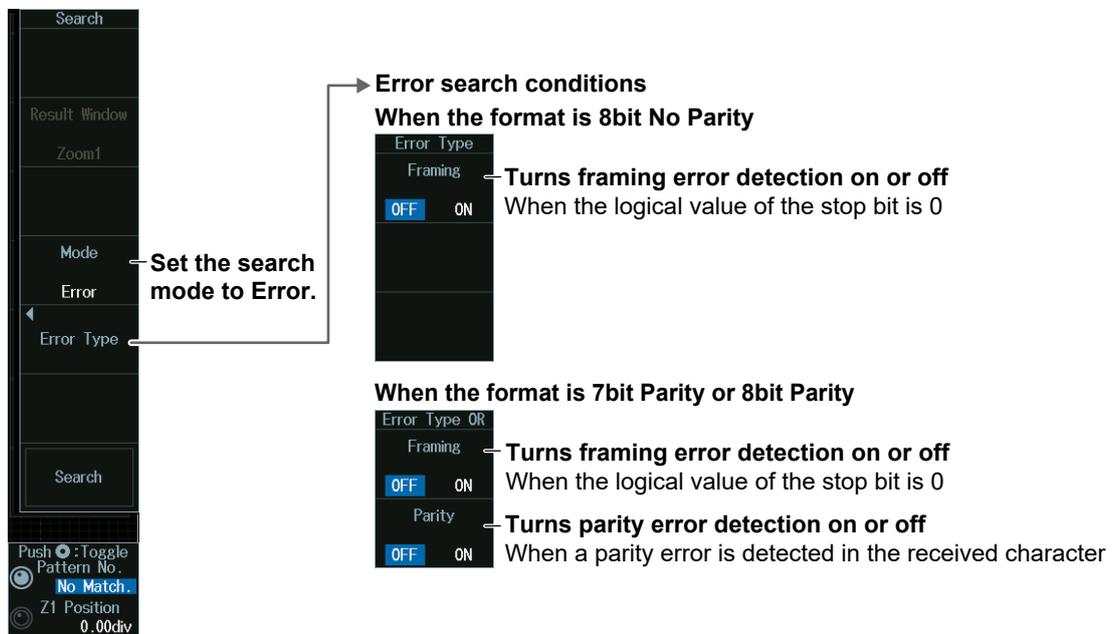
### Every Data mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Every Data** soft key to display the following menu. The instrument searches on all data.



### Error Mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Error** soft key to display the following menu. The instrument searches when it detects various types of errors.



**Data Mode**

1. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Data** soft key.
2. Press the **Condition Setup** soft key to display the following menu.  
The instrument searches when the data pattern is matched.

**Set the search mode to Data.**

**When the data pattern input format is Pattern**

- Data length**: Size 4 byte
- Comparison condition (always True)**: Condition True
- Set the data pattern input format to Pattern.**: Input Format Pattern
- Data pattern**: Hex XX XX XX XX, Bin XXXX XXXX XXXX XXXX XXXX XXXX XXXX XXXX

**When the data pattern input format is ASCII**

- Set the data pattern input format to ASCII.**: Input Format ASCII
- Case-sensitive setting**: Case Sensitive checkbox

**Data pattern**  
Use the keyboard that appears on the screen.

- Switches between uppercase and lowercase**: CAPS
- Moves the cursor**: Left and Right arrow keys
- Deletes the character at the cursor position**: Delete
- Deletes the previous character**: BS
- Deletes all the characters you have entered**: Clear
- Confirms the characters that have been entered**: Enter

**Data Pattern**

You can enter up to 4 characters.

- You can switch between uppercase and lowercase to enter alphabet characters. However, case is distinguished only when the Case Sensitive check box is selected.
- The special characters CR, LF, SP, and NUL are shown in single quotation marks. These special characters are counted as one character including the single quotation marks. Example: AB'CR'D (four characters), XY'SP' (three characters), P'NUL'WU (four characters)
- The entered string, including the character codes for the case, is retained even if the input format is changed to Bin or Hex. It is also retained when the format is changed from Bin or Hex to ASCII.
- If a character code that does not exist on the keyboard is entered when the input format is Bin or Hex and then the input format is changed to ASCII, a white square is displayed in the corresponding position.

### Detected Point Number and Zoom Position (Pattern No. /Z1 Position or Z2 Position)

1. Execute a search. Check that a location matching the search conditions is found.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the detected point number (Pattern No.) and zoom position (Z1 Position or Z2 Position).
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between detected point number (Pattern No.) and zoom position (Z1 Position or Z2 Position).

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



## 12.8 Analyzing and Searching I<sup>2</sup>C Bus Signals (Option)

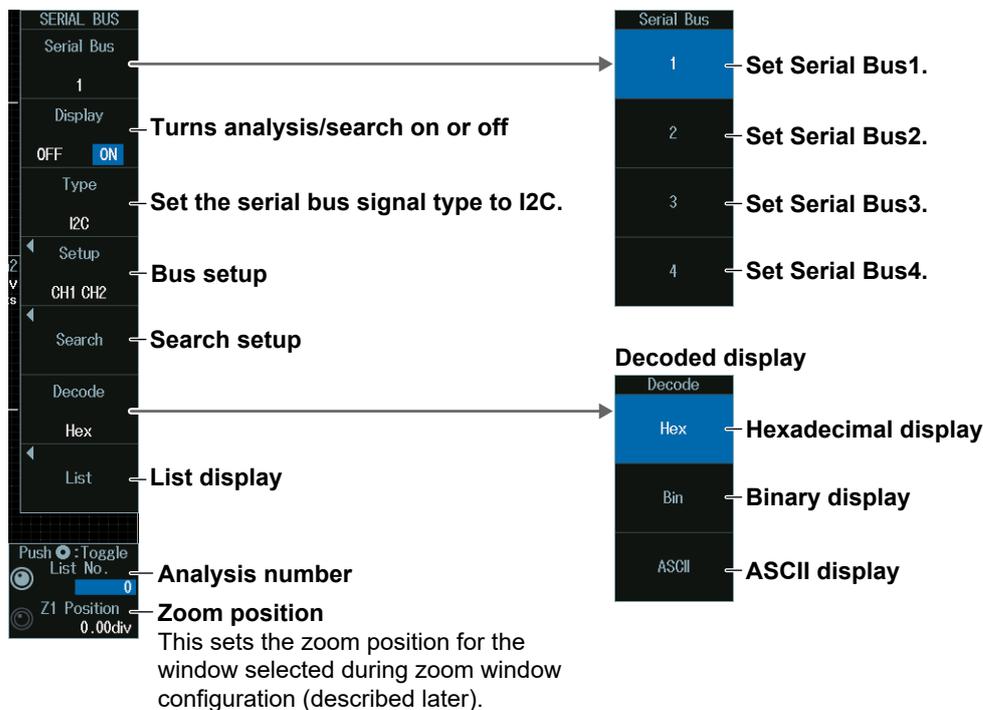
This section explains the following settings for analyzing or searching I<sup>2</sup>C bus signals:

- Turning analysis and search displays on or off
- Serial bus signal types
- Bus setup
  - Auto setup, SCL source, SDA source, level and hysteresis for detecting SCL and SDA source states
- Decoded display
- List display
  - List size, display position, detailed display, and zoom linking
- Analysis and data numbers
- Zoom position
- Search settings
  - Zoom window, search type, and search execution

► [“Analyzing and Searching Serial Bus Signals,”](#)  
[“Analyzing and Searching I<sup>2</sup>C Bus Signals \(Option\)”](#) in the Features Guide

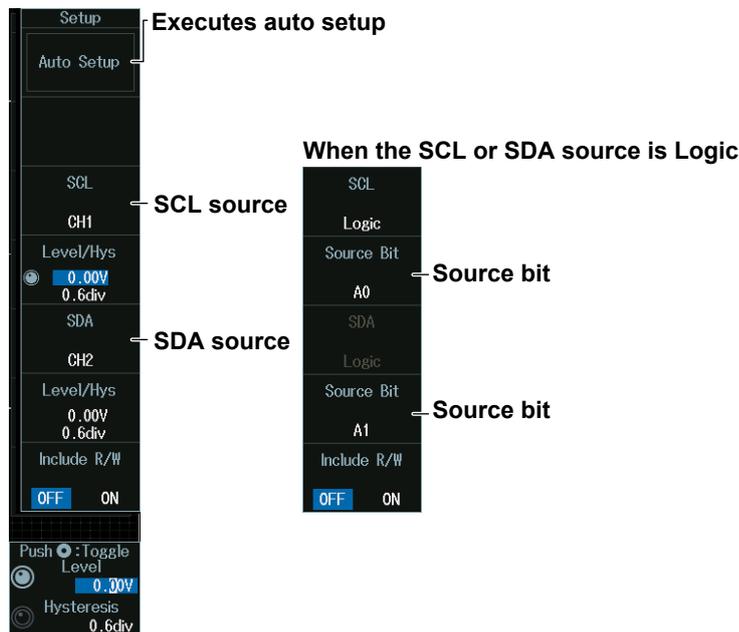
### SERIAL BUS I2C Menu

1. Press **SHIFT+SEARCH** (SERIAL BUS) to display the SERIAL BUS menu.
  - You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the SERIAL BUS menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
  - You can also press **ANALYSIS** and then the **To SERIAL BUS** soft key to display the SERIAL BUS menu.
  - The instrument can analyze and search up to four serial bus signals. To switch to the setup menu, press the Serial Bus soft key and select a number from 1 to 4.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. From the setup menu that appears, select **I2C** to display the following menu.



## Bus Setup (Setup)

Press the **Setup** soft key to display the following menu.



### Executing Auto Setup (Auto Setup)

1. Set the SCL and SDA sources.
2. If you set the SCL or SDA source to Logic (L), set the source bit.
3. Press the **Auto Setup** soft key to execute auto setup.
  - The instrument automatically configures the level and hysteresis and triggers on the start condition of the I<sup>2</sup>C bus signal.
  - While the serial bus is being configured, Auto Setup changes to Abort. If you want to stop, press the **Abort** soft key.

### Note

- The auto setup feature will not work properly on some input signals.
- You cannot use auto setup under the following circumstances.
  - When the SCL or SDA source is set to Math1 to Math8
  - When state display is applied to a LOGIC bit that is set as the SCL or SDA source.
- The available source waveforms vary depending on the model.
  - The available settings on 8ch models are as follows: CH1 to CH8, Logic, Math1 to Math8
  - The available settings on 4ch models are as follows: CH1 to CH4, Logic, Math1 to Math4

### Source Bit

The following source bit display applies to models with the /L32 option.  
C0 to C7 (LOGIC port C), D0 to D7 (LOGIC port D)

### Manual Setup

Manually set the level and hysteresis.

When the SCL or SDA source is CH1 to CH8, Math1 to Math8

**Set the SCL source to a channel from CH1 to CH8 or a channel from Math1 to Math8**  
**Set the SDA source to a channel from CH1 to CH8 or a channel from Math1 to Math8**  
**Level for detecting SDA source states**  
**Hysteresis**  
**Level for detecting SCL source states**  
**Hysteresis**  
**Whether to include the R/W bit**  
 Specify whether to include the R/W bit when setting or displaying the address pattern. This setting affects the configuration or display of the address pattern in the following situations.
 

- Search condition when the search mode is Address Data (Address in the Condition Setup screen)
- Decoded display
- Address boxes in the list display (1st, 2nd)

When the SCL or SDA source is Logic

**Set the SCL source to Logic.**  
**Source bit of SCL source**  
**Source bit of SDA source**  
**Whether to include the R/W bit**

**Note**

R/W bit inclusion (Include R/W) can also be set by selecting I2C bus signal trigger, Trigger Type, and then Address Data mode. The settings are synchronized. For details on I2C bus signal trigger, see section 2.20.

## List Display (List)

1. Press the **Display** soft key, and turn on the analysis and search displays.
2. Press the **List** soft key and then the **Show List** soft key.
  - The list of analysis results and the next menu appear.
  - If several display settings of Serial Bus 1 to 4 are on, all the lists of analysis results of the serial buses whose display setting is on are displayed. For details, see section 12.11.

### List of analysis results

The screenshot shows the 'Serial Bus' analysis interface. The top part displays a table of analysis results:

No.	Time(μs)	1st	2nd	R/W	Data	Information
0	0.00501	2C*		W	6E* A3*	7-bit
1	0.18899	2C*		R	6E* A3	7-bit

Below the table, a 'Push' button is labeled 'to show Detail List.'. To the right, a 'List' menu is shown with the following options:

- Zoom Link: OFF ON (Turns zoom link on or off)
- List Size: Half(Upper) (List size and display position)
- Show List (List display)
- Push :0 List No. (Analysis number)
- Push :0 Data No. (Data number)

An arrow points from the 'Analysis number' (0) in the table to the 'List No.' field in the 'List' menu. Below this, a detailed view of the analysis for 'Serial Bus 1' is shown:

Address	Hex	ASCII
00000000	6E(A3*)	n

The data '6E(A3\*)' is highlighted. A 'Push :0 Data No.' menu is shown with '1' selected, indicating that the data number 1 corresponds to the highlighted data.

### Note

#### Analysis Number

Data before the trigger position (on the left side of the waveform display) is assigned analysis numbers in descending order (-1, -2, and so on). Data after the trigger position (on the right side of the waveform display) is assigned analysis numbers in ascending order (0, 1, 2, and so on).

### Analysis Number (List No.), Data Number (Data No.)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the analysis number (List No.) or data number (Data No.).

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu

##### When selecting from the list of analysis results

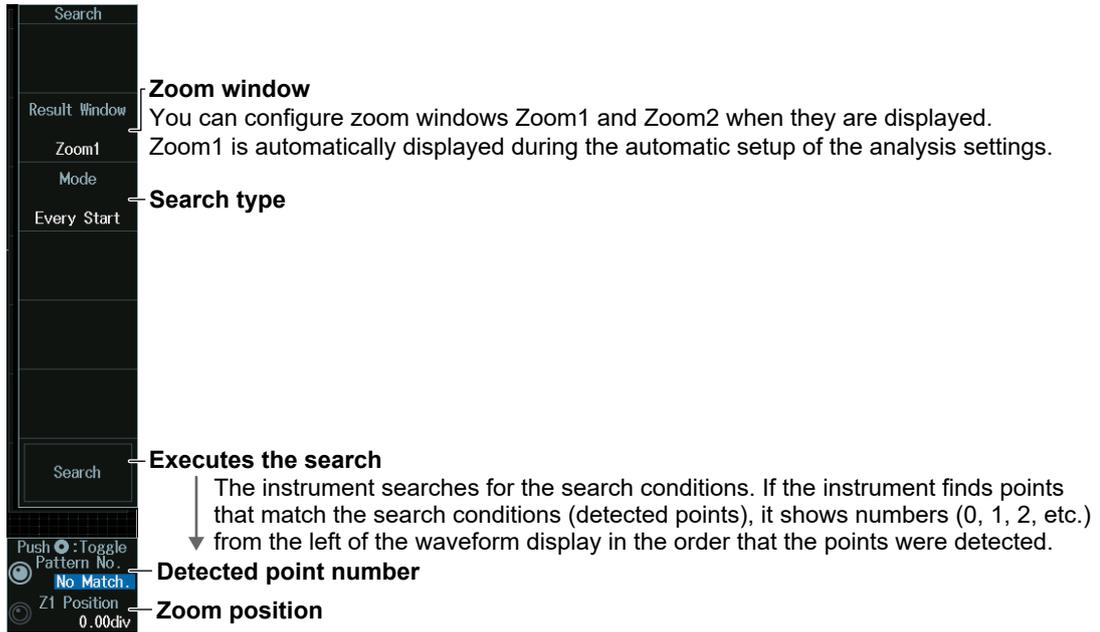
The screenshot shows the 'List No.' jog shuttle setting menu. The 'List No.' field is set to 0. A label 'Analysis number' points to the jog shuttle.

##### When selecting from the detailed display of the analysis results list (when SET is pressed)

The screenshot shows the 'Data No.' jog shuttle setting menu. The 'Data No.' field is set to 0. A label 'Data number' points to the jog shuttle.

### Search Setup (Search)

Press the **Search** soft key to display the following menu.

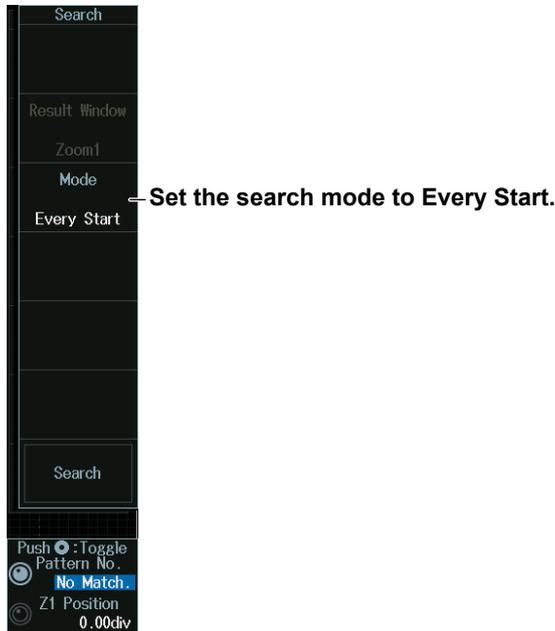


### Trigger Mode (Mode)

#### Every Start Mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Every Start** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument searches when it detects a start condition.



**Address Data mode**

1. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Address Data** soft key.
2. Press the **Condition Setup** soft key to display the following menu.  
The instrument searches on the AND of the start, address pattern, data pattern, and comparison start position conditions. Items whose check boxes are selected are used as trigger conditions.

• **When Address Type Is 7bit Address**

Search

Result Window

Zoom1

Mode

Address Data

Condition Setup

Search

Push : Toggle Pattern No.

No Match.

Z1 Position

0.00div

**Set the search mode to AddressData.**

**When the Include R/W is set to OFF**

**Start** (always selected)

**Set the address type to 7bit Address.**

**Read/Write bit state**

**Address pattern**

**Data length**

**Comparison start position**

If you do not set the comparison start point, the data search condition is met when the input signal data pattern first matches the specified data pattern.

**Comparison condition**

**Data pattern**

**Set the value of up to four consecutive bytes of data from the comparison start position as a search condition**

**When the Include R/W is set to ON**

**Read/Write bit state**  
(Display only as the address pattern contains an R/W bit)

**Address pattern**  
(Set this including R/W bit.)

**Comparison start position**

If you do not set the comparison start point, the data search condition is met when the input signal data pattern first matches the specified data pattern.

**Comparison condition**

**Data pattern**

**Set the value of up to four consecutive bytes of data from the comparison start position as a search condition**

**Whether to include the R/W bit**

Specify whether to include the R/W bit (ON) or omit it (OFF) when setting the address pattern.

**Note**

R/W bit inclusion (Include R/W) can also be set by using Analyzing and Searching I2C Bus Signals and then Bus Setup (Setup). Settings are synchronized. For details on I2C bus signal analysis, see section 12.8.

## 12.8 Analyzing and Searching I2C Bus Signals (Option)

- When Address Type Is 7bit+Sub Address

### When the Include R/W is set to OFF

**Start** (always selected)

**Set the address type to 7bit + Sub Address.**

**Read/Write bit state**

**Address pattern**

**Data length**

**Comparison start position**  
If you do not set the comparison start point, the data search condition is met when the input signal data pattern first matches the specified data pattern.

**Comparison condition**

**Data pattern**

Set the value of up to four consecutive bytes of data from the comparison start position as a search condition

### When the Include R/W is set to

**Read/Write bit state**  
(Display only as the address pattern contains an R/W bit)

**Address pattern**  
(Set this including R/W bit.)

**Data length**

**Comparison start position**  
If you do not set the comparison start point, the data search condition is met when the input signal data pattern first matches the specified data pattern.

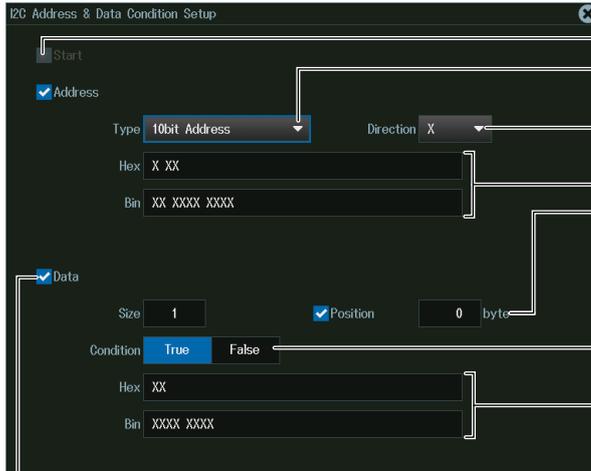
**Comparison condition**

**Data pattern**

Set the value of up to four consecutive bytes of data from the comparison start position as a search condition

• When Address Type Is 10bit Address

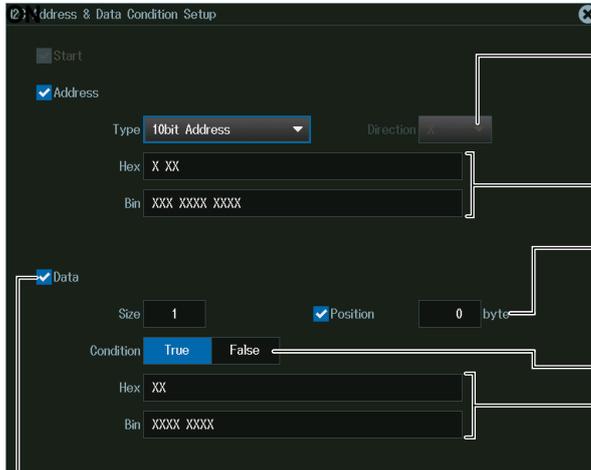
When the Include R/W is set to OFF



- Start (always selected)
- Set the address type to 10bit Address.
- Read/Write bit state
- Address pattern
- Comparison start position  
If you do not set the comparison start point, the data search condition is met when the input signal data pattern first matches the specified data pattern.
- Comparison condition
- Data pattern

Set the value of up to four consecutive bytes of data from the comparison start position as a search condition

When the Include R/W is set to



- Read/Write bit state  
(Display only as the address pattern contains an R/W bit)
- Address pattern  
(Set this including R/W bit.)
- Comparison start position  
If you do not set the comparison start point, the data search condition is met when the input signal data pattern first matches the specified data pattern.
- Comparison condition
- Data pattern

Set the value of up to four consecutive bytes of data from the comparison start position as a search condition

**NON ACK Mode**

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **NON ACK** soft key. The following menu appears. The instrument searches when the acknowledgment bit is Nack.



Set the search mode to NON ACK.

**General Call Mode**

1. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **General Call** soft key.
2. Press the **Condition Setup** soft key to display the following menu.  
 When Second Byte is set to Master Address, the instrument triggers on the AND of the general call address (0000 0000), second byte address pattern, data pattern, and comparison start position conditions.  
 Otherwise, the instrument searches on the AND of general call address (0000 0000) and Second Byte address pattern conditions. Items whose check boxes are selected are used as trigger conditions.

**Set the search mode to General Call.**

**When the address type is "0000 0100" or "0000"**

**When the address type is Master**

**General Call**  
(always selected)

**Address type**

**Address type**

**Address pattern**

**Data length**

**Comparison start position**

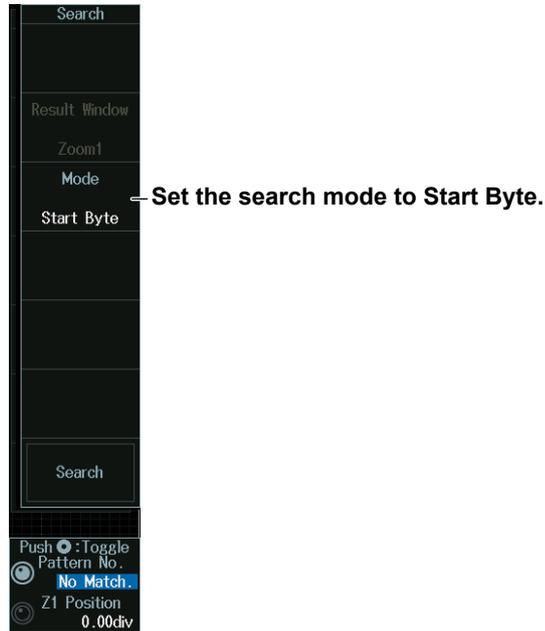
**Comparison condition**

**Data pattern**

### Start Byte Mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Start Byte** soft key to display the following menu.

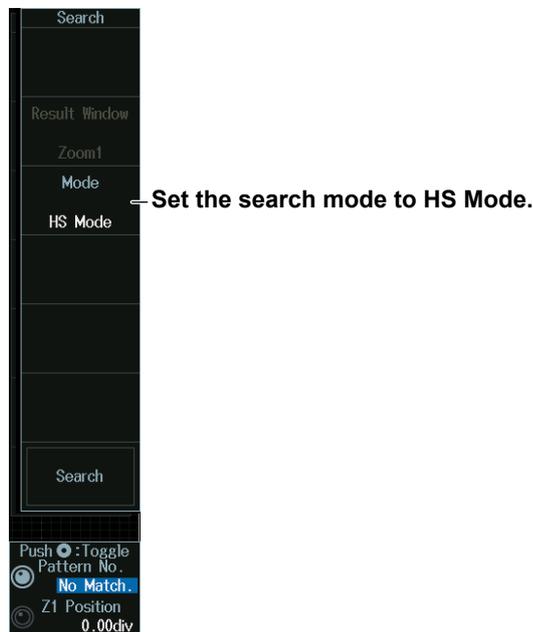
The instrument searches when it detects the start byte master code.



### HS mode

Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **HS Mode** soft key to display the following menu.

The instrument searches when it detects a high speed mode master code.



### Detected Point Number and Zoom Position (Pattern No. /Z1 Position or Z2 Position)

1. Execute a search. Check that a location matching the search conditions is found.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the detected point number (Pattern No.) and zoom position (Z1 Position or Z2 Position).
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between detected point number (Pattern No.) and zoom position (Z1 Position or Z2 Position).

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



## 12.9 Analyzing and Searching SPI Bus Signals (Option)

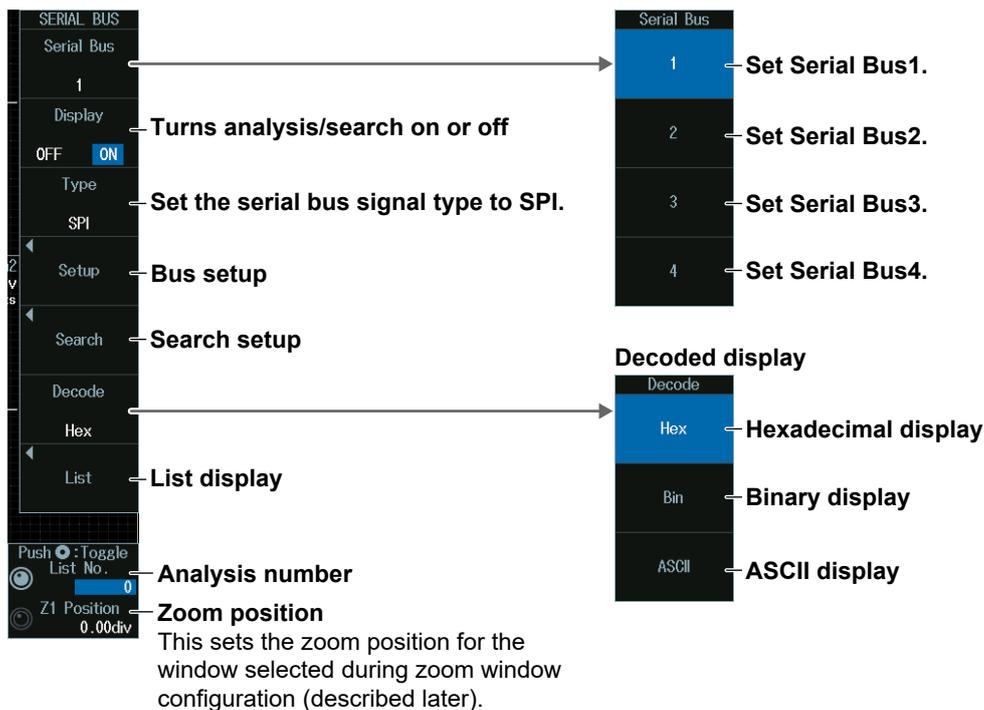
This section explains the following settings for analyzing or searching SPI bus signals:

- Turning analysis and search displays on or off
- Serial bus signal types
- Bus setup
  - Auto setup, wiring system, clock source, data source, chip select source, bit order
- Decoded display
- List display
  - List size, display position, detailed display, and zoom linking
- Analysis and data numbers
- Zoom position
- Search settings
  - Zoom window, search type, and search execution

► “Analyzing and Searching Serial Bus Signals,”  
 “Analyzing and Searching SPI Bus Signals (Option)” in the Features Guide

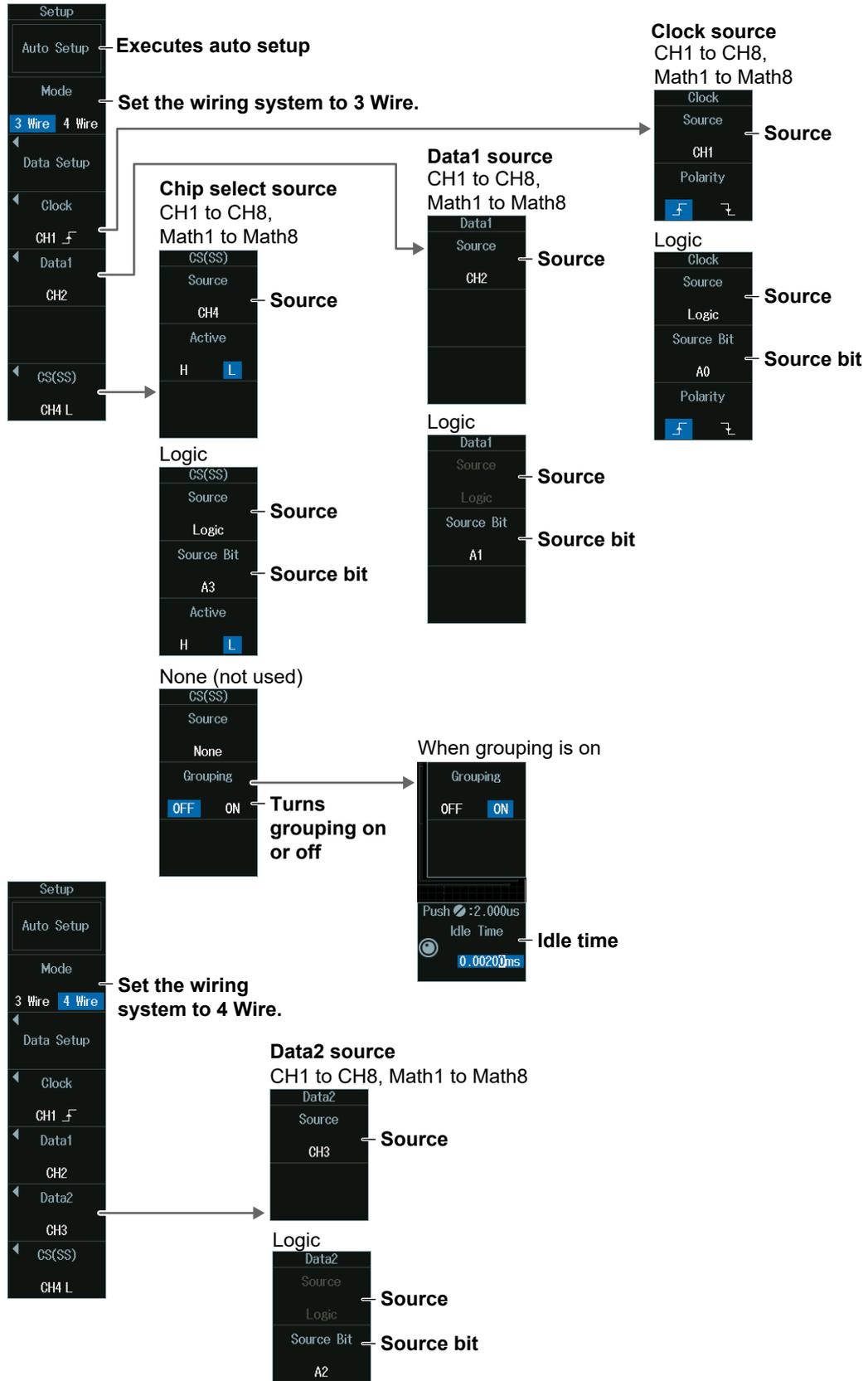
### SERIAL BUS SPI Menu

1. Press **SHIFT+SEARCH** (SERIAL BUS) to display the SERIAL BUS menu.
  - You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the SERIAL BUS menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
  - You can also press **ANALYSIS** and then the **To SERIAL BUS** soft key to display the SERIAL BUS menu.
  - The instrument can analyze and search up to four serial bus signals. To switch to the setup menu, press the Serial Bus soft key and select a number from 1 to 4.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. Select **SPI** from the setup menu that is displayed. The following menu appears.



### Bus Setup (Setup)

Press the **Setup** soft key to display the following menu.



**Executing Auto Setup (Auto Setup)**

1. Set the wiring system and the clock, data, and chip select sources.
2. If you set a source to Logic, set the source bit.
3. Press the **Auto Setup** soft key to execute auto setup.
  - The instrument automatically configures the level and hysteresis and then triggers on the SPI bus signal's first data byte.
  - While the serial bus is being configured, Auto Setup changes to Abort. If you want to stop, press the **Abort** soft key.

**Note**

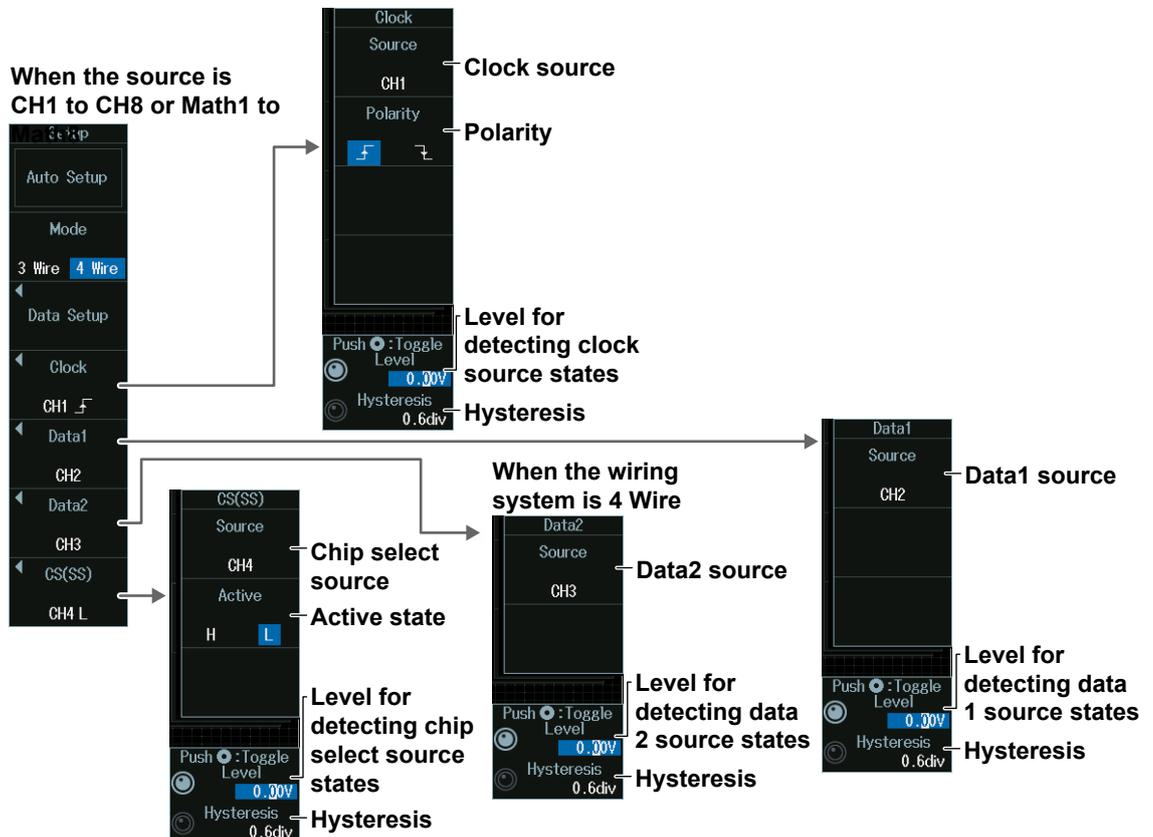
- The auto setup feature will not work properly on some input signals.
- You cannot use auto setup under the following circumstances.
  - When the clock, Data1, Data2, or chip select source is set to Math1 to Math8
  - When state display is applied to any of the Logic bits set as the clock, Data1, Data2, or chip select source
  - When the chip select source is set to None (Ignore)
- The available source waveforms vary depending on the model.
  - The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8, Logic, Math1 to Math8
  - The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4, Logic, Math1 to Math4

**Source Bit**

The following source bit display applies to models with the /L32 option.  
C0 to C7 (LOGIC port C), D0 to D7 (LOGIC port D)

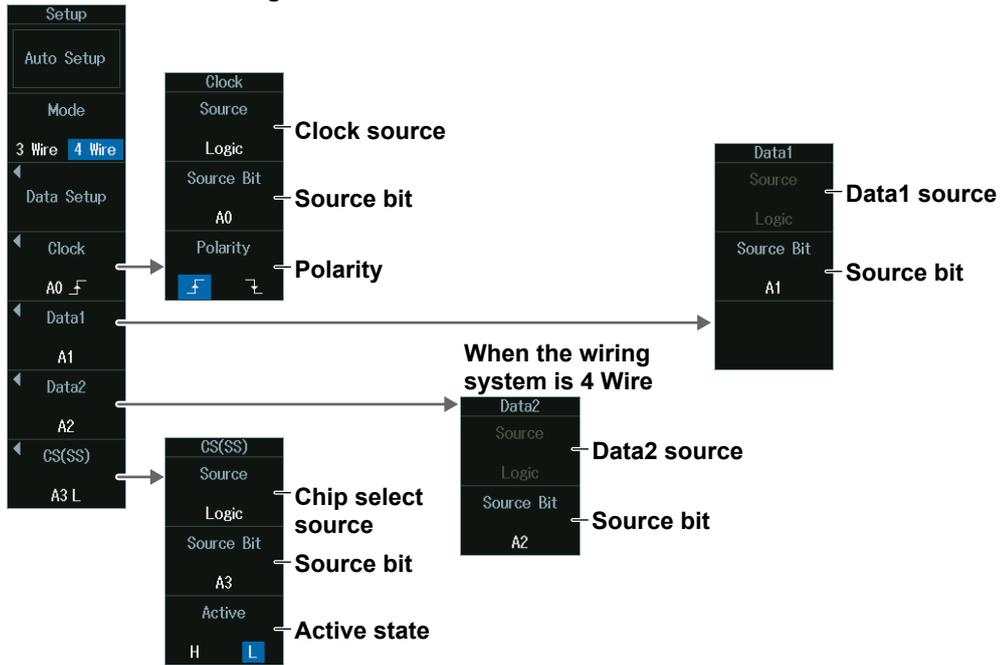
**Manual Setup**

Manually set the level, hysteresis, and bit order.



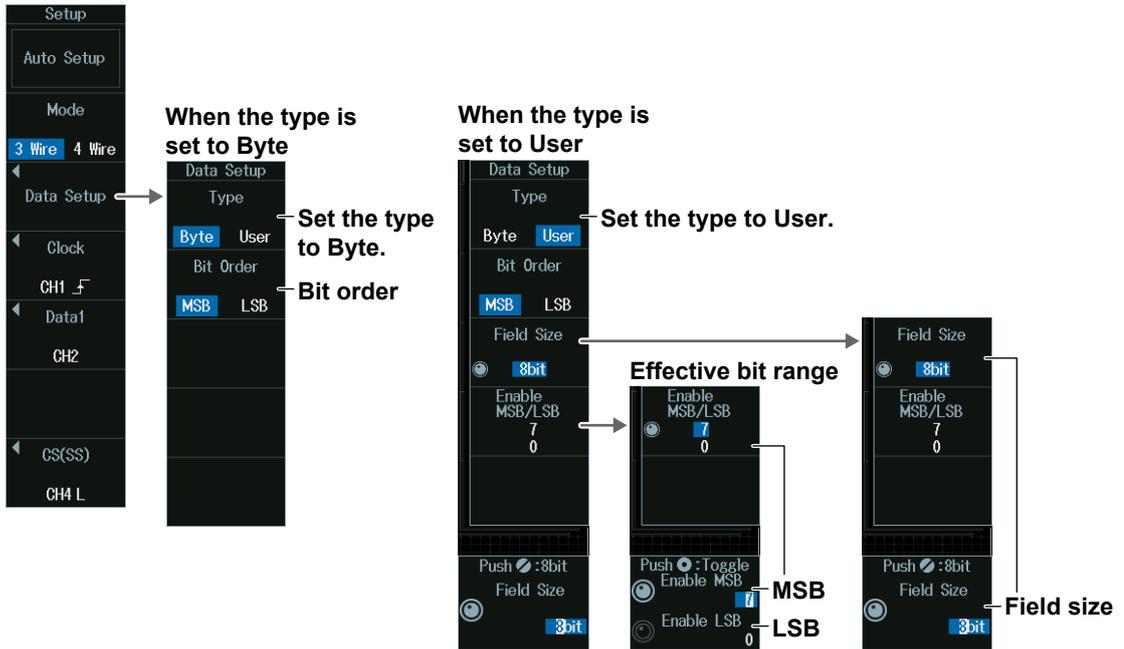
## 12.9 Analyzing and Searching SPI Bus Signals (Option)

### When the source is Logic



### Setting the Data Format (Data Setup)

Press the Data Setup soft key to display the following menu.



## List Display (List)

1. Press the **Display** soft key, and turn on the analysis and search displays.
2. Press the **List** soft key and then the **Show List** soft key.
  - The list of analysis results and the next menu appear.
  - When the wiring system is set to 3 Wire, the contents of Data 1 are displayed in a list. When the wiring system is set to 4 Wire, the contents of Data 1 and Data 2 are displayed in a list.
  - If several display settings of Serial Bus 1 to 4 are on, all the lists of analysis results of the serial buses whose display setting is on are displayed. For details, see section 12.11.

### List of analysis results

No.	Time(ms)	Data1/2	Data
-1	-0.007000	Data1	9C
		Data2	00
0	0.009000	Data1	BA 28
		Data2	00 00
1	0.041000	Data1	47 BA 28 E0
		Data2	00 00 00 00

Turns zoom link on or off

List size and display position

List display

Analysis number

### Analysis number

This is the detailed list of analysis results that is displayed when you press SET.

When the wiring system is set to 4wire, the detailed Data1 display and detailed Data2 display toggles each time you press SET. All the data for the specified analysis numbers are displayed.

Address	ASCII
00000000	...

The data that corresponds to the selected data number is highlighted.

Data number

## Note

### Analysis number

Data before the trigger position (on the left side of the waveform display) is assigned analysis numbers in descending order (-1, -2, and so on). Data after the trigger position (on the right side of the waveform display) is assigned analysis numbers in ascending order (0, 1, 2, and so on).

## Analysis Number (List No.), Data Number (Data No.)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the analysis number (List No.) or data number (Data No.).

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu

#### When selecting from the list of analysis results

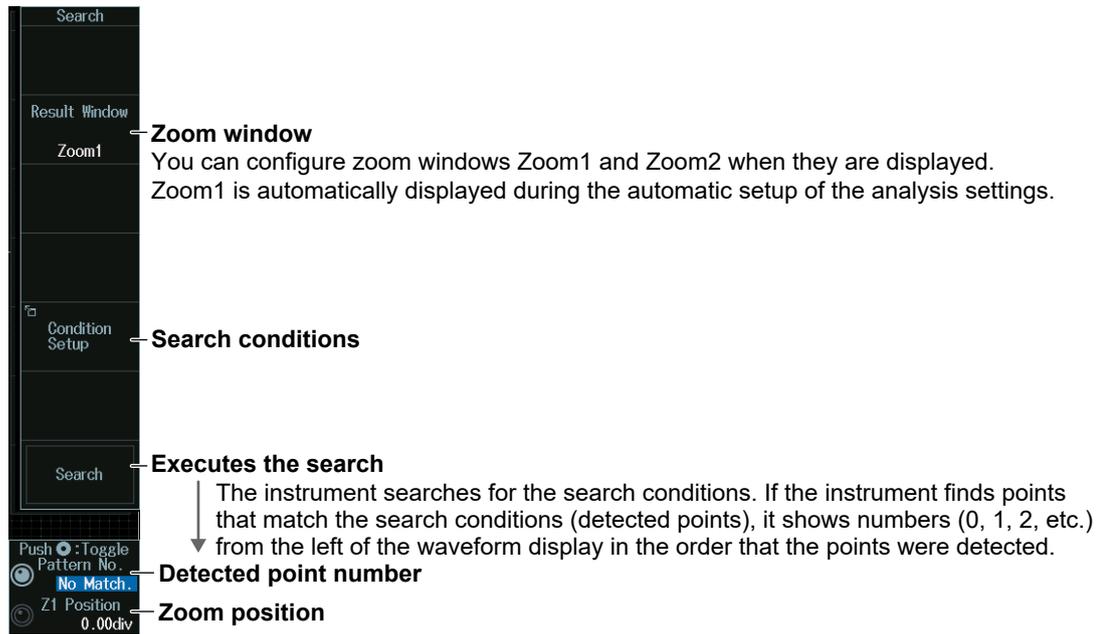
Analysis number

#### When selecting from the detailed display of the analysis results list (when SET is pressed)

Data number

### Search Setup (Search)

Press the **Search** soft key to display the following menu.



### Search Conditions (Condition Setup)

Press the **CONDITION SETUP** soft key to display the following menu.



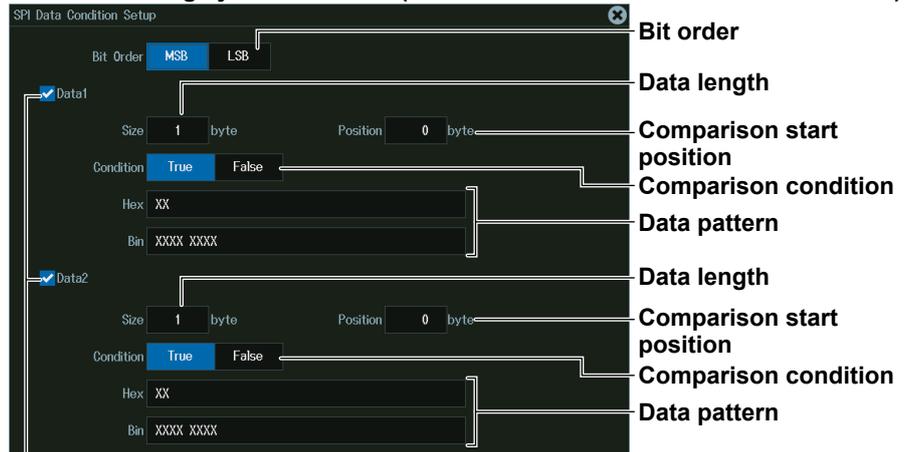
Search conditions

When the wiring system is 3 Wire (the search condition is Data1 only)



Set the value of up to four consecutive bytes of data from the comparison start position as a search condition

When the wiring system is 4 Wire (the search conditions are Data1 and Data2)

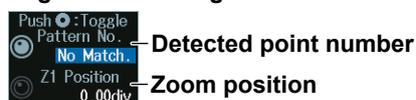


Set the value of up to four consecutive bytes of data from the comparison start position as a search condition

### Detected Point Number and Zoom Position (Pattern No. /Z1 Position or Z2 Position)

1. Execute a search. Check that a location matching the search conditions is found.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the detected point number (Pattern No.) and zoom position (Z1 Position or Z2 Position).
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between detected point number (Pattern No.) and zoom position (Z1 Position or Z2 Position).

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



## 12.10 Analyzing and Searching User-Defined Serial Bus Signals

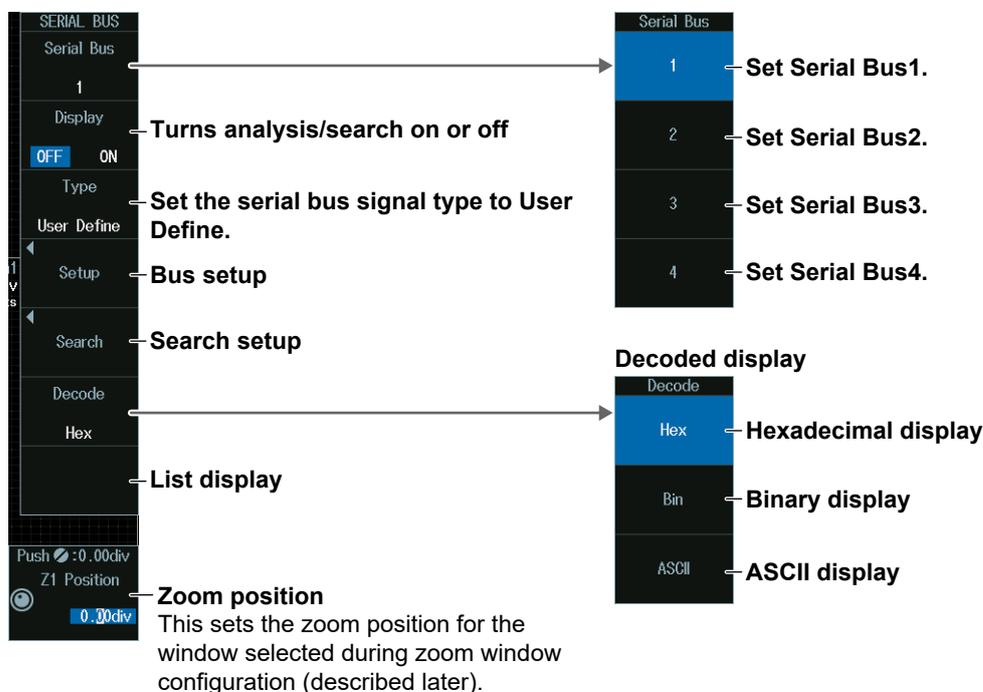
This section explains the following settings for analyzing or searching user-defined serial bus signals:

- Turning analysis and search displays on or off
- Serial bus signal types
- Bus setup
  - Data source, bit rate, decoding start point, clock source, enable source, latch source
- Decoded display
- Zoom position
- Search settings
  - Zoom window, search type, and search execution

► [“Analyzing and Searching Serial Bus Signals,”](#)  
[“Analyzing and Searching User-Defined Serial Bus Signals \(User Define\)”](#)  
in the Features Guide

### SERIAL BUS User Define Menu

1. Press **SHIFT+SEARCH** (SERIAL BUS) to display the SERIAL BUS menu.
  - You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the SERIAL BUS menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
  - You can also press **ANALYSIS** and then the **To SERIAL BUS** soft key to display the SERIAL BUS menu.
  - The instrument can analyze and search up to four serial bus signals. To switch to the setup menu, press the Serial Bus soft key and select a number from 1 to 4.
2. Press the **Type** soft key. From the setup menu that appears, select **User Define** to display the following menu.



### Zoom Position (Z1 Position or Z2 Position)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the zoom position (Z1 Position or Z2 Position).

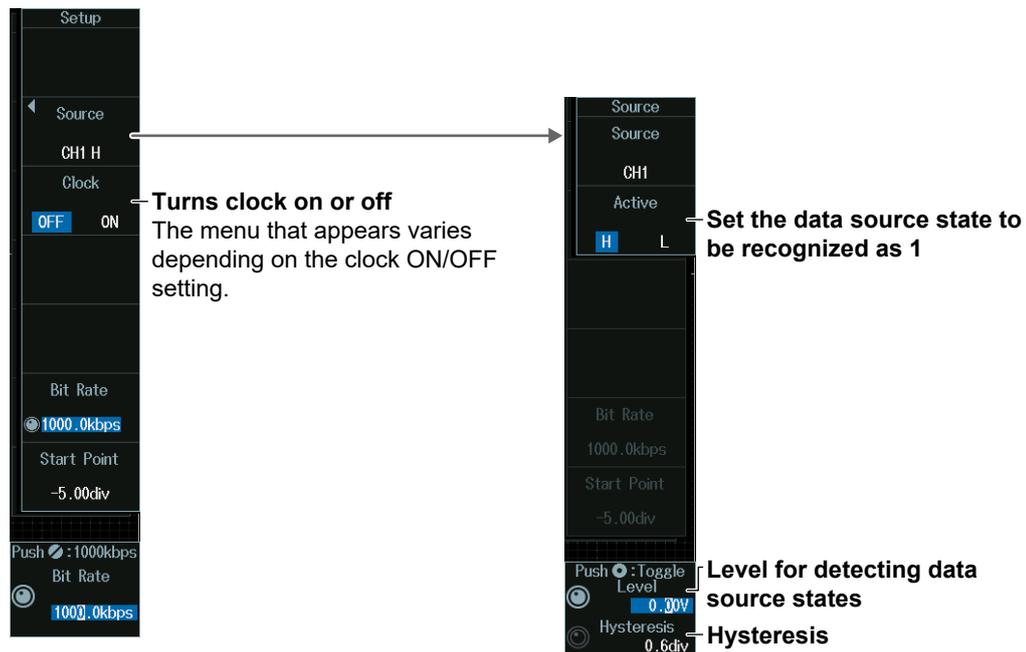
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



### Bus Setup (Setup)

Press the **Setup** soft key to display the following menu.

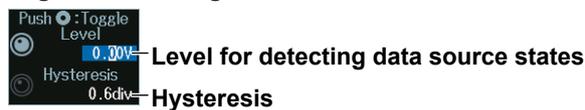


### Level for Detecting Data Source States (Level, Hysteresis)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level or hysteresis.

- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
- To set the level, you can drag the level display line on the screen.

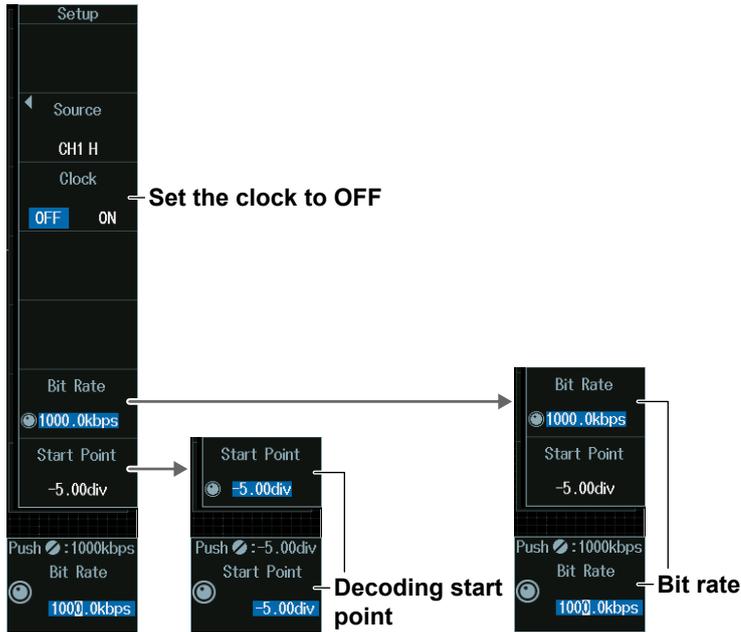
#### Jog shuttle setting menu



Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between level and hysteresis.

### When Not Using the Clock (OFF)

Press the **Clock** soft key to select OFF. The following menu appears.



### Decoding Start Point (Start Point)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the decoding start point.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu

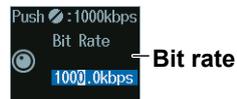


### Bit Rate (Bit Rate)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the bit rate.

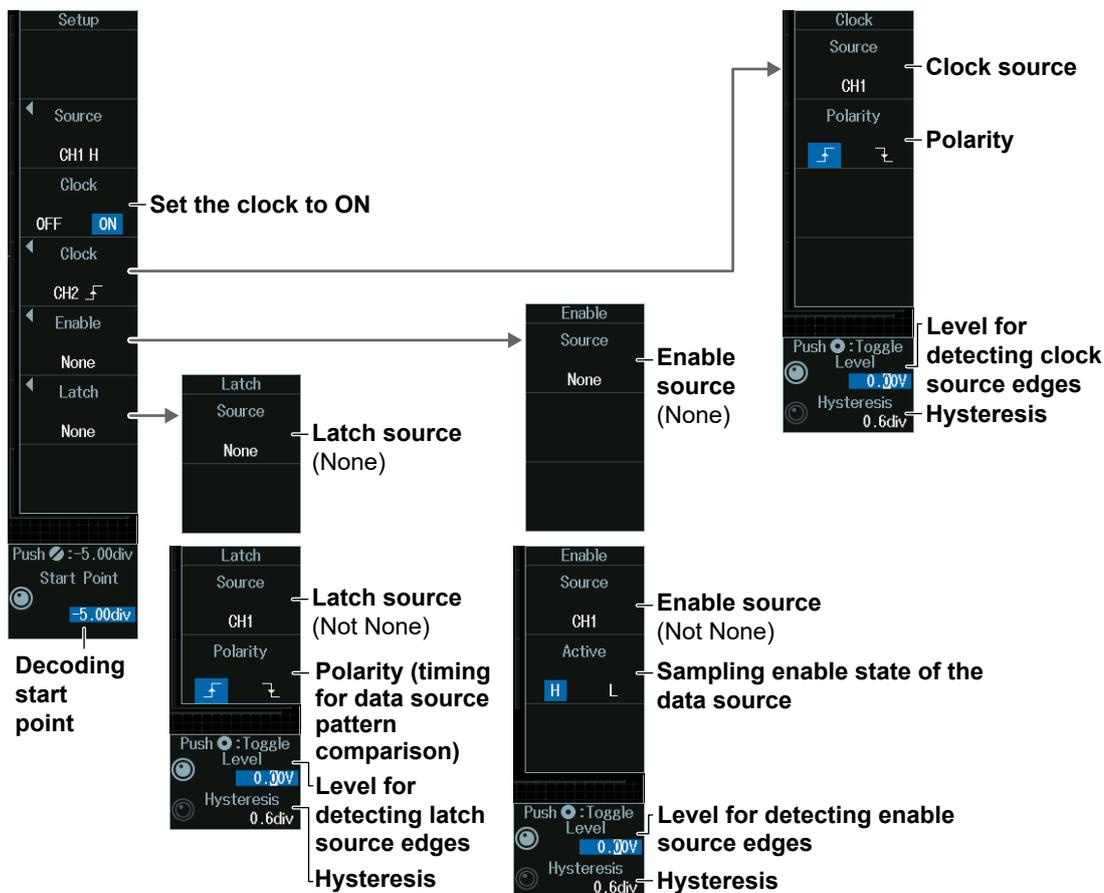
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



### When Using the Clock (ON)

Press the **Clock** soft key to select ON. The following menu appears.

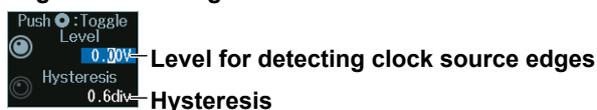


### Level for Detecting Clock Source Edges (Level, Hysteresis)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level or hysteresis.

- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
- To set the level, you can drag the level display line on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between level and hysteresis.

### Note

#### Clock Source Polarity

Specify which clock source edge causes the data source to be sampled.

### Level for Detecting Enable Source Edges (Level, Hysteresis)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level or hysteresis.

- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
- To set the level, you can drag the level display line on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between level and hysteresis.

### Note

---

#### Enable Source State

When the data source is sampled in sync with the clock source, the period for which data source sampling is enabled is controlled using the enable source.

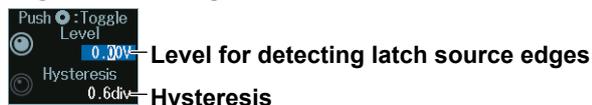
---

### Level for Detecting Latch Source Edges (Level, Hysteresis)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the level or hysteresis.

- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
- To set the level, you can drag the level display line on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between level and hysteresis.

### Note

---

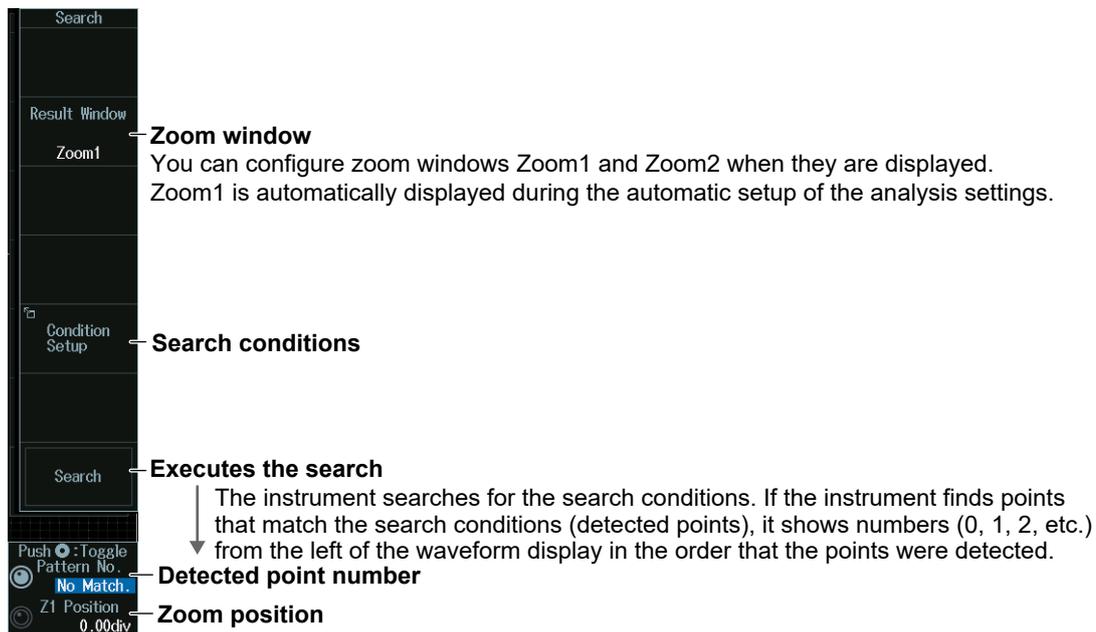
#### Latch Source Polarity

Specify the timing at which the data source pattern sampled in sync with the clock source is latched. The latched data pattern is compared to the pattern specified for the search condition.

---

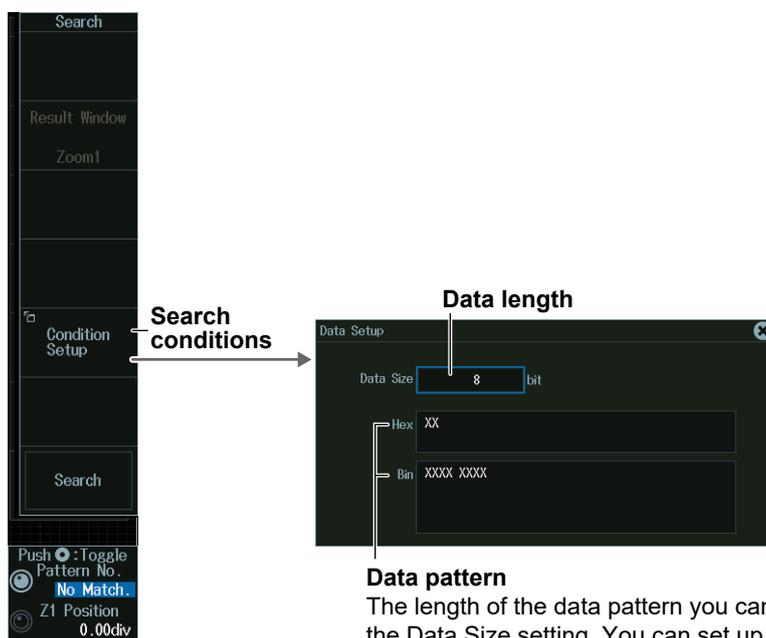
## Search Setup (Search)

Press the **Search** soft key to display the following menu.



## Search Conditions (Condition Setup)

Press the **Condition Setup** soft key to display the following menu.



### Detected Point Number and Zoom Position (Pattern No. /Z1 Position or Z2 Position)

1. Execute a search. Check that a location matching the search conditions is found.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the detected point number (Pattern No.) and zoom position (Z1 Position or Z2 Position).
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between detected point number (Pattern No.) and zoom position (Z1 Position or Z2 Position).

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



## 12.11 Displaying Multiple Lists

This section explains how to list the decoded results of multiple serial bus signals simultaneously.

- ▶ “Analyzing and Searching Serial Bus Signals,” “List Display (List)” in the Features Guide

### Selecting Each Serial Bus Signal

1. Select the serial bus signal number from **Serial Bus1** to **Serial Bus4**.
2. Press the **Type** soft key to select the serial bus signal type.  
For instructions on how to set up serial bus signals, see sections 12.1 to 12.10.
3. Press the **Display** soft key to select ON.  
The analysis results of the serial bus signals that are turned on are displayed in the list at step 4.

### Showing the List of Analysis Results (List)

4. Press the **List** or **List/Trend** soft key and then the **Show List** soft key.
  - The soft key names differ depending on the type of serial bus signal.
  - The list of serial bus signals cannot be displayed if the analysis in search display (Display) is turned off.

#### Example:

When List Size is set to Half(Upper), and the serial bus signal types are set as follows  
Serial Bus1 (S1): FlexRay, Serial Bus2 (S2): CAN, Serial Bus3 (S3): CAN, Serial Bus4 (S4): UART

#### List of analysis results

S1: FlexRay			S2: CAN			S3: CAN			S4: UART		
No.	Time(ms)	S/D	No.	Time(ms)	Frame	No.	Time(ms)	Frame	No.	Time(ms)	Data
-3	-0.152032	S	-2	-0.103024		0	-0.145448	Erro	0	-0.00983	57 4
-2	-0.100832	S	-1	-0.041624	Erro	1	0.046552		1	0.16739	59 4
-1	-0.040632	S	0	-0.000624	Data	2	0.094552	Erro	2	0.38541	57 4
0	0.001658	D	1	0.073776		3	0.350560		3	0.35243	59 4
1	0.052768	D	2	0.112776	Erro				4	0.72045	57 4
2	0.102968	D	3	0.204176					5	0.69747	59 4
3	0.153168	S	4	0.255376							
4	0.206368	S	5	0.306576	Data						
5	0.257568	S	6	0.369376	Erro						
6	0.308768	S	7	0.408976	Rem						
7	0.359968	S	8	0.483576							
8	0.411168	D									

#### Cursor

The cursor of the list that is being used is highlighted.  
Only the frame appears for cursors of lists that are not being used.

#### ESC Key



**F1 key**  
(Moves the cursor to the left)

**F2 key**  
(Moves the cursor to the right)

**F3 key**  
(Expands the list you want to use or returns to the original screen)

## 13.1 Displaying Waveform Histograms

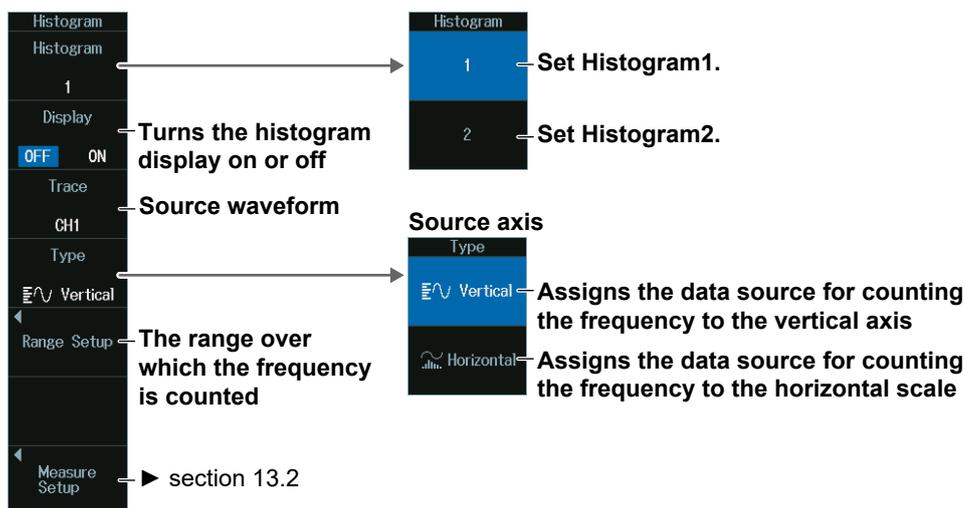
This section explains the following settings for displaying a histogram of the frequency of data occurrence in a specified area:

- Turning the histogram on or off
- Source waveform
- Source axis
- The range over which the frequency is counted

► “Waveform Histogram Display” in the Features Guide

### ANALYSIS Histogram Menu

1. Press **ANALYSIS** to display the ANALYSIS menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (  ) in the upper left of the screen and select the ANALYSIS menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Histogram** soft key to display the following menu.  
Up to two histograms can be displayed. To switch the setup menu, press the Histogram soft key.



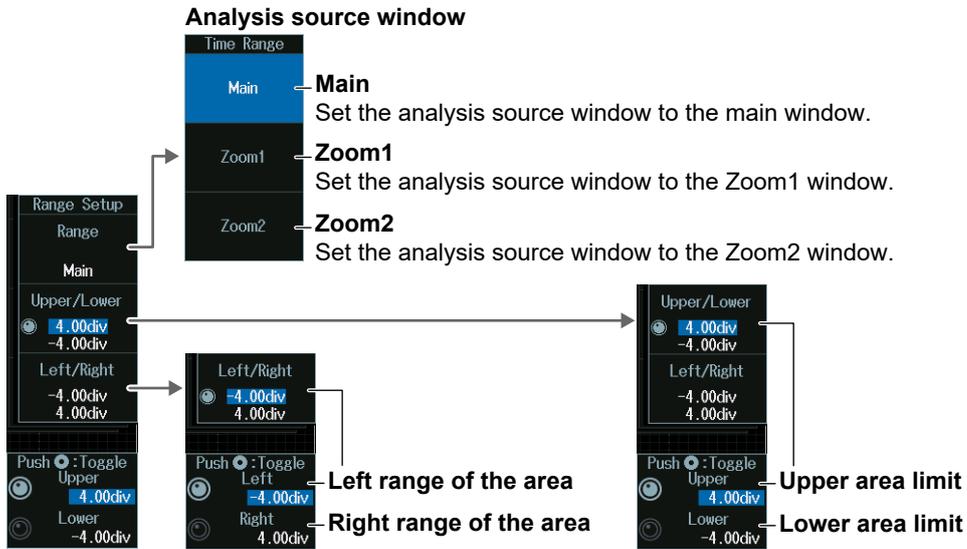
#### Note

The available display source waveform settings vary depending on the model.

- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8, Math1 to Math8
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math4

### Range over Which to Count the Frequency (Range Setup)

Press the **Range Setup** soft key to display the following menu.



### Upper and Lower Range Limits (Upper/Lower)

1. Press the **Upper/Lower** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the upper range limit (Upper) or lower range limit (Lower).
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between upper and lower range limits.
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



### Left and Right Range Limits (Left/Right)

1. Press the **Left/Right** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the left range limit (Left) or right range limit (Right).
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between left and right range limits.
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



## 13.2 Measuring Histogram Parameters

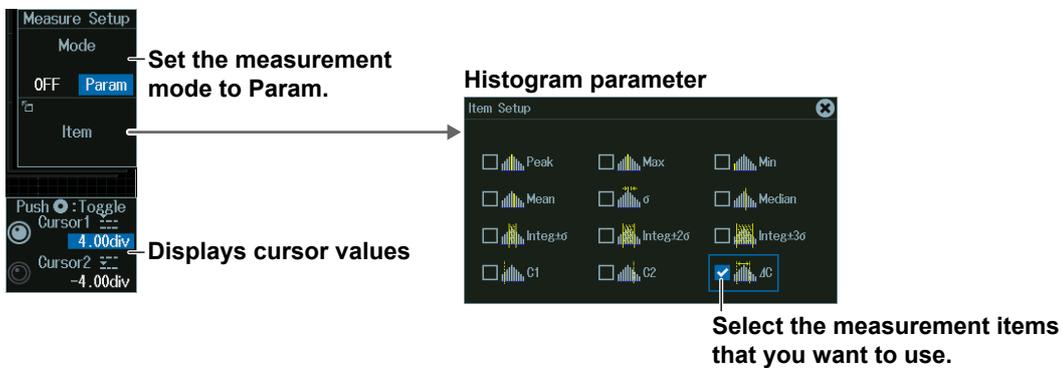
This section explains the following settings for measuring histogram parameters:

- Measurement mode
- Measurement items
- Cursor measurement

► “Measurement (Measure Setup)” in the Features Guide

### ANALYSIS Histogram Measure Setup Menu

1. Press **ANALYSIS** to display the ANALYSIS menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (MENU) in the upper left of the screen and select the ANALYSIS menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press **Histogram** and then the **Measure Setup** soft key to display the following menu.

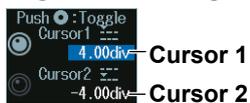


### Displaying Cursor Values (Cursor1/Cursor2)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set cursor 1 (Cursor1) or cursor 2 (Cursor2).

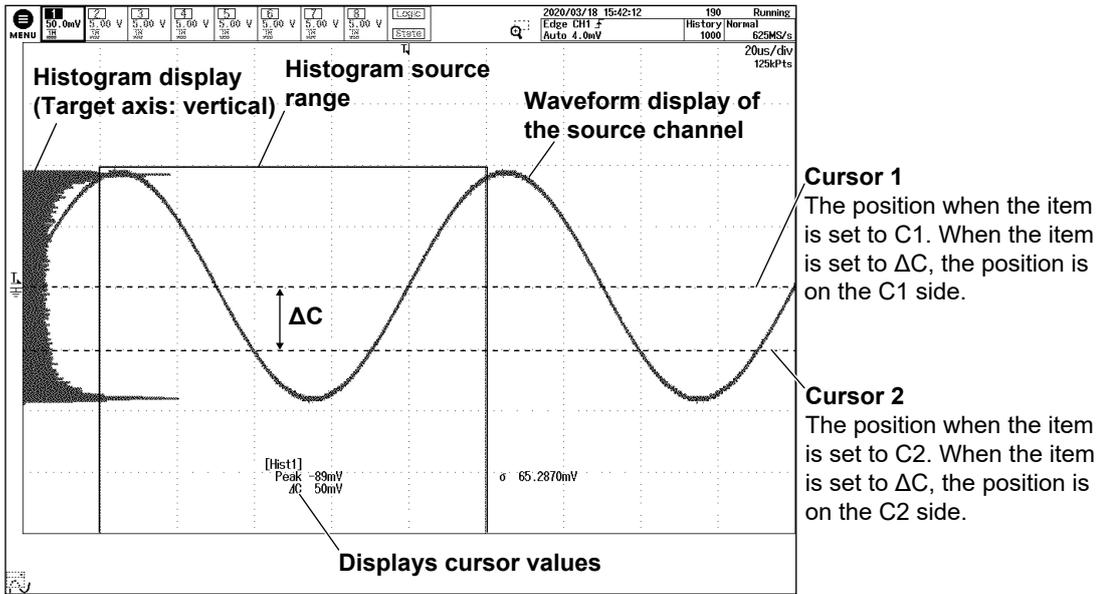
- Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between cursor 1 and cursor 2.
- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



## 13.2 Measuring Histogram Parameters

### Histogram Parameter Measurement



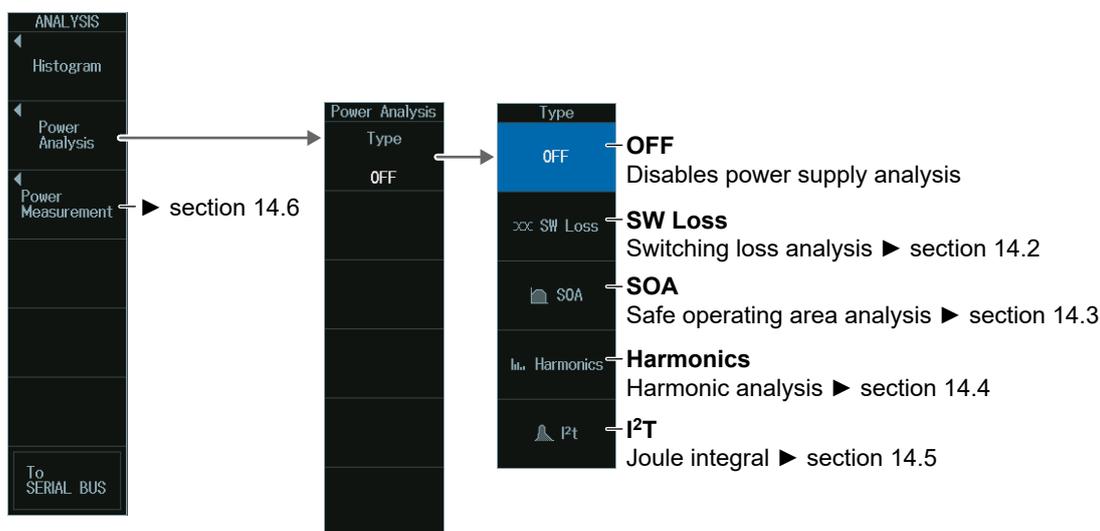
## 14.1 Power Supply Analysis Types

This section explains how to set the power supply analysis type.

► “Power Supply Analysis” in the Features Guide

### ANALYSIS Power Analysis Menu

1. Press **ANALYSIS** to display the ANALYSIS menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (Ⓜ) in the upper left of the screen and select the ANALYSIS menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Power Analysis** soft key to display the following menu.



### Note

Power supply analysis and power measurement of the power supply analysis feature cannot be executed simultaneously.

- On 8ch models, if any of the power measurement items, Power Measurement1 to Power Measurement4, is set to ON, the power supply analysis is set to OFF. If power supply analysis is set to something other than OFF, all power measurements are set to OFF.
- On 4ch models, if any of the power measurement items, Power Measurement1 to Power Measurement2, is set to ON, the power supply analysis is set to OFF. If power supply analysis is set to something other than OFF, all power measurements are set to OFF.

## 14.2 Analyzing Switching Loss

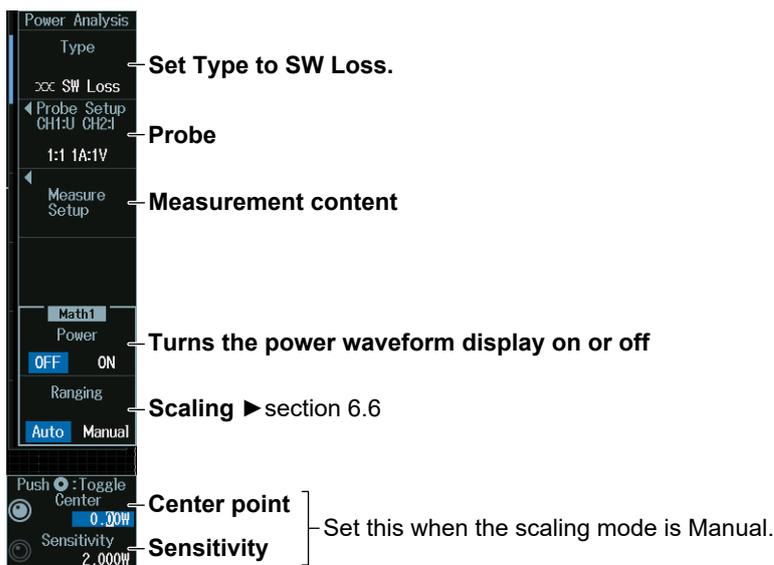
This section explains the following settings for analyzing switching loss:

- Probe
- Measurement content
  - Loss type, level setup, reference levels for voltage channels, measurement items, turning measurement location indicator on or off, statistical processing, measurement source window, measurement range
- Turning power trace display on or off
- Scaling
- Center point and sensitivity

► “Switching Loss Analysis (SW Loss)” in the Features Guide

### ANALYSIS Power Analysis Menu

1. Press **ANALYSIS** to display the ANALYSIS menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the ANALYSIS menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Power Analysis** soft key, the **Type** soft key, and then the **SW Loss** soft key to display the following menu.

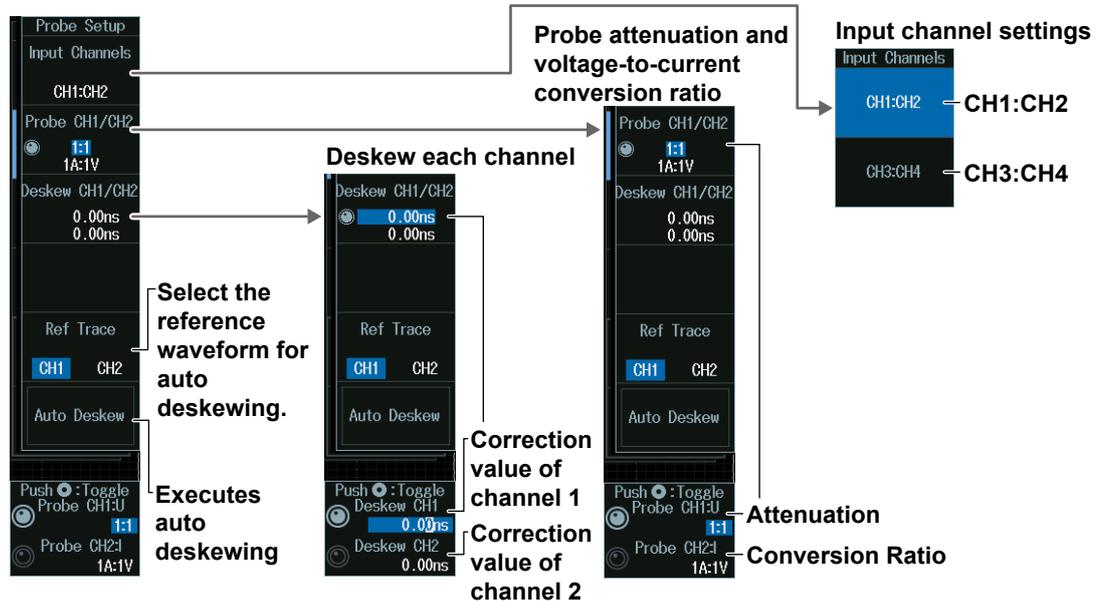


### Note

- If you set the power supply analysis type to SW Loss, automated measurement of waveform parameters is enabled. The measured values from the measurement items set on the MEASURE menu and the switching loss measurement items are displayed on the screen. A maximum of 30 measurement items can be displayed. If measured switching loss values are not displayed, reduce the number of MEASURE menu measurement items.
  - section 9.1
- If you set the power supply analysis type (Type) to SW Loss, the cycle mode (Cycle Mode) on the Item Setup screen (page 9-2) on the MEASURE menu is fixed to SW Loss.
- If the power waveform display is turned on, the operator (Operation) of the computation/reference waveform (MATH/REF menu) is fixed to Power, and other operators cannot be used.

## Probe (Probe Setup)

Press the **Probe Setup** soft key to display the following menu.



### Probe Attenuation Ratio and Voltage-to-Current Conversion Ratio (Probe CH1/CH2 or Probe CH3/CH4)

1. Press the **Probe CH1/CH2** or **Probe CH3/CH4** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the attenuation ratio (Probe CH1:U, Probe CH3:U) or conversion ratio (Probe CH2:I, Probe CH4:I).
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between attenuation ratio and conversion ratio.
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu

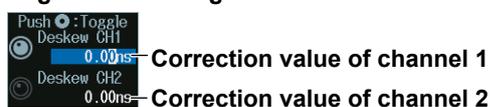


The channel number display varies depending on the input channel selection.

### Deskewing Each Channel (Deskew CH1/CH2)

1. Press the **Deskew CH1/CH2** or **Deskew CH3/CH4** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the correction value of channels 1 and 3 (Deskew CH1/CH3) or channels 2 and 4 (Deskew CH2/CH3).
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between the correction value of channel 1 or channel 2.
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



The channel number display varies depending on the input channel selection.

### Measurement Setup (Measure Setup)

Press the **Measure Setup** soft key to display the following menu.

**Loss measurement method of the specified range**

- Conduction Calc
  - $U \times I$  — Measures according to the expression
  - $RDS(on) \times I^2$  — Measures using the on-resistance of the device
  - $VCE(sat) \times I$  — Measures using the collector-emitter saturation voltage of the device

**Statistical processing**

- Mode: OFF — Disables statistical processing
- Continuous — section 9.2
- Cycle — section 9.2
- History — section 9.2

**Cyclic statistical processing (Cycle)**

- Statistics — section 9.2
- Mode
- Exec
- Cycle Trace is not available in switching loss analysis.
- List
- Trend/Histogram

**Level Setup**

- Level Setup — Level setup
- Ref Levels (CH1) — Reference level
- Item Setup — Measurement item
- Indicator: ON — Turns the measurement location display on or off
- Statistics: OFF
- Time Range
- Main

**Measurement source window**

- Time Range
- Main — Main: Set the measurement source window to the main window.
- Zoom1 — Zoom1: Set the measurement source window to the Zoom1 window.
- Zoom2 — Zoom2: Set the measurement source window to the Zoom2 window.

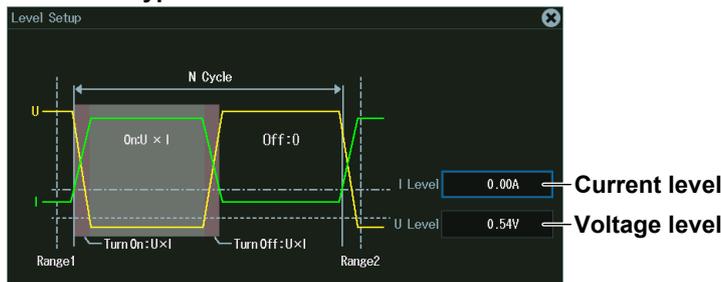
**Measurement time period**

- Push: Toggle
- T Range1: 5.00div
- T Range2: 5.00div

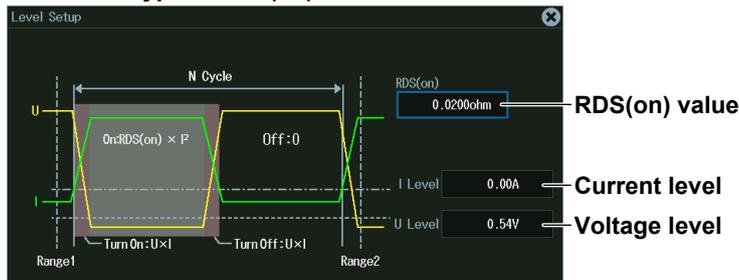
### Level Setup (Level Setup)

Press the **Level Setup** soft key to display the following screen.

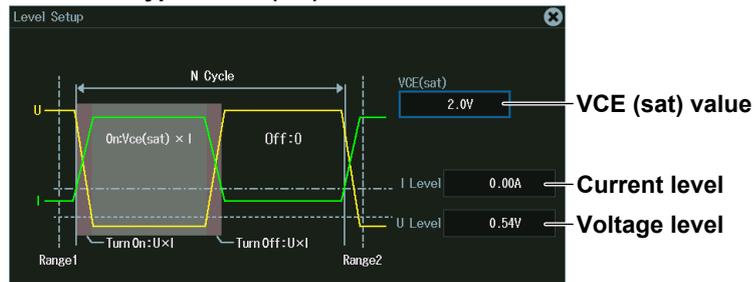
**When loss type is  $U \times I$**



**When loss type is  $RDS(on) \times I^2$**

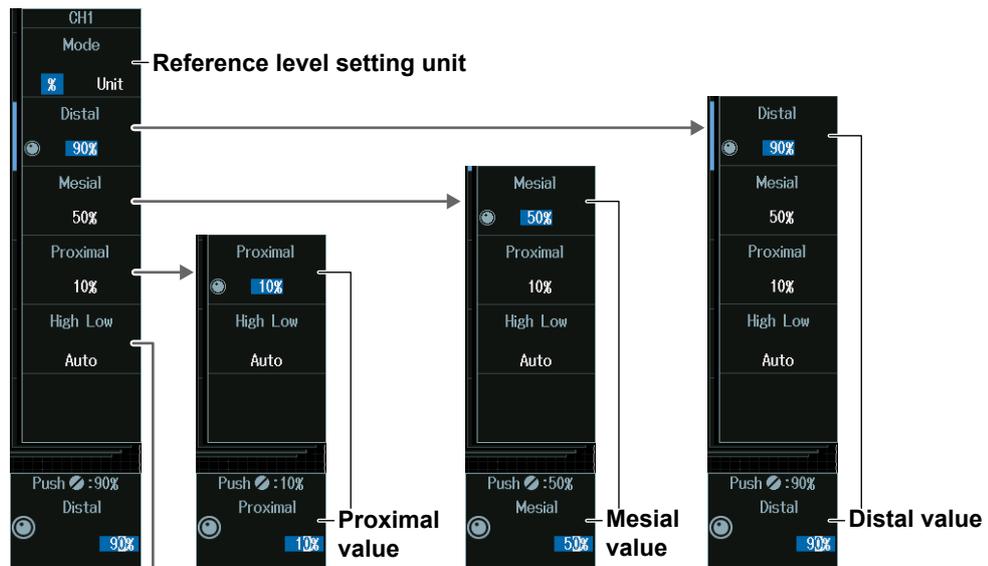


When loss type is  $VCE(sat) \times I$



Reference Levels (Ref Levels)

Press the **Ref Levels** soft key to display the following menu.



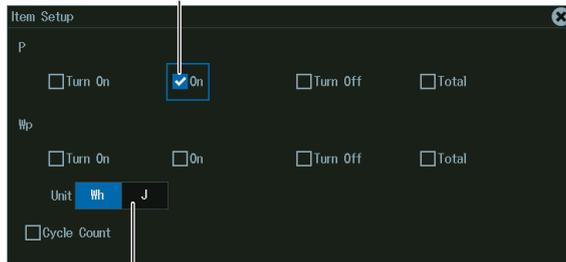
How to determine the high and low values

- High Low
- Auto — Automatically take into account the effects of ringing and spikes
- Max-Min — Use the maximum and minimum values in the measurement range
- Histogram — Make the maximum frequent values the maximum and minimum values

### Measurement Items (Item Setup)

Press the **Item Setup** soft key to display the following menu.

Select the measurement items that you want to use.



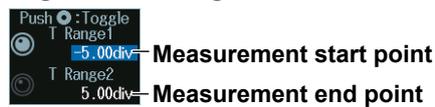
Power unit

### Measurement Time Period (T Range1/T Range2)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the measurement start point (T Range1) or measurement end point (T Range2).

- Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between measurement start point or measurement end point.
- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



## 14.3 Performing Safe Operating Area Analysis

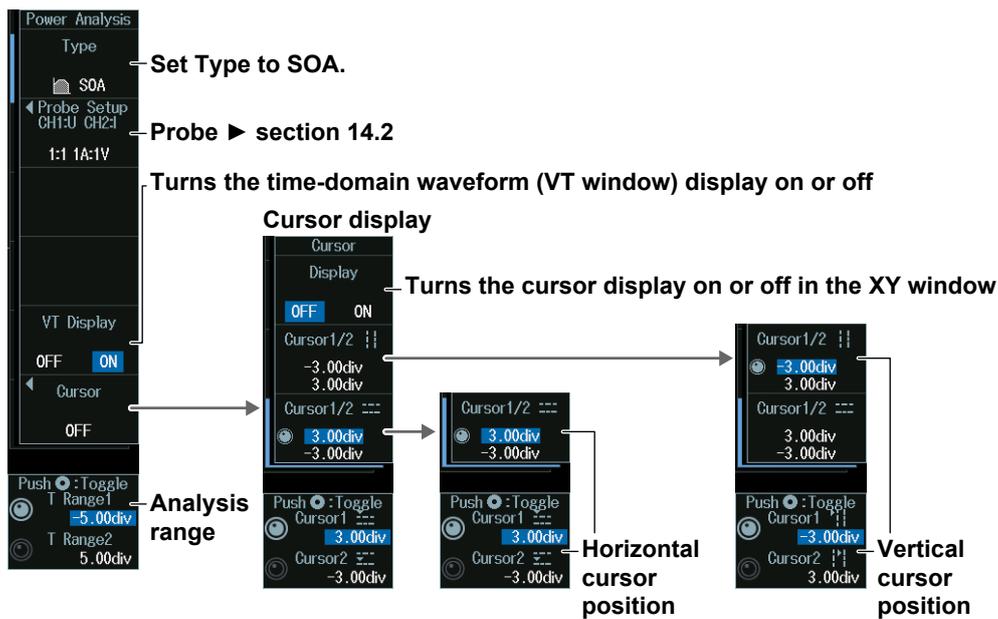
The instrument can display the safe operating area of power by plotting the voltage signal input channel and current input signal channel on the XY waveform display. This section explains the following settings for performing safe operating area analysis:

- Probe
- Turning the VT waveform display on or off
- Cursor display
- Measurement range

► “Safe Operating Area Analysis (SOA)” in the Features Guide

### ANALYSIS Power Analysis Menu

1. Press **ANALYSIS** to display the ANALYSIS menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the ANALYSIS menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Power Analysis** soft key, the **Type** soft key, and then the **SOA** soft key to display the following menu.



#### Note

If you set the power supply analysis type to SOA, XY waveforms are automatically displayed on the screen.

### Displaying the VT Waveforms (VT Display)

Press the **VT Display** soft key to show or hide time-domain waveforms.

### Analysis Range (T Range1/T Range2)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the analysis start point (T Range1) or analysis end point (T Range2).

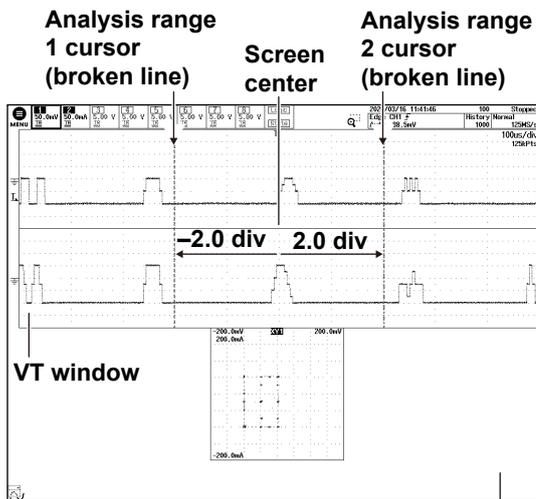
- Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between analysis start point or analysis end point.
- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



### Time-Domain Waveform (VT Window) Display and Analysis Range

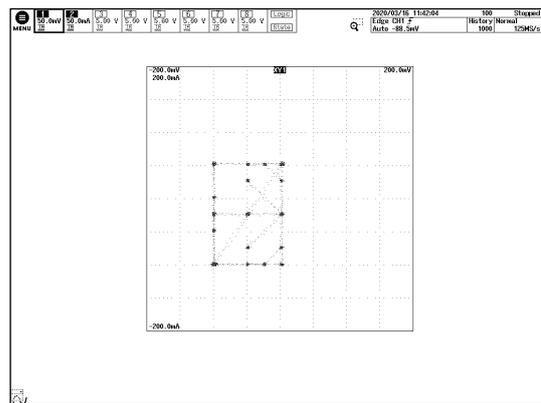
- When the VT window is shown



The XY waveform in the range enclosed by the analysis range cursor on the VT window is displayed.

**XY window**

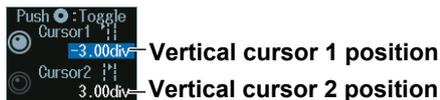
- When the VT window is hidden



## Vertical Cursor Positions (Cursor1/Cursor2)

1. Press the **Cursor** soft key.
2. Press the **Cursor1/2** soft key.
3. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set vertical cursor 1 (Cursor1) or vertical cursor 2 (Cursor2).
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between vertical cursor 1 and vertical cursor 2.
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu



## Note

### Setting the Vertical Cursor Positions

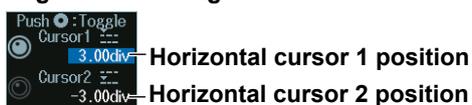
If you press SET several times and make the jog shuttle control both vertical cursor 1 and vertical cursor 2, you can move them together.

When you move the two cursors together, the cursors no longer move when one of the cursors reaches the edge of the screen.

## Horizontal Cursor Position (Cursor1/Cursor2)

1. Press the **Cursor** soft key.
2. Press the **Cursor1/2** soft key.
3. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set horizontal cursor 1 (Cursor1) or horizontal cursor 2 (Cursor2).
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between horizontal cursor 1 and horizontal cursor 2.
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu



## Note

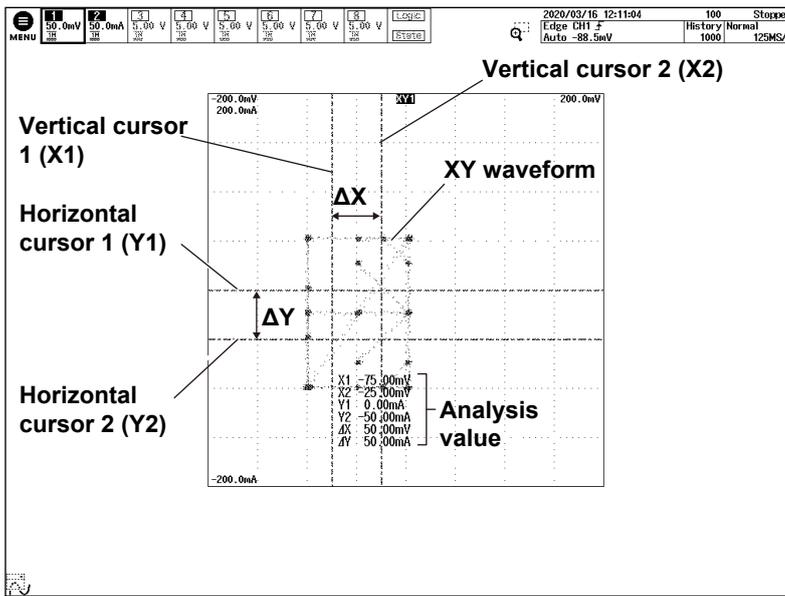
### Setting the Horizontal Cursor Positions

If you press SET several times and make the jog shuttle control both horizontal cursor 1 and horizontal cursor 2, you can move them together.

When you move the two cursors together, the cursors no longer move when one of the cursors reaches the edge of the screen.

### 14.3 Performing Safe Operating Area Analysis

#### Safe Operating Area Analysis (Cursor Display)



## 14.4 Performing Harmonic Analysis

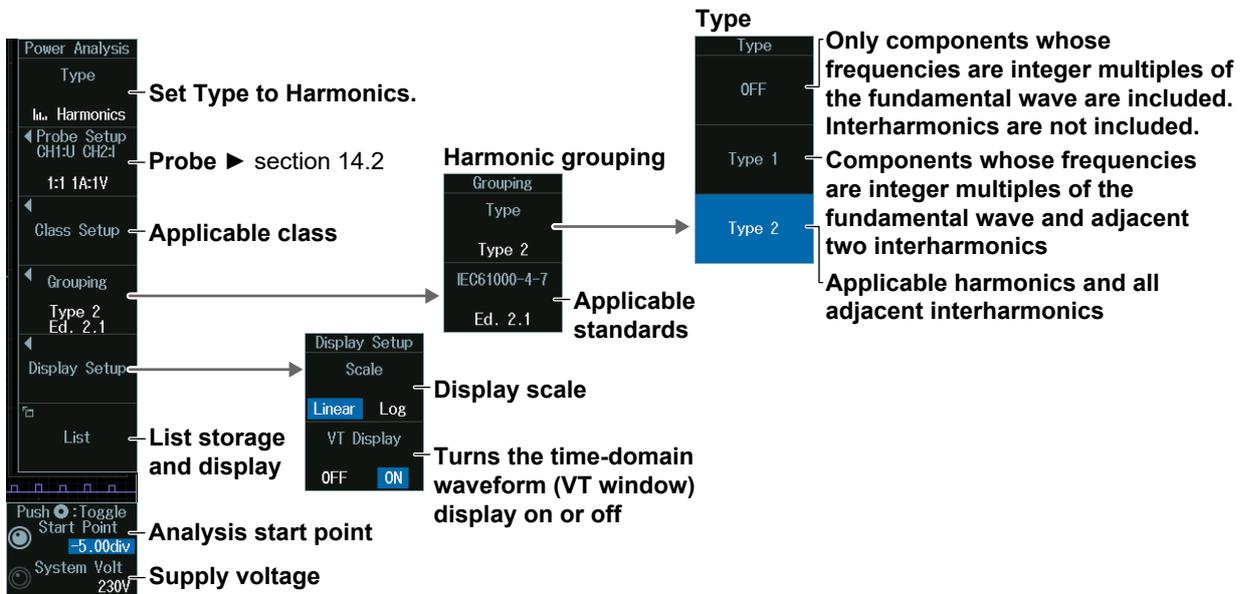
This section explains the following settings for performing harmonic analysis:

- Probe
- Applicable class
- Harmonic grouping
- Display setup
- List storage and display
- Analysis start point
- EUT's power supply voltage

► “Harmonic Analysis (Harmonics)” in the Features Guide

### ANALYSIS Power Analysis Menu

1. Press **ANALYSIS** to display the ANALYSIS menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the ANALYSIS menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Power Analysis** soft key, the **Type** soft key, and then the **Harmonics** soft key to display the following menu.



### Analysis Start Point and Supply Voltage (Start Point/System Volt)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the analysis start point (Start Point) or supply voltage (System Volt).

- Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between analysis start point or supply voltage.
- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

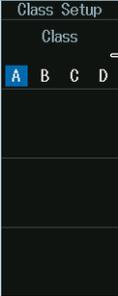
#### Jog shuttle setting menu



### Applicable Class (Class Setup)

Press the **Class Setup** soft key to display the following menu.

**Applicable class**

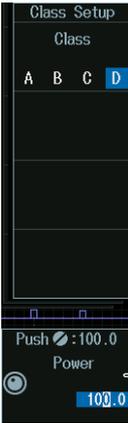


**When the Applicable Class Is C**



- Obtains the EUT's power factor**  
You can select this when the active power exceeds 25 W (Over 25 Watt is set to True).
- Active power exceeds 25 W (True) or not (False)**  
True False
- EUT's fundamental current**  
Fund Current 11.000A
- Set the power factor.**  
You can select this when the active power exceeds 25 W (Over 25 Watt is set to True).  
 $\lambda$  0.800

**When the Applicable Class Is D**



- EUT's active power**  
Power 100.0

**Note**

While  $\lambda$  (the power factor) is being obtained, Get  $\lambda$  changes to Abort. It may take time to obtain  $\lambda$  if the record length is long. To stop obtaining  $\lambda$ , press the Abort soft key.

### Setting the EUT's Fundamental Current and Power Factor (Fund Current/ $\lambda$ )

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the EUT's fundamental current (Fund Current) or power factor ( $\lambda$ ).

- Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between the EUT's fundamental current and power factor.
- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

**Jog shuttle setting menu**



- EUT's fundamental current**  
Fund Current 11.000A
- Set the power factor.**  
 $\lambda$  0.800

### EUT's Active Power (Power)

Turn the jog shuttle to set the EUT's active power (Power).

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

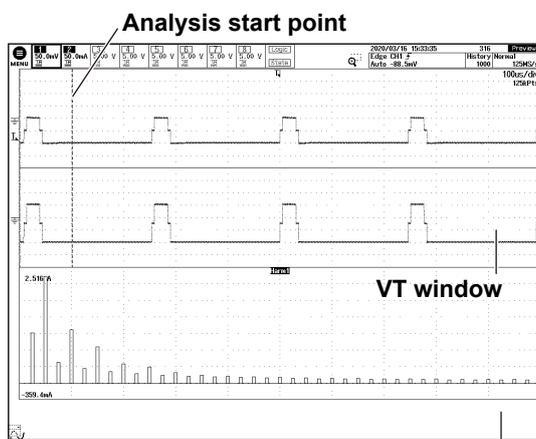


### Displaying the VT Waveforms (VT Display)

Press the **Display Setup** soft key and then the **VT Display** soft key to show or hide time-domain waveforms.

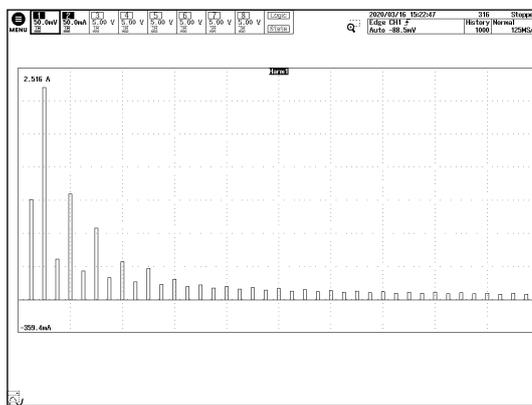
#### Time-Domain Waveform (VT Window) Display

- When the VT window is shown



Harmonics display window

- When the VT window is hidden



### List Storage and Display (List)

Press the **List** soft key to display the following menu.

When the Applicable Class Is A, B, or D

Order	Measure(A)	Limit(A)	Info
1	0.897		
2	0.000	1.080	
3	0.299	2.300	
4	0.000	0.430	
5	0.179	1.140	
6	0.000	0.300	
7	0.128	0.770	
8	0.000	0.230	
9	0.099	0.400	
10	0.000	0.184	
11	0.082	0.330	
12	0.000	0.153	

Harmonics

Total harmonic distortion

Rms value

- List
- File List
- SD-0
- File Name
- \*\*\*.CSV
- Save List
- List Size
- Half(Upper)

→ section 17.2

→ section 17.2

← Saves the list

← List size and display position

When the Applicable Class Is C

Order	Measure(A)	Limit(A)	Measure(%)	Limit(%)	Info
1	0.569	0.569(Max)			
2	0.000	0.011	0.069	2.000	
3	0.064	0.137	11.225	30.000	
4	0.001		0.117		
5	0.023	0.057	4.005	10.000	
6	0.001		0.123		
7	0.011	0.040	1.988	7.000	
8	0.001		0.164		
9	0.006	0.028	1.139	5.000	
10	0.001		0.170		
11	0.005	0.017	0.860	3.000	
12	0.001		0.102		

THD 12.2%  
RMS 0.573A

## 14.5 Measuring the Joule Integral

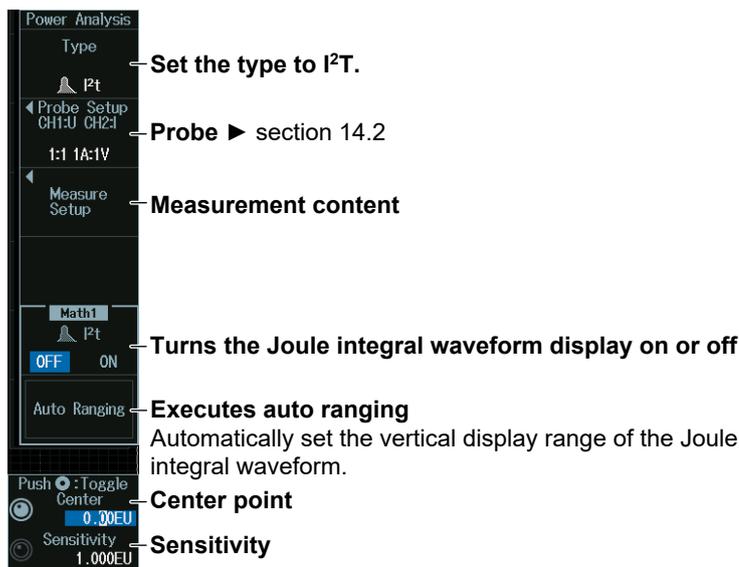
This section explains the following settings for measuring the Joule integral:

- Probe
- Measurement content
- Turning Joule integral waveform display on or off
- Auto scaling
- Turning Joule integral on or off, measurement source window, measurement range
- Center point and sensitivity

▶ “Measuring Inrush Current by Computing the Joule Integral (I<sup>2</sup>t)” in the Features Guide

### ANALYSIS Power Analysis Menu

1. Press **ANALYSIS** to display the ANALYSIS menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the ANALYSIS menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Power Analysis** soft key, the **Type** soft key, and then the **I<sup>2</sup>T** soft key to display the following menu.

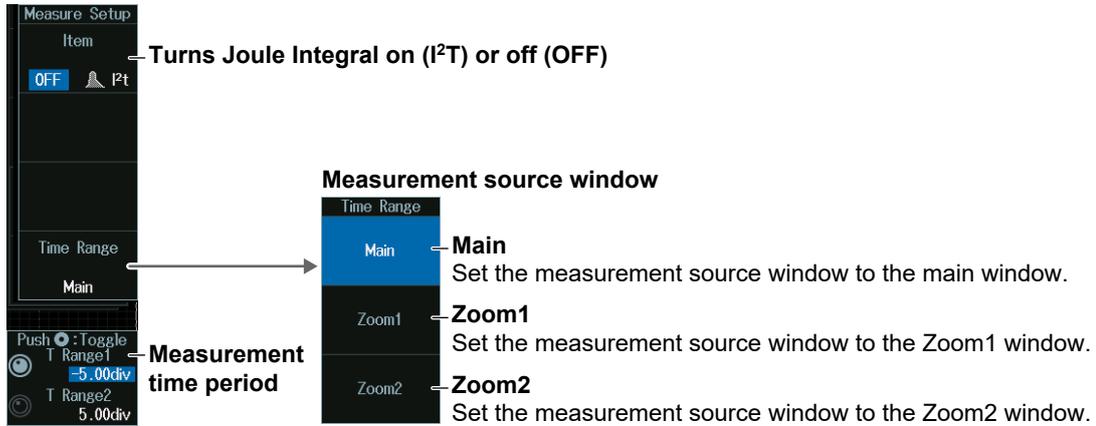


#### Note

If the Joule integral waveform display is turned on, the operator (Operation) of the computation/reference waveform (MATH/REF menu) is fixed to I<sup>2</sup>T, and other operators cannot be used.

### Measurement Setup (Measure Setup)

Press the **Measure Setup** soft key to display the following menu.



### Measurement Time Period (T Range1/T Range2)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the measurement start point (T Range1) or measurement end point (T Range2).

- Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between measurement start point or measurement end point.
- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



### Center Position and Sensitivity (Center/Sensitivity)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the center position (Center) or sensitivity (Sensitivity).

- Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between center position and sensitivity.
- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



## 14.6 Measuring Power

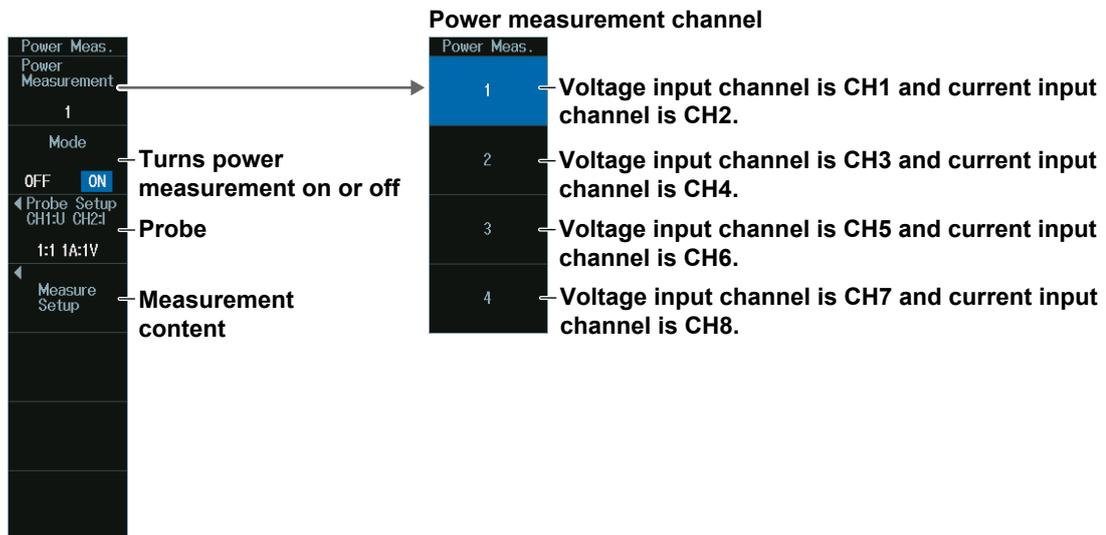
This section explains the following settings for measuring Joule power:

- Turning power measurement on and off
  - Probe
  - Measurement content
- Measurement items, reference levels for auto measurement, measurement location indicator, cycle mode, calculation that uses automated measurement values, statistical processing, measurement source window, measurement range

► [“Power Measurement \(Power Measurement\)” in the Features Guide](#)

### ANALYSIS Power Measurement Menu

1. Press **ANALYSIS** to display the ANALYSIS menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the ANALYSIS menu from ANALYSIS on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Power Measurement** soft key to display the following menu.

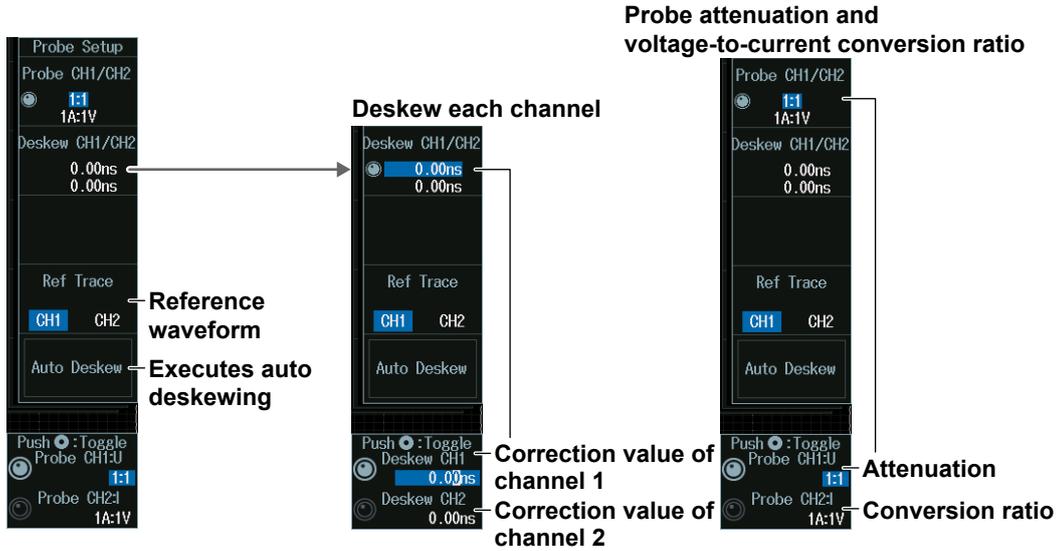


### Note

- The available power measurement channel settings vary depending on the model.
- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
Power Measurement 1 to Power Measurement 4
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
Power Measurement 1 and Power Measurement 2
- For input channels that are assigned to power measurement and whose mode is set to ON, the following standard waveform parameters cannot be set. Because the measurement items of power measurement are the same as the following standard waveform parameters, the power measurement values are used in place of waveform parameters.  
Max, Min, P-P, Rms, Mean, Sdev, Avg Freq
- The power measurement cycle mode (Cycle Mode) and the cycle mode (Cycle Mode) measurement item (Item Setup) on the MEASURE key menu are also changed in sync.

### Probe (Probe Setup)

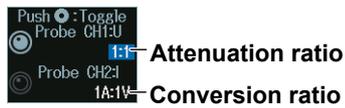
Press the **Probe Setup** soft key to display the following menu.



### Probe Attenuation Ratio and Voltage-to-Current Conversion Ratio (Probe CH1/CH2, CH3/CH4, CH5/CH6, CH7/CH8)

1. Press the **Probe CH1/CH2**, **Probe CH3/CH4**, **Probe CH5/CH6**, or **Probe CH7/CH8** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the attenuation ratio (Probe CH1:U, CH3:U, CH5:U, CH7:U) or conversion ratio (Probe CH2:I, CH4:I, CH6:I, CH8:I).
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between attenuation ratio and conversion ratio.
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu

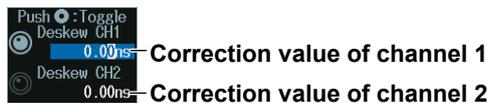


The channel number display varies depending on the input channel selection.

### Deskewing Channels (Deskew CH1/CH2, CH3/CH4, CH5/CH6, CH7/CH8)

1. Press the **Deskew CH1/CH2**, **Deskew CH3/CH4**, **Deskew CH5/CH6**, or **Deskew CH7/CH8** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the channel 1/channel 2, channel 3/channel 4, channel 5/channel 6, or channel 7/channel 8 correction value (Deskew CH1/CH2, CH3/CH4, CH5/CH6, CH7/CH8).
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between the correction value of channel 1 or channel 2.
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



The channel number display varies depending on the input channel selection.

## Measurement Setup (Measure Setup)

1. Press the **Mode** soft key to turn power measurement on.
2. Press the **Measure Setup** soft key to display the following menu.

**Measurement Setup**

- Item Setup — **Measurement item**
- Ref Levels — **Automated measurement reference level**
- Indicator — **Turns the measurement location display on or off**
- OFF
- Cycle Mode — **Cycle mode**  
This is fixed to OFF when the statistics of automatically measured values is set to Cycle.
- OFF
- Calc Setup — **Calculation that uses automated measurement values**
- Statistics — **Processes statistics on automatically measured values**  
▶ section 9.2
- Time Range — **Measurement source window**
- Main

**Cycle Mode**

Mode  
OFF

**When cycle mode is N Cycle**

Mode  
N Cycle  
Cycle Trace  
CH1

Source waveform used to determine the cycle

Push : Toggle  
T Range1 —5.00div  
T Range2 5.00div

## Measurement Items (Item Setup)

Press the **Item Setup** soft key to display the following menu.

**Clear the check boxes of all the measurement items.**

**Select the measurement items that you want to use.**

**Measure Item**

All OFF

Measurement items of voltage input channels CH1, CH3, CH5, and CH7  
Select the items to measure.

UNIT J

Unit

Measurement items of current input channels CH2, CH4, CH6, and CH8  
Select the items to measure.

### Reference Level for Automated Measurement (Ref Levels)

Press the **Ref Levels** soft key. Depending on the power measurement that is selected (Power Measurement1 to Power Measurement4), the following screen appears.

#### Example of Power Measurement 1 (CH1, CH2)

**Reference level setting unit**

**Distal value**

**Mesial value**

**Proximal value**

**High/Low level**

- Auto** — Automatically take into account the effects of ringing and spikes
- Max-Min** — Use the maximum and minimum values in the measurement range
- Histogram** — Make the maximum frequent values the maximum and minimum values

### Calculations That Use Automated Measurement Values (Calc Setup)

Press the **Calc Setup** soft key to display the following menu.

Select the expressions to use. **Expression**

**Name** (up to 8 characters)      **Unit** (up to 4 characters)

Calc	Name	Expression	Unit
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Calc1	Max(C1)	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Calc2	Min(C2)	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Calc3	High(M1)	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Calc4	Low(M2)	

Define an expression by combining computation source waveforms and operators.

Add the results of automated measurement of waveform parameters to the expression.

**Calc 1**

Max(C1)

Hint: [X]

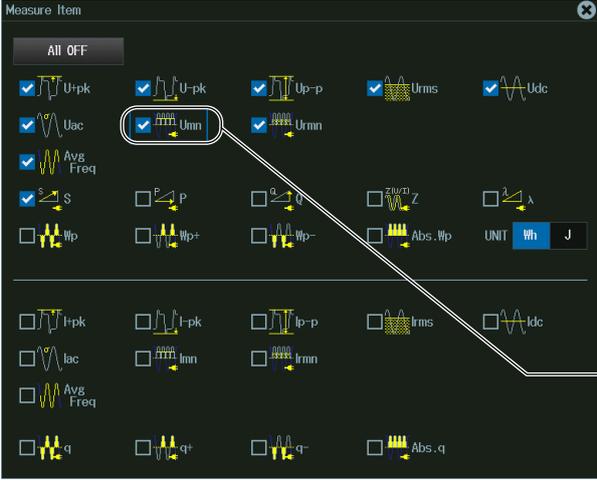
Measure				P1	e	fs	1/fs			
C1	C5	M1	M6	SIN	COS	TAN	7	8	9	/
C2	C6	M2	M6	ASIN	ACOS	ATAN	4	5	6	*
C3	C7	M3	M7	EXP	LN	LOG	1	2	3	-
C4	C8	M4	M8	ABS	P2	SQRT	0	.	Exp	+
A1	A2			,	(	)	Enter			

- )** — Inserts a )
- ←** — Moves the cursor
- — Moves the cursor
- Delete** — Deletes the character at the cursor position
- BS** — Deletes the previous character
- Clear** — Deletes all characters
- Enter** — Enters the expression

## Measurement Location Indicator (Indicator)

1. Press the **Indicator** soft key.  
A portion of the items selected in “Measurement Source Waveform and Measurement Items (Item Setup)” is listed in the setup menu.
2. Use the **jog shuttle** or the **SET** key to select the item whose measurement location you want to indicate.
3. Press **SET** to confirm your selection.  
The measurement location of the item you specify is indicated by a cursor.

**Measurement Items (Measure Item)**

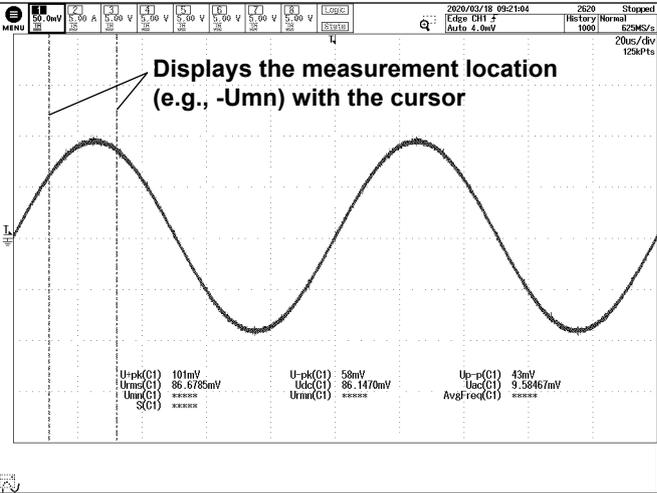


**Setup menu**



The selected measurement items appear in the setup menu.

**Displays the measurement location (e.g., -Umn) with the cursor**



U-pk(C1)	101mV	U-pk(C1)	58mV	U-p-p(C1)	43mV
Urms(C1)	86.6785mV	Udc(C1)	86.1470mV	Uac(C1)	9.58467mV
Umn(C1)	*****	Urmn(C1)	*****	AvgFreq(C1)	*****
S(C1)	*****				

### Note

- If you turn the power measurement on, automated measurement of waveform parameters is enabled. The measured values from the measurement items set on the MEASURE menu and the power measurement items are displayed on the screen. A maximum of 30 measurement items can be displayed. If the measured power values are not displayed, reduce the number of MEASURE menu measurement items. ► section 9.1
- If you turn power measurement on, the cycle mode (Cycle Mode) on the MEASURE key menu's Item Setup screen (page 9-2) is changed according to the power measurement cycle mode (Cycle Mode), and you will not be able to change it from the MEASURE key menu.
- If you change the statistical processing type (Statistics), the statistical processing type (Statistics) on the MEASURE key menu also changes in sync.

## 15.1 Displaying Waveform History Waveforms

This section explains the following settings for displaying history waveforms, which are waveforms that were previously saved to acquisition memory:

- Display mode
- Turning averaging on or off
- Highlighting of the selected record number
- Display range (start and end record numbers)
- Showing a list of timestamps
- Replay
- Gradation mode

► “Displaying and Searching History Waveforms” in the Features Guide

### HISTORY Menu

Press **HISTORY** to display the following menu.

You can also tap **MENU** (E) in the upper left of the screen and select the HISTORY menu from ACQ/DISP on the top menu that is displayed.

The image shows two screenshots of a device's menu system. The left screenshot is the main 'HISTORY' menu, and the right screenshot is the 'Display mode' sub-menu. An arrow points from the 'Mode' option in the main menu to the 'Display mode' sub-menu.

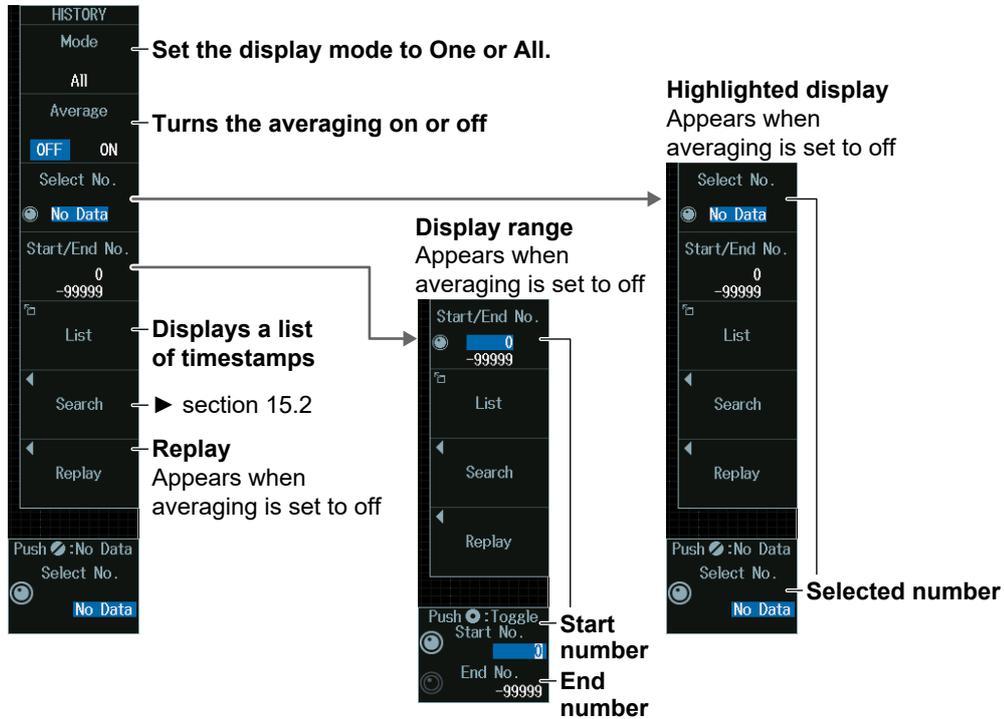
Option	Description
Mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>A single waveform</b>: Displays only the waveform selected by Select No. (highlighted waveform)</li> <li><b>All waveforms</b>: Accumulates all waveforms in the range specified by Start/End No. Waveforms other than those specified by Select No. (highlighted waveform) are displayed with an intermediate color.</li> <li><b>Accumulation</b>: Accumulates all waveforms in the range specified by Start/End No. Expresses data occurrence frequency with intensity (Intensity) or color (Color).</li> </ul>

### Note

- If you restart waveform acquisition by using the RUN/STOP key, all history waveforms that had been stored up to that point are cleared. However, if the trigger mode is set to Single (using the SINGLE key), the waveform that had been stored using the SINGLE key remains as a history waveform unless you change the waveform acquisition conditions.
- If you change the waveform acquisition conditions, all history waveforms that had been stored in the memory are cleared.
- If you change user-defined computation settings while using the history feature, recomputation is not performed on the history waveforms. To recompute, execute Math on History.

### Single Waveform Mode (One), All Waveform Mode (All)

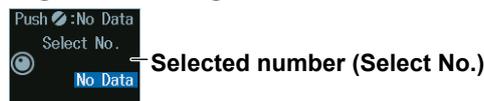
1. Press the **Mode** soft key.
2. Press the **One** or **All** soft key to display the following menu.



### Highlighting (Select No.)

1. Press the **Select No.** soft key.
2. Turn the jog shuttle to set the record number (selection number) to highlight. You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

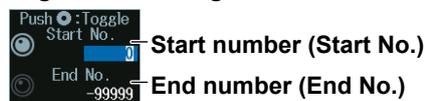
#### Jog shuttle setting menu



### Display Range (Start/End No.)

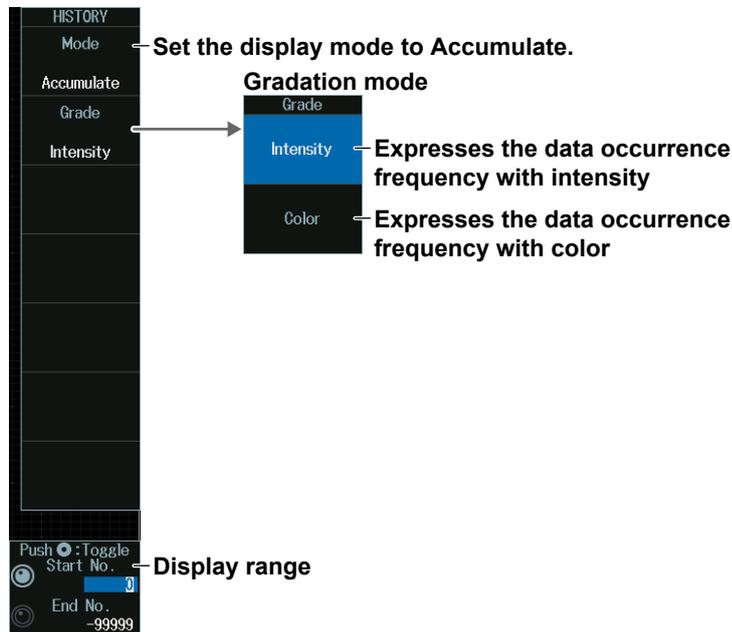
1. Press the **Start/End No.** soft key.
2. Turn the jog shuttle to set the start or end number.
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between the display range start point (Start No.) and the display range end point (End No.).
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



## Accumulation Mode (Accumulate)

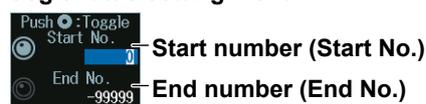
1. Press the **Mode** soft key.
2. Press the **Accumulate** soft key to display the following menu.



## Display Range (Start/End No.)

1. Press the **Start/End No.** soft key.
2. Turn the jog shuttle to set the start or end number.
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between the display range start point (Start No.) and the display range end point (End No.).
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu



### List of Timestamps (List)

Press the **List** soft key to display the following screen.

**Record number**

**Trigger time**

**The difference between the triggered time of the current data and the data before it**

No.	Triggered Time				Delta			
	s	ms	us	ns	s	ms	us	ns
0	01:12:48	320	743	200	0	062	323	200
-1	01:12:48	258	420	000	0	062	326	400
-2	01:12:48	196	093	600	0	062	323	600
-3	01:12:48	133	770	000	0	062	324	800
-4	01:12:48	071	445	200	0	062	326	000
-5	01:12:48	009	119	200	0	062	329	200
-6	01:12:47	946	790	000	0	062	323	600
-7	01:12:47	884	466	400	0	062	322	800
-8	01:12:47	822	143	600	0	062	322	400
-9	01:12:47	759	821	200	0	062	324	000
-10	01:12:47	697	497	200	0	062	325	200
-11	01:12:47	635	172	000	0	062	326	400
-12	01:12:47	572	845	600	0	062	324	800
-13	01:12:47	510	520	800	0	062	322	800
-14	01:12:47	448	198	000	0	062	324	800
-15	01:12:47	385	873	200	0	062	324	800
-16	01:12:47	323	548	400	0	062	326	800
-17	01:12:47	261	221	600	0	062	322	800
-18	01:12:47	198	898	800	0	062	325	200
-19	01:12:47	136	573	600	0	062	326	000
-20	01:12:47	074	247	600	0	062	326	400
-21	01:12:47	011	921	200	0	062	330	000
-22	01:12:46	949	591	200	0	062	326	000
-23	01:12:46	887	265	200	0	062	323	600
-24	01:12:46	824	941	600	0	062	324	800
-25	01:12:46	762	616	800	0	062	324	400
-26	01:12:46	700	292	400	0	062	323	600

**List of timestamps**

**List**

- Delta Min** → Jump to the record number whose data contains the triggers with the least time between them
- Delta Max** → Jump to the record number whose data contains the triggers with the most time between them
- Oldest** → Jump to the oldest record number
- Latest** → Jump to the latest record number

**Note**

**Notes about Configuring the History Feature**

- When the acquisition mode is set to Average and the sampling mode is set to Repetitive, you cannot use the history feature.
- When the display is in roll-mode, you cannot use the history feature.
- If you stop waveform acquisition, the instrument only displays waveforms that have been acquired completely.

**Notes about Recalling Data Using the History Feature**

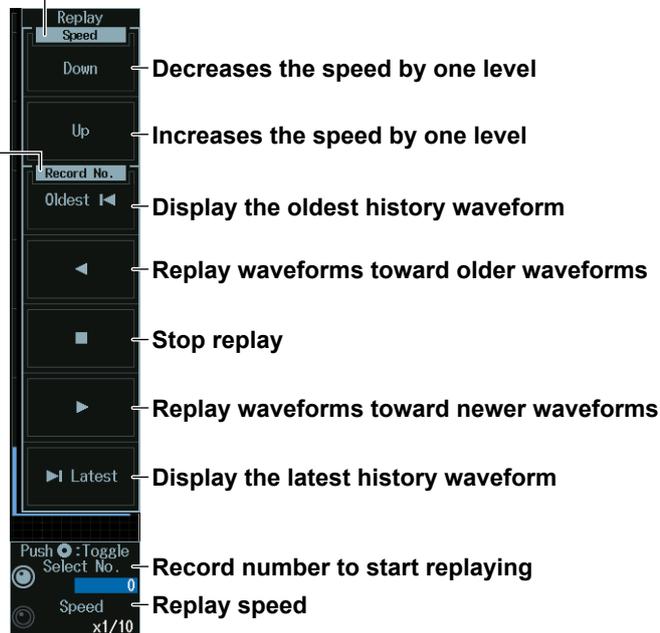
- Waveform acquisition stops when you display the History menu. You cannot display history waveforms while waveform acquisition is in progress.
- You can start waveform acquisition when the History menu is displayed. However, you cannot change the history feature settings while waveform acquisition is in progress.
- The settings are restricted so that the following relationship is retained: Last record (End) ≤ Select No. ≤ First record (Start).
- When you load waveform data from the specified storage device, history waveforms up to that point are cleared. The loaded waveform data is placed in record number zero. If you load a file containing multiple waveforms, the latest waveform is placed in zero, and earlier waveforms are placed in order to record numbers -1, -2, and so on.
- Computation and automated measurement of waveform parameters are performed on the waveform of the record number specified by Select No. You can analyze old data as long as you do not overwrite the acquisition memory contents by restarting waveform acquisition. If Average is set to ON, analysis is performed on the averaged waveform.
- History waveforms are cleared when you turn the power off.

## Replay (Replay)

Press the **Replay** soft key to display the following menu.

### Record number

#### Replay speed (seven speed settings)



### Note

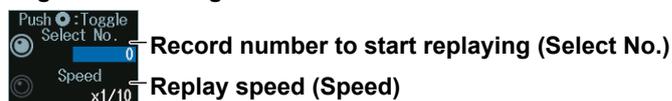
If you change the vertical scale, vertical position, time axis setting, trigger position, or other relevant settings and then display the preview, you cannot search for or replay history waveforms.

## Record Number to Start Replaying (Select No./Speed), Replay Speed (Speed)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the record number to start replaying (Select No.) or the replay speed (Speed).

- Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between the record number to start replaying (Select No.) and the replay speed (Speed).
- You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the pop-up menu that appears on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu



## 15.2 Searching History Waveforms

This section explains the following settings for searching history waveforms:

- Search condition
- Waveform to search
- Search source window
- Search range (rectangular zone)
- Search conditions (1 to 4)
- Search range mode
- Executing searches
- Finishing searches

▶ “Searching History Waveforms (Search)” in the Features Guide

### HISTORY Menu

1. Press **HISTORY** to display the HISTORY menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the HISTORY menu from ACQ/DISP on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **One** or **All** soft key to display the following menu.

**Set the display mode to One or All.**

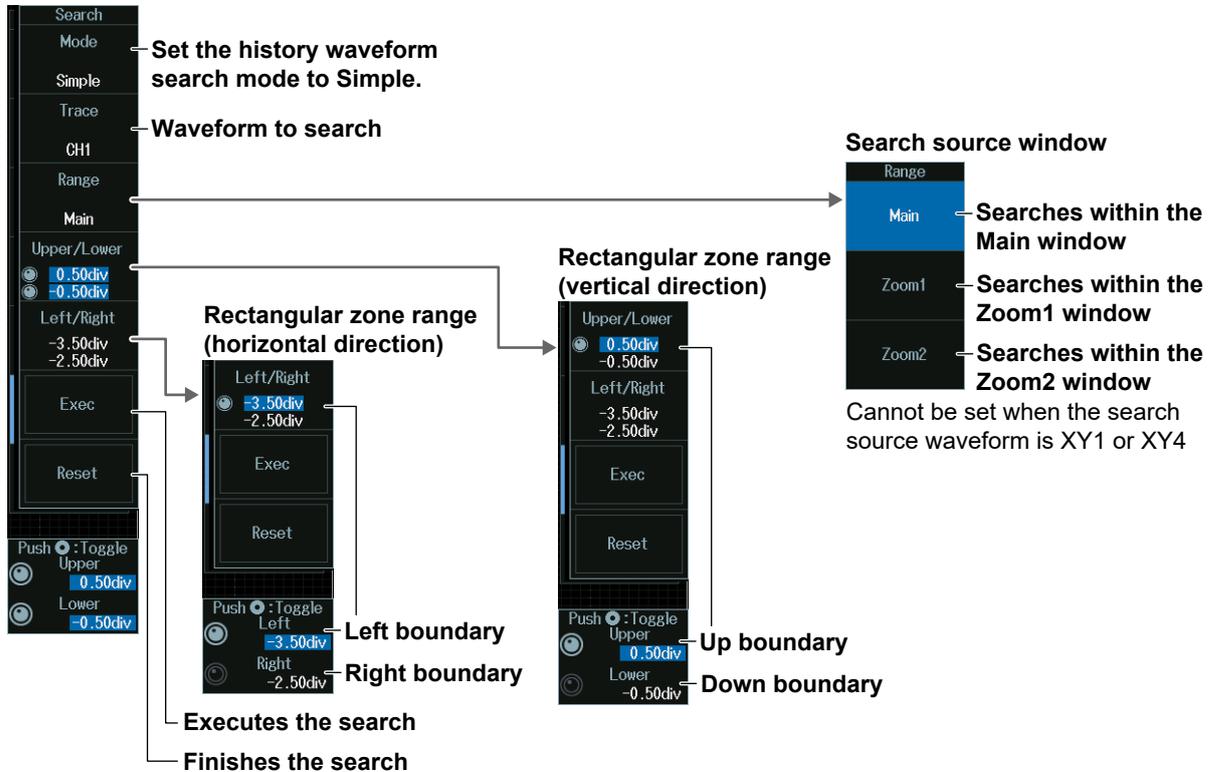
**Search logic**

- Simple mode**  
Searches for history waveforms that enters a single rectangular zone
- AND mode**  
Searches for history waveforms that meet all conditions
- OR mode**  
Searches for history waveforms that meet any of the conditions

## Search Logic (Mode)

### In Simple Mode

1. Press the **Mode** soft key and then the **Simple** soft key to display the following menu.



### Note

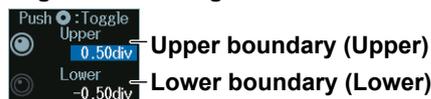
The available search source waveform settings vary depending on the model.

- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8, Math1 to Math8, XY1 to XY4
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math4, XY1, XY2

### Rectangular Zone Range (Upper/Lower)

1. Press the **Upper/Lower** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the upper boundary (Upper) or lower boundary (Lower).
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between upper and lower boundaries.
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

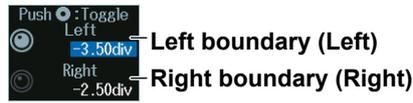
#### Jog shuttle setting menu



**Rectangular Zone Range (Left/Right)**

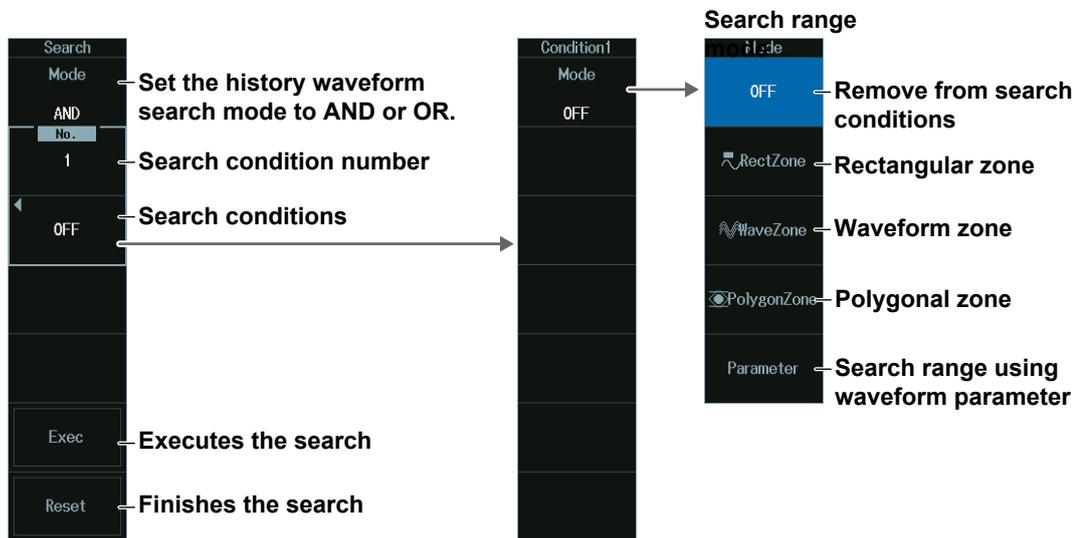
1. Press the **Left/Right** soft key.
2. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the left boundary (Left) or right boundary (Right).
  - Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between left and right boundaries.
  - You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

**Jog shuttle setting menu**



**In AND or OR Mode**

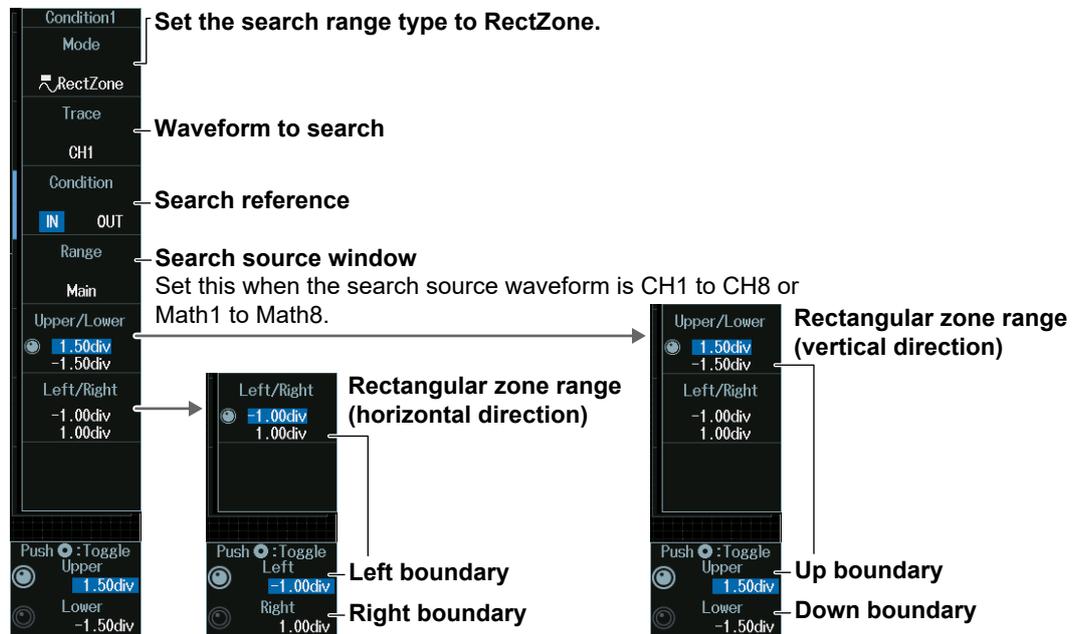
1. Press the **Mode** soft key, the **AND** soft key, and then the **OR** soft key to display the following menu.



## Rectangular Zone (RectZone)

Set the search range (rectangular zone).

1. Press any of the search condition 1 to 8 (1 to 4 on 4ch models) soft keys and then the **Mode** soft key.
2. Press the **RectZone** soft key to display the following menu.



### Note

The available source waveforms are as follows:

- No.1 to No.4  
CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math4
- No.5 to 8 (8ch models only)  
CH5 to CH8, Math5 to Math8

#### Search source window

To make Zoom1 or Zoom2 a search source, turn on the Zoom1 or Zoom2 display from the ZOOM menu. For details, see section 10.1.

### Rectangular Zone Range (Upper/Lower)

See the description of Rectangular Zone Range (Upper/Lower) of Simple mode.

### Rectangular Zone Range (Left/Right)

See the description of Rectangular Zone Range (Left/Right) of Simple mode.

### Waveform Zone (WaveZone)

Set the search range (waveform zone).

1. Press any of the search condition 1 to 8 (1 to 4 on 4ch models) soft keys and then the **Mode** soft key.
2. Press the **WaveZone** soft key to display the following menu.



**Set the search range type to WaveZone.**

**Waveform to search**

**Search reference**

**Source window**  
Set this when the source waveform is CH1 to CH8 or Math1 to Math8.

**Waveform zone**  
Select the waveform zone to use for searching and the waveform zone to edit.

**Search period (left boundary)**

**Search period (right boundary)**

**Edit the entire waveform zone.**



**Select the edit range (Whole).**

**Horizontal range**

**Vertical range**

**Left edge**

**Right edge**

**Up limit**

**Down limit**

**Base waveform for creating a zone**

**Start editing the waveform zone.**

**Confirm the waveform zone edit.**

**Finish editing the waveform zone.**

#### Edit the waveform zone in the specified range.



**Edit range**  
Select the Part.

**Specified range**

**Left edge**

**Right edge**

**Up limit**

**Down limit**

**Vertical range**

**Note**

The available source waveforms are as follows:

- No.1 to No.4  
CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math4
- No.5 to 8 (8ch models only)  
CH5 to CH8, Math5 to Math8

**Editing Waveform Zones (Edit 1 to Edit 8 (Edit1 to Edit4 on 4ch models))**

1. Press the **Zone No** soft key, and select the number of the waveform zone that you want to edit.

The appearance of the waveform zone edit soft keys (Edit 1 to Edit 8) changes depending on the selected waveform zone number.

2. Press one of the soft keys from **Edit 1** to **Edit 8** (Edit1 to Edit4 on 4ch models), whichever is shown on the menu. An edit menu for the waveform zone that you selected will be displayed.

- **Selecting the Base Waveform**

To edit without changing the base waveform, proceed to step 5.

3. Press the **Trace (New)** soft key, and from the displayed menu, select the base waveform.
4. Press the **Exec (New)** soft key. A waveform zone is created from the base waveform.

- **Editing the Entire Waveform Zone**

5. Press the **Edit** soft key to select **Whole**.
6. Press the **Upper/Lower** soft key or the **Left/Right** soft key to select the zone boundaries to edit.
7. Turn the **jog shuttle** to edit the waveform zone.  
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

**Jog shuttle setting menu**

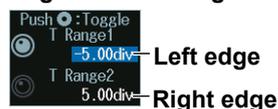


Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between left and right boundaries.

- **Editing a Part of the Waveform Zone**

5. Press the **Edit** soft key to select **Part**.
6. Press the **T Range1/2** soft key.
7. Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the time scale range.  
You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

**Jog shuttle setting menu**



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between left and right edges.

8. Press the **Upper/Lower** soft key to select the upper and lower zone boundaries.
9. Turn the **jog shuttle** to edit the waveform zone.  
The procedure for using the jog shuttle setting menu is the same as that in step 7.

## 15.2 Searching History Waveforms

---

- **Confirming the Waveform Zone**

Press the **Store** soft key to confirm the waveform zone that you edited and store it in the internal memory.

- **Finishing Waveform Zone Editing**

Press the **Quit** soft key to confirm the waveform zone that you edited and store it in the internal memory.

The screen returns from the editing screen to the previous menu. If you do not confirm the edited waveform zone by pressing the Store soft key, the changes that you made are lost.

### Note

---

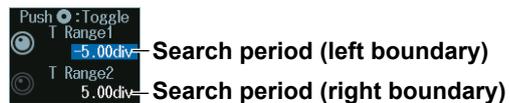
- If you change the base waveform (Trace (New)) for creating a zone, the waveform zone that you edited up to that point will be lost.
  - If you want to switch from the edit menu to a different menu, you need to finish editing first. Press the Quit soft key to finish editing.
- 

### Search Period (T Range)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the search period.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between left and right search period boundaries.

## Polygonal Zone (PolygonZone)

Set the search range (polygonal zone).

1. Press any of the search condition **1** to **8** (1 to 4 on 4ch models) soft keys and then the **Mode** soft key.
2. Press the **PolygonZone** soft key to display the following menu.

**Condition1** — Set the search range type to PolygonZone.

**Mode** —

**PolygonZone** —

**Trace** — Waveform to search

**CH1** —

**Condition** — Search reference

**IN** **OUT** —

**Range** — Search source window

**Main** — Set this when the search source waveform is CH1 to CH8 or Math1 to Math8.

**Zone No.** — Select the polygonal zone.

**1** **2** **3** **4** — Load a polygonal shape in advance into the specified zone number (Zone No.1 to Zone No.8) using the file load feature (see section 17.7). Create polygonal shapes on your PC using the dedicated software (Mask Editor Software).

**Push** **Toggle** — Moves the polygonal zone (vertical position)

**V-Position** **0.00div** —

**H-Position** **0.00div** — Moves the polygonal zone (horizontal position)

\* Load a polygonal zone in advance.

### Note

The available source waveforms are as follows:

- No.1 to No.4  
CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math4
- No.5 to 8 (8ch models only)  
CH5 to CH8, Math5 to Math8

#### Search source window

To make Zoom1 or Zoom2 a search source, turn on the Zoom1 or Zoom2 display from the ZOOM menu. For details, see section 10.1.

### Moving the Polygonal Zone (V-Position, H-Position)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to move the polygonal zone.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu

**Push** **Toggle** — Moves the polygonal zone (vertical position)

**V-Position** **0.00div** —

**H-Position** **0.00div** — Moves the polygonal zone (horizontal position)

Press **SET** (upper right on the front panel) to switch between moving the polygonal zone horizontally or vertically.

### Setting a Search Range Using Parameters (Parameter)

Set the search range (parameter).

1. Press any of the search condition **1** to **8** (1 to 4 on 4ch models) soft keys and then the **Mode** soft key.
2. Press the **Parameter** soft key to display the following menu.

When CH1 to CH8 or Math1 to Math8 Is the Search Source Waveform

**Set the search range type to Parameter.**

**Waveform to search**  
(Set to the CH1, CH8, Math1, and Math8.)

**Search reference**

**Waveform parameters to use for searching**

**Search range (upper limit)**

**Search range (lower limit)**

**Enters the selected waveform parameters**

### Note

#### Waveform Parameters

You can select the measurement items to use in searching from all of the items used for automated measurement of waveform parameters. For information on setting automated measurement of waveform parameters, see section 9.1.

#### Waveform to search

The available search source waveform settings vary depending on the model.

- The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH8, Math1 to Math8, XY1 to XY4, Logic, FFT1 to FFT4
- The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:  
CH1 to CH4, Math1 to Math4, XY1, XY2, Logic, FFT1 to FFT2

### When Logic Is the Search Source Waveform

The image shows a software interface for configuring search parameters. On the left is a vertical panel titled 'Condition1' with the following sections: 'Mode', 'Parameter', 'Trace' (set to 'LOGIC'), 'Source Bit' (set to 'A0'), 'Item' (set to 'Freq'), and search range controls (Upper: 0.30000, Lower: 0.00000). On the right is a dialog box titled 'Waveform parameters to use for searching' with radio buttons for 'Freq', 'Period', 'Avg Freq', 'Duty', 'Pulse Count', and 'Delay'. The 'Freq' option is selected. Two 'Set' buttons are visible at the bottom right of the dialog.

**Set the search range type to Parameter.**

**Waveform to search**  
Set to Logic.

**Source bit**  
Select the logic bit.

**Search range (upper limit)**

**Search range (lower limit)**

**Waveform parameters to use for searching**

**Item Setup**

**Enter the selected waveform parameters**

### Note

#### Waveform Parameters

You can select the measurement item to use in searching from the items used for time axis measurement of waveform parameters shown below.

Freq, Period, Avg Freq, Duty, Pulse Count, Delay

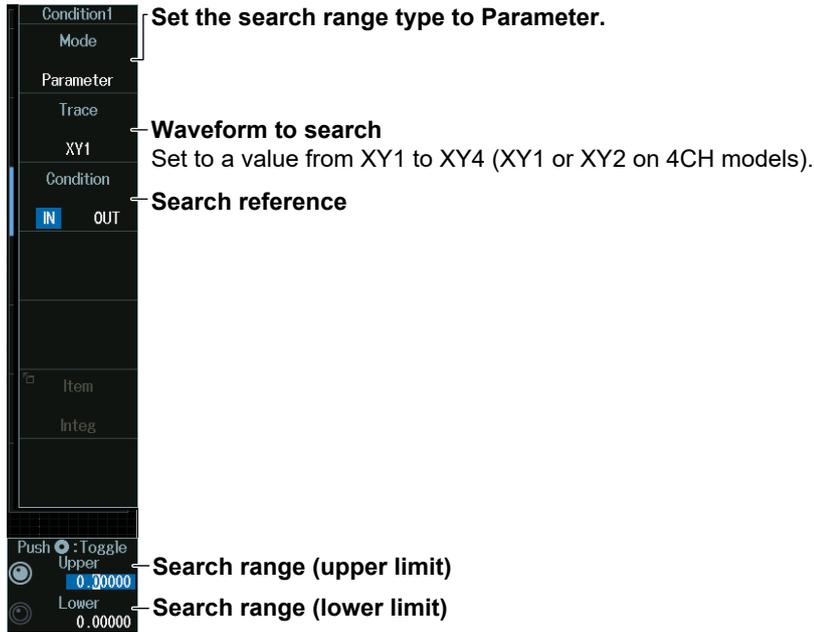
For information on setting automated measurement of waveform parameters, see section 9.1.

#### Source bit

The following source bit display applies to models with the /L32 option.

C0 to C7 (LOGIC port C), D0 to D7 (LOGIC port D)

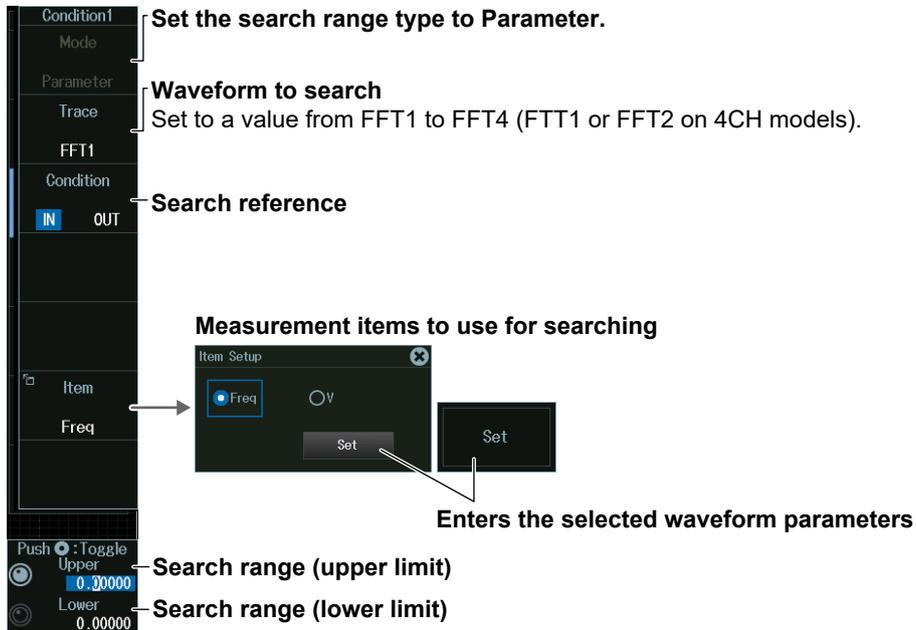
**When XY1 to XY4 Is the Search Source Waveform**



**Note**

The measurement item to use in searching is the waveform area of XY1 to XY4 (XY1 and XY2 on 4ch models). For information on setting how the XY waveform is displayed and how its area is determined, see chapter 5 of this manual and appendix 1 of the *Features Guide*, IM DLM5058-01EN.

**When FFT1 to FFT4 Is the Search Source Waveform**



**Note**

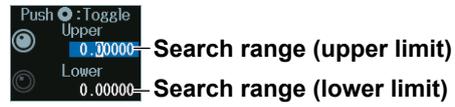
- You can select the measurement item to use in searching from the peak cursor measurement items (Freq, V) for FFT. For details on peak cursor measurements, see section 7.2.
- The search source waveforms on 4ch models are FFT1 and FFT2.

### Search Range (Upper/Lower)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the search range.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

### Jog shuttle setting menu



Press SET (upper right on the front panel) to switch between upper and lower search range limits.

## 16.1 Loading Roll Paper Into the Built-In Printer (Option)

This section explains how to load roll paper into the optional built-in printer.

### Printer Roll Paper

Use a YOKOGAWA roll paper. Do not use any other paper. When using the printer for the first time, use the roll paper supplied with the instrument. When you need extra roll paper, please contact your nearest YOKOGAWA dealer.

Part Number: B9988AE  
Specification: Heat-sensitive paper, 10 m  
Minimum Quantity: 10 rolls

### Roll Paper Handling

The roll paper is made of heat-sensitive paper that changes color thermochemically. Please read the following information carefully.

#### Storage Precautions

The heat-sensitive paper starts changing color at about 70°C. The paper can be affected by heat, humidity, or chemicals, whether something has been recorded on it or not. As such, please follow the guidelines listed below.

- Store the paper in a cool, dry, and dark place.
- Use the paper as quickly as possible after you break its protective seal.
- If you attach a plastic film that contains plasticizing material such as vinyl chloride film or cellophane tape to the paper for a long time, the recorded sections will fade due to the effect of the plasticizing material. Use a holder made of polypropylene to store the roll paper.
- When starching the record paper, do not use starches containing organic solvents such as alcohol or ether. Doing so will change the paper's color.
- We recommend that you make copies of the recordings if you intend to store them for a long period of time. Because of the nature of heat-sensitive paper, the recorded sections may fade.

#### Handling Precautions

- Only use genuine YOKOGAWA roll paper.
- If you touch the roll paper with sweaty hands, there is a chance that you will leave fingerprints on the paper or smudge the recorded sections.
- If you rub the surface of the roll paper against something hard, there is a chance that the paper will change color due to frictional heat.
- If the roll paper comes into contact with chemicals, oil, and the like, there is a chance that the paper will change color or that the recorded sections will disappear.

## Loading the Roll Paper

---



### CAUTION

- Do not touch the print head. If you do, you may burn yourself.
  - Do not touch the roll paper cutter section at the end of the printer cover. Doing so may cause injury.
- 

### French

---

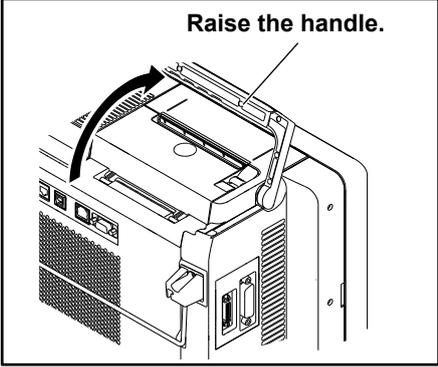


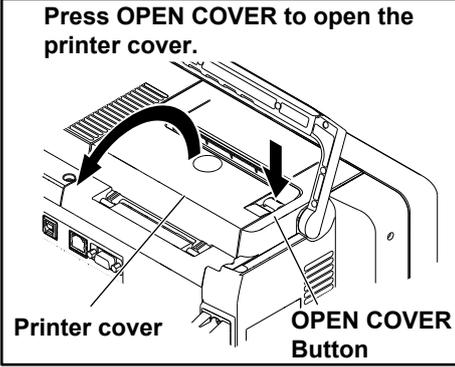
### ATTENTION

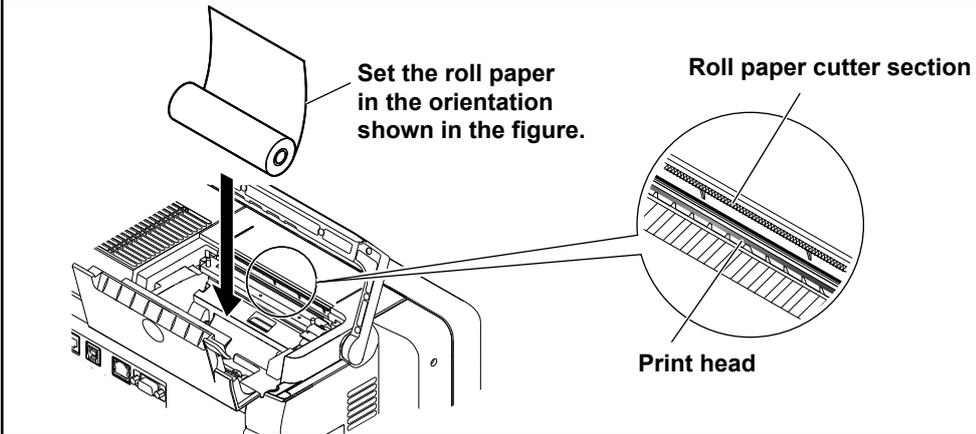
- Ne pas toucher la tête d'impression. Vous pourriez vous brûler.
  - Ne pas toucher la section du coupe-papier à l'extrémité du cache de l'imprimante. Vous pourriez vous blesser
-

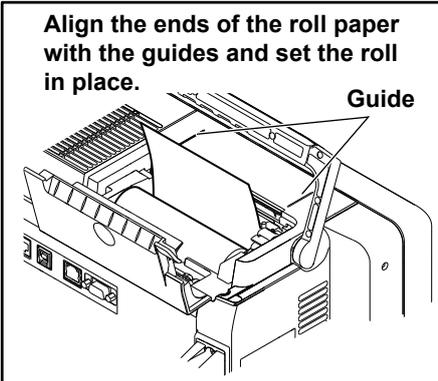
## 16.1 Loading Roll Paper Into the Built-In Printer (Option)

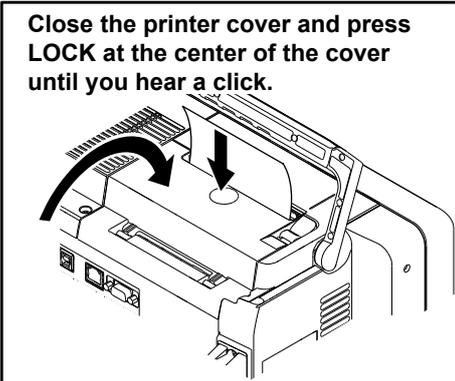
- 1. Raise the handle.**


- 2. Press OPEN COVER to open the printer cover.**


- 3. Set the roll paper in the orientation shown in the figure.**


- 4. Align the ends of the roll paper with the guides and set the roll in place.**


- 5. Close the printer cover and press LOCK at the center of the cover until you hear a click.**



## 16.2 Printing on the Built-in Printer (Option)

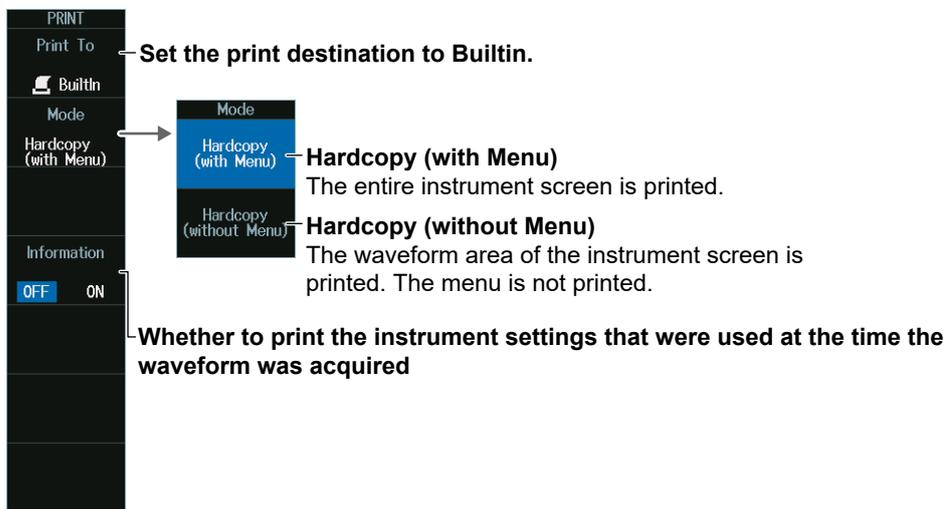
This section explains the following settings for printing on the built-in printer (option):

- Output destination
- Print mode
- Additional information

► [“Printing on the Built-in Printer \(BuiltIn\) \(Option\)” in the Features Guide](#)

### PRINT BuiltIn Menu

1. Press **SHIFT+PRINT** (MENU) to display the PRINT menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the PRINT (PRINT MENU) menu from FILE/PRINT on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Print To** and then the **BuiltIn** soft key to display the following menu.



### Printing

Press **PRINT**. The image is output to the built-in printer according to the settings.

## 16.3 Printing on a USB Printer

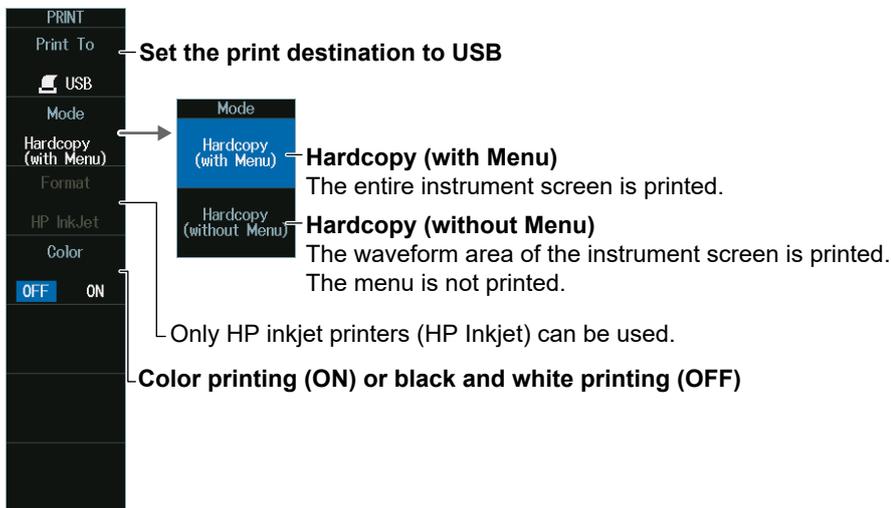
This section explains the following settings for printing on a USB printer:

- Output destination
- Print mode
- Printer type
- Color

► “Printing on a USB Printer (USB)” in the Features Guide

### PRINT USB Menu

1. Press **SHIFT+PRINT** (MENU) to display the PRINT menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (MENU) in the upper left of the screen and select the PRINT (PRINT MENU) menu from FILE/PRINT on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Print To** and then the **USB** soft key to display the following menu.



### Printing

Press **PRINT**. The image is output to the USB printer according to the settings.

#### Note

- Do not connect an incompatible USB printer.
- For USB printers that have been tested for compatibility, contact your nearest YOKOGAWA dealer.

## 16.4 Printing on a Network Printer

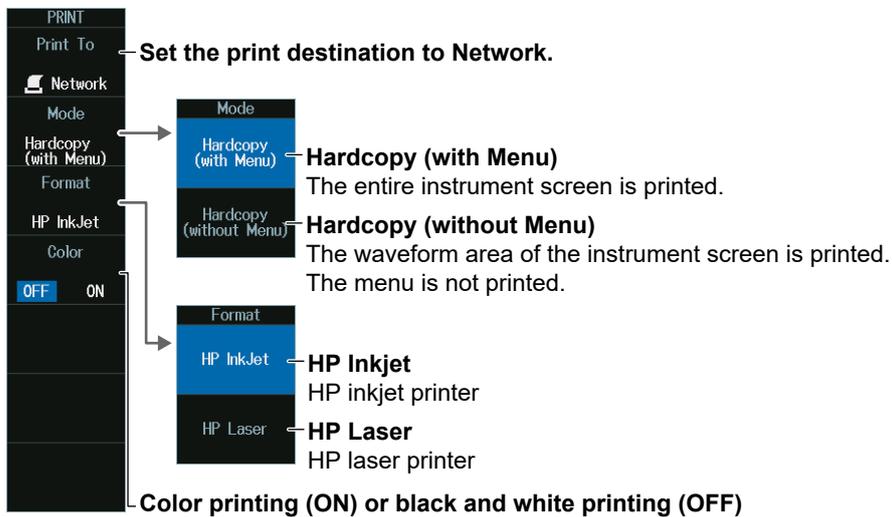
This section explains the following settings for printing on a network printer:

- Output destination
- Print mode
- Printer type
- Color

► “Printing on a Network Printer (Network)” in the Features Guide

### PRINT Network Menu

1. Press **SHIFT+PRINT** (MENU) to display the PRINT menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the PRINT (PRINT MENU) menu from FILE/PRINT on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Print To** and then the **Network** soft key to display the following menu.



### Printing

Press **PRINT**. The image is output to the network printer according to the settings.

#### Note

You must configure the network printer in advance by following the instructions in section 18.6.

## 16.5 Saving Screen Captures to Files

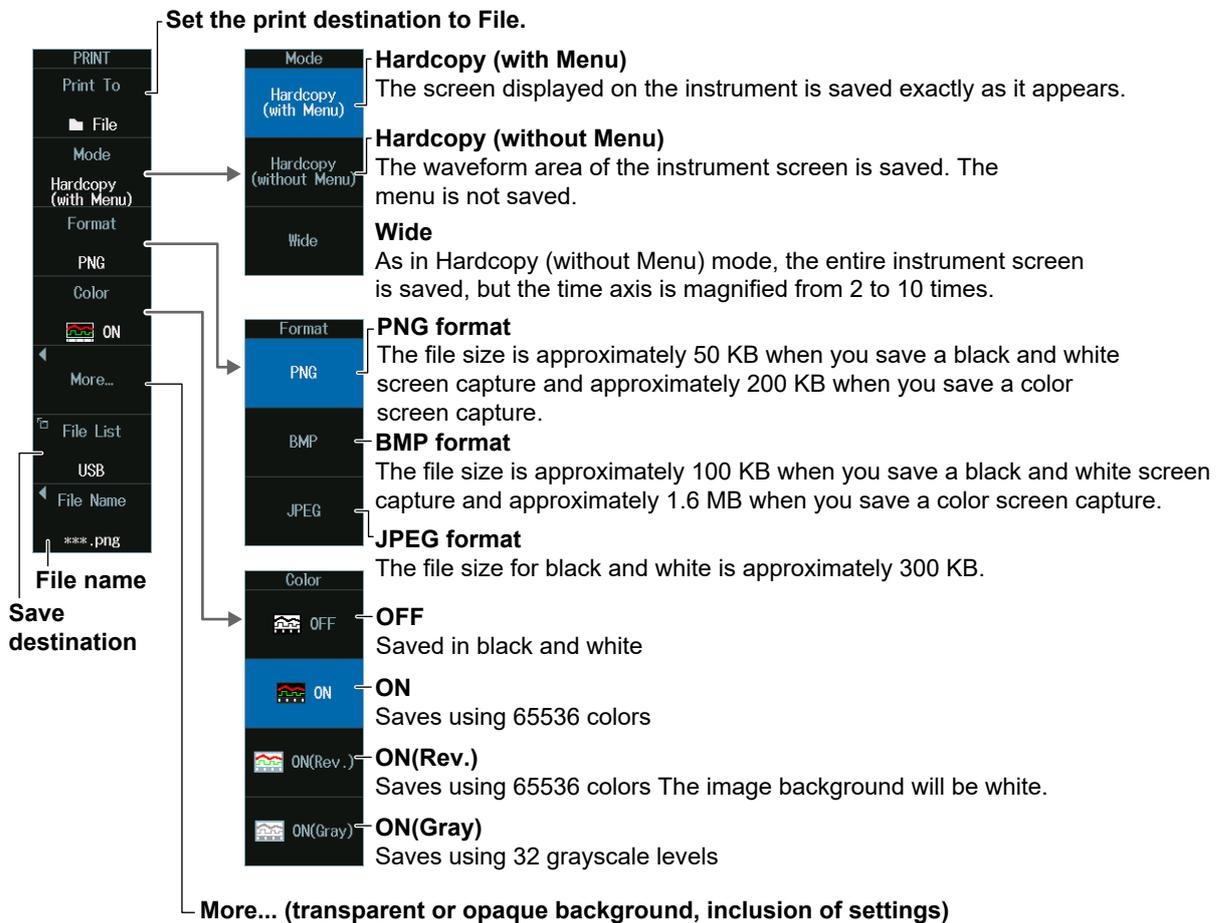
This section explains the following settings for saving screen captures to files:

- Output destination
- Save mode
- Data format
- Color data
- Background transparency (transparent or opaque)
- Including setting information
- Save destination
- File name

► [“Saving Screen Captures to Files \(File\)” in the Features Guide](#)

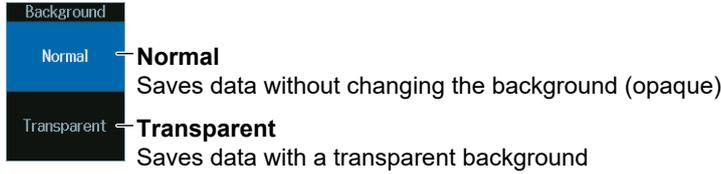
### PRINT File Menu

1. Press **SHIFT+PRINT** (MENU) to display the PRINT menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (MENU) in the upper left of the screen and select the PRINT (PRINT MENU) menu from FILE/PRINT on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Print To** and then the **File** soft key to display the following menu.



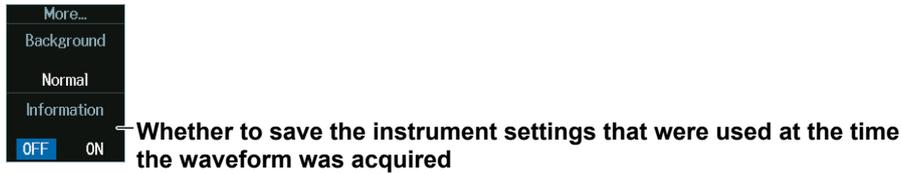
### Background Transparent or Opaque (Background)

1. Press the **More** soft key.
2. Press the **Background** soft key to display the following menu.



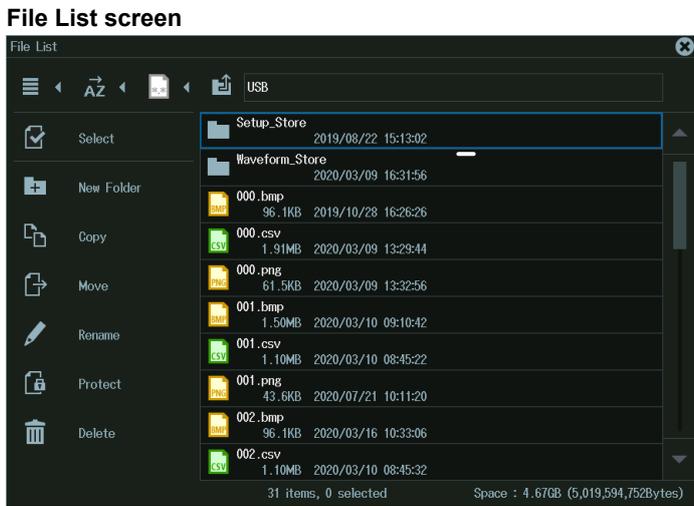
### Including Setting Information (Information)

1. Press the **More** soft key to display the following menu.  
When save mode is set to Hardcopy or Normal, channels, triggers, waveform acquisition, and other setting information can be included in waveform screen captures.



### Save Destination (File List)

1. Press the **File List** soft key to display the following menu.

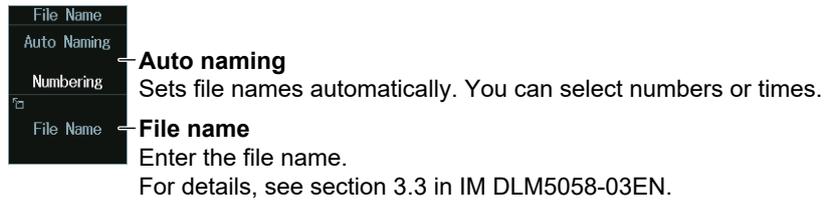


### Note

This is the same as the file feature. Set the drive and folder to save the file to. For details, see section 17.2.

## File name (File Name)

1. Press the **File Name** soft key to display the following menu.



### Note

This is the same as the file feature (except the comment feature). You can save files with automatically generated names using sequence numbers or dates, or save the files with specific file names. For details, see section 17.2.

## Saving

Press **PRINT** to save the screen capture file to the specified folder.

## 16.6 Printing and Saving Screen Capture Data to Multiple Output Destinations at the Same Time

This section explains the following settings for printing and saving screen capture data and waveform data to multiple output destinations at the same time:

- Output destination
- Saving screen captures to files
- Printing screen captures on the built-in printer (option)
- Printing screen captures on the USB printer
- Printing screen captures on the network printer
- Saving Waveform Data

► “Printing and Saving Screen Captures to Multiple Destinations (Multi)” in the Features Guide

### PRINT Multi Menu

1. Press **SHIFT+PRINT** (MENU) to display the PRINT menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (MENU) in the upper left of the screen and select the PRINT (PRINT MENU) menu from FILE/PRINT on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Print To** and then the **Multi** soft key to display the following menu.



**Set the output destination to Multi.**  
The instrument outputs screen capture data and waveform data according to the PRINT menu or FILE menu settings. For details on those settings, see the following sections.

- Saving screen captures to files**  
► section 16.5
- Printing screen captures on the built-in printer (option)**  
► section 16.2
- Printing screen captures on the network printer**  
► section 16.4
- Printing screen captures on the USB printer**  
► section 16.3
- Saving waveform data**  
► section 17.2

The screenshot shows a vertical menu with the following items: PRINT, Print To, Multi, File, BuiltIn, Network, USB, and Waveform. Each item has a status indicator (OFF or ON) and a corresponding label and reference section to its right.

### Note

You cannot execute action-on-trigger or GO/NO-GO determination if Print To is set to Multi when Print is set to ON on the ACTION menu.  
► sections 2.26 to 2.27

### Printing and Saving

Press **PRINT**. The screen capture or waveform data is output to the specified output destinations.

## 17.1 Connecting USB Storage Devices to the USB Ports

### CAUTION

Do not remove the USB storage device or turn off the power when the media (internal storage or USB storage device) access icon is blinking in the center of the screen or when the USB storage device access indicator is blinking. Doing so may damage the storage device or corrupt its data.

Access  
Icon



### French

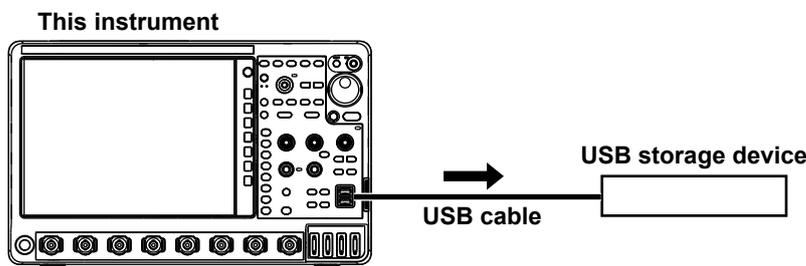
### ATTENTION

Ne retirez pas le support de stockage USB et ne mettez pas l'alimentation hors tension lorsque l'icône d'accès au support (mémoire interne ou stockage USB) clignote au centre de l'écran ou que le voyant d'accès au support de stockage USB clignote. Vous risqueriez d'endommager le support de stockage ou les données qu'il contient.

Icône d'accès



You can connect/disconnect a USB cable at any time regardless of whether the instrument is on or off (hot-plugging is supported). Connect the type A connector of the USB cable to the instrument, and connect the other connector to the USB storage device. If you connect a USB storage device when the power switch is on, the device becomes available for use after the instrument identifies it.



### Note

- Only connect a compatible USB keyboard, mouse, printer, or storage device to the USB port for peripherals.
- Do not connect and disconnect multiple USB devices repetitively. Provide at least a 10-second interval between removal and connection.
- Do not connect or remove USB cables from the time when the instrument is turned on until key operation becomes available (approximately 20 to 30 seconds).
- You can use USB storage devices that are compatible with USB Mass Storage Class version 1.1.
- The supported formats of USB storage are exFAT, FAT32, and FAT16.
- The instrument can handle up to two storage devices. If the connected medium is partitioned, the instrument treats each partition as a separate storage device. As such, the instrument can handle up to two partitions.

### Confirming What Connected USB Storage Device Can Be Used

1. Press **FILE**, and then press the **Utility** soft key to display the file list.  
For details on the file list, see section 17.8.
2. Select  (display one level up), and then press **SET**.
  - The next higher level is displayed. Repeat this step until the file list displays the media.
  - For more information on file operations, see section 17.8.

## 17.2 Saving Waveform Data

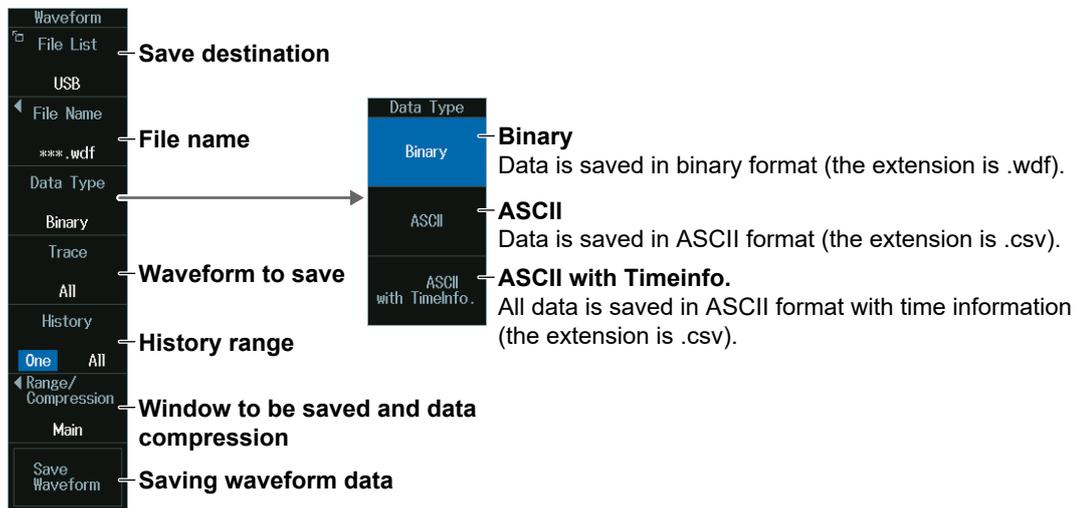
This section explains the following settings for saving waveform data):

- Save destination
- File name
- Data format
- Waveform to save
- History range
- Window to be saved
- Data compression
- Saving Waveform Data

► [“Saving Waveform Data \(Waveform\)” in the Features Guide](#)

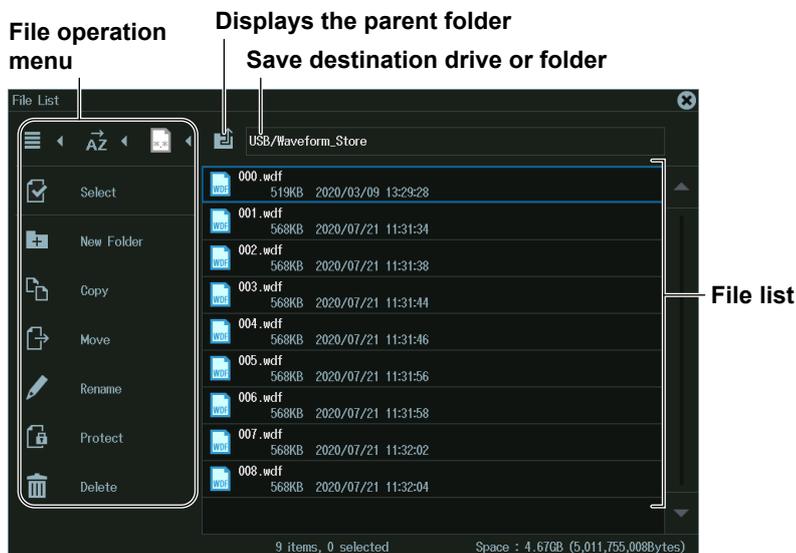
### File Waveform (Save) Menu

1. Press **FILE** to display the FILE menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (Ⓜ) in the upper left of the screen and select the FILE menu from FILE/PRINT on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Waveform (Save)** soft key to display the following menu.



### Save Destination (File List)

Press the **File List** soft key to display the following screen.





## History Range (History)

Press the **History** soft key to select **One** or **All**.

### History Range

Of the waveforms that are selected to be saved on the Trace menu, set which range of history waveforms to save.

- One: The single waveform that is specified with Select No. on the HISTORY menu will be saved.<sup>1</sup>
- All: All history waveforms within the range bounded by Start No. and End No. on the HISTORY menu will be saved.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The waveform that you specify with Select No. is not necessarily highlighted.

The history range is fixed to One or All depending on the history waveform display mode (see section 15.1) and the type of data to be saved (Data Type) on the HISTORY menu.

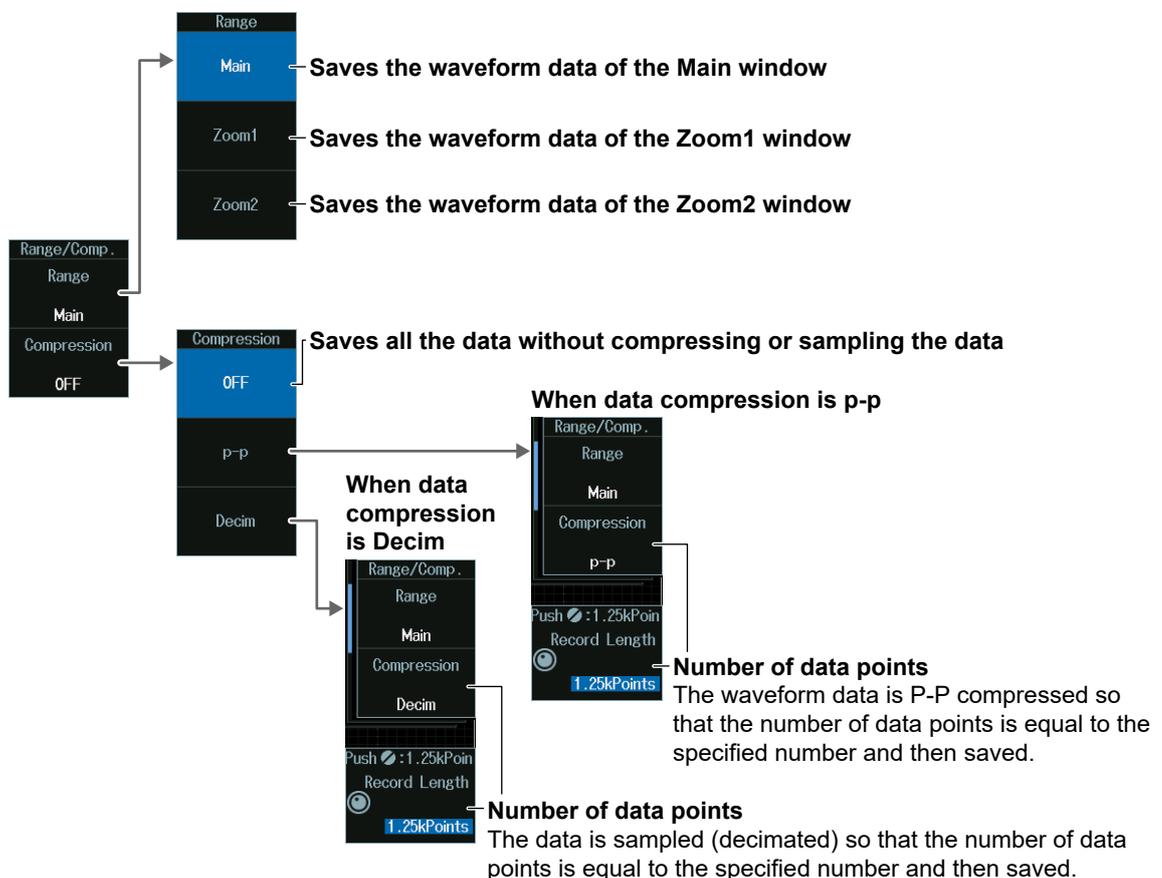
Display Mode (Mode) on the HISTORY Menu		One	All	Accumulate
Type of data to be saved (Data Type)	Binary	One or All selectable	One or All selectable	Fixed to All
	ASCII	Fixed to One	Fixed to One	Fixed to One
	ASCII with TimeInfo.	Fixed to One	Fixed to One	Fixed to One

### Note

If Average on the HISTORY menu is set to ON, only a single set of averaged waveform data will be saved regardless of the display mode specified on the HISTORY menu, the type of data to be saved, and the history range.

## Window to Be Saved and Data Compression (Range/Compression)

Press the **Range/Compression** soft key to display the following menu.



## 17.2 Saving Waveform Data

---

### Saving Waveform Data in ASCII Format

If the window to be saved is set to Main, you can save the waveform data by compressing or sampling it. If you want to save waveform data whose record length exceeds 1.25 Mpoints to a file in ASCII format, the data must be compressed. If the window to be saved is set to Zoom1 or Zoom2, data compression is not possible. Therefore, waveform data whose number of data points on the window to be saved exceeds 1.25 Mpoints cannot be saved to a file in ASCII format.

### Whether Data Compression and Waveform Loading Are Possible

Waveform data saved in binary format can be loaded into the instrument, but the possible load destinations vary depending on the data compression setting.

Waveform data saved in ASCII or ASCII with TimeInfo. format cannot be loaded into the instrument regardless of the data compression setting.

Waveform Load Destination		Loading into Channels (Load to Channels)	Loading into Reference Waveforms (Ref1 to Ref8)
Data	OFF	Allowed	Allowed
compression	P-P	Not allowed	Allowed
(Compression)	Decim	Not allowed	Allowed

### Note

---

- For details on loading waveform data, see section 17.5.
- The available load destination settings vary depending on the model.

The available settings on 8ch models are as follows:

Ref1 to Ref8

The available settings on 4ch models are as follows:

Ref1 to Ref4

---

### Number of Data Points (Record Length)

Turn the **jog shuttle** to set the number of actions.

You can also tap the jog shuttle setting menu in the lower right of the screen and use the numeric keypad that appears on the screen.

#### Jog shuttle setting menu



## 17.3 Saving Setup Data

This section explains the following settings for saving setup data:

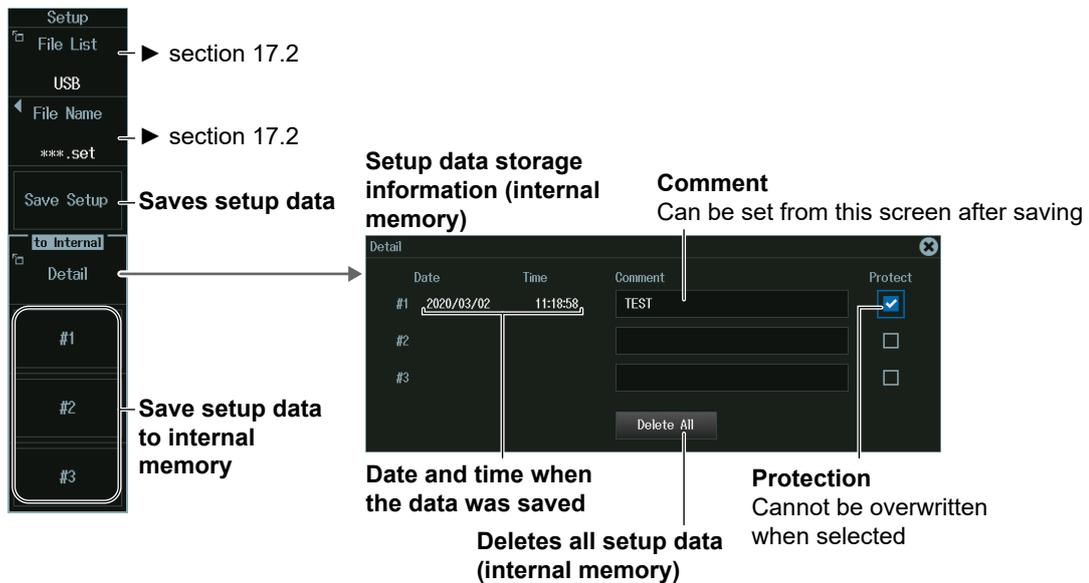
You can save setup data to a file or to three different internal memory locations.

- Save destination
- File name
- Detailed internal memory settings
- Saving setup data

► “Saving Setup Data (Setup)” in Features Guide

### File Setup (Save) Menu

1. Press **FILE** to display the FILE menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the FILE menu from FILE/PRINT on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Setup (Save)** soft key to display the following menu.



### Saving Setup Data (Save Setup)

Press the Save Setup soft key to save the setup data with the specified file name at the selected save destination.

### Saving Setup Data to Internal Memory (#1 to #3 (to Internal Memory))

Press a soft key from #1 to #3 to save the setup data at the selected internal memory number (.set extension).

#### Note

“Flash\_Mem,” which is a save destination for Save Setup, is a memory area inside the instrument, but is different from the save destination of “to Internal #1 to #3.” The save destinations of “to Internal” are fixed to three locations. You cannot specify their file names. If you want to save more than three sets of setup data or if you want to assign file names to each file, save the setup data to “Flash\_Mem,” which is a save destination for Save Setup.

## 17.4 Saving Other Types of Data

This section explains the following settings for saving screen captures, waveform zone data, snapshot waveform data, automated measurement values of waveform parameters, serial bus analysis results, FFT results, histogram data, and the list of timestamps:

- Save destination
- File name
- Saved data
- Data format
- Color data
- Waveform zone number
- Serial bus
- FFT
- Histogram
- Saved data

▶ [“Saving Other Types of Data \(Others\)” in Features Guide](#)

### File Others (Save) Menu

1. Press **FILE** to display the FILE menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the FILE menu from FILE/PRINT on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Others (Save)** soft key to display the following menu.

The screenshot shows the 'Others (Save)' menu with the following options and their descriptions:

- Screen Image:** Saves the displayed screen image in PNG, BMP, or JPEG format.
- Wave-Zone:** Saves the waveform zone to a file with a .zwf extension.
- Snap:** Saves the waveform data captured in a snapshot to a file with a .snp extension.
- Measure:** Saves the results of the specified item of automatic waveform parameter measurement to a file in CSV format.
- Serial Bus:** Saves the results of the serial bus analysis specified by Serial Bus 1 to Serial Bus 4 to a file in CSV format.
- FFT:** Saves the computed results specified by FFT1 to FFT4 (FFT1, FFT2 on 4ch models) to a file in CSV format. Up to 1.25 Mpoints of data can be saved.
- Histogram:** Saves the waveform or waveform parameter histogram specified by Histogram1 or Histogram2 to a file in CSV format.
- History List:** Saves the list of timestamps to a file in CSV format.

#### 1 Screen Image

- You can select whether to include setting information such as channels, triggers, and waveform acquisition, in waveform screen captures. For details on screen captures that include setting information, see section 16.5.
- Screen captures that can be saved on the FILE menu are those that correspond to Hardcopy (without Menu) save mode on the SHIFT+PRINT menu.

#### 2 FFT Group

- When Freq Info. is set to ON, all data is saved with frequency information.
- When Freq Info. is set to OFF, all data is saved without frequency information.

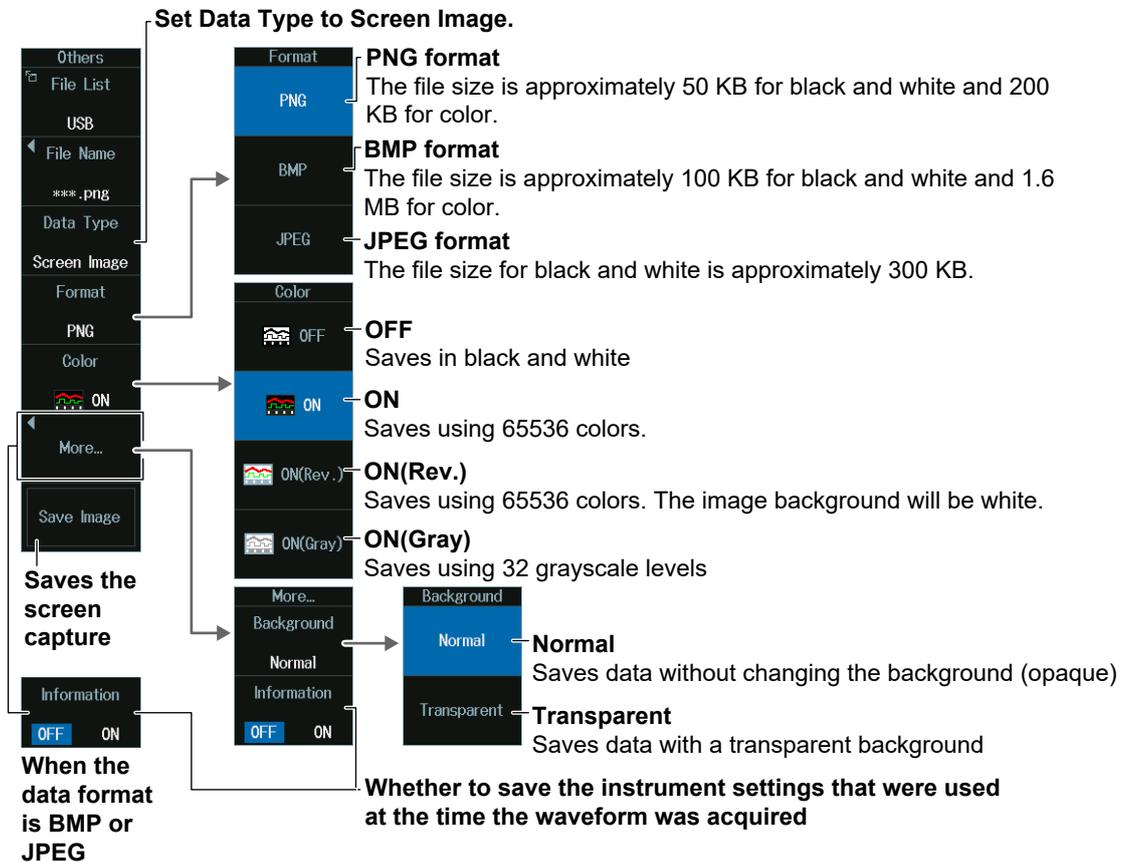
### Note

The serial bus analysis results are saved according to the history range (History) of section 17.2.

## Data Type to Save (Data Type)

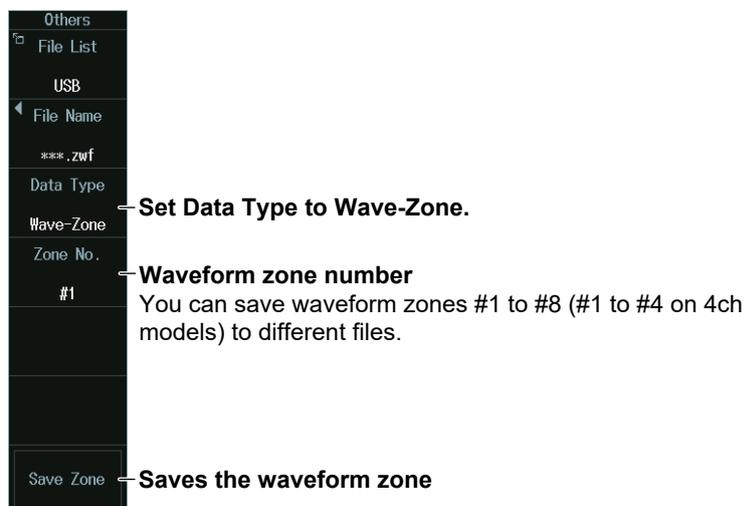
### Screen Captures (Screen Image)

1. Press the **Data Type** soft key.
2. Press the **Screen Image** soft key to display the following menu.



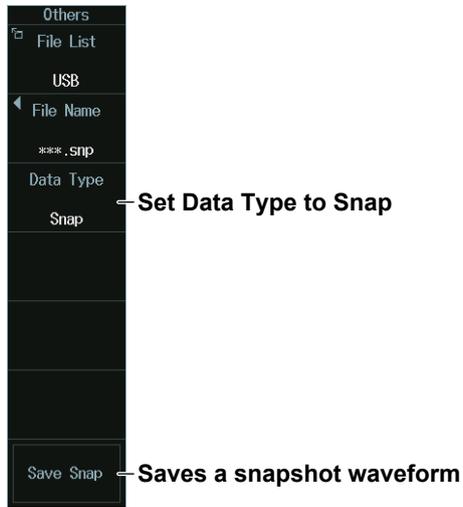
### Waveform Zone (Wave Zone)

1. Press the **Data Type** soft key.
2. Press the **Wave-Zone** soft key to display the following menu.



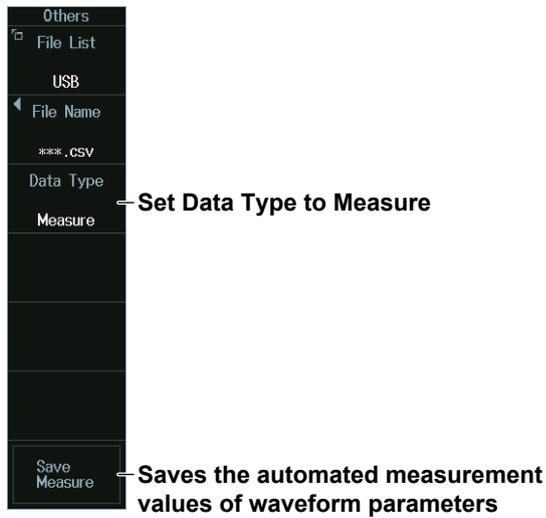
### Snapshot Waveforms (Snap)

1. Press the **Data Type** soft key.
2. Press the **Snap** soft key to display the following menu.



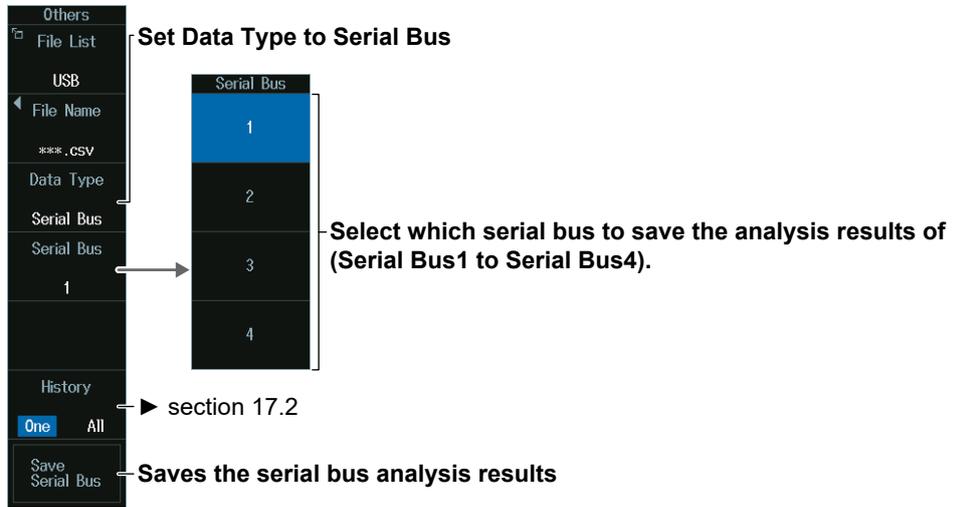
### Automated Measurement Values of Waveform Parameters (Measure)

1. Press the **Data Type** soft key.
2. Press the **Measure** soft key to display the following menu.



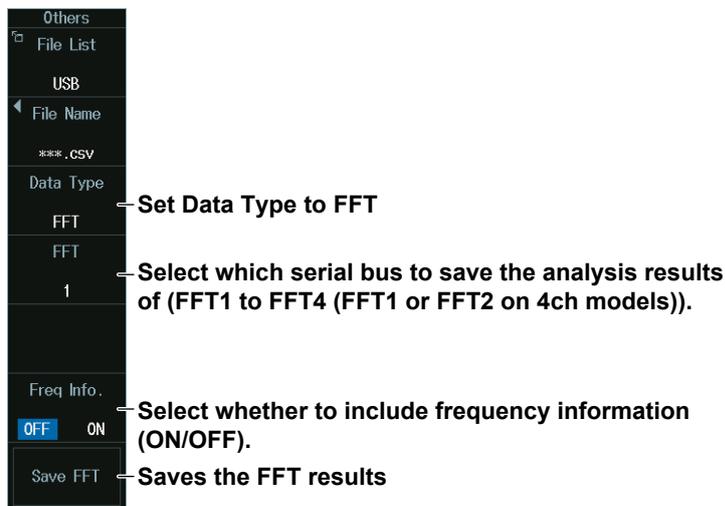
### Serial Bus Analysis Results (Serial Bus)

1. Press the **Data Type** soft key.
2. Press the **Serial Bus** soft key to display the following menu.



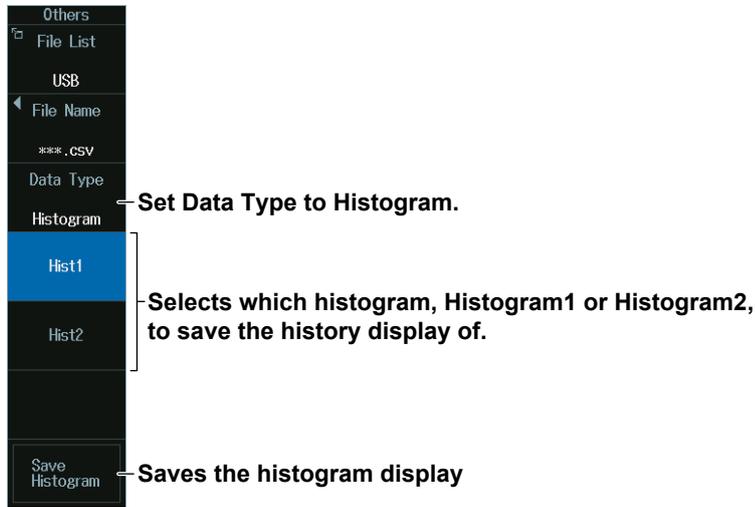
### FFT Computation Results (FFT)

1. Press the **Data Type** soft key.
2. Press the **FFT** soft key to display the following menu.



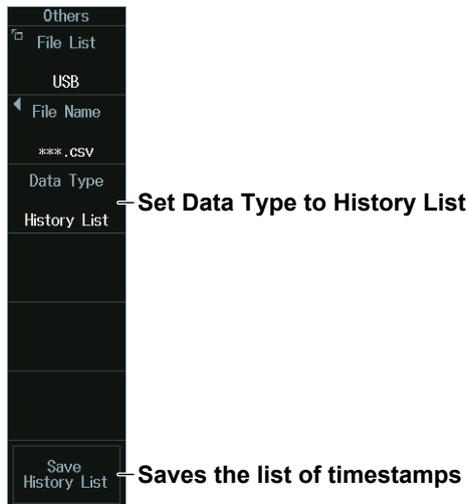
### Histogram (Histogram)

1. Press the **Data Type** soft key.
2. Press the **Histogram** soft key to display the following menu.



### List of Timestamps (History List)

1. Press the **Data Type** soft key.
2. Press the **History List** soft key to display the following menu.



## 17.5 Loading Waveform Data

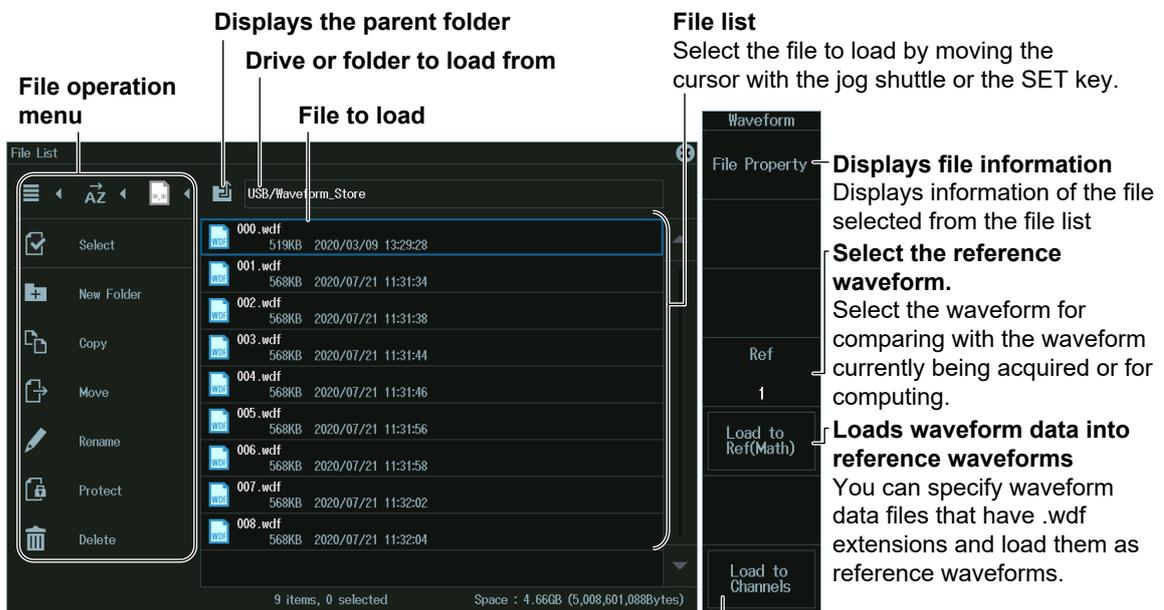
This section explains the following settings for loading waveform data):

- Displaying file information
- Loading waveform data into reference waveforms
- Loading waveform data into channels

► “Loading Waveform Data (Waveform)” in Features Guide

### File Waveform (Load) Menu

1. Press **FILE** to display the FILE menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (MENU) in the upper left of the screen and select the FILE menu from FILE/PRINT on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Waveform (Load)** soft key to display the following menu.



**Loads waveform data into channels**  
You can specify waveform data files that have .wdf extensions and load them with setup data.  
Loaded data is cleared when you start measurement.

### Note

- For instructions on how to use the file list, see section 17.8.
- To load a file saved from the waveform data of multiple channels as a reference waveform, use Load to Channels to load the waveform into channels, and then load the waveform as a computation reference waveform (see section 6.7).

## 17.6 Loading Setup Data

This section explains the following settings for loading setup data:

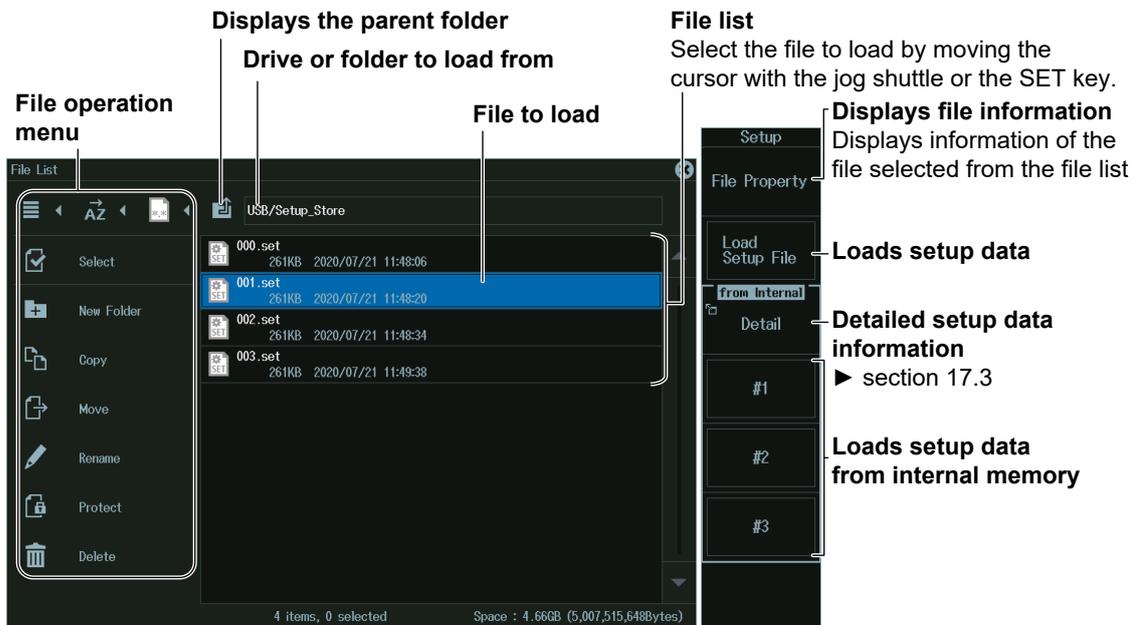
There are two methods you can use to load setup data. One method is to load setup data that has been saved to a file. The other method is to load setup data that is saved in the internal memory.

- Displaying file information
- Internal memory details
- Loading setup data

► “Loading Setup Data (Setup)” in the Features Guide

### File Setup (Load) Menu

1. Press **FILE** to display the FILE menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the FILE menu from FILE/PRINT on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Setup (Load)** soft key to display the following menu.



### Note

For instructions on how to use the file list, see section 17.8.

## 17.7 Loading Other Types of Data

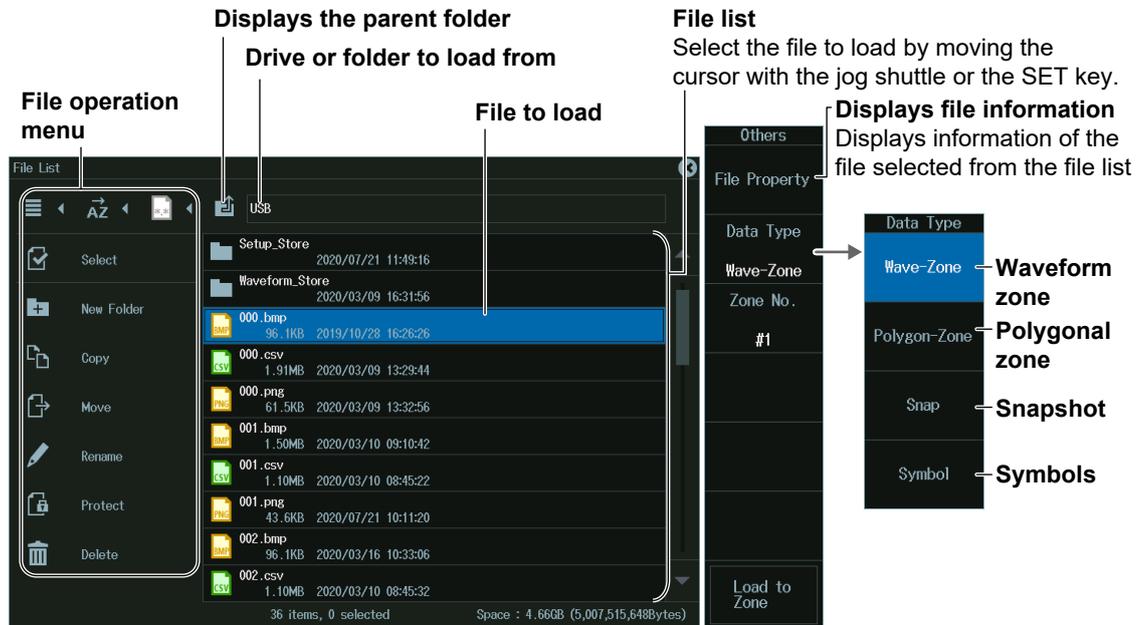
This section explains the following settings for loading waveform zones, polygonal zones, snapshot waveforms, or serial bus waveform symbol data:

- Displaying file information
- Data to load
- Loading data

► “Loading Other Types of Data (Others)” in Features Guide

### File Others (Load) Menu

1. Press **FILE** to display the FILE menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (E) in the upper left of the screen and select the FILE menu from FILE/PRINT on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Others (Load)** soft key to display the following menu.



### Note

For instructions on how to use the file list, see section 17.8.

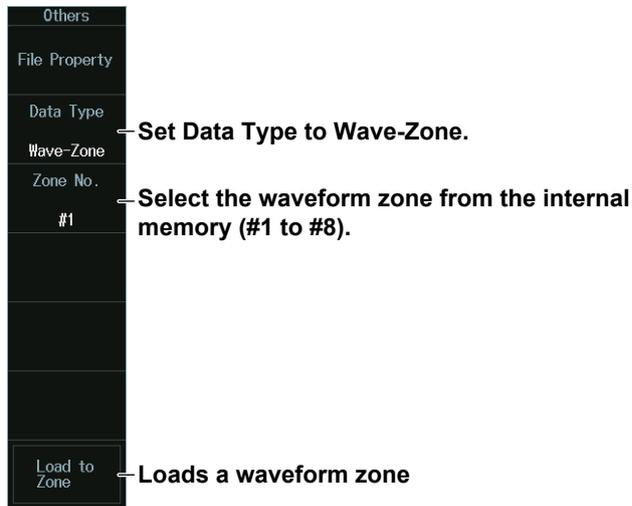
### Data to Load (Data Type)

Waveform Zone (Wave Zone)	Load waveform zone files that have .zwf extensions that you created on the instrument into internal memory areas Zone1 to Zone8 (Zone1 to Zone4 on 4ch models).
Polygonal Zone (Polygon-Zone)	Load polygonal zone files that have .msk extensions that you created with the Mask Editor software into internal memory areas Zone1 to Zone8 (Zone1 to Zone4 on 4ch models).
Snapshot (Snap)	Load snapshot waveform files that have .snp extensions that you have saved.
Symbol (Symbol)	Load physical value/symbol definition files that have .sbl extensions that you have edited using the Symbol Editor tool.

## Data to Load (Data Type)

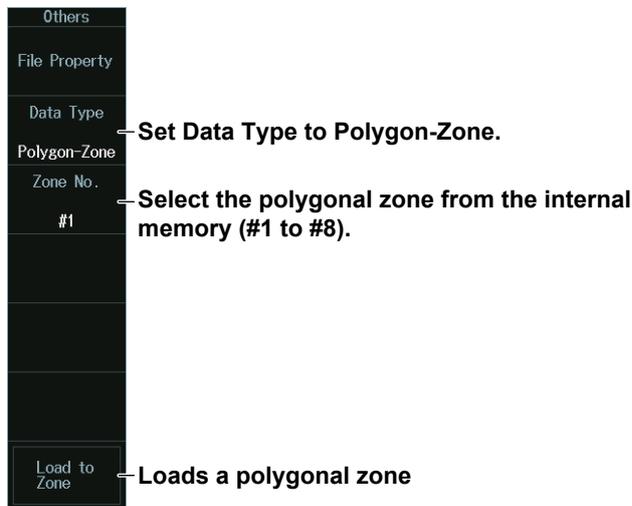
### Waveform Zone (Wave Zone)

1. Press the **Data Type** soft key.
2. Press the **Wave-Zone** soft key to display the following menu.



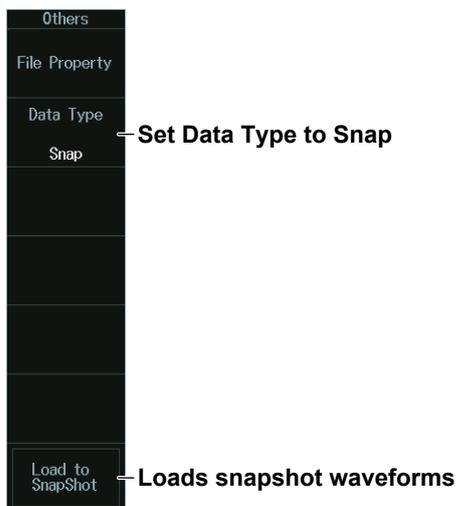
### Polygonal Zone (Polygon-Zone)

1. Press the **Data Type** soft key.
2. Press the **Polygon-Zone** soft key to display the following menu.



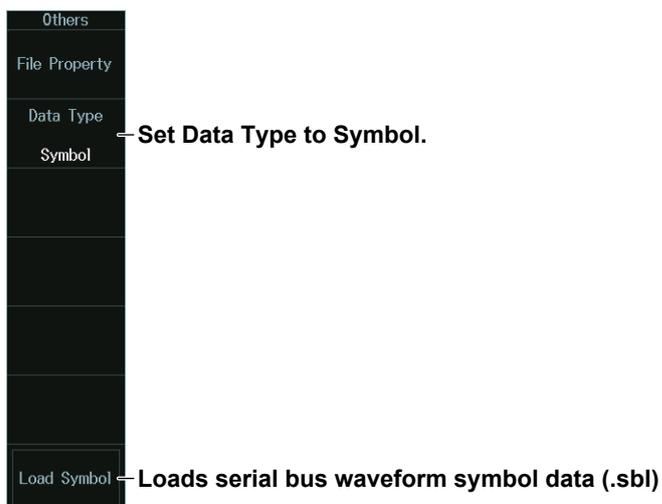
## Snapshot Waveforms (Snap)

1. Press the **Data Type** soft key.
2. Press the **Snap** soft key to display the following menu.



## Serial Bus Waveform Symbols (Symbol)

1. Press the **Data Type** soft key.
2. Press the **Symbol** soft key to display the following menu.



### Note

#### Symbols (.sbl)

Character string bit pattern based on definitions in a CANdb file.

This is a file (.sbl) created by converting the data in a CANdb file (.dbc) using Symbol Editor.

#### Symbol Editor

This is a free software that you can download from the YOKOGAWA website (<http://www.yokogawa.com/jp-yimi/>).

#### CANdb File (.dbc)

A definition database file created using the CANdb or CANdb++ software produced by Vector Informatik.

## 17.8 Performing File Operations

This section explains the following settings for performing various file operations from the file list or the file UTILITY menu:

### File list

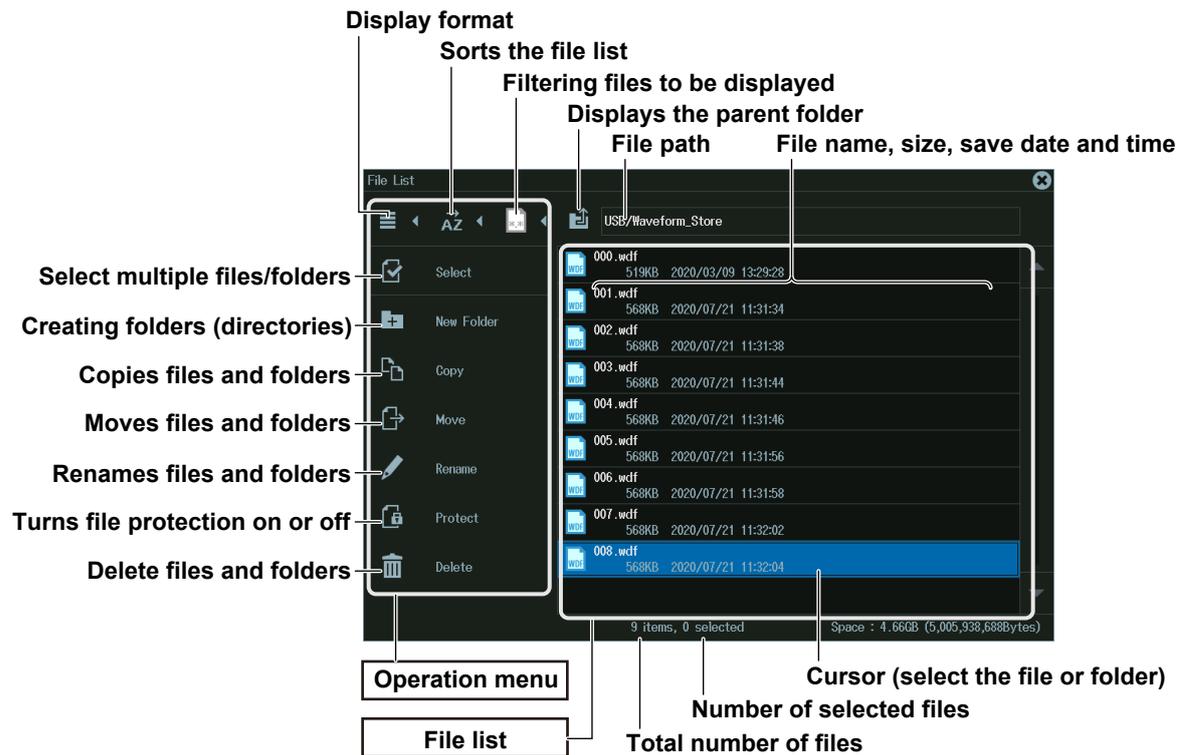
- Display format
- Sorting the file list
- Filtering files to be displayed
- Displaying the parent folder
- Selecting multiple files and folders (All Set, All Reset, and Set/Reset)
- Creating folders (directories)
- Copying files and folders
- Moving files and folders
- Renaming files and folders
- Turning file protection on or off
- Deleting files and folders

### FILE UTILITY menu

- Displaying file information
- Turning file protection on or off
- Selecting multiple files and folders (All Set, All Reset, and Set/Reset)

► [“File Operations \(Utility\)” in Features Guide](#)

### File List (File List)



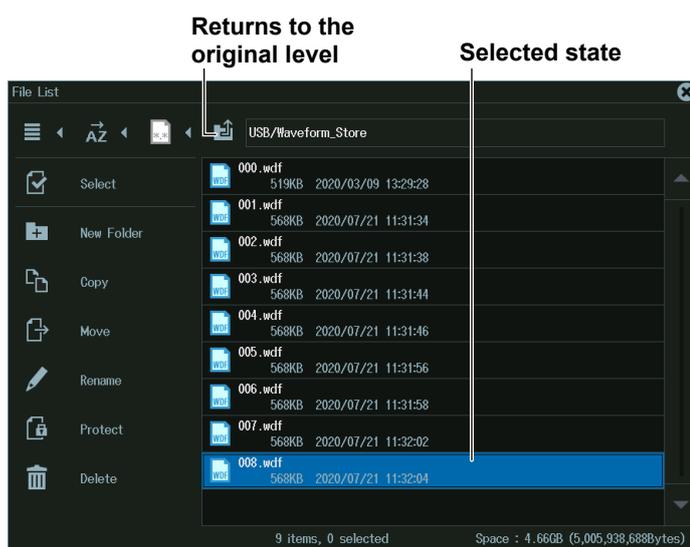
## Switching Between the Operation Menu and the File List

- Tilt **SET** (●) to the left to move the cursor to the operation menu. Tilt it to the right to move the cursor to the file list.
- To move the cursor between **☰**, **AZ**, \* and **📁**, \* tilt the **SET** key to the left or right. The icon varies depending on the selected menu item.
- To move the cursor to **📁** (display the parent folder), move the cursor to the top of the file list, then tilt **SET** up.

## Selecting the Item to Operate (File List)

### When Operating a File or Folder

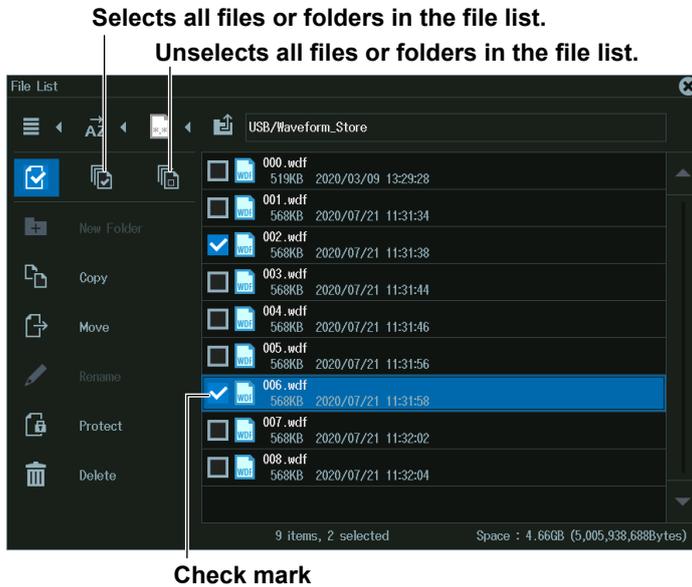
1. Turn the **jog shuttle** or tilt the **SET** (●) key up and down to move the cursor to the file or folder you want to select.  
A blue frame appears around the selected file or folder.
2. To display inside of a folder, move the cursor to the folder, and press **SET** (●).  
To return to the original folder, move the cursor to **📁** (display the parent folder) and press SET.



## 17.8 Performing File Operations

### When Operating Multiple Files and Folders (Select)

1. Display the content of a drive or folder that contains multiple files or folders that you want to select.
2. Select **Select** (☑) on the operation menu and press **SET**. to display the following screen. The cursor moves to the file list.



3. Move the cursor to a file or folder that you want to select on the file list.
4. Press **SET** (●).
  - A check mark is displayed next to the selected file or folder.
  - Press **SET** again to remove the check mark.
5. Repeat steps 3 and 4 to select all the files and folders you want.
  - To select all or unselect all, move the cursor to the operation menu, select **Select All** (☑) or **Unselect All** (☐), and then press **SET**.
  - To close the multiple selection screen, move the cursor to the operation menu, select **Select** (☑) and press **SET**. Multiple selection will be canceled.

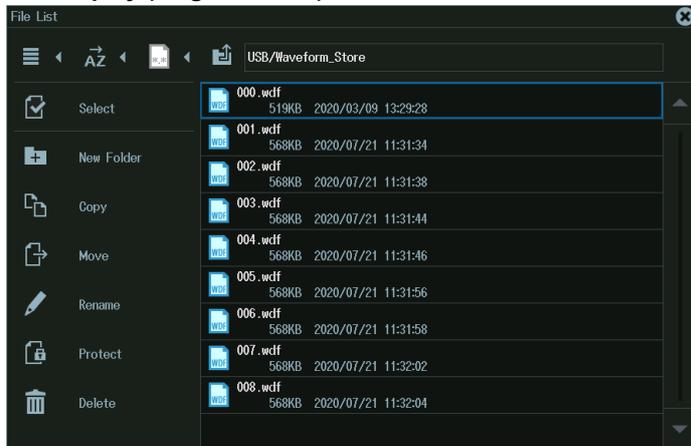
### Selecting the Operation Content (Operation Menu)

1. Turn the **jog shuttle** or move the **SET** (●) key up and down to move the cursor to the menu item you want to use.
2. Press **SET** (●).
  - The screen for the selected item appears.
  - To return to the previous screen, press **ESC**.

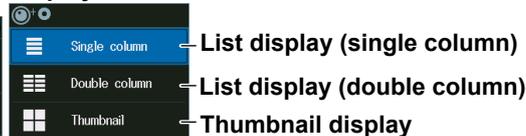
## Display Format (☰)

Select the icon (☰) from the operation menu, and press **SET**. The following screen appears.  
 The icon will change according to the currently selected display format.

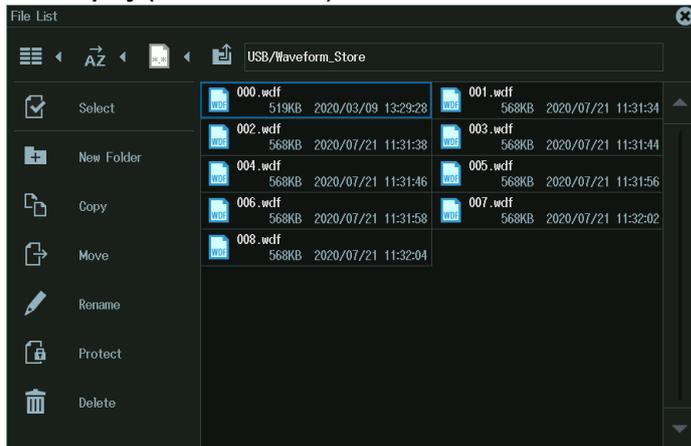
List display (single column)



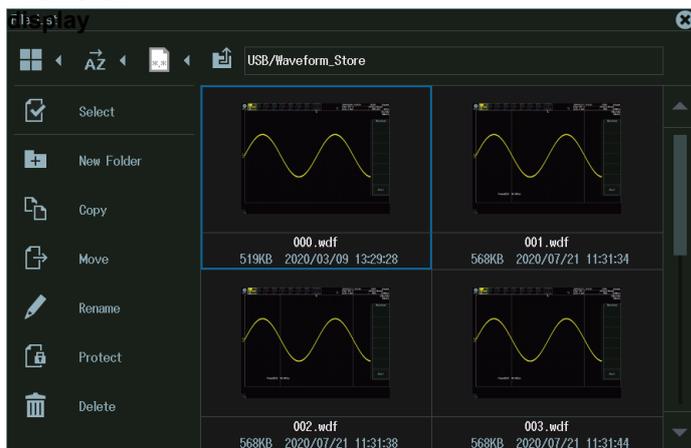
Display format



List display (double column)

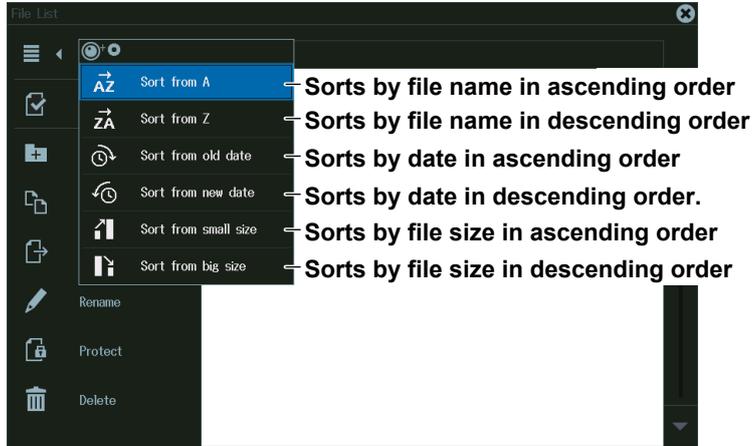


Thumbnail



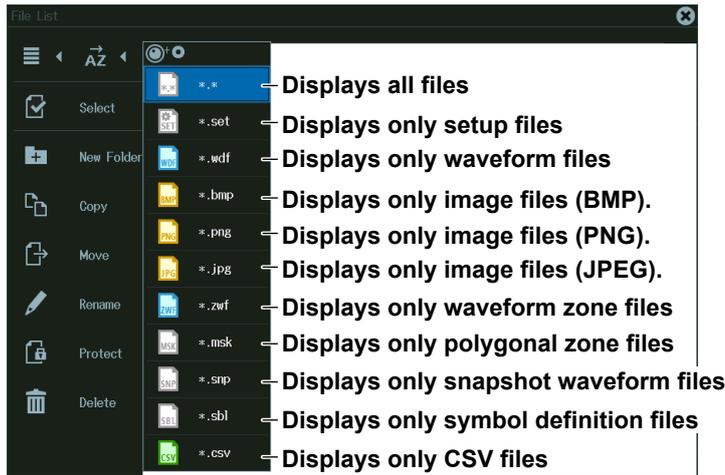
### Sorting the File List (A-Z)

Select the icon (A-Z) from the operation menu, and press **SET**. The following screen appears. The icon will change according to the currently sort order.



### Filtering the Files to Display (File Icon)

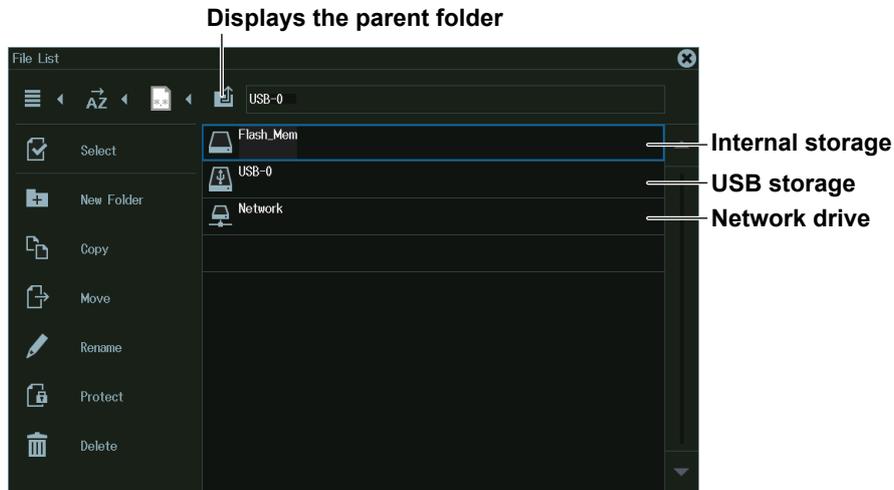
Select the icon (File Icon) from the operation menu, and press **SET**. The following screen appears. The icon varies depending on the selected file type.



## Displaying the Parent Folder (⇧)

Select the icon (⇧) from the operation menu, and press **SET**. The parent folder is shown in the file list.

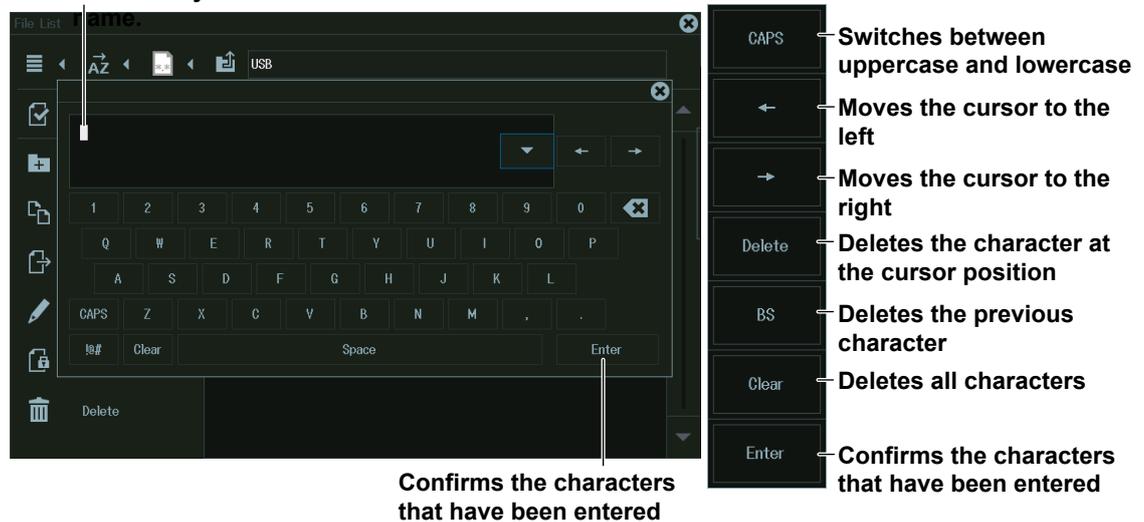
When the top folder is displayed, you can change the storage device.



## Making Folders (Directories) (New folder)

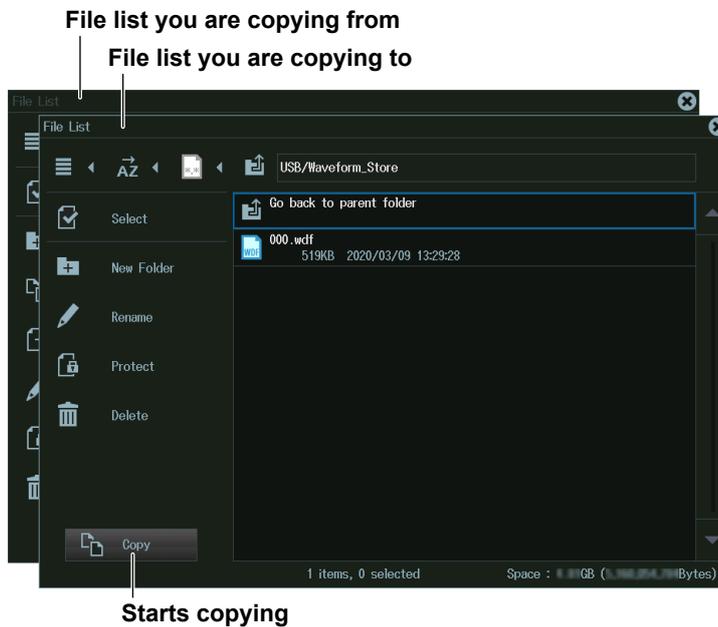
1. Create a folder and display the content of the drive or folder in the file list.
2. Select **New Folder** from the operation menu, and press **SET**. The following screen appears.

Use the keyboard to enter the new folder



### Copying Files and Folders (Copy)

1. Select the files and folders in the file list that you want to copy.
2. Select **Copy** from the operation menu, and press **SET**. The following screen appears.



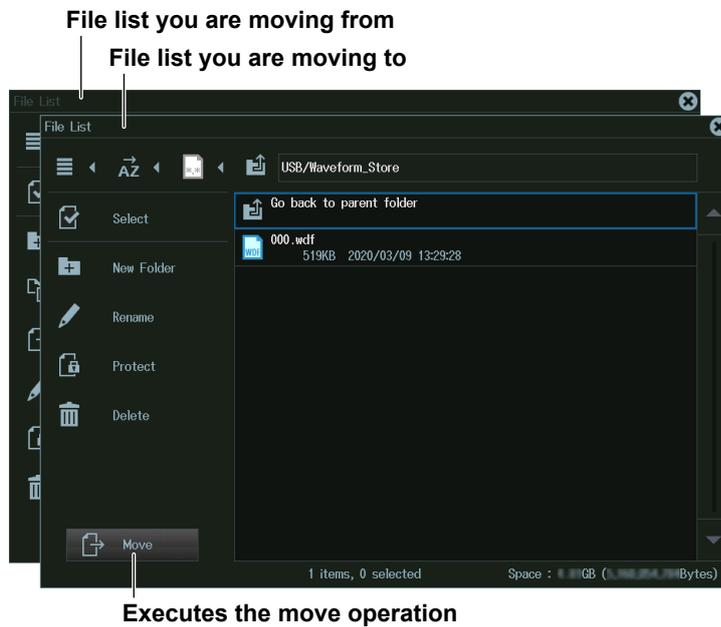
3. Select the drive or folder in the file list that you want to copy to.
4. Tilt **SET** to the left and move to the copy destination operation menu.
5. Select **Copy**, and press **SET**. The files and folders are copied to the destination.

#### Note

- By selecting multiple files, you can copy them all at the same time. For instructions on how to select multiple files, see page 17-19.
  - You can perform file operations on the file list that you are copying to as well.
-

## Moving Files and Folders (Move)

1. Select the files and folders in the file list that you want to move.
2. Select **Move** from the operation menu, and press **SET**. The following screen appears.



3. Select the drive or folder in the file list that you want to move to.
4. Tilt **SET** to the left and move to the move destination operation menu.
5. Select **Move**, and press **SET**. The files or folders are moved to the destination.

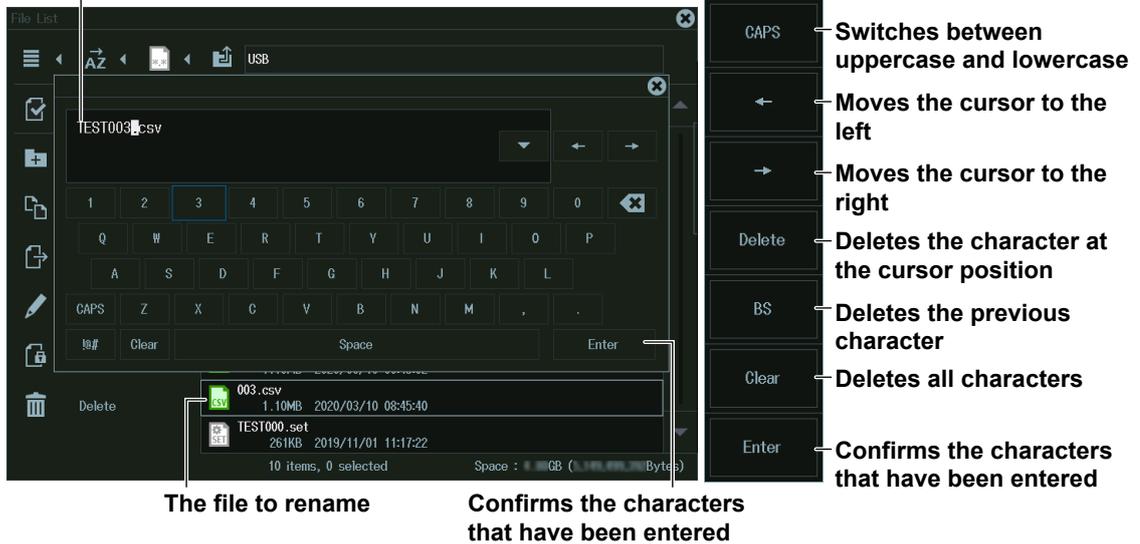
### Note

- By selecting multiple files, you can move them all at the same time. For instructions on how to select multiple files, see page 17-19.
- You can perform file operations on the file list that you are moving files to as well.

### Renaming Files and Folders (Rename)

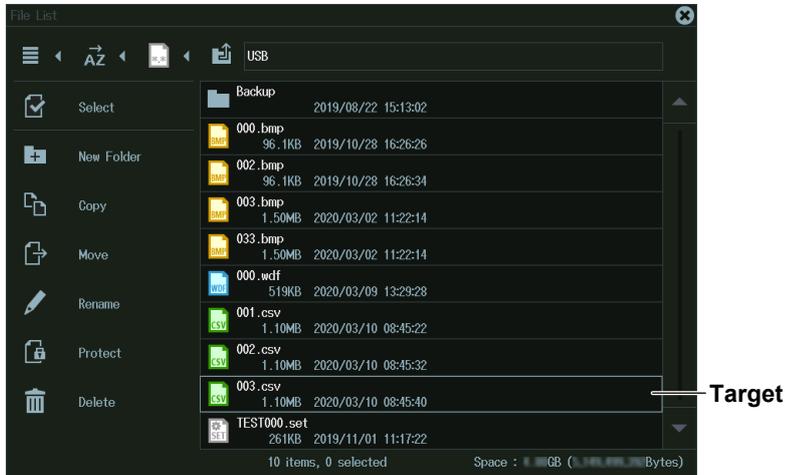
1. Select the file or folder that you want to rename from the file list.
2. Select **Rename** from the operation menu, and press **SET**. The following screen appears.

Use the keyboard to input the new file or folder name



### Deleting Files and Folders (Delete)

1. Select the file or folder that you want to delete from the file list.
2. Select **Delete** from the operation menu, and press **SET**. The selected file is deleted.

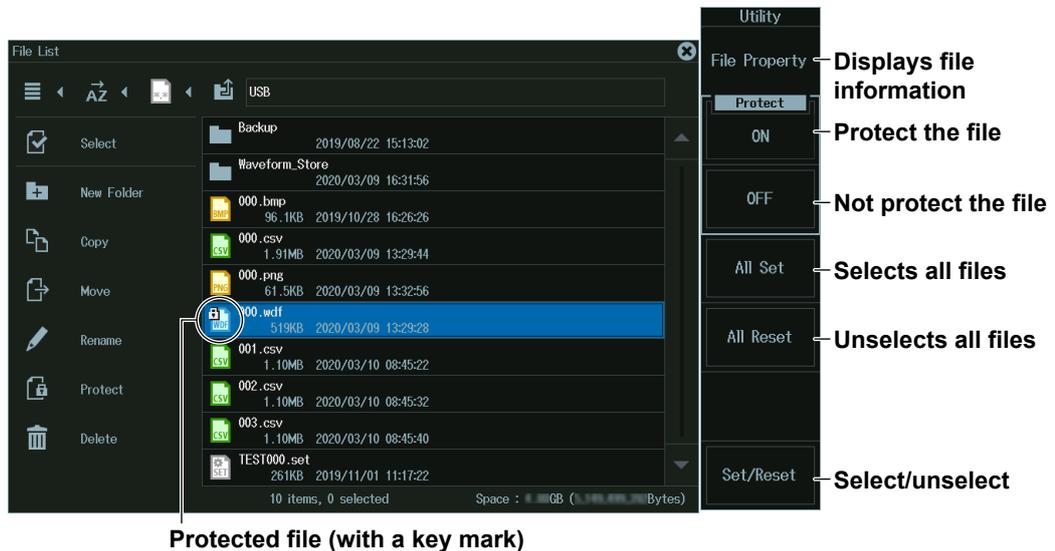


#### Note

By selecting multiple files, you can delete them all at the same time. For instructions on how to select multiple files, see page 17-19.

## File Utility Menu

1. Press **FILE** to display the FILE menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the FILE menu from FILE/PRINT on the top menu that is displayed.
2. Press the **Utility** soft key to display the following screen.



### Turning File Protection On or Off (Protect ON/OFF)

1. Select the file you want to protect.
2. Press the **ON (Protect)** soft key. A key mark is displayed on the selected file icon.  
You can also tap Protect on the operation menu to do the same.  
Pressing the **OFF (Protect)** soft key clears the key mark displayed on the selected file icon.

#### File Protection (Protect)

File Protection (Protect)	Description
ON	The selected file is protected. The file can be read from but cannot be written to. Nor can the file be deleted.
OFF	The selected files not protected. The file can be read from, written to, and deleted.

### Selecting and Unselecting (Set/Reset)

1. Move the cursor to the file you want to access.
2. Press the **Set/Reset** soft key. Each time you press the soft key, the file toggles between selected and unselected.

## 18.1 Connecting the Instrument to a Network

This section explains how to connect the instrument to a network.

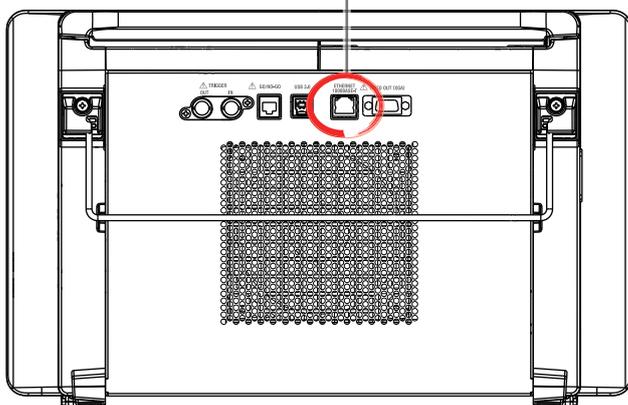
### Ethernet Interface Specifications

There is a 1000BASE-T port located on the rear panel of the instrument.

Item	Specifications
Ports	1
Electrical and mechanical specifications	IEEE802.3 compliant
Transmission system	Ethernet(1000BASE-T/100BASE-TX/10BASE-T)
Communication protocol	TCP/IP
Supported services	Server: FTP, VXI-11, Socket Client: FTP (Net Drive), SMTP (Mail), SNMP, LPR (Net Print), DHCP, and DNS
Connector type	RJ-45 connector

#### Ethernet port

This port is for connecting the instrument to a controller (such as a PC) using an Ethernet cable.



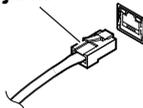
### Items Required to Connect the Instrument to a Network

#### Cable

Use one of the following types of network cable that conforms to the transfer speed of your network.

- A UTP (Unshielded Twisted-Pair) cable
- An STP (Shielded Twisted-Pair) cable

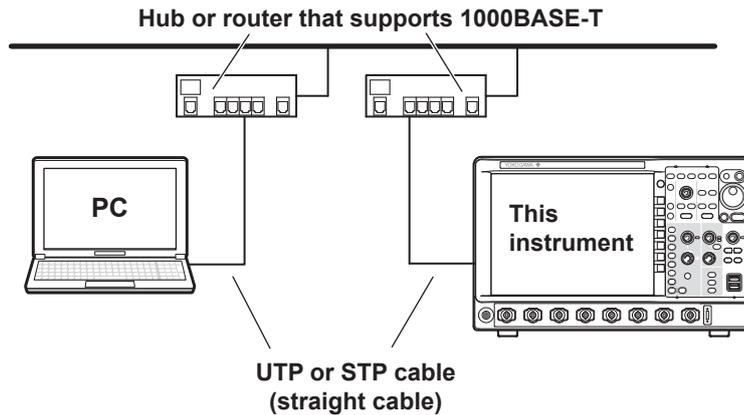
#### RJ-45 modular jack



## Connection Procedure

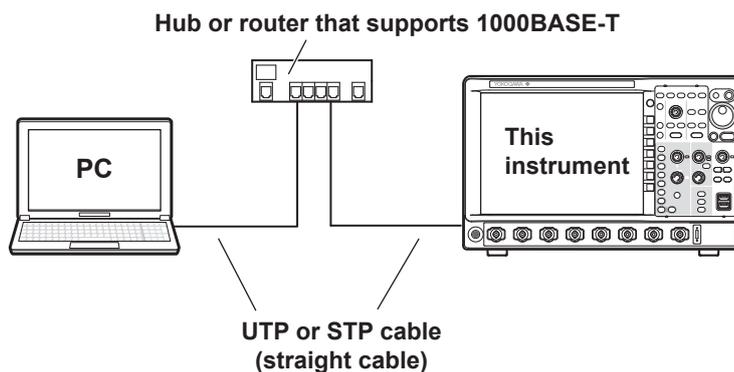
### To Connect to a PC over a Network

1. Turn off the instrument.
2. Connect one end of a UTP (or STP) cable to the ETHERNET 1000BASE-T port on the rear panel.
3. Connect the other end of the UTP (or STP) cable to a hub or router.
4. Turn on the instrument.



### To Connect to a PC through a Hub or Router

1. Turn off the instrument and the PC.
2. Connect one end of a UTP (or STP) cable to the ETHERNET 1000BASE-T port on the rear panel.
3. Connect the other end of the UTP (or STP) cable to a hub or router.
4. Connect the PC to the hub or router in the same way.
5. Turn on the instrument.



### Note

- Use a hub or router that conforms to the transfer speed of your network.
  - When you connect a PC to the instrument through a hub or router, the PC must be equipped with an auto switching 1000BASE-T/100BASE-TX/10BASE-T network card.
  - Do not connect the instrument to a PC directly. Direct communication without a hub or router is not guaranteed to work.
-

## 18.2 Configuring TCP/IP Settings

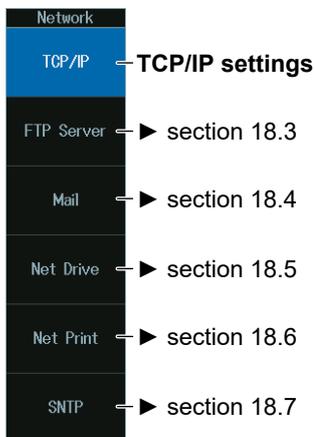
This section explains the following TCP/IP settings for connecting to a network:

- DHCP (IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway)
- DNS (domain name, DNS server IP address, and domain suffix)

► [“TCP/IP \(TCP/IP\)” in the features guide](#)

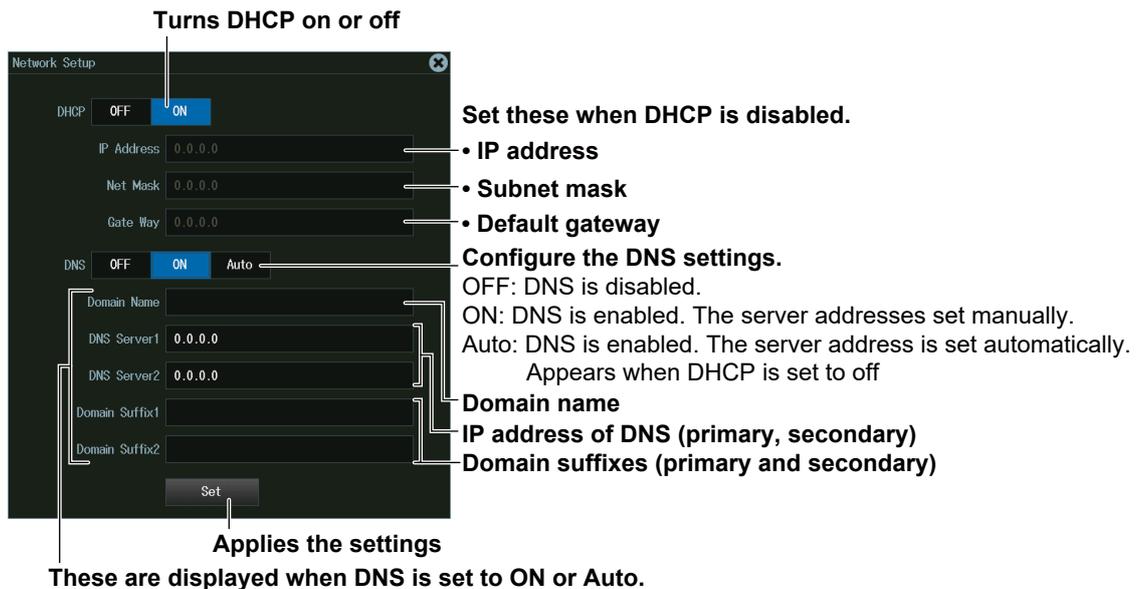
### UTILITY Network Menu

1. Press **UTILITY** to display the UTILITY menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the UTILITY menu from UTILITY on the top menu.
2. Press the **Network** soft key to display the following menu.



### TCP/IP(TCP/IP)

Press the **TCP/IP** soft key to display the following screen.



## 18.3 Accessing the Instrument from a PC (FTP Server)

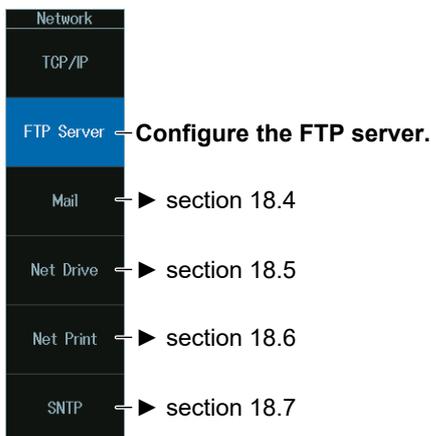
This section explains the following settings for accessing the instrument from a PC on a network:

- User name
- Password
- Timeout
- Starting an FTP client

► “FTP Server (FTP Server)” in Features Guide

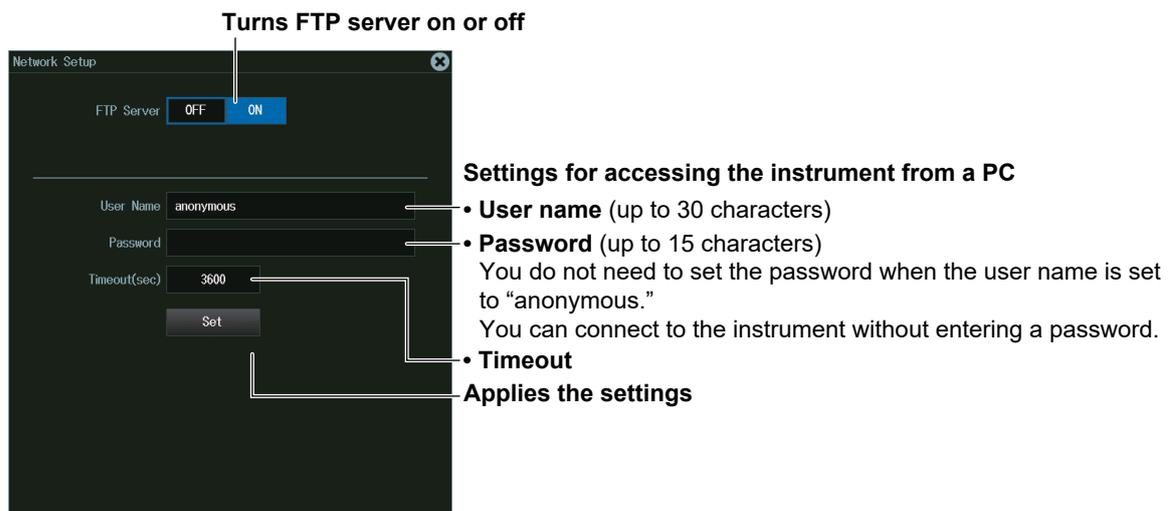
### UTILITY Network Menu

1. Press **UTILITY** to display the UTILITY menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the UTILITY menu from UTILITY on the top menu.
2. Press the **Network** soft key to display the following menu.



### FTP Server (FTP Server)

Press the **FTP Server** soft key to display the following screen.



### How to Access from a PC

Start an FTP client on a PC. Enter the user name and password that you set on the instrument's network setup screen, which is shown above, and connect to the instrument.

## 18.4 Configuring Mail Transmission (SMTP Client)

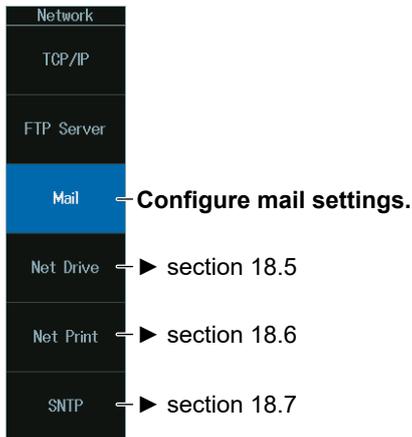
This section explains the following settings for transmitting mail to a specified mail address on a network:

- Mail server
- Mail address
- Comments
- Attaching image files
- Timeout
- User authentication
- Sending a test mail

► “Mail (Mail)” in Features Guide

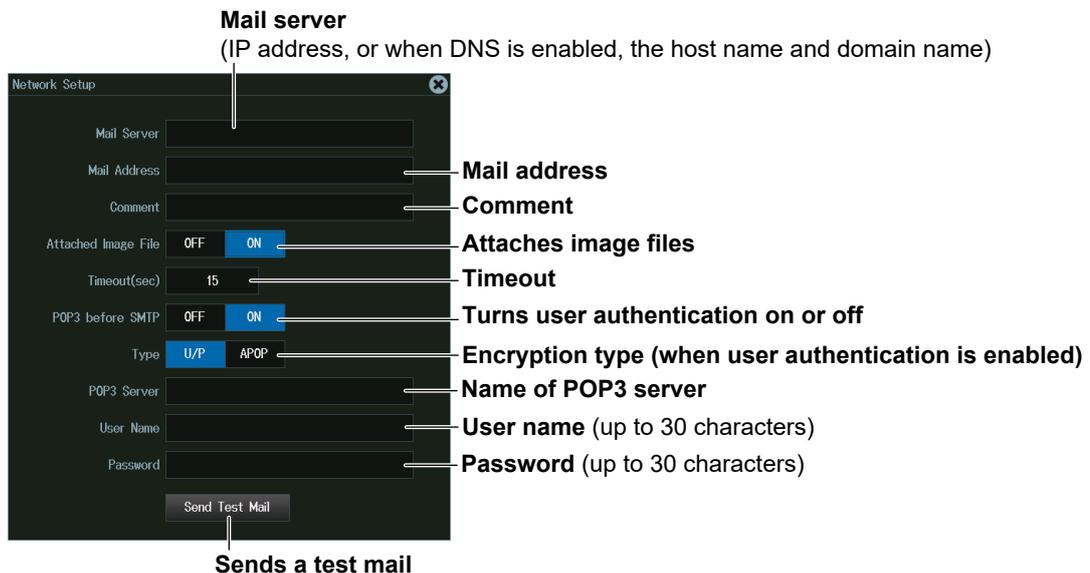
### UTILITY Network Menu

1. Press **UTILITY** to display the UTILITY menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (MENU) in the upper left of the screen and select the UTILITY menu from UTILITY on the top menu.
2. Press the **Network** soft key to display the following menu.



### Mail (Mail)

Press the **Mail** soft key to display the following screen.



## 18.5 Connecting to a Network Drive (FTP Client)

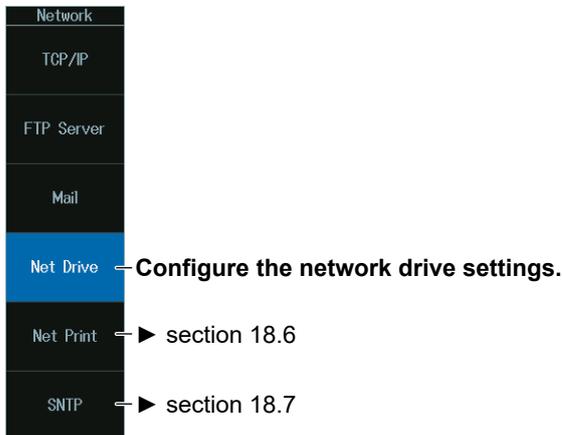
This section explains the following settings for accessing a network drive through an Ethernet connection to load or save various instrument's data:

- FTP server (file server)
- User name
- Password
- Turning FTP passive mode on or off
- Timeout
- Connecting to and disconnecting from network drives

► [“Network Drive \(Net Drive\)” in the Features Guide](#)

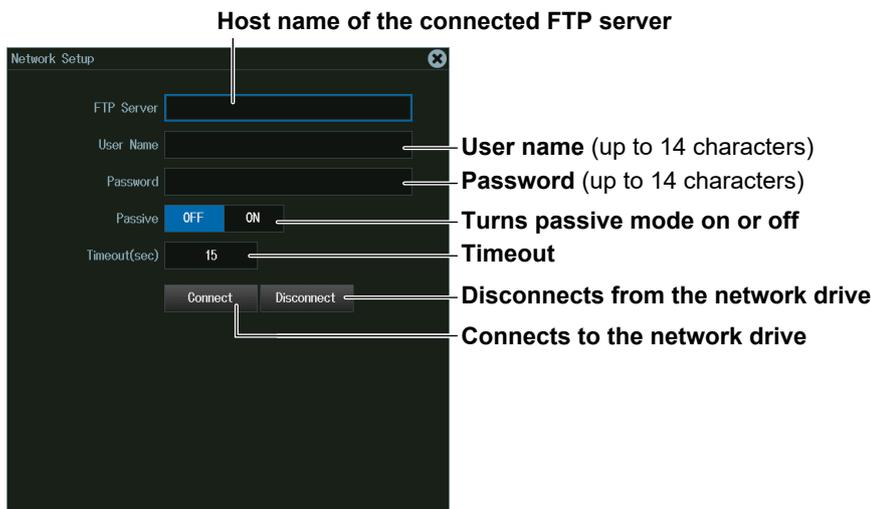
### UTILITY Network Menu

1. Press **UTILITY** to display the UTILITY menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (MENU) in the upper left of the screen and select the UTILITY menu from UTILITY on the top menu.
2. Press the **Network** soft key to display the following menu.



### Configuring Network Drive (Net Drive) Settings and Connecting to It

Press the **Net Drive** soft key to display the following screen.



## 18.6 Configuring a Network Printer

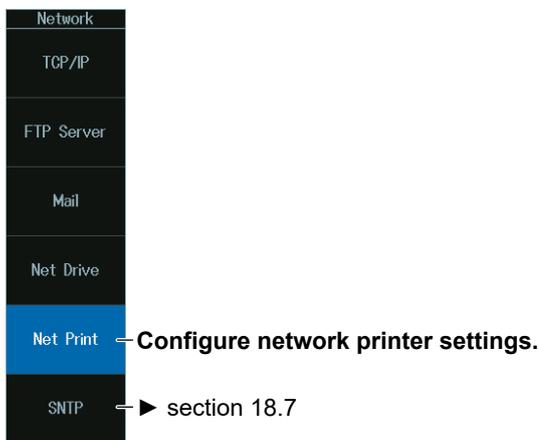
This section explains the following settings for printing screen images to a network printer:

- LPR server
- LPR name
- Timeout

► “Network Printer (Net Print)” in the Features Guide

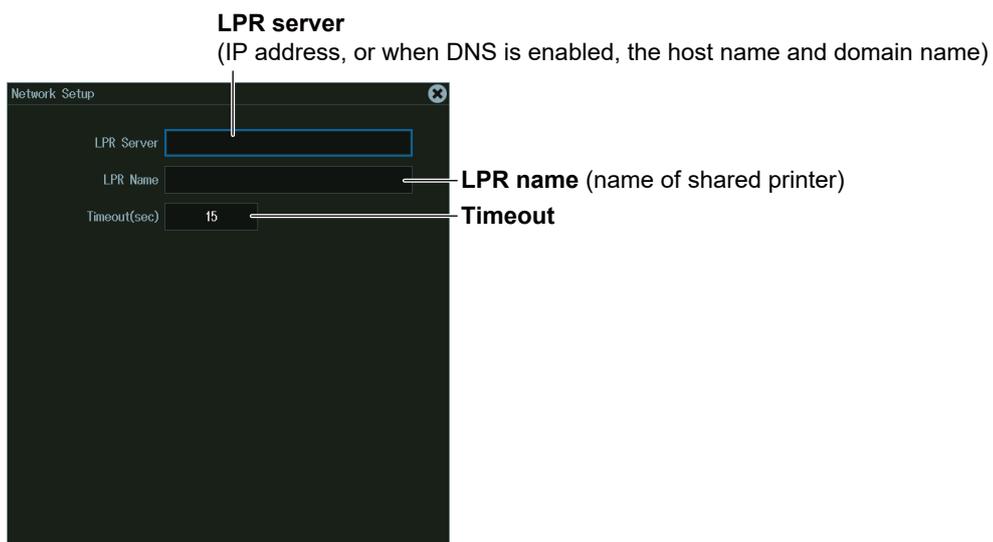
### UTILITY Network Menu

1. Press **UTILITY** to display the UTILITY menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (MENU) in the upper left of the screen and select the UTILITY menu from UTILITY on the top menu.
2. Press the **Network** soft key to display the following menu.



### Network Printer (Net Print)

Press the **Net Print** soft key to display the following screen.



## 18.7 Using SNTP to Set the Date and Time

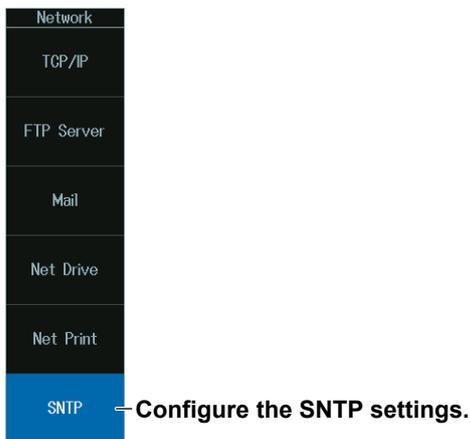
This section explains how to use SNTP to set the Instrument's date and time.

- SNTP server
- Timeout
- Executing time adjustment
- Automatic adjustment

► [“SNTP \(SNTP\)” in the Features Guide](#)

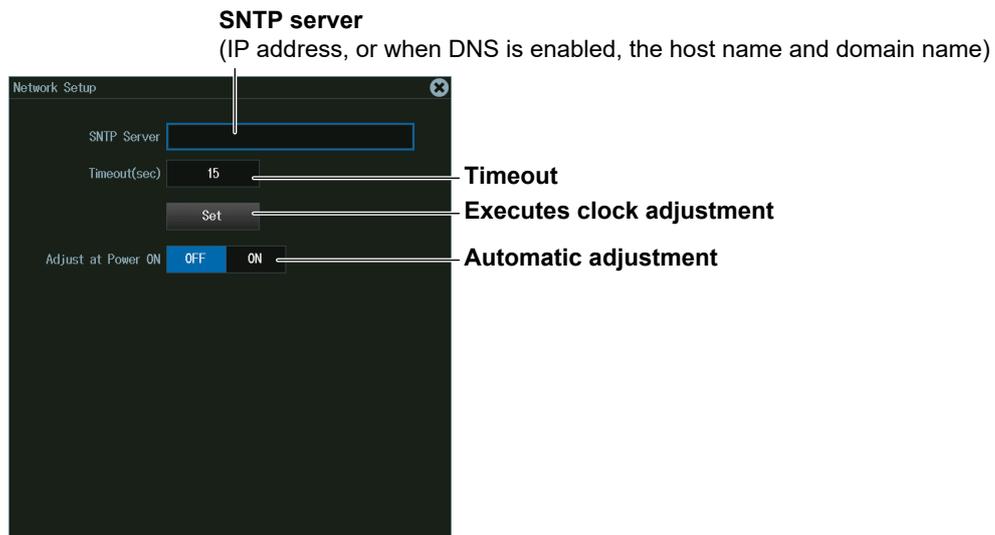
### UTILITY Network Menu

1. Press **UTILITY** to display the UTILITY menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (☰) in the upper left of the screen and select the UTILITY menu from UTILITY on the top menu.
2. Press the **Network** soft key to display the following menu.



### SNTP(SNTP)

Press the **SNTP** soft key to display the following screen.



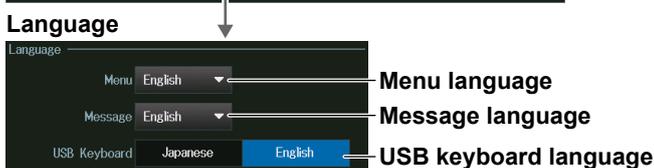
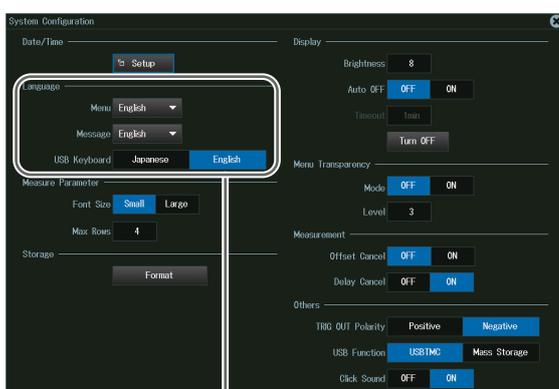
## 19.1 Changing the Menu, Message, and USB Keyboard Languages

This section explains the settings that you can use to change the instrument’s menu, message, and USB keyboard languages.

► “Language (Language)” in Features Guide

### UTILITY System Configuration Menu

1. Press **UTILITY** to display the UTILITY menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (M) in the upper left of the screen and select the UTILITY menu from UTILITY on the top menu.
2. Press the **System Configuration** soft key to display the following menu.



#### Note

Even if you set the menu or message language to a language other than English, some terms will be displayed in English.

#### USB Keyboard (USB Keyboard)

You can use the following keyboards that conform to USB Human Interface Devices (HID) Class Ver. 1.1.

English:	104-key keyboards
Japanese:	109-key keyboards

#### Note

For details on how the keys of this instrument are mapped to the keys on a USB keyboard, see appendix 2 in the *Getting Started Guide* (IM DLM5058-03EN).

## 19.2 Setting the Click Sound, Measured Value Font Size, and Number of Rows for Displaying Measurement Values

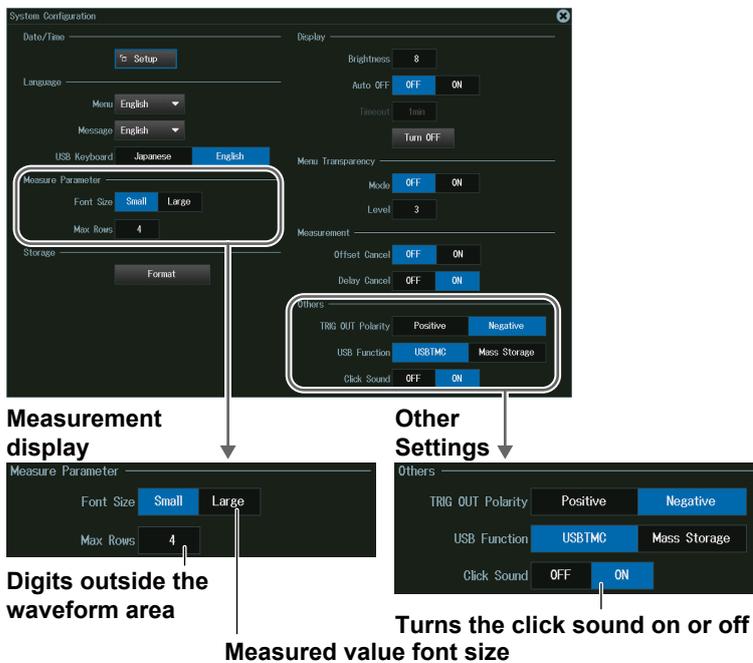
This section explains the following settings:

- Click sound on/off
- Measured value font size
- Number of rows for displaying measured values

► “Measurement Display (Measure Parameter)”  
“Turning On or Off the Click Sound (Click Sound)” in the Features Guide

### UTILITY System Configuration Menu

1. Press **UTILITY** to display the UTILITY menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (MENU) in the upper left of the screen and select the UTILITY menu from UTILITY on the top menu.
2. Press the **System Configuration** soft key to display the following menu.



## 19.3 Viewing Setup Information (Overview)

This section explains how to view the current setup information.

► “Overview (Overview)” in the Features Guide

### UTILITY Overview Menu

1. Press **UTILITY** to display the UTILITY menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (MENU) in the upper left of the screen and select the UTILITY menu from UTILITY on the top menu.
2. Press the **Overview** soft key to display the following menu.

Overview	
System Overview	← <b>Displays system overview</b> Displays mainly model and suffix code information
Setup Information1	← <b>Displays setup information 1</b> Displays mainly the vertical and horizontal scale settings
Setup Information2	← <b>Displays setup information 2</b> Displays mainly the trigger settings
Option Installation	← <b>Adds options</b> ► IM 709821-01EN DLM5000 Additional Option License User's Manual

### Adding Options

A portion of the functions provided as options (with the instrument's model name) can be installed by purchasing additional licenses after the purchase of the instrument. For more details, contact your nearest YOKOGAWA dealer.

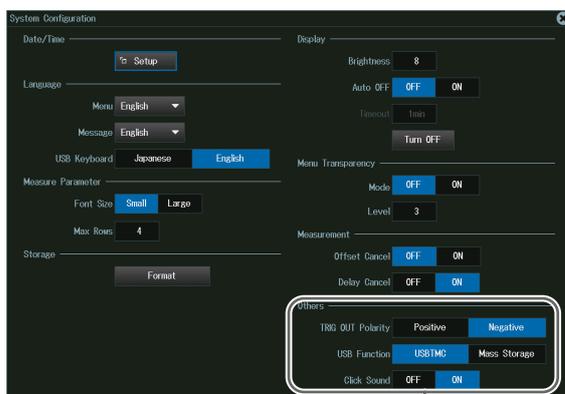
## 19.4 Using the DLM5000 as a USB Storage Device

This section explains the setting that enables you to use the instrument as a USB storage device through a USB connection made between the USB port on the instrument's rear panel and a PC.

► [“USB Communication \(USB Function\)” in the Features Guide](#)

### UTILITY System Configuration Menu

1. Press **UTILITY** to display the UTILITY menu.  
You can also tap **MENU** (  ) in the upper left of the screen and select the UTILITY menu from UTILITY on the top menu.
2. Press the **System Configuration** soft key to display the following menu.



#### Other Settings



**Set USB Function to Mass Storage**

### Note

- From a PC, you can access the instrument's internal storage as a storage device. You cannot access the instrument's network drives or the storage device connected to the instrument's USB ports.
- Mass Storage functions as a read-only storage device.
- When you perform file operations in the internal storage from this instrument, the content of the internal storage of the instrument displayed on the PC is updated. During updating, the display on the PC may momentarily disappear.
- The USB communication function (USB Function) can also be set in Remote Control from the UTILITY menu. The setting values are linked with the settings on the System Configuration menu. For the operating procedure, see section 1.4 in IM DLM5058-17EN.

# Index

<b>A</b>	<b>Page</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>Page</b>
accumulation time.....	4-8	data 1 source (Data1), data 2 source (Data2) (SPI bus).....	2-93
ACQUIRE menu .....	3-1	data source (Source).....	2-97
ACTION Action on Trig menu .....	2-111	data to load (Data Type).....	17-16
ACTION Go/Nogo menu.....	2-113	data type to save (Data Type) .....	17-9
ANALYSIS Histogram Measure Setup menu .....	13-3	DELAY .....	2-3
ANALYSIS Histogram menu.....	13-1	delay cancel (Delay Cancel).....	2-4
ANALYSIS Power Analysis menu (harmonic analysis).....	14-11	deskewing (Deskew) .....	1-13
ANALYSIS Power Analysis menu (Joule integral).....	14-15	display color (Color).....	4-5
ANALYSIS Power Analysis menu (power supply analysis) ..	14-1	display format (Format) .....	4-2
ANALYSIS Power Analysis menu (safe operating area analysis).....	14-7	display interpolation (Dot Connect) .....	4-2
ANALYSIS Power Analysis menu (switching loss analysis) .	14-2	DISPLAY menu (accumulation display).....	4-7
ANALYSIS Power Measurement menu (power measurement).....	14-17	DISPLAY menu (screen display) .....	4-1
area calculation (Integ).....	5-6	display order of bits and the buses (Bit Order).....	1-12
attenuation constant .....	3-3		
auto scrolling (Auto Scroll).....	10-2		
average count.....	3-3		
<b>B</b>	<b>Page</b>	<b>E</b>	<b>Page</b>
backlight .....	4-10	EDGE menu .....	2-5
bandwidth limit (Bandwidth).....	1-5	ENHANCED CAN FD menu.....	2-46
bit rate (user-defined bus) .....	2-98	ENHANCED CAN menu.....	2-40
bit settings (Bit Setup) .....	1-8	ENHANCED CXPI menu .....	2-58
broadcasting system (Mode) (TV trigger).....	2-102	ENHANCED Edge OR menu.....	2-8
B TRIG menu.....	2-105	ENHANCED FlexRay menu .....	2-35
bus display (Bus).....	1-10	ENHANCED I2C menu.....	2-82
bus setup (Setup) (CAN bus analysis/search).....	12-9	ENHANCED Interval menu.....	2-32
bus setup (Setup) (CAN FD bus analysis/search).....	12-18	ENHANCED LIN menu.....	2-53
bus setup (Setup) (CXPI bus analysis/search).....	12-33	ENHANCED Pattern menu.....	2-10
bus setup (Setup) (FlexRay bus analysis/search).....	12-2	ENHANCED Pulse Width menu .....	2-15
bus setup (Setup) (I2C bus analysis/search).....	12-65	ENHANCED Rise/Fall Time menu.....	2-18
bus setup (Setup) (LIN bus analysis/search).....	12-27	ENHANCED Runt menu.....	2-21
bus setup (Setup) (SENT analysis/search) .....	12-41	ENHANCED SENT menu.....	2-66
bus setup (Setup) (SPI bus analysis/search) .....	12-76	ENHANCED SPI menu.....	2-90
bus setup (Setup) (UART analysis/search) .....	12-56	ENHANCED Timeout menu.....	2-24
bus setup (Setup) (user-defined bus analysis/search) .....	12-83	ENHANCED TV menu.....	2-101
		ENHANCED UART menu.....	2-76
		ENHANCED User Define menu .....	2-96
		ENHANCED Window menu.....	2-27
		ENHANCED Window OR menu .....	2-30
<b>C</b>	<b>Page</b>	<b>F</b>	<b>Page</b>
CAN FD standard .....	2-52	FFT Measure Setup menu.....	7-5
chip select source (CS (SS)) (SPI bus).....	2-94	FFT menu .....	7-1
CH menu (analog signal).....	1-1	file list (File List).....	17-18
CH UTIL menu (collective display) .....	1-17	File Others (Load) menu.....	17-15
CH UTIL menu (copy).....	1-6	File Others (Save) menu .....	17-8
clear trace (CLEAR TRACE) .....	4-9	File Setup (Load) menu .....	17-14
clock source (Clock) (SPI bus) .....	2-91	File Setup (Save) menu.....	17-7
clock source (user-defined bus) .....	2-98	File Utility menu .....	17-27
Continuous .....	9-7	File Waveform (Load) menu .....	17-13
CURSOR menu (degree) .....	8-11	File Waveform (Save) menu.....	17-3
CURSOR menu (marker) .....	8-9	forced trigger [FORCE TRIG] .....	2-110
CURSOR menu ( $\Delta T$ ) .....	8-1	format (Format) (SENT).....	2-68
CURSOR menu ( $\Delta T$ and $\Delta V$ ) .....	8-6		
CURSOR menu ( $\Delta V$ ).....	8-4		
Cycle.....	9-8		
		<b>G</b>	<b>Page</b>
		grid (Graticule).....	4-3
		<b>H</b>	<b>Page</b>
		History .....	9-11
		HISTORY menu (history waveform display).....	15-1
		HISTORY menu (history waveform search) .....	15-6
		Holdoff .....	2-2



<b>T</b>	<b>Page</b>
time conditions (interval trigger) .....	2-34
time conditions (pattern trigger).....	2-14
time conditions (pulse width trigger).....	2-17
time conditions (rise/fall time trigger).....	2-20
time conditions (runt trigger).....	2-23
time conditions (window trigger).....	2-29
TIME/DIV knob .....	1-18
timeout period (Time) (timeout trigger) .....	2-26
transparent display .....	4-11
trigger A (A Trigger).....	2-108
trigger B (B Trigger).....	2-109
trigger delay.....	2-3
trigger levels (Levels) (edge OR trigger) .....	2-9
trigger levels (Levels) (pattern trigger).....	2-12
trigger levels (Levels) (window OR trigger) .....	2-31
trigger mode (Mode) (CAN bus).....	2-42
trigger mode (Mode) (CAN FD bus) .....	2-48
trigger mode (Mode) (CXPI bus) .....	2-61
trigger mode (Mode) (FlexRay bus).....	2-36
trigger mode (Mode) (I2C bus).....	2-84, 12-68
trigger mode (Mode) (LIN bus).....	2-55
trigger mode (Mode) (SENT).....	2-69
trigger mode (Mode) (UART).....	2-79
trigger position .....	2-3
trigger source pattern (Pattern) (edge OR trigger) .....	2-8
trigger source pattern (Pattern) (pattern trigger).....	2-12
trigger source (Source) (interval trigger).....	2-33
trigger source (Source) (pulse width trigger) .....	2-16
trigger source (Source) (rise/fall time trigger).....	2-19
trigger source (Source) (runt trigger).....	2-22
trigger source (Source) (timeout trigger) .....	2-25
trigger source (Source) (window trigger) .....	2-28
<b>U</b>	<b>Page</b>
UTILITY Network menu (FTP client) .....	18-6
UTILITY Network menu (FTP server).....	18-4
UTILITY Network menu (mail transmission).....	18-5
UTILITY Network menu (network printer).....	18-7
UTILITY Network menu (SNTP).....	18-8
UTILITY Network menu (TCP/IP).....	18-3
<b>W</b>	<b>Page</b>
waveform acquisitions, number of (ACQ Count) .....	3-3
waveform intensity (Intensity) .....	4-6
waveform zone (WaveZone) .....	2-116
<b>X</b>	<b>Page</b>
XY menu (cursor measurement, area) .....	5-3
XY menu (waveform display).....	5-1
<b>Z</b>	<b>Page</b>
Z1, Z2 Position .....	10-3
ZOOM knob .....	10-3
ZOOM menu.....	10-1
ZOOM Vertical Zoom menu.....	10-4